

Forgotten Books

— www.forgottenbooks.com —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

THE HISTORY
OF THE
DECLINE AND FALL OF THE
ROMAN EMPIRE

BY
EDWARD GIBBON

EDITED IN SEVEN VOLUMES
WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, APPENDICES, AND INDEX

BY
J. B. BURY, M.A.

HON. LITT.D. OF DURHAM; HON. LL.D. OF EDINBURGH
CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, ST. PETERSBURG
FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, AND REGIUS PROFESSOR OF GREEK,
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF DUBLIN

VOL. VII.

LONDON
METHUEN & CO.
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO.

1900

CONTENTS OF THE SEVENTH VOLUME.

CHAPTER LXIV

Conquests of Zingis Khan and the Moguls from China to Poland—Escape of Constantinople and the Greeks—Origin of the Ottoman Turks in Bithynia—Reigns and Victories of Othman, Orchan, Amurath the First, and Bajazet the First—Foundation and Progress of the Turkish Monarchy in Asia and Europe—Danger of Constantinople and the Greek Empire

A.D.	PAGE
1206-1227. Zingis Khan, first Emperor of the Moguls and Tartars ...	1
His Laws	3
1210-1214. His Invasion of China	6
1218-1224. Of Carizme, Transoxiana, and Persia	8
1227 His Death	10
1227-1295. Conquests of the Moguls under the Successors of Zingis	10
1234 Of the Northern Empire of China	11
1279 Of the Southern	12
1258 Of Persia, and the Empire of the Caliphs	12
1242-1272. Of Anatolia	14
1235-1245. Of Kipsak, Russia, Poland, Hungary, &c.	14
1241 Battle of Liegnitz	15
Battle of Mohi	16
1242 Of Siberia	17
1227-1259. The Successors of Zingis	18
1259-1368. Adopt the Manners of China	19
1259-1300. Division of the Mogul Empire	20
1240-1304. Escape of Constantinople and the Greek Empire from the Moguls	20
1304 Decline of the Mogul Khans of Persia	22
1240 Origin of the Ottomans	22
1299-1326. Reign of Othman	23
1326-1360. Reign of Orchan	24
1326-1339. His Conquest of Bithynia	25
1300 Division of Anatolia among the Turkish Emirs	26
1312 Loss of the Asiatic Provinces	26
1310-1523. The Knights of Rhodes	27
1341-1347. First Passage of the Turks into Europe	27
1346 Marriage of Orchan with a Greek Princess	29
1353 Establishment of the Ottomans in Europe	30
Death of Orchan and his Son Soliman	31

A.D.	PAGE
1360-1389. The Reign and European Conquests of Amurath I. ...	31
The Janizaries	32
1389-1403. The reign of Bajazet I. Ilderim	33
His Conquests from the Euphrates to the Danube	34
1396 Battle of Nicopolis	35
1396-1398. Crusade and Captivity of the French Princes ..	35
1355-1391. The Emperor John Palæologus	38
Discord of the Greeks	39
1391-1425. The Emperor Manuel	40
1395-1402. Distress of Constantinople	40

CHAPTER LXV

Elevation of Timour or Tamerlane to the Throne of Samarcand—His Conquests in Persia, Georgia, Tartary, Russia, India, Syria, and Anatolic—His Turkish War—Defeat and Captivity of Bajazet—Death of Timour—Civil War of the Sons of Bajazet—Restoration of the Turkish Monarchy by Mahomet the First—Siege of Constantinople by Amurath the Second

Histories of Timour, or Tamerlane	42
1361-1370. His first Adventures	44
1370 He ascends the Throne of Zagatai	46
1370-1400. His Conquests	46
1380-1393. I. Of Persia	46
1370-1383. II. of Turkestan	48
1390-1396. Of Kipzak, Russia, &c.	48
1398, 1399. III. of Hindostan	50
1400 His War against Sultan Bajazet	52
Timour invades Syria	54
Sacks Aleppo	55
1401 Damascus	56
And Bagdad	57
1402 Invades Anatolia	57
Battle of Angora	58
Defeat and Captivity of Bajazet	60
The Story of his Iron Cage disproved by the Persian Historian of Timour	60
Attested, 1. by the French	62
—— 2. by the Italians	62
—— 3. by the Arabs	63
—— 4. by the Greeks	63
—— 5. by the Turks	64
Probable Conclusion	64
1403 Death of Bajazet	64
Term of the Conquests of Timour	65
1404 1405. His Triumph at Samarcand	66
1405 His Death on the Road to China ..	68
Character and Merits of Timour	68
1403-1421. Civil Wars of the Sons of Bajazet	71
1. Mustapha	71
2. Isa	72
1403-1410. 3. Soliman	72

CONTENTS

vii

	PAGE
1410 4. Mousa	73
1413-1421. 5. Mahomet I.	73
1421-1451. Reign of Amurath II.	74
1421 Re-union of the Ottoman Empire	74
1402-1425. State of the Greek Empire	75
1422 Siege of Constantinople by Amurath II.	77
1425-1448. The Emperor John Palæologus II.	78
Hereditary Succession and Merit of the Ottomans	78
Education and Discipline of the Turks	79
Invention and Use of Gunpowder	81

CHAPTER LXVI

Application of the Eastern Emperors to the Popes—Visits to the West, of John the First, Manuel, and John the Second, Palæologus—Union of the Greek and Latin Churches, Promoted by the Council of Basil, and Concluded at Ferrara and Florence—State of Literature at Constantinople—Its Revival in Italy by the Greek Fugitives—Curiosity and Emulation of the Latins

1339 Embassy of the Younger Andronicus to Pope Benedict XII.	83
The Arguments for a Crusade and Union	84
1348 Negotiation of Cantacuzene with Clement VI.	86
1355 Treaty of John Palæologus I. with Innocent VI.	87
1369 Visit of John Palæologus to Urban V. at Rome	88
1370 His Return to Constantinople	90
Visit of the Emperor Manuel	91
1400 To the Court of France	91
——— England	92
1402 His Return to Greece	92
Greek Knowledge and Descriptions	93
Of Germany	93
Of France	94
Of England	95
1402-1417. Indifference of Manuel towards the Latins	96
1417-1425. His Negotiations	96
His Private Motives	97
His Death	98
1425-1437. Zeal of John Palæologus II.	98
Corruption of the Latin Church	99
1377-1429. Schism	100
1409 Council of Pisa	100
1414-1418. Of Constance	100
1431-1443. Of Basil	100
Their Opposition to Eugenius IV.	101
1434-1437. Negotiations with the Greeks	101
1437 John Palæologus embarks in the Pope's Galleys	102
1438 His Triumphant Entry at Venice	105
——— into Ferrara	106
1438-1439. Council of the Greeks and Latins at Ferrara and Flo- rence	107
Negotiations with the Greeks	110

A.D.	PAGE
1000-1100. The French and German Emperors of Rome	210
Authority of the Popes in Rome	211
• From Affection	212
—— Right	213
—— Virtue	213
—— Benefits	213
Inconstancy of Superstition	214
Seditions of Rome against the Popes	215
1086-1305. Successors of Gregory VII.	216
1090-1118. Paschal II.	216
1118, 1119. Gelasius II.	217
1144, 1145. Lucius II.	218
1181-1185. Lucius III.	218
1119-1124. Calixtus II.	218
1130-1143. Innocent II.	218
Character of the Romans by St. Bernard	219
1140 Political Heresy of Arnold of Brescia	219
1144-1154. He exhorts the Romans to restore the Republic	221
Innocent II., Anastasius IV., Adrian IV.	222
1155 His Execution	223
Restoration of the Senate	223
The Capitol	226
The Coin	227
The Præfect of the City	227
Number and Choice of the Senate	228
The Office of Senator	229
1252-1258. Brancalione	230
1265-1278. Charles of Anjou	231
1281 Pope Martin IV.	232
1328 The Emperor Lewis of Bavaria	232
Addresses of Rome to the Emperors	232
1144 Conrad III.	232
1155 Frederic I.	233
Wars of the Romans against the neighbouring Cities	236
1167 Battle of Tusculum	238
1234 ——— of Viterbo	238
The Election of the Popes	238
1179 Right of the Cardinals established by Alexander III.	239
1274 Institution of the Conclave by Gregory X.	240
Absence of the Popes from Rome	241
1294-1303. Boniface VIII.	242
1309 Translation of the Holy See to Avignon	243
1300 Institution of the Jubilee, or Holy Year	245
1350 The Second Jubilee	247
The Nobles or Barons of Rome	247
Family of Leo the Jew	249
The Colonna	250
And Ursini	252
Their hereditary Feuds	253

CHAPTER LXX

Character and Coronation of Petrarch—Restoration of the Freedom and Government of Rome by the Tribune Rienzi—His Virtues and Vices, his Expulsion and Death—Return of the Popes from Avignon—Great Schism of the West—Re-Union of the Latin Church—Last Struggles of Roman Liberty—Statutes of Rome—Final Settlement of the Ecclesiastical State

LXX.	PAGE
1304-1374. Petrarch	255
1341 His Poetic Coronation at Rome	257
Birth, Character, and patriotic Designs of Rienzi	259
1344 Becomes notary of the civic camera	260
1347 He assumes the Government of Rome	262
With the Title and Office of Tribune	263
Laws of the Good Estate	263
Freedom and Prosperity of the Roman Republic	265
The Tribune is respected in Italy, &c.	266
And celebrated by Petrarch	268
His Vices and Follies	268
The Pomp of his Knighthood	269
And Coronation	271
Fear and Hatred of the Nobles of Rome	271
They oppose Rienzi in Arms	273
Defeat and Death of the Colonna	273
Fall and Flight of the Tribune Rienzi	274
1347-1354. Revolutions of Rome	275
Adventures of Rienzi	277
1351 A Prisoner at Avignon	277
1354 Rienzi, Senator of Rome	278
His Death	279
1355 Petrarch invites and upbraids the Emperor Charles IV.	280
He solicits the Popes of Avignon to fix their Residence at Rome	280
1367-1370. Return of Urban V.	281
1377 Final Return of Gregory XI.	282
1378 His Death	283
Election of Urban VI.	284
Election of Clement VII.	284
1378-1418. Great Schism of the West	285
Calamities of Rome	286
1392-1407. Negotiations for Peace and Union	286
1409 Council of Pisa	288
1414-1418. Council of Constance	288
Election of Martin V.	290
1417 Martin V.	290
1431 Eugenius IV.	290
1447 Nicholas V.	290
1484 Last Revolt of Rome	290
1488 Last Coronation of a German Emperor, Frederic III.	291
The Statutes and Government of Rome	291
1493 Conspiracy of Porcario	293
Last Disorders of the Nobles of Rome	295

A.D.		PAGE
1500	The Popes acquire the absolute Dominion of Rome	296
	The Ecclesiastical Government	298
1585-1590.	Sixtus V.	299

CHAPTER LXXI

Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century—Four Causes of Decay and Destruction—Example of the Coliseum—Renovation of the City—Conclusion of the whole Work

1430	View and Discourse of Poggius from the Capitoline Hill ...	301
	His Description of the Ruins	302
	Gradual Decay of Rome	304
	Four Causes of Destruction	305
	I. The Injuries of Nature	305
	Hurricanes and Earthquakes	306
	Fires	306
	Inundations	307
	II. The Hostile Attacks of the Barbarians and Christians ...	308
	III. The Use and Abuse of the Materials	310
	IV. The Domestic Quarrels of the Romans	313
	The Coliseum or Amphitheatre of Titus	316
	Games of Rome	318
1332	A Bull-feast in the Coliseum	318
	Injuries	320
	And Consecration of the Coliseum	321
	Ignorance and Barbarism of the Romans	321
1420	Restoration and Ornaments of the City	323
	Final Conclusion	325
	Appendix	327
	INDEX I., to Text	337
	INDEX II., to Appendices	486

PLAN

Ancient Rome to face	301
---------------------	-------------	-----

NOTE

I HAVE again the pleasure of thanking Professor Stanley Lane-Poole for his assistance. He has helped me to revise chapters lii. and liii.

J. B. B.

THE HISTORY
OF THE
DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

CHAPTER LXIV

*Conquests of Zingis Khan and the Moguls from China to Poland—
Escape of Constantinople and the Greeks—Origin of the Otto-
man Turks in Bithynia—Reigns and Victories of Othman,
Orchan, Amurath the First, and Bajazet the First—Foundation
and Progress of the Turkish Monarchy in Asia and Europe—
Danger of Constantinople and the Greek Empire*

From the petty quarrels of a city and her suburbs, from the cowardice and discord of the falling Greeks, I shall now ascend to the victorious Turks, whose domestic slavery was ennobled by martial discipline, religious enthusiasm, and the energy of the national character. The rise and progress of the Ottomans, the present sovereigns of Constantinople, are connected with the most important scenes of modern history; but they are founded on a previous knowledge of the great eruption of the Moguls and Tartars, whose rapid conquests may be compared with the primitive convulsions of nature, which have agitated and altered the surface of the globe. I have long since asserted my claim to introduce the nations, the immediate or remote authors of the fall of the Roman empire; nor can I refuse myself to those events which, from their uncommon magnitude, will interest a philosophic mind in the history of blood.¹

From the spacious highlands between China, Siberia, and the Caspian Sea, the tide of emigration and war has repeatedly been poured. These ancient seats of the Huns and Turks were occupied in the twelfth century by many pastoral tribes of the same descent and similar manners, which were united and led to conquest by the formidable Zingis. In his ascent to greatness, that barbarian (whose private appellation was Temugin) had trampled on the necks of his equals. His birth was noble;

Zingis
(Chingis)
Khan, first
emperor of
the Moguls
and Tartars,
A.D. 1206-
1227

(Temugin)

¹ The reader is invited to review the chapters of the third and fourth volumes; the mention of pastoral nations, the conquests of Attila and the Huns, which were suggested at a time when I entertained the wish, rather than the hope, of concluding my history.

2 THE DECLINE AND FALL

[Temugay] but it was in the pride of victory that the prince or people deduced his seventh ancestor from the immaculate conception of a virgin.² His father had reigned over thirteen hordes, which composed about thirty or forty thousand families; above two-thirds refused to pay tithes or obedience to his infant son; and, at the age of thirteen, Temugin fought a battle against his rebellious subjects. The future conqueror of Asia was reduced to fly and to obey; but he rose superior to his fortune; and, in his fortieth year, he had established his fame and dominion over the circumjacent tribes. In a state of society in which policy is rude and valour is universal, the ascendant of one man must be founded on his power and resolution to punish his enemies and recompense his friends. His first military league was ratified by the simple rites of sacrificing an horse and tasting of a running stream: Temugin pledged himself to divide with his followers the sweets and the bitters of life; and, when he had shared among them his horses and apparel, he was rich in their gratitude and his own hopes. After his first victory, he placed seventy caldrons on the fire, and seventy of the most guilty rebels were cast headlong into the boiling water. The sphere of his attraction was continually enlarged by the ruin of the proud and the submission of the prudent; and the boldest chieftains might tremble, when [Wang Khan] they beheld, enchased in silver, the skull of the khan of the Keraites,³ who under the name of Prester John had corresponded with the Roman pontiff and the princes of Europe.

²[The miraculous origin of the race of Chingis Khan appears in Turkish and Chinese as well as in Mongol legend. The family to which he belonged was called the Borjigen; it seems to have been of Turkish origin on the female side, but Mongol on the male (Cahun, *Intr. à l'histoire de l'Asie*, p. 203). It possessed lands and high prestige among the Mongol tribes to the north of China between the river Selinga and Orchon. It is important to realise that the Mongols were not very numerous. In the Mongol empire, as it is called, which Chingiz Khan created, the Mongolian element was small. What he did was to create a great Turkish empire under Mongol domination.]

³The Khans of the Keraites [Karaites] were most probably incapable of reading the pompous epistles composed in their name by the Nestorian missionaries, who endowed them with the fabulous wonders of an Indian kingdom. Perhaps these Tartars (the Presbyter or Priest John) had submitted to the rites of baptism and ordination (Asseman. *Bibliot. Orient.* tom. iii. p. ii. p. 487-503). [Sir. H. Howorth has shown very clearly (*Hist. of the Mongols*, i. p. 696 *sqq.*) that the Karaites were Turks, not Mongols. Their territory was near the Upper Orchon, between the rivers Selinga and Kernlen. They were Christians. Their chief Tughril received the title of Wang ("king") from the (Manchu) Emperor of Northern China for his services in 1193 against the Naiman Turks of the regions of the Altai and Upper Irtysh. Chingis also took part in this war, and his services were recognised by the title of Dai Ming, "high Brightness". For an account of Prester John—the name by which the Karait khans were known in the west—and the legends attached to him, see Howorth, i. cap. x. p. 534 *sqq.*]

The ambition of Temugin condescended to employ the arts of superstition; and it was from a naked prophet, who could ascend to heaven on a white horse, that he accepted the title of Zingis,⁴ the *Most Great*; and a divine right to the conquest and dominion of the earth. In a general *cowroullai*, or diet, he was seated on a felt, which was long afterwards revered as a relic, and solemnly proclaimed Great Khan or emperor of the Moguls⁵ and Tartars.⁶ Of these kindred though rival names, the former had given birth to the Imperial race; and the latter has been extended, by accident or error, over the spacious wilderness of the north.

The code of laws which Zingis dictated to his subjects was adapted to the preservation of domestic peace and the exercise of foreign hostility. The punishment of death was inflicted on the crimes of adultery, murder, perjury, and the capital thefts of an horse or ox; and the fiercest of men were mild and just in their intercourse with each other. The future election of the great khan was vested in the princes of his family and the heads of the tribes; and the regulations of the chase were essential to the pleasures and plenty of a Tartar camp. The victorious nation was held sacred from all servile labours, which were abandoned to slaves and strangers; and every labour was servile except the profession of arms. The service and discipline of the troops, who were armed with bows, scymetars, and iron maces, and divided by hundreds, thousands, and ten thousands, were the institutions of a veteran commander. Each officer and soldier was made responsible, under pain of death, for the safety and honour of his companions; and the spirit of

~~From the history and tragedy of Voltaire, Gengis' at least in French, seems to be the more fashionable spelling; but Abulghazi Khan must have known the true name of his ancestor. His etymology appears just; Zin, in the Mogul tongue, signifies great, and gi is the superlative termination (Hist. Généalogique des Tartars, part ii. p. 194, 195). From the same idea of magnitude the appellation of Zingis is bestowed on the ocean. [Chingiz (= very great, or autocrat) represents the true spelling. He also bore the title Sutu Bodgo, "son of Heaven".]~~

⁵ The name of Moguls has prevailed among the Orientals, and still adheres to the titular sovereign, the Great Mogul of Hindostan. [Mongol, Mogul and (Arabic) Mughal are all attempts to represent a name which among the true Mongols is pronounced something between Mogjol (or Mool) and Mongol, but never with the *o* sound. See Tarikh-i-Rashidi, tr. Elias and Ross, p. 73 note.]

⁶ The Tartars (more properly Tatars) were descended from Tatar Khan, the brother of Mogul Khan (see Abulghazi, part i. and ii.), and once formed a horde of 70,000 families on the borders of Kitay (p. 103-112). In the great invasion of Europe (A.D. 1238), they seem to have led the vanguard; and the similitude of the name of *Tartares* recommended that of Tartars to the Latins (Matth. Paris, p. 358, &c.). [The Tatars seem to have been a mixture of Manchus and Turks. On one of the old Turkish inscriptions of A.D. 733 (see above vol. iv. p. 540) Tatars

conquest breathed in the law that peace should never be granted unless to a vanquished and suppliant enemy.⁷ But it is the religion of Zingis that best deserves our wonder and applause. The Catholic inquisitors of Europe, who defended nonsense by cruelty, might have been confounded by the example of a barbarian, who anticipated the lessons of philosophy⁸ and established by his laws a system of pure theism and perfect toleration. His first and only article of faith was the existence of one God, the author of all good, who fills, by his presence, the heavens and earth, which he has created by his power. The Tartars and Moguls were addicted to the idols of their peculiar tribes; and many of them had been converted by the foreign missionaries to the religions of Moses, of Mahomet, and of Christ. These various systems in freedom and concord were taught and practised within the precincts of the same camp; and the Bonze, the Imam, the Rabbi, the Nestorian, and the Latin priest enjoyed the same honourable exemption from service and tribute. In the mosque of Buchara, the insolent victor might trample the Koran under his horse's feet, but the calm legislator respected the prophets and pontiffs of the most hostile sects. The reason of Zingis was not informed by books; the khan could neither read nor write; and, except the tribe of the Igours, the greatest part of the Moguls and Tartars were as illiterate as their sovereign.⁹ The memory of their exploits was preserved by tradition; sixty-eight years after the death of Zingis, these traditions were collected and transcribed;¹⁰ the

⁷ [The code drawn up by Chingiz was called *Yāsāk* or Law. (On it, see Sir H. Howorth's paper in the *Indian Antiquary*, July, 1882.) The cruelties of Chingiz were always the simple execution of the laws: he was never capricious.]

⁸ A singular conformity may be found between the religious laws of Zingis Khan and of Mr. Locke (*Constitutions of Carolina*, in his works, vol. iv. p. 535. 4to edition, 1777).

⁹ [When Chingiz conquered the Naiman Turks of the Altai regions, c. 1203-4, the vizir of the Naiman king passed into his service and became his chancellor. This minister was an Uigur and had Uigur successors. Through these Uigurs, the Uigur alphabet (derived from the Syriac) was adopted by the Mongols, and the old Turkish script (of the Orchon inscriptions, see above vol. iv. p. 540) became obsolete.] On the Uigurs see Vámbéry's *Uigurische Sprachmonumente und das Kudatku Bilik*, 1870.

¹⁰ In the year 1294, by the command of [Mahmūd Ghāzān] Cazan, khan of Persia, the fourth [fifth] in descent from Zingis. From these traditions, his vizir, Fadlallah [Rashīd ad-Dīn], composed a Mogul history in the Persian language, which has been used by Petit de la Croix (*Hist. de Genghizcan*, p. 537-539) [see D'Ohsson, *Hist. des Mongols*, i. 627 *sq.*]. For Rashīd's *Jāmi al-Tawārikh* see Appendix 1.) The *Histoire Généalogique des Tatars* (à Leyde, 1726, in 12mo, 2 tomes) was translated by the Swedish prisoners in Siberia, from the Mogul Ms. of Abulgasi Bahadur Khan, a descendant of Zingis, who reigned over the Uzbeks

history of their domestic annals may be supplied by the Chinese,¹¹ Persians,¹² Armenians,¹³ Syrians,¹⁴ Arabians,¹⁵ Greeks;¹⁶

of Chingiz, or Carizus (A.D. 1644-1663). He is of most value and credit for the customs, manners, and manners of his nation. Of his nine parts, the 1st descends from Jahan to Mogul Khan; the 2d, from Mogul to Zingis; the 3d, is the 1st of the 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22nd, 23rd, 24th, 25th, 26th, 27th, 28th, 29th, 30th, 31st, 32nd, 33rd, 34th, 35th, 36th, 37th, 38th, 39th, 40th, 41st, 42nd, 43rd, 44th, 45th, 46th, 47th, 48th, 49th, 50th, 51st, 52nd, 53rd, 54th, 55th, 56th, 57th, 58th, 59th, 60th, 61st, 62nd, 63rd, 64th, 65th, 66th, 67th, 68th, 69th, 70th, 71st, 72nd, 73rd, 74th, 75th, 76th, 77th, 78th, 79th, 80th, 81st, 82nd, 83rd, 84th, 85th, 86th, 87th, 88th, 89th, 90th, 91st, 92nd, 93rd, 94th, 95th, 96th, 97th, 98th, 99th, 100th, 101st, 102nd, 103rd, 104th, 105th, 106th, 107th, 108th, 109th, 110th, 111th, 112th, 113th, 114th, 115th, 116th, 117th, 118th, 119th, 120th, 121st, 122nd, 123rd, 124th, 125th, 126th, 127th, 128th, 129th, 130th, 131st, 132nd, 133rd, 134th, 135th, 136th, 137th, 138th, 139th, 140th, 141st, 142nd, 143rd, 144th, 145th, 146th, 147th, 148th, 149th, 150th, 151st, 152nd, 153rd, 154th, 155th, 156th, 157th, 158th, 159th, 160th, 161st, 162nd, 163rd, 164th, 165th, 166th, 167th, 168th, 169th, 170th, 171st, 172nd, 173rd, 174th, 175th, 176th, 177th, 178th, 179th, 180th, 181st, 182nd, 183rd, 184th, 185th, 186th, 187th, 188th, 189th, 190th, 191st, 192nd, 193rd, 194th, 195th, 196th, 197th, 198th, 199th, 200th, 201st, 202nd, 203rd, 204th, 205th, 206th, 207th, 208th, 209th, 210th, 211st, 212th, 213th, 214th, 215th, 216th, 217th, 218th, 219th, 220th, 221st, 222nd, 223rd, 224th, 225th, 226th, 227th, 228th, 229th, 230th, 231st, 232nd, 233rd, 234th, 235th, 236th, 237th, 238th, 239th, 240th, 241st, 242nd, 243rd, 244th, 245th, 246th, 247th, 248th, 249th, 250th, 251st, 252nd, 253rd, 254th, 255th, 256th, 257th, 258th, 259th, 260th, 261st, 262nd, 263rd, 264th, 265th, 266th, 267th, 268th, 269th, 270th, 271st, 272nd, 273rd, 274th, 275th, 276th, 277th, 278th, 279th, 280th, 281st, 282nd, 283rd, 284th, 285th, 286th, 287th, 288th, 289th, 290th, 291st, 292nd, 293rd, 294th, 295th, 296th, 297th, 298th, 299th, 300th, 301st, 302nd, 303rd, 304th, 305th, 306th, 307th, 308th, 309th, 310th, 311st, 312th, 313th, 314th, 315th, 316th, 317th, 318th, 319th, 320th, 321st, 322nd, 323rd, 324th, 325th, 326th, 327th, 328th, 329th, 330th, 331st, 332nd, 333rd, 334th, 335th, 336th, 337th, 338th, 339th, 340th, 341st, 342nd, 343rd, 344th, 345th, 346th, 347th, 348th, 349th, 350th, 351st, 352nd, 353rd, 354th, 355th, 356th, 357th, 358th, 359th, 360th, 361st, 362nd, 363rd, 364th, 365th, 366th, 367th, 368th, 369th, 370th, 371st, 372nd, 373rd, 374th, 375th, 376th, 377th, 378th, 379th, 380th, 381st, 382nd, 383rd, 384th, 385th, 386th, 387th, 388th, 389th, 390th, 391st, 392nd, 393rd, 394th, 395th, 396th, 397th, 398th, 399th, 400th, 401st, 402nd, 403rd, 404th, 405th, 406th, 407th, 408th, 409th, 410th, 411st, 412th, 413th, 414th, 415th, 416th, 417th, 418th, 419th, 420th, 421st, 422nd, 423rd, 424th, 425th, 426th, 427th, 428th, 429th, 430th, 431st, 432nd, 433rd, 434th, 435th, 436th, 437th, 438th, 439th, 440th, 441st, 442nd, 443rd, 444th, 445th, 446th, 447th, 448th, 449th, 450th, 451st, 452nd, 453rd, 454th, 455th, 456th, 457th, 458th, 459th, 460th, 461st, 462nd, 463rd, 464th, 465th, 466th, 467th, 468th, 469th, 470th, 471st, 472nd, 473rd, 474th, 475th, 476th, 477th, 478th, 479th, 480th, 481st, 482nd, 483rd, 484th, 485th, 486th, 487th, 488th, 489th, 490th, 491st, 492nd, 493rd, 494th, 495th, 496th, 497th, 498th, 499th, 500th, 501st, 502nd, 503rd, 504th, 505th, 506th, 507th, 508th, 509th, 510th, 511st, 512th, 513th, 514th, 515th, 516th, 517th, 518th, 519th, 520th, 521st, 522nd, 523rd, 524th, 525th, 526th, 527th, 528th, 529th, 530th, 531st, 532nd, 533rd, 534th, 535th, 536th, 537th, 538th, 539th, 540th, 541st, 542nd, 543rd, 544th, 545th, 546th, 547th, 548th, 549th, 550th, 551st, 552nd, 553rd, 554th, 555th, 556th, 557th, 558th, 559th, 560th, 561st, 562nd, 563rd, 564th, 565th, 566th, 567th, 568th, 569th, 570th, 571st, 572nd, 573rd, 574th, 575th, 576th, 577th, 578th, 579th, 580th, 581st, 582nd, 583rd, 584th, 585th, 586th, 587th, 588th, 589th, 590th, 591st, 592nd, 593rd, 594th, 595th, 596th, 597th, 598th, 599th, 600th, 601st, 602nd, 603rd, 604th, 605th, 606th, 607th, 608th, 609th, 610th, 611st, 612th, 613th, 614th, 615th, 616th, 617th, 618th, 619th, 620th, 621st, 622nd, 623rd, 624th, 625th, 626th, 627th, 628th, 629th, 630th, 631st, 632nd, 633rd, 634th, 635th, 636th, 637th, 638th, 639th, 640th, 641st, 642nd, 643rd, 644th, 645th, 646th, 647th, 648th, 649th, 650th, 651st, 652nd, 653rd, 654th, 655th, 656th, 657th, 658th, 659th, 660th, 661st, 662nd, 663rd, 664th, 665th, 666th, 667th, 668th, 669th, 670th, 671st, 672nd, 673rd, 674th, 675th, 676th, 677th, 678th, 679th, 680th, 681st, 682nd, 683rd, 684th, 685th, 686th, 687th, 688th, 689th, 690th, 691st, 692nd, 693rd, 694th, 695th, 696th, 697th, 698th, 699th, 700th, 701st, 702nd, 703rd, 704th, 705th, 706th, 707th, 708th, 709th, 710th, 711st, 712th, 713th, 714th, 715th, 716th, 717th, 718th, 719th, 720th, 721st, 722nd, 723rd, 724th, 725th, 726th, 727th, 728th, 729th, 730th, 731st, 732nd, 733rd, 734th, 735th, 736th, 737th, 738th, 739th, 740th, 741st, 742nd, 743rd, 744th, 745th, 746th, 747th, 748th, 749th, 750th, 751st, 752nd, 753rd, 754th, 755th, 756th, 757th, 758th, 759th, 760th, 761st, 762nd, 763rd, 764th, 765th, 766th, 767th, 768th, 769th, 770th, 771st, 772nd, 773rd, 774th, 775th, 776th, 777th, 778th, 779th, 780th, 781st, 782nd, 783rd, 784th, 785th, 786th, 787th, 788th, 789th, 790th, 791st, 792nd, 793rd, 794th, 795th, 796th, 797th, 798th, 799th, 800th, 801st, 802nd, 803rd, 804th, 805th, 806th, 807th, 808th, 809th, 810th, 811st, 812th, 813th, 814th, 815th, 816th, 817th, 818th, 819th, 820th, 821st, 822nd, 823rd, 824th, 825th, 826th, 827th, 828th, 829th, 830th, 831st, 832nd, 833rd, 834th, 835th, 836th, 837th, 838th, 839th, 840th, 841st, 842nd, 843rd, 844th, 845th, 846th, 847th, 848th, 849th, 850th, 851st, 852nd, 853rd, 854th, 855th, 856th, 857th, 858th, 859th, 860th, 861st, 862nd, 863rd, 864th, 865th, 866th, 867th, 868th, 869th, 870th, 871st, 872nd, 873rd, 874th, 875th, 876th, 877th, 878th, 879th, 880th, 881st, 882nd, 883rd, 884th, 885th, 886th, 887th, 888th, 889th, 890th, 891st, 892nd, 893rd, 894th, 895th, 896th, 897th, 898th, 899th, 900th, 901st, 902nd, 903rd, 904th, 905th, 906th, 907th, 908th, 909th, 910th, 911st, 912th, 913th, 914th, 915th, 916th, 917th, 918th, 919th, 920th, 921st, 922nd, 923rd, 924th, 925th, 926th, 927th, 928th, 929th, 930th, 931st, 932nd, 933rd, 934th, 935th, 936th, 937th, 938th, 939th, 940th, 941st, 942nd, 943rd, 944th, 945th, 946th, 947th, 948th, 949th, 950th, 951st, 952nd, 953rd, 954th, 955th, 956th, 957th, 958th, 959th, 960th, 961st, 962nd, 963rd, 964th, 965th, 966th, 967th, 968th, 969th, 970th, 971st, 972nd, 973rd, 974th, 975th, 976th, 977th, 978th, 979th, 980th, 981st, 982nd, 983rd, 984th, 985th, 986th, 987th, 988th, 989th, 990th, 991st, 992nd, 993rd, 994th, 995th, 996th, 997th, 998th, 999th, 1000th. [The work of Abulpharagius has been edited and translated by Des Maisons (St. Petersburg, 1870). For Jahan and Javaini see Appendix 2.]

¹¹ Histoire de Genghiscan, et de toute la Dinastie des Mongous ses Successeurs, Contenus de la Chine; tirée de l'Histoire de la Chine, par le R. P. Gaubil, de la Compagnie de Jesus, Missionnaire à Pekin; à Paris, 1739, in 4to. This translation is charged with the Chinese character of domestic accuracy and foreign ignorance. [It has been superseded by the Russian work of the Père Hyacinth, on the four Khans of the house of Chingiz, 1829. A contemporary Chinese work on the Man-Hun has been translated by Vasiliev in the ivth vol. of the Transactions of the Russian Arch. Soc., Oriental Sect.]

¹² See the Histoire du Grand Genghiscan, premier Empereur des Mogols et Tartares, par M. Petit de la Croix, à Paris, 1710, in 2emo [it has been translated into English]: a work of ten years' labour, chiefly drawn from the Persian writers, among whom Masudi, the secretary of sultan Gelaeddin, has the merit and prejudices of a contemporary. A slight air of romance is the fault of the originals, or the compiler. See likewise the articles of Genghiscan, Mohammed, Gelaeddin, &c., in the Bibliothèque Orientale of d'Herbelot. [Several histories of the Mongols have appeared in this century: D'Ohsson, Histoire des Mongols, 1852; Wolf, Geschichte der Mongolen oder Tataren, 1872; Quatremère, Histoire des Mongoles de la Perse, 1836; Howorth, History of the Mongols, Part 1, 1876, Part 2 (in 2 vols.), 1880 (on the "Tartars" of Russia and Central Asia); Part 3, 1888 (on Mongols of Persia); Cahun, Introduction à l'Histoire de l'Asie, 1896. For later Mongols of Central Asia, see the Tarikh-i-Rashidi of Mirzâ Muhammad Haidar Daghlat, transl. by E. D. Ross, ed. by N. Elias, 1895; for which, and for Schmidt, Geschichte der Ost-Mongolen, cp. App. 1. For Chingiz Khan: Erdmann, Temudschin der Unerlöschliche, 1862; R. K. Douglas, Life of Jingbiz Khân, 1877; Howorth, op. cit. Pt. 1. Gibbon does not mention: Pallas, Sammlungen historischer Nachrichten über die Mongolischen Völkerschaften, which appeared at St. Petersburg in 1776, 2 vols.]

¹³ Haithonus, or Aithonus, an Armenian prince, and afterwards a monk of Premonstré (Fabric. Bibliot. Lat. medii Ævi, tom. i. p. 34), dictated, in the French language, his book *De Tartaris*, his old fellow-soldiers. It was immediately translated into Latin, and is inserted in the *Novus Orbis* of Simon Gryneus (Basil, 1555, in folio). [See above vol. vi. p. 530. For Haithon I. see Appendix 1.]

¹⁴ Zingis Khan, and his first successors, occupy the conclusion of the ixth Dynasty of Abulpharagius (vers. Pocock, Oxon. 1663, in 4to); and his xth Dynasty is that of the Moguls of Persia. Assemanus (Bibliot. Orient. tom. ii.) has extracted some facts from his Syrian writings, and the lives of the Jacobite maphrians or primates of the East.

¹⁵ Among the Arabians, in language and religion, we may distinguish Abulfeda, sultan of Hamah in Syria, who fought in person, under the Mamaluke standard, against the Moguls.

¹⁶ Nicephorus Gregoras (l. ii. c. 5, 6) has felt the necessity of connecting the Scythian and Byzantine histories. He describes, with truth and elegance, the settlement and manners of the Moguls of Persia, but he is ignorant of their origin, and corrupts the names of Zingis and his sons.

Russians,¹⁷ Poles,¹⁸ Hungarians¹⁹ and Latins;²⁰ and each nation will deserve credit in the relation of their own disasters and defeats.²¹

His invasion
of China, A. D.
1210-1216

The arms of Zingis and his lieutenants successively reduced the hordes of the desert, who pitched their tents between the wall of China and the Volga; and the Mogul emperor became the monarch of the pastoral world, the lord of many millions of shepherds and soldiers, who felt their united strength, and were impatient to rush on the mild and wealthy climates of the south. His ancestors had been the tributaries of the

¹⁷ M. Levesque (*Histoire de Russie*, tom. ii.) has described the conquest of Russia by the Tartars, from the patriarch Nikon and the old chronicles. [See Soloviev, *Istoria Rossii*, vol. iii. cap. ii. p. 820 *sqq.*]

¹⁸ For Poland, I am content with the *Sarmatia Asiatica et Europaea* of Matthew à Michou, or de Michovia, a canon and physician of Cracow (A. D. 1506), inserted in the *Novus Orbis* of Grynæus. *Fabric. Bibliot. Latin. mediæ et infimæ Ætatis*, tom. v. p. 56. [The most important Polish source is the *Historia Polonica* of Johannes Dlugossius (who lived in the 15th century and died 1480). His works have been edited in 14 vols. by Alexander Przesdziecki (1867-87) and the *Hist. Pol.* occupies vols. x.-xiv. Roepell's *Geschichte Polens*, vol. i. (1840). Only one contemporary Polish chronicle has survived: the *Annals of the Cracow Chapter*, *Mon. Germ.* xix. 582 *sqq.*]

¹⁹ I should quote Thuroczius, the oldest general historian (*pars ii. c. 74, p. 150*), in the first volume of the *Scriptores Rerum Hungaricarum*, did not the same volume contain the original narrative of a contemporary, an eye-witness, and a sufferer (*M. Rogerii, Hungari, Varadiensis Capituli Canonici, Carmen miserabile, seu Historia super Destructione Regni Hungariæ, Temporibus Belæ IV. Regis per Tartaros factâ*, p. 292-321) [it will be found in *Endlicher, Rer. Hung. Monum. Arpadiana*, p. 255 *sqq.*]; the best picture that I have ever seen of all the circumstances of a barbaric invasion. [Gibbon omits to mention nother contemporary account (of great importance) of the invasion of Hungary, by Thomas Archdeacon of Spalato, in his *Historia Salonitana*, published in *Schwandtrer's Scriptores Hung.*, vol. iii.]

²⁰ Matthew Paris has represented, from authentic documents, the danger and distress of Europe (consult the word *Tartari* in his copious Index). [It has been conjectured that among the documents used by Matthew were anti-Semitic fly-leaves, accusing the Jews of inviting and helping the Mongols, *Strakosch-Grassmann, Der Einfall der Mongolen*, p. 116.] From motives of zeal and curiosity, the court of the great Khan, in the xiiiith century, was visited by two friars, John de Plano Carpini and William Rubruquis, and by Marco Polo, a Venetian gentleman. The Latin relations of the two former are inserted in the first volume of *Hackluyt*: the Italian original, or version, of the third (*Fabric. Bibliot. Latin. mediæ Ævi*, tom. ii. p. 198; tom. v. p. 25) may be found in the second tome of *Ramusio*. [Colonel H. Yuk's English translation, *The Book of Ser Marco Polo the Venetian*, in 2 vols., 1875, with plans and illustrations, and most valuable elucidations and bibliography, is indispensable to the study of the traveller. A new edition of Rubruquis is wanted. The account of a journey among the Mongols by another traveller, *Ascellinus*, is printed in *Fejér, Codex diplomaticus Hungariæ*, iv. 1, 428 *sqq.*]

²¹ In his great *History of the Huns*, M. de Guignes has most amply treated of Zingis Khan and his successors. See tom. iii. l. xv.-xix., and in the collateral articles of the Seljukians of Roum, tom. ii. l. xi., the Carismians, l. xiv., and the Mamelukes, tom. iv. l. xxi.; consult likewise the tables of the 1st volume. He is ever learned and accurate; yet I am only indebted to him for a general view, and some passages of *Abulfeda*, which are still latent in the Arabic text.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

thirty days. China was desolated by Tartar war and domestic faction; and the five northern provinces were added to the empire of Zingis.

of Carizme,
Transoxiana,
and Persia,
A.D. 1218-
1226

In the West, he touched the dominions of Mohammed, sultan of Carizme, who reigned from the Persian Gulf to the borders of India and Turkestan; and who, in the proud imitation of Alexander the Great, forgot the servitude and ingratitude of his fathers to the house of Seljuk.²⁴ It was the wish of Zingis to establish a friendly and commercial intercourse with the most powerful of the Moslem princes; nor could he be tempted by the secret solicitations of the caliph of Bagdad, who sacrificed to his personal wrongs the safety of the church and state. A rash and inhuman deed provoked and justified the Tartar arms in the invasion of the southern Asia. A caravan of three ambassadors and one hundred and fifty merchants was arrested and murdered at Otrar,²⁵ by the command of Mohammed; nor was it till after a demand and denial of justice, till he had prayed and fasted three nights on a mountain, that the Mogul emperor appealed to the judgment of God and his sword. Our European battles, says a philosophic writer,²⁶ are petty skirmishes, if compared to the numbers that have fought and fallen in the fields of Asia. Seven hundred thousand Moguls and Tartars are said to have marched under the standard of Zingis and his four sons. In the vast plains that extend to the north of the Sihon or Jaxartes, they were encountered by four hundred thousand soldiers of the Sultan; and in the first battle, which was suspended by the night, one hundred and sixty thousand Carizmians were slain. Mohammed was astonished by the multitude and valour of his enemies:²⁷ he withdrew from the scene of danger, and distri-

²⁴ [In the last quarter of the 11th cent., Anushtigin a Turkish slave was appointed governor of Carizme (Khwārizm) by the Sultan Malik Shāh. His son took the title of Carizme Shāh, and his grandson Atsiz made himself independent of the Seljuk sultans in the second quarter of the 12th cent. Alā ad-Dīn Moham-mad (A.D. 1199-1220) made this principality of Carizme (which Atsiz and Tukush (1172-1199) had already extended as far as Jand in the north and Ispahan in the west), into a great realm, subduing Persia and Transoxiana, overthrowing the Ghōrid dynasty of Afghanistan, and invaded Eastern Turkestan (the kingdom of the Karā-Khitay).]

²⁵ [On the middle Jaxartes. It was the capital of the Gūr-Khans of the Turkish kingdom of Karā-Khitay. Gibbon omits to mention the conquest of this kingdom (the south-western provinces of the modern empire of China) by Chingiz, before he came face to face with the Carizmian empire.]

²⁶ M. de Voltaire, *Essai sur l'Histoire Générale*, tom. iii. c. 60, p. 8. His account of Zingis and the Moguls contains, as usual, much general sense and truth, with some particular errors.

²⁷ [The strategical ability displayed in the campaigns of Chingiz and his successors has been well brought out by Cahun. It is wholly an error to regard the

buted his troops in the frontier towns, trusting that the barbarians, invincible in the field, would be repulsed by the length and difficulty of so many regular sieges. But the prudence of Zingis had formed a body of Chinese engineers, skilled in the mechanic arts, informed, perhaps, of the secret of gunpowder, and capable, under his discipline, of attacking a foreign country with more vigour and success than they had defended their own. The Persian historians will relate the sieges and reduction of Otrar, Cogende, Bochara, Samarcand, Carizme, Herat, Merou, Nisabour, Balah, and Candabar; and the conquest of the rich and populous countries of Transoxiana, Carizme, and Chorasán. The destructive hostilities of Attila and the Huns have long since been elucidated by the example of Zingis and the Moguls; and in this more proper place I shall be content to observe that, from the Caspian to the Indus, they ruined a tract of many hundred miles, which was adorned with the habitations and labours of mankind, and that five centuries have not been sufficient to repair the ravages of four years. The Mogul emperor encouraged or indulged the fury of his troops; the hope of future possession was lost in the ardour of rapine and slaughter; and the cause of the war exasperated their native fierceness by the pretence of justice and revenge. The downfall and death of the sultan Mohammed, [A. D. 1200] who expired unpitied and alone in a desert island of the Caspian Sea, is a poor atonement for the calamities of which he was the author. Could the Carizmian empire have been saved by a single hero, it would have been saved by his son Gelaeddin, [JALAL 24-DIN] whose active valour repeatedly checked the Moguls in the career of victory. Retreating, as he fought, to the banks of the Indus, he was oppressed by their innumerable host, till, in the last moment of despair, Gelaeddin spurred his horse into the waves, swam one of the broadest and most rapid rivers of Asia, and extorted the admiration and applause of Zingis himself. It was in this camp that the Mogul emperor yielded with reluctance

Mongol conquests as achieved merely by numbers and intrepid physical bravery. The campaigns were carefully planned out—not by Chingiz himself, he only considered, and approved or rejected, the plans submitted to him by his military advisers. He knew how to choose able generals (Samuka and Subutai were two of the most illustrious), but he did not interfere with them in their work. The invasion of the Carizmian empire was carried out thus: a Mongol army which had just conquered the land of Cashgar advanced over the great southern pass into Persia and descended upon Khojend. The main army advanced by the great northern gate, through Dzungaria and the Ili regions, to Otrar on the Jaxartes. Half the army spread up the river to take or mask the Carizmian fortresses and join hands at Khojend with the corps from Cashgar. The other half, under Chingiz himself, marched straight across the Red Sand Desert upon Bochara. Cahun, [A. D. 1205]. Success was rendered easy by the strategical mistakes of Mo-

to the murmurs of his weary and wealthy troops, who sighed for the enjoyment of their native land. Incumbered with the spoils of Asia, he slowly measured back his footsteps, betrayed some pity for the misery of the vanquished, and declared his intention of rebuilding the cities which had been swept away by the tempest of his arms. After he had repassed the Oxus and Jaxartes, he was joined by two generals, whom he had detached with thirty thousand horse, to subdue the western provinces of Persia. They had trampled on the nations which opposed their passage, penetrated through the gates of Derbend, traversed the Volga and the desert, and accomplished the circuit of the Caspian Sea, by an expedition which had never been attempted and has never been repeated. The return of Zingis was signalled by the overthrow of the rebellious or independent kingdoms of Tartary; and he died in the fulness of years and glory, with his last breath exhorting and instructing his sons to achieve the conquest of the Chinese empire.

His death,
A.D. 1227

Conquests of
the Moguls
under the
successors of
Zingis, A.D.
1227-1294

The harem of Zingis was composed of five hundred wives and concubines; and of his numerous progeny, four sons, illustrious by their birth and merit, exercised under their father the principal offices of peace and war. Toushi²⁸ was his great huntsman, Zagatai²⁹ his judge, Octsi his minister, and Tuli his general; and their names and actions are often conspicuous in the history of his conquests. Firmly united for their own and the public interest, the three brothers and their families were content with dependent sceptres; and Octai, by general consent, was proclaimed Great Khan, or emperor of the Moguls and Tartars. He was succeeded by his son Gayuk, after whose death the empire devolved to his cousins, Mangou and Cublai, the sons of Tuli, and the grandsons of Zingis.³⁰ In the sixty-eight years of his four first successors, the Moguls subdued almost all Asia and a large portion of Europe. Without confining

[Ogotay]

[Gayuk A.D.
1261-1294]

²⁸ [Jūji] received the realm of Karā-Khitay, and his son Bātū obtained possession of the Khanate of Kipchak, see below p. 14.]

²⁹ Zagatai [Chagatāy] gave his name to his dominions of Maurenahar [Mā-warā-l-nahr], or Transoxiana [along with part of Kashgar, Balkh, and Ghazna]; and the Moguls of Hindostan, who emigrated from that country, are styled Zagatais by the Persians. This certain etymology, and the similar example of Uzbek, Nogai, &c. may warn us not absolutely to reject the derivations of a national, from a personal, name. [The succession of the Chagatāy Khans of Transoxiana is very uncertain. On this branch see Mr. Oliver's monograph, "The Chaghatai Mughals," in Journ. R. As. Soc., vol. xx. Cp. the list in Lane-Poole's *Mohammedan Dynasties*, p. 242.]

³⁰ [Mangū (1251-1257) appointed his brother Khubilāy governor of the southern provinces. On Mangū's death, Khubilāy defeated the attempts of the line of Jūji to recover the chief Khanate, and reigned till 1294. He transferred the royal residence from Karakorum to Peking.]

myself to the order of time, without expatiating on the detail of events, I shall present a general picture of the progress of their arms: I. In the East; II. In the South; III. in the West; and, IV. In the North.

I. Before the invasion of Zingis, China was divided into two empires or dynasties of the North and South²¹; and the difference of origin and interest was smoothed by a general conformity of laws, language, and national manners. The Northern empire, which had been dismembered by Zingis, was finally subdued seven years after his death. After the loss of Pekin, the emperor had fixed his residence at Kaifong, a city many leagues in circumference, and which contained, according to the Chinese annals, fourteen hundred thousand families of inhabitants and fugitives. He escaped from thence with only seven horsemen, and made his last stand in a third capital, till at length the hopeless monarch, protesting his innocence and accusing his fortune, ascended a funeral pile, and gave orders that, as soon as he had stabbed himself, the fire should be kindled by his attendants. The dynasty of the Song, the native and ancient sovereigns of the whole empire, survived above forty-five years the fall of the Northern usurpers; and the perfect conquest was reserved for the arms of Cublai. During this interval, the Moguls were often diverted by foreign wars; and, if the Chinese seldom dared to meet their victors in the field, their passive courage presented an endless succession of cities to storm and of millions to slaughter. In the attack and defence of places, the engines of antiquity and the Greek fire were alternately employed; the use of gunpowder, in cannon and bombs, appears as a familiar practice;²² and the

of the Northern empire of China, A.D. 1291

[The Kin empire—Ming dynasty]

[The southern empire, native Chinese dynasty]

²¹ In Marco Polo and the Oriental geographers, the names of Cathay and Mangi distinguish the Northern and Southern empires, which, from A.D. 1234 to 1279, were those of the Great Khan and of the Chinese. The search of Cathay, after China had been found, excited and misled our navigators of the sixteenth century, in their attempts to discover the north-east passage. [Cp. Cathay and the Way Thither: a collection of all minor notices of China previous to the sixteenth century, translated and edited by Col. H. Yule, 2 vols. 1866.]

²² I depend on the knowledge and fidelity of the Père Gaubil, who translates the Chinese text of the annals of the Moguls or Yuen (p. 71, 93, 153); but I am ignorant at what time these annals were composed and published. The two uncles of Marco Polo, who served as engineers at the siege of Siengyangfou (l. ii. c. 61, in Ramusio, tom. ii; see Gaubil, p. 155, 157) must have felt and related the effects of this destructive powder, and their silence is a weighty and almost decisive objection. I entertain a suspicion that the recent discovery was carried from Europe to China by the caravans of the xvth century, and falsely adopted as an old national discovery before the arrival of the Portuguese and Jesuits in the xvith. Yet the Père Gaubil affirms that the use of gunpowder has been known to the Chinese above 1600 years. [For Chinese Annals see Appendix 1.]

[Khabtay] sieges were conducted by the Mahometans and Franks, who had been liberally invited into the service of Cublai. After passing the great river, the troops and artillery were conveyed along a series of canals, till they invested the royal residence of Hamcheu, or Quinsay, in the country of silk, the most delicious climate of China. The emperor, a defenceless youth, surrendered his person and sceptre; and, before he was sent in exile into Tartary, he struck nine times the ground with his forehead, to adore in prayer or thanksgiving the mercy of the Great Khan. Yet the war (it was now styled a rebellion) was still maintained in the southern provinces from Hamchen to Canton; and the obstinate remnant of independence and hostility was transported from the land to the sea. But, when the fleet of the Song was surrounded and oppressed by a superior armament, their last champion leaped into the waves with his infant emperor in his arms. "It is more glorious," he cried, "to die a prince than to live a slave." An hundred thousand Chinese imitated his example; and the whole empire, from Tonkin to the great wall, submitted to the dominion of Cublai. His boundless ambition aspired to the conquest of Japan; his fleet was twice shipwrecked; and the lives of an hundred thousand Moguls and Chinese were sacrificed in the fruitless expedition. But the circumjacent kingdoms, Corea, Tonkin, Cochinchina, Pegu, Bengal and Thibet, were reduced in different degrees of tribute and obedience by the effort or terror of his arms. He explored the Indian Ocean with a fleet of a thousand ships; they sailed in sixty-eight days, most probably to the isle of Borneo, under the equinoctial line; and, though they returned not without spoil or glory, the emperor was dissatisfied that the savage king had escaped from their hands.

Of the
Southern,
A.D. 1279

[Corea won
A.D. 1301]

Of Persia, and
the empire of
the Caliphs,
A.D. 1256

II. The conquest of Hindostan by the Moguls was reserved in a later period for the house of Timour; but that of Iran, or Persia, was achieved by Holagou²³ Khan, the grandson of Zingis, the brother and lieutenant of the two successive emperors, Mangou and Cublai. I shall not enumerate the crowd of sultans, emirs, and atabeks, whom he trampled into dust; but the extirpation of the *Assassins*, or *Ismaelians*²⁴ of Persia, may be con-

²³ [Hūlāgū. His reign in Persia began in A.D. 1256. His dynasty was called the Il Khāns, that is "Khāns of the IIs" or tribes (*i.e.* provincial). Hammer has made them the subject of a book: *Geschichte der Ilchane*, 1842.]

²⁴ All that can be known of the Assassins of Persia and Syria, is poured from the copious, and even profuse, erudition of M. Falconet, in two *Mémoires* read

sidered as a service to mankind. Among the hills to the south of the Caspian, these odious sectaries had reigned with impunity above an hundred and sixty years; and their prince, or imam, established his lieutenant to lead and govern the colony of Mount Libanus, so famous and formidable in the history of the crusades²⁶. With the fanaticism of the Koran, the Ismaelians had blended the Indian transmigration and the visions of their own prophets; and it was their first duty to devote their souls and bodies in blind obedience to the vicar of God. The daggers of his missionaries were felt both in the East and West; the Christians and the Moslems enumerate, and perhaps multiply, the illustrious victims that were sacrificed to the zeal, avarice, or resentment of *the old man* (as he was corruptly styled) of *the mountain*. But these daggers, his only arms, were broken by the sword of Holagou, and not a vestige is left of the enemies of mankind, except the word *assassin*, which, in the most odious sense, has been adopted in the languages of Europe. The extinction of the Abbassides cannot be indifferent to the spectators of their greatness and decline. Since the fall of their Seljukian tyrants, the caliphs had recovered their lawful dominion of Bagdad and the Arabian Irak; but the city was distracted by theological factions, and the commander of the faithful was lost in a harem of seven hundred concubines. The invasion of the Moguls he encountered with feeble arms and haughty embassies. "On the divine decree," said the caliph Mostasem, "is founded the throne of the sons of Abbas: and their foes shall surely be destroyed in this world and in the next. Who is this Holagou that dares to arise against them? If he be desirous of peace, let him instantly depart from the sacred territory, and perhaps he may obtain from our clemency the pardon of his fault." This presumption was cherished by a *perfidious vizir*, who assured his master that, even if the *barbarians* had entered the city, the women and children, from the terraces, would be sufficient to overwhelm them with stones. But, when Holagou touched the phantom, it instantly vanished into smoke. After a siege of two months, Bagdad was stormed and

before the Academy of Inscriptions (tom. xvii. p. 127-170). [One of the princes *Jahid ad-Din Elnan* had sent his submission to Chingiz: it was his son *Rukn ad-Din* who fought with Hülügü. On the Assassins see Hammer's History of the Assassins. transl. by O. C. Wood 1835.]

²⁶The Ismaelians of Syria, 40,000 assassins, had acquired or founded ten castles in the hills above Tortosa. About the year 1280, they were extirpated by the *Mongols*. (See Guyard, Un grand-Maitre des Assassins, in the Journal asiatique, 1877.)

[A.D. 1200]

OF KIPCHAK,
RUSSIA, PO-
LAND, HUN-
GARY, &c. A.D.
1200-1240

jukian dynasty, were finally extirpated by the khans of Persia.

III. No sooner had Octai subverted the northern empire of China, than he resolved to visit with his arms the most remote countries of the West.²⁷ Fifteen hundred thousand Moguls and Tartars were inscribed on the military roll; of these the Great Khan selected a third²⁸ which he entrusted to the command of his nephew Batou, the son of Tuli;²⁹ who reigned over his father's conquests to the north of the Caspian Sea. After a festival of forty days, Batou set forwards on this great expedition; and such was the speed and ardour of his innumerable squadrons that in less than six years they had measured a line of ninety degrees of longitude, a fourth part of the circumference of the globe. The great rivers of Asia and Europe, the Volga and Kama, the Don and Borysthenes, the Vistula and Danube,

²⁶ As a proof of the ignorance of the Chinese in foreign transactions, I must observe that some of their historians extend the conquests of Zingis himself to Medina, the country of Mahomet (Gaubil, p. 42).

²⁷ [On the history of the Mongols in the West and the Golden Horde, see Hammer's *Geschichte der goldenen Horde*, 1840, and Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, part ii. In May 1334 the Moorish traveller Ibn Batūta visited the camp of Usbeg Khan of the Golden Horde (*Voyages*, ed. and transl. Defrémery and Sanguinetti, vol. ii. 1877).]

²⁸ [The numbers given in the western sources are mere metaphors for immensity. Cp. Cahun, *op. cit.*, p. 343-344; Strakosch-Grassmann, *Der Einfall der Mongolen in Mitteleuropa*, p. 182-184. The total number of the Mongols may have been about 100,000.]

²⁹ [Batū was son of Jūji (not of Tulūy).]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

host of five hundred thousand men : the Carpathian hills could not be long impervious to their divided columns ; and their approach had been fondly disbelieved till it was irresistibly felt. The king, Bela the Fourth, assembled the military force of his counts and bishops ; but he had alienated the nation by adopting a vagrant horde of forty thousand families of Comans ; and these savage guests were provoked to revolt by the suspicion of treachery and the murder of their prince. The whole country north of the Danube was lost in a day, and depopulated in a summer ; and the ruins of cities and churches were overspread with the bones of the natives, who expiated the sins of their Turkish ancestors. An ecclesiastic, who fled from the sack of Waradin, describes the calamities which he had seen or suffered ; and the sanguinary rage of sieges and battles is far less atrocious than the treatment of the fugitives, who had been allured from the woods under a promise of peace and pardon, and who were coolly slaughtered as soon as they had performed the labours of the harvest and vintage. In the winter, the Tartars passed the Danube on the ice, and advanced to Gran or Strigonium, a German colony, and the metropolis of the kingdom. Thirty engines were planted against the walls ; the ditches were filled with sacks of earth and dead bodies ; and, after a promiscuous massacre, three hundred noble matrons were slain in the presence of the khan. Of all the cities and fortresses of Hungary, three alone survived the Tartar invasion, and the unfortunate Bela hid his head among the islands of the Adriatic.

The Latin world was darkened by this cloud of savage hostility ; a Russian fugitive carried the alarm to Sweden ; and the remote nations of the Baltic and the ocean trembled at the approach of the Tartars,⁴⁵ whom their fear and ignorance were inclined to separate from the human species. Since the invasion of the Arabs in the eighth century, Europe had never been exposed to a similar calamity ; and, if the disciples of Mahomet would have oppressed her religion and liberty, it might be apprehended that the shepherds of Scythia would extinguish her cities, her arts, and all the institutions of civil

⁴⁵ In the year 1238, the inhabitants of Gothia (*Sweden*) and Frise were prevented, by their fear of the Tartars, from sending, as usual, their ships to the herring fishery on the coast of England ; and, as there was no exportation, forty or fifty of these fish were sold for a shilling (*Matthew Paris*, p. 396). It is whimsical enough that the orders of a Mogul Khan, who reigned on the borders of China, should have lowered the price of herrings in the English market.

Feat of
in battle
Mohl, 1188
A. D.
N]

ger of
War.
N]

society. The Roman pontiff attempted to appease and convert these invincible pagans by a mission of Franciscan and Dominican friars; but he was astonished by the reply of the khan, that the sons of God and of Zingis were invested with a divine power to subdue or extirpate the nations; and that the Pope would be involved in the universal destruction, unless he visited in person, and as a suppliant, the royal horde. The emperor Frederic the Second embraced a more generous mode of defence; and his letters to the kings of France and England and the princes of Germany represented the common danger, and urged them to arm their vassals in this just and rational crusade.⁴⁶ The Tartars themselves were awed by the fame and valour of the Franks; the town of Neustadt in Austria was bravely defended against them by fifty knights and twenty crossbows; and they raised the siege on the appearance of a German army. After wasting the adjacent kingdoms of Servia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria, Batou slowly retreated from the Danube to the Volga to enjoy the rewards of victory in the city and palace of Serai, which started at his command from the midst of the desert.⁴⁷

IV. Even the poor and frozen regions of the north attracted the arms of the Moguls: Sheibani Khan, the brother of the ^{of Siberia,} great Batou, led an horde of fifteen thousand families into the ^{A. D. 1302, &c.} wilds of Siberia; and his descendants reigned at Tobolskoy above three centuries, till the Russian conquest. The spirit of enterprise which pursued the course of the Oby and Yenisei must have led to the discovery of the Icy Sea. After brushing away

⁴⁶ I shall copy his characteristic or flattering epithets of the different countries of Europe: *Furens ac fervens ad arma Germania, strenuæ militiæ genetrix et alumna Francia, bellicosa et audax Hispania, virtuosa viris et classe munita fertilis Anglia, impetuosis bellatoribus referta Alemannia, navalis Dacia, indomita Italia, pacis ignara Burgundia, inquieta Apulia, cum maris Græci, Adriatici, et Tyrrheni insulis pyratibus et invictis, Cretâ, Cypro, Sicilia, cum Oceano conterminis, insula, et regionibus, cruenta Hybernia, cum agili Walliâ, palustris Scotia, glacialis Norwegia, suam electam militiam sub vexillo Crucis destinabunt, &c.* (Matthew Paris, p. 496).

⁴⁷ [The news of the death of the Grand Khan Ogotai recalled Bâtû and Subutai to the East. The Mongols left Siebenbürgen in summer, 1242, Bulgaria in the following winter. Europe did not deceive itself. It was fully conscious that the Mongols could have extended their conquests if they had chosen. As Roger puts it, they declined to conquer Germany—*Tartari aspernabantur Theutomain expugnare* (see the *Curran*, in *M. G. H.* 29, p. 564). On the position of the capital of the Golden Horde, Serai, the chief works are Grigor'ev, *O miestopolozhnenii stolitsy zolotoi Ordy Seraila*, 1845; and Brun, *O rezidentsii chanov zolotoi Ordy do vremen Dzhingisida* (to the publications of the 3rd Archeological Congress at Kiev) 1878. Brun attempts to show that there were two (old) Serails,—the elder, nearer the Caspian Sea, not far from the village of Selitrian, the later at Tsarev.]

the monstrous fables, of men with dogs' heads and cloven feet, we shall find that, fifteen years after the death of Zingis, the Moguls were informed of the name and manners of the *Lappet-yedes* in the neighbourhood of the polar circle, who dwelt in subterraneous huts, and derived their furs and their food from the sole occupation of hunting.⁴⁸

seems
A.D. While China, Syria, and Poland were invaded at the same time by the Moguls and Tartars, the authors of the mischief were content with the knowledge and demonstration that their word was the sword of death. Like the great caliphs, the first successors of Zingis seldom appeared in person at the head of their victorious armies. On the banks of the Onon and Selinga, the royal or *golden horde* exhibited the contrast of simplicity and greatness; of the roasted sheep and mare's milk which composed their banquets; and of a distribution in one day of five hundred waggons of gold and silver. The ambassadors and princes of Europe and Asia were compelled to undertake this distant and laborious pilgrimage; and the life and reign of the great dukes of Russia, the kings of Gregoria and Armenia, the sultans of Iconium, and the emirs of Persia, were decided by the frown or smile of the Great Khan. The sons and grandsons of Zingis had been accustomed to the pastoral life; but the village of Caracorum⁴⁹ was gradually ennobled by their election and residence. A change of manners is implied in the removal of Octai and Mangou from a tent to an house; and their example was imitated by the princes of their family and the great officers of the empire. Instead of the boundless forest, the inclosure of a park afforded the more indolent pleasures of the chase; their new habitations were decorated with painting and sculpture; their superfluous treasures were cast in fountains, and basons, and statues of massy silver; and the artists of China and Paris vied with each other in the service of the Great

⁴⁸ See Carpin's relation in Hakluyt, vol. i. p. 30. The pedigree of the khans of Siberia is given by Abulghazi (part viii. p. 485-495). Have the Russians found no Tartar chronicles at Tobolskoi?

⁴⁹ The Map of d'Anville and the Chinese Itineraries (de Guignes, tom. I. p. 57) seem to mark the position of Holin, or Caracorum, about six hundred miles to the north-west of Peking. The distance between Selinginsky and Peking is near 2000 Russian versts, between 1300 and 1400 English miles (Bell's Travels, vol. ii. p. 67). [For the situation of Caracorum, at a place still called Kara-Kharam, on the north bank of the Orkhon, see Geographical Magazine for July 1874, p. 137; Yule's Marco Polo, vol. i. p. 228-229.]

Khan.⁵⁰ Caracorum contained two streets, the one of Chinese mechanics, the other of Mahometan traders; and the places of religious worship, one Nestorian church, two mosques, and twelve temples of various idols, may represent, in some degree, the number and division of inhabitants. Yet a French missionary declares that the town of St. Denys, near Paris, was more considerable than the Tartar capital; and that the whole palace of Mangou was scarcely equal to a tenth part of that Benedictine abbey. The conquests of Russia and Syria might amuse the vanity of the Great Khans; but they were seated on the borders of China; the acquisition of that empire was the nearest and most interesting object; and they might learn from their pastoral economy that it is for the advantage of the shepherd to protect and propagate his flock. I have already celebrated the wisdom and virtue of a mandarin who prevented the desolation of five populous and cultivated provinces. In a spotless administration of thirty years, this friend of his country and of mankind continually laboured to mitigate or suspend the havoc of war; to save the monuments, and to rekindle the flame, of science; to restrain the military commander by the restoration of civil magistrates; and to instil the love of peace and justice into the minds of the Moguls. He struggled with the barbarism of the first conquerors; but his salutary lessons produced a rich harvest in the second generation. The northern and by degrees the southern empire acquiesced in the government of Cublai, the lieutenant and afterwards the successor of Mangou; and the nation was loyal to a prince who had been educated in the manners of China. He restored the forms of her venerable constitution; and the victors submitted to the laws, the fashions, and even the prejudices of the vanquished people. This peaceful triumph, which has been more than once repeated, may be ascribed, in a great measure, to the numbers and servitude of the Chinese. The Mogul army was dissolved in a vast and populous country; and their emperors adopted with pleasure a political system which gives to the prince the solid substance of despotism and leaves to the subject the empty names of philosophy, freedom, and filial obedience. Under the reign of Cublai, letters and commerce, peace and justice, were restored; the great canal

Adopt the
MANNERS of
China, A.D.
1269-1368

⁵⁰ Rubruquis found at Caracorum his countryman *Guillaume Boucher*, of *Paris*, who had executed, for the khan, a silver tree, supported by four lions, and ejecting four different liquors. *Abulghazi* (part iv. p. 336) mentions the painters of *Kitay* or *China*.

[Period of
the Yuen
dynasty]

[A.D. 1200]

Division of
the Mogul
empire, A.D.
1250-1260

of five hundred miles was opened from Nankin to the capital; he fixed his residence at Pekin,⁵¹ and displayed in his court the magnificence of the greatest monarch of Asia. Yet this learned prince declined from the pure and simple religion of his great ancestor; he sacrificed to the idol Fo; and his blind attachment to the lamas of Thibet and the honzes of China⁵² provoked the censure of the disciples of Confucius. His successors polluted the palace with a crowd of eunuchs, physicians, and astrologers, while thirteen millions of their subjects were consumed in the provinces by famine. One hundred and forty years after the death of Zingis, his degenerate race, the dynasty of the Yuen, was expelled by a revolt of the native Chinese;⁵³ and the Mogul emperors were lost in the oblivion of the desert. Before this revolution, they had forfeited their supremacy over the dependent branches of their house, the khans of Kipzak and Russia, the khans of Zagatai or Transoxiana, and the khans of Iran or Persia. By their distance and power, these royal lieutenants had soon been released from the duties of obedience; and, after the death of Cublai, they scorned to accept a sceptre or a title from his unworthy successors. According to their respective situation, they maintained the simplicity of the pastoral life or assumed the luxury of the cities of Asia; but the princes and their hordes were alike disposed for the reception of a foreign worship. After some hesitation between the Gospel and the Koran, they conformed to the religion of Mahomet; and, while they adopted for their brethren the Arabs and Persians, they renounced all intercourse with the ancient Moguls, the idolaters of China.

Escape of
Constanti-
nople and the
Greek empire
from the
Moguls, A.D.
1204-1204

In this shipwreck of nations, some surprise may be excited by the escape of the Roman empire, whose relics, at the time of the Mogul invasion, were dismembered by the Greeks and Latins. Less potent than Alexander, they were pressed, like the Macedonian, both in Europe and Asia, by the shepherds of Scythia; and, had the Tartars undertaken the siege, Constantinople must have yielded to the fate of Pekin, Samarcand, and

⁵¹ [Which was called Khân Baligh, City of the Khân.]

⁵² The attachment of the khans, and the hatred of the mandarins, to the honzes and lamas (Duhalde, *Hist. de la Chine*, tom. i. p. 502, 503) seems to represent them as the priests of the same god, of the Indian *Fo*, whose worship prevails among the sects of Hindostan, Siam, Thibet, China, and Japan. But this mysterious subject is still lost in a cloud, which the researches of our Asiatic Society may gradually dispel.

⁵³ [Under Chu Yuen Chang who became emperor and founded the Ming dynasty.]

Bagdad. The glorious and voluntary retreat of Batou from the Danube was insulted by the vain triumph of the Franks and Greeks,⁵⁴ and in a second expedition death surprised him in full march to attack the capital of the Cæsars. His brother Borgia carried the Tartar arms into Bulgaria and Thrace; but he was diverted from the Byzantine war by a visit to Novogorod, in the fifty-seventh degree of latitude, where he numbered the inhabitants and regulated the tributes of Russia. The Mogul khan formed an alliance with the Mamelukes against his brethren of Persia; three hundred thousand horse penetrated through the gates of Derbend; and the Greeks might rejoice in the first example of domestic war. After the recovery of Constantinople, Michael Palæologus,⁵⁵ at a distance from his court and army, was surprised and surrounded in a Thracian castle by twenty thousand Tartars. But the object of their march was a private interest; they came to the deliverance of Azzadin,⁵⁶ the Turkish sultan; and were content with his person and the treasure of the emperor. Their general Noga, whose name is perpetuated in the hordes of Astracan, raised a formidable rebellion against Mengo Timour, the third of the khans of Kipzak; obtained in marriage Maria, the natural daughter of Palæologus; and guarded the dominions of his friend and father. The subsequent invasions of a Scythian cast were those of outlaws and fugitives; and some thousands of Alani and Comans, who had been driven from their native seats, were reclaimed from a vagrant life and enlisted in the service of the empire. Such was the influence in Europe of the invasion of the Moguls. The first terror of their arms secured rather than disturbed the peace of the Roman Asia. The sultan of Iconium solicited a personal interview with John Vataces; and his artful policy encouraged the Turks to defend their barrier against the common enemy.⁵⁷ That barrier indeed was soon overthrown; and the servitude and ruin of the Seljukians exposed the nakedness of the Greeks. The formidable Hologou threatened to march to Constantinople at the head of four

(Baraka, 1256-66 A.D.)

(Mangu-Timur A.D. 1266-1280)

⁵⁴ Some repulse of the Moguls in Hungary (Matthew Paris, p. 545, 546) might propagate and colour the report of the union and victory of the kings of the Franks on the confines of Bulgaria. Abulpharagius (Dynast. p. 310), after forty years, beyond the Tigris, might be easily deceived.

⁵⁵ See Pachymer, l. iii. c. 25, and l. ix. c. 26, 27; and the false alarm at Nice, l. ii. c. 27 [28]. Nicephorus Gregoras, l. iv. c. 6.

⁵⁶ [Izz ad-Din II. reigned A.D. 1245-1257.]

⁵⁷ G. Acropolita, p. 36, 37 [c. 41]. Nic. Gregoras, l. ii. c. 6, l. iv. c. 5.

hundred thousand men; and the groundless panic of the citizens of Nice will present an image of the terror which he had inspired. The accident of a procession, and the sound of a doleful litany, "From the fury of the Tartars, good Lord, deliver us," had scattered the hasty report of an assault, and massacre. In the blind credulity of fear, the streets of Nice were crowded with thousands of both sexes, who knew not from what or to whom they fled; and some hours elapsed before the firmness of the military officers could relieve the city from this imaginary foe. But the ambition of Hologou and his successors was fortunately diverted by the conquest of Bagdad and a long vicissitude of Syrian wars; their hostility to the Moslems inclined them to unite with the Greeks and Franks;⁵⁸ and their generosity or contempt had offered the kingdom of Anatolia as the reward of an Armenian vassal. The fragments of the Seljukian monarchy were disputed by the emirs who had occupied the cities or the mountains; but they all confessed the supremacy of the khans of Persia; and he often interposed his authority, and sometimes his arms, to check their depredations, and to preserve the peace and balance of his Turkish frontier. The death of Cazan,⁵⁹ one of the greatest and most accomplished princes of the house of Zingis, removed this salutary control; and the decline of the Moguls gave a free scope to the rise and progress of the OTTOMAN EMPIRE.⁶⁰

Decline of the
Mogul Khans
of Persia,
A. D. 1304. 31st
May

Origin of the
Ottomans,
A. D. 1240 &c.

[A. D. 1220-
1231]

After the retreat of Zingis, the sultan Gelaeddin of Carisme had returned from India to the possession and defence of his Persian kingdoms. In the space of eleven years, that hero fought in person fourteen battles; and such was his activity that he led his cavalry, in seventeen days, from Teflis to Kerman, a march of a thousand miles.⁶¹ Yet he was oppressed by the jealousy of the Moslem princes and the innumerable armies of the

⁵⁸ Abulpharagius, who wrote in the year 1284, declares that the Moguls, since the fabulous descent of Batou, had not attacked either the Franks or Greeks; and of this he is a competent witness. Hayton, likewise, the Armenian prince, celebrates their friendship for himself and his nation.

⁵⁹ Pachymer gives a splendid character of Cazan Khan, the rival of Cyrus and Alexander (l. xii. c. 1). In the conclusion of his history (l. xiii. c. 36), he ascribes much from the arrival of 30,000 Tochars, or Tartars, who were ordered by the successor of Cazan [Ghazan Mahmud, A. D. 1295-1304; his successor was Ujaitu, A. D. 1304-1316] to restrain the Turks of Bithynia, A. D. 1308.

⁶⁰ The origin of the Ottoman dynasty is illustrated by the critical learning of MM. de Guignes (Hist. des Huns, tom. iv. p. 329-337), and d'Anville (Empire Turc, p. 14-22), two inhabitants of Paris, from whom the Orientals may learn the history and geography of their own country.

⁶¹ [Jalal ad-Din Mangbarti, A. O. 1220-1231.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

passes was neglected, and the hardy mountaineers degenerated into a trembling crowd of peasants without spirit or discipline. It was on the twenty-seventh of July, in the year twelve hundred and ninety-nine of the Christian æra, that Othman first invaded the territory of Nicomedia⁶⁶; and the singular accuracy of the date seems to disclose some foresight of the rapid and destructive growth of the monster. The annals of the twenty-seven years of his reign would exhibit a repetition of the same inroads; and his hereditary troops were multiplied in each campaign by the accession of captives and volunteers. Instead of retreating to the hills, he maintained the most useful and defensible posts; fortified the towns and castles which he had first pillaged; and renounced the pastoral life for the baths and palaces of his infant capitals. But it was not till Othman was oppressed by age and infirmities that he received the welcome news of the conquest of Prusa, which had been surrendered by famine or treachery to the arms of his son Orchan. The glory of Othman is chiefly founded on that of his descendants; but the Turks have transcribed or composed a royal testament of his last counsels of justice and moderation.⁶⁶

[A.D. 1299]

Reign of
Orchan

A.D. 1299-1309

From the conquest of Prusa we may date the true æra of the Ottoman empire. The lives and possessions of the Christian subjects were redeemed by a tribute or ransom of thirty thousand crowns of gold; and the city, by the labours of Orchan, assumed the aspect of a Mahometan capital; Prusa was decorated with a mosque, a college, and an hospital of royal foundation; the Seljukian coin was changed for the name and

⁶⁶ See Pachymer, l. x. c. 25, 26; l. xiii. c. 33, 34, 36; and concerning the guard of the mountains, l. i. c. 3-6; Nicephorus Gregoras, l. vii. c. 1; and the first book of Laonicus Chalcondyles, the Athenian.

⁶⁷ I am ignorant whether the Turks have any writers older than Mahomet II., nor can I reach beyond a meagre chronicle (*Annales Turcici ad annum 1550*), translated by John Gaudier, and published by Leunclavius (*ad calcem Laonic. Chalcond. p. 311-350*), with copious pandects, or commentaries. The *History of the Growth and Decay (A.D. 1300-1683)* of the Othman empire was translated into English from the Latin Ms. of Demetrius Cantemir, Prince of Moldavia (London, 1734, in folio). The author is guilty of strange blunders in Oriental History; but he was conversant with the language, the annals, and institutions of the Turks. Cantemir partly draws his materials from the *Synopsis of Saadi Effendi of Larissa*, dedicated in the year 1696 to sultan Mustapha, and a valuable abridgment of the original historians. In one of the *Ramblers*, Dr. Johnson praises Knolles (*a General History of the Turks to the present year*, London, 1603), as the first of historians, unhappy only in the choice of his subject. Yet I much doubt whether a partial and verbose compilation from Latin writers, thirteen hundred folio pages of speeches and battles, can either instruct or amuse an enlightened age, which requires from the historian some tincture of philosophy and criticism. [See Appendix i.]

impression of the new dynasty; and the most skilful professors of human and divine knowledge attracted the Persian and Arabian students from the ancient schools of Oriental learning. The office of vizir was instituted for Aladin, the brother of Orchan; and a different habit distinguished the citizens from the peasants, the Moslems from the infidels. All the troops of Othman had consisted of loose squadrons of Turkman cavalry, who served without pay and fought without discipline; but a regular body of infantry was first established and trained by the prudence of his son.⁶⁷ A great number of volunteers was enrolled with a small stipend, but with the permission of living at home, unless they were summoned to the field; their rude manners and seditious temper disposed Orchan to educate his young captives as his soldiers and those of the prophet; but the Turkish peasants were still allowed to mount on horseback and follow his standard, with the appellation and the hopes of freemen. By these arts he formed an army of twenty-five thousand Moslems; a train of battering engines was framed for the use of sieges; and the first successful experiment was made on the cities of Nice and Nicomedia. Orchan granted a safe-conduct to all who were desirous of departing with their families and effects; but the widows of the slain were given in marriage to the conquerors; and the sacrilegious plunder, the books, the vases, and the images were sold or ransomed at Constantinople. The emperor, Andronicus the Younger, was vanquished and wounded by the son of Othman;⁶⁸ he subdued

His conquest
of Bithynia,
A.D. 1304-1309

[Battle of
Philocrone,
A.D. 1330]

⁶⁷ (Alâ ad-Din was a political thinker. Having resigned all claim to a share in Othman's inheritance he spent some years in retirement and thought, and then gave to his brother the result of his meditations. Orchan made him vizir and followed his suggestions. The chief reforms introduced by Alâ ad-Din were three. (1) The regulation of Turkish dress is mentioned in the text. (2) The introduction of an independent Ottoman coinage. Hitherto the Seljuk money circulated. The *Musturâd ad-Din* (transl. Bratutti, i. p. 40) states that the first Ottoman coins, gold and silver, with Orchan's name, were issued in 1308. There are no dates on Orchan's coins. (3) The institution of the Janissaries (Yani Chari, "new soldiers"), probably in A.D. 1330 (cp. Sad ad-Din, *ib.* p. 42). This used to be wrongly ascribed to Murad I. (so Marsigli, *Stato militare*, i. 67, and Gibbon). See Hammer, *Gesch. des osmanischen Reiches*, i. 97-99. Alâ ad-Din clearly grasped the fact that an establishment of well-trained infantry was indispensable. A regular body of cavalry was also established at the same time. The regular troops received pay; whereas the great general levy of cavalry performed military service for their fiefs.]

⁶⁸ [The *Musturâd ad-Din*, though he relates the battle and heroic flight of the younger Andronicus (l. ii. c. 6-8), dissembles, by his silence, the loss of Prusa, Nice and Nicomedia, which are fairly confessed by Nicephorus Gregoras (l. viii. 15; ix. 9, 10, 11). It appears that Nice was taken by Orchan in 1330, and Nicomedia in 1331, which are somewhat different from the Turkish dates. [Capture of Nicomedia, A.D. 1309; battle of Philocrone, A.D. 1330; capture of Nice, A.D. 1330; capture of Katal (the ancient Mysia, including Pergamus) after A.D. 1340. See Hammer, *Gesch. des osmanischen Reiches in Europa*, i. 102-117.]

[Reduction of
Bithynia
completed
A.D. 1307]

Division of
Anatolia
among the
Turkish
emirs, A.D.
1300, &c.

Loss of the
Asiatic pro-
vinces, A.D.
1312, &c.

the whole province or kingdom of Bithynia, as far as the shores of the Bosphorus and Hellespont; and the Christians confessed the justice and clemency of a reign which claimed the voluntary attachment of the Turks of Asia. Yet Orchan was content with the modest title of emir; and in the list of his competitors, the princes of Roum or Anatolia,⁶⁹ his military forces were surpassed by the emirs of Ghermian and Caramania, each of whom could bring into the field an army of forty thousand men. Their dominions were situate in the heart of the Seljukian kingdom; but the holy warriors, though of inferior note, who formed new principalities on the Greek empire, are more conspicuous in the light of history. The maritime country from the Propontis to the Mæander and the isle of Rhodes, so long threatened and so often pillaged, was finally lost about the thirtieth year of Andronicus the Elder.⁷⁰ Two Turkish chieftains, Sarukhan and Aidin, left their names to their conquests and their conquests to their posterity. The captivity or ruin of the seven churches of Asia was consummated; and the barbarous lords of Ionia and Lydia still trample on the monuments of classic and Christian antiquity. In the loss of Ephesus, the Christians deplored the fall of the first angel, the extinction of the first candlestick of the Revelations;⁷¹ the desolation is complete; and the temple of Diana or the church of Mary will equally elude the search of the curious traveller. The circus and three stately theatres of Laodicea are

⁶⁹ The partition of the Turkish emirs is extracted from two contemporaries, the Greek Nicephorus Gregoras (l. vii. 1), and the Arabian Marakeschi (de Guignes, tom. ii. P. ii. p. 76, 77). See likewise the first book of Laonicus Chalcondyles.

⁷⁰ Pachymer, l. xiii. c. 13. [The western coast of Asia Minor south of Karāsi (Mysia) was not incorporated in the Ottoman realm till the reign of Bayezid I. The most powerful rival of the Ottomans in Asia, at this time, was the state of Caramania (which reached from the Sangarius to the Pamphylian sea, and included Galatia, Eastern Phrygia, Lycaonia, Pisidia and Pamphylia). Murad took Angora (Ancyra) in A.D. 1360, and in 1386 he inflicted a demoralising defeat on the Caramanian Sultan in the battle of Iconium. In 1391 the prince of Sarūkhān (the regions of the Hermus, including Sardis and Magnesia) and the prince of Aidin (south of Sarūkhān, reaching to south of the Mæander) submitted, and likewise the lord of Mentesia (Caria, including Miletus). At the same time Bayezid subdued Kermiyan (Western Phrygia) and Tekka (Lycia), and the western part of Caramania. In 1393 the principality of Kastamuntyā (in Paphlagonia, including Sinope) was conquered; and with the exception of the eastern parts of Caramania all the little Seljuk states of Anatolia were in the bands of the Ottomans. Cp. the table in S. Lane-Poole's *Mohammadan Dynasties*, p. 134. See below p. 34.]

⁷¹ See the *Travels of Wheeler and Spon*, of *Pococke and Chandler*, and more particularly *Smith's Survey of the Seven Churches of Asia*, p. 205-276. The more pious antiquaries labour to reconcile the promises and threats of the author of the Revelations with the *present* state of the seven cities. Perhaps it would be more prudent to confine his predictions to the characters and events of his own times. [For Ephesus and the temple of Diana see *Wood's Discoveries at Ephesus*, 1877.]

now peopled with wolves and foxes; Sardes is reduced to a miserable village; the God of Mahomet, without a rival or a son, is invoked in the mosques of Thyatira and Pergamus; and the populousness of Smyrna is supported by the foreign trade of the Franks and Armenians. Philadelphia alone has been saved by prophecy, or courage. At a distance from the sea, forgotten by the emperors, encompassed on all sides by the Turks, her valiant citizens defended their religion and freedom above four-score years, and at length capitulated with the proudest of the Ottomans. Among the Greek colonies and churches of Asia, Philadelphia is still erect, a column in a scene of ruins: a pleasing example that the paths of honour and safety may sometimes be the same.⁷³ The servitude of Rhodes was delayed above two centuries by the establishment of the knights of St. John of Jerusalem.⁷⁴ Under the discipline of the order that island emerged into fame and opulence; the noble and warlike monks were renowned by land and sea; and the bulwark of Christendom provoked and repelled the arms of the Turks and Saracens.

The knights of Rhodes, A.D. 1310, 15th Aug. A.D. 1523, 1st Jan.

The Greeks, by their intestine divisions, were the authors of their final ruin.⁷⁵ During the civil wars of the elder and younger Andronicus, the son of Othman achieved, almost without resistance, the conquest of Bithynia; and the same disorders encouraged the Turkish emirs of Lydia and Ionia to build a fleet, and to pillage the adjacent islands and the sea-coast of Europe. In the defence of his life and honour, Cantacuzene was tempted to prevent or imitate his adversaries by calling to his aid the public enemies of his religion and country. Amir, the son of Aidin, concealed under a Turkish garb the humanity and politeness of a Greek; he was united

First passage of the Turks into Europe, A.D. 1341-1347

(Omar 7)

⁷³[The date of the Ottoman capture of Philadelphia is uncertain (cp. Finlay, *History of Greece*, iii., p. 469, note). Probably A.D. 1391.]

⁷⁴Consult the fourth book of the *Histoire de l'Ordre de Malthe*, par l'Abbé de Vertot. That pleasing writer betrays his ignorance in supposing that Othman, a freebooter of the Bithynian hills, could besiege Rhodes by sea and land.

⁷⁵[For the success of the Ottomans, "the last example of the conquest of a numerous Christian population by a small number of Musulman invaders, and of the colonisation of civilised countries by a race ruder than the native population," Finlay assigns three particular causes (*History of Greece*, iii. p. 475). "1. The superiority of the Ottoman tribe over all contemporary nations in religious convictions and in moral and military conduct. 2. The number of different races that composed the population of the country between the Adriatic and the Black Sea, the Danube and the Aegean. 3. The depopulation of the Greek empire, the degraded state of its judicial and civil administration, and the demoralisation of the Hellenic race."]

with the great domestic by mutual esteem and reciprocal services; and their friendship is compared, in the vain rhetoric of the times, to the perfect union of Orestes and Pylades.⁷⁸ On the report of the danger of his friend, who was persecuted by an ungrateful court, the prince of Ionia assembled at Smyrna a fleet of three hundred vessels, with an army of twenty-nine thousand men; sailed in the depth of winter, and cast anchor at the mouth of the Hebrus. From thence, with a chosen band of two thousand Turks, he marched along the banks of the river, and rescued the empress, who was besieged in Demotica by the wild Bulgarians. At that disastrous moment the life or death of his beloved Cantacuzene was concealed by his flight into Servia; but the grateful Irene, impatient to behold her deliverer, invited him to enter the city, and accompanied her message with a present of rich apparel and an hundred horses. By a peculiar strain of delicacy the gentle barbarian refused, in the absence of an unfortunate friend, to visit his wife or to taste the luxuries of the palace; sustained in his tent the rigour of the winter; and rejected the hospitable gift, that he might share the hardships of two thousand companions, all as deserving as himself of that honour and distinction. Necessity and revenge might justify his predatory excursions by sea and land; he left nine thousand five hundred men for the guard of his fleet; and persevered in the fruitless search of Cantacuzene, till his embarkation was hastened by a fictitious letter, the severity of the season, the clamours of his independent troops, and the weight of his spoil and captives. In the prosecution of the civil war, the prince of Ionia twice returned to Europe; joined his arms with those of the emperor; besieged Thessalonica, and threatened Constantinople. Calumny might affix some reproach on his imperfect aid, his hasty departure, and a bribe of ten thousand crowns, which he accepted from the Byzantine court; but his friend was satisfied; and the conduct of Amir is excused by the more sacred duty of defending against the Latins his hereditary dominions. The maritime power of the Turks had united the pope, the king of Cyprus, the republic of Venice, and the order of St. John, in a laudable crusade; their galleys invaded the coast of Ionia;

⁷⁸ Nicophorus Oregoras has expatiated with pleasure on this amiable character (l. xii. 7; xiii. 4, 10; xiv. 1, 9; xvi. 6). Cantacuzene speaks with honour and esteem of his ally (l. iii. c. 56, 57, 63, 64, 66-68, 86, 89, 95, 96); but he seems ignorant of his own sentimental passion for the Turk, and indirectly denies the possibility of such unnatural friendship (l. iv. c. 40).

and Amir was slain with an arrow, in the attempt to wrest from the Rhodian knights the citadel of Smyrna.⁷⁶ Before his death, he generously recommended another ally of his own nation, not more sincere or zealous than himself, but more able to afford a prompt and powerful succour, by his situation along the Propontis and in the front of Constantinople. By the prospect of a more advantageous treaty, the Turkish prince of Bithynia was detached from his engagements with Anne of Savoy; and the pride of Orchan dictated the most solemn protestations that, if he could obtain the daughter of Cantacuzene, he would invariably fulfil the duties of a subject and a son. Parental tenderness was silenced by the voice of ambition; the Greek clergy connived at the marriage of a Christian princess with a sectary of Mahomet; and the father of Theodora describes, with shameful satisfaction, the dishonour of the purple.⁷⁷ A body of Turkish cavalry attended the ambassadors, who disembarked from thirty vessels before his camp of Selybria. A stately pavilion was erected, in which the empress Irene passed the night with her daughters. In the morning, Theodora ascended a throne, which was surrounded with curtains of silk and gold; the troops were under arms; but the emperor alone was on horseback. At a signal the curtains were suddenly withdrawn, to disclose the bride, or the victim, encircled by kneeling eunuchs and hymenæal torches: the sound of flutes and trumpets proclaimed the joyful event; and her pretended happiness was the theme of the nuptial song, which was chaunted by such poets as the age could produce. Without the rites of the church, Theodora was delivered to her barbarous lord; but it had been stipulated that she should preserve her religion in the harem of Bursa; and her father celebrates her charity and devotion in this ambiguous situation. After his peaceful establishment on the throne of Constantinople, the Greek emperor visited his Turkish ally, who, with four sons, by various wives, expected him at Scutari, on the Asiatic shore. The two princes partook, with seeming cordiality, of the pleasures of the banquet and the chase; and Theodora was permitted to repass the

Marriage of
Orchan with a
Greek
princess
[A.D. 1346]

⁷⁶ After the conquest of Smyrna by the Latins, the defence of this fortress was imposed by Pope Gregory XI. on the Knights of Rhodes (see Vertot, l. v.).

⁷⁷ See Cantacuzenus, l. iii. c. 95. Nicephoras Gregoras, who, for the light of Mount Thabor, brands the emperor with the names of tyrant and Herod, excuses, rather than blames, this Turkish marriage, and alleges the passion and power of Orchan, ἰσχυρότατος, καὶ τῇ δυνάμει τοῦς κατ' αὐτὸν ἤδη Περσικοῦς (*Turkish*) ὑπερβαρῶν Σαρδάνας (l. xv. 5). He afterwards celebrates his kingdom and armies. See his reign in Cantemir, p. 24-30.

Bosphorus, and to enjoy some days in the society of her mother. But the friendship of Orchan was subservient to his religion and interest; and in the Genoese war he joined without a blush the enemies of Cantacuzene.

Establishment of the Ottomans in Europe, A.D. 1298 (1267)

In the treaty with the empress Anne, the Ottoman prince had inserted a singular condition, that it should be lawful for him to sell his prisoners at Constantinople or transport them into Asia. A naked crowd of Christians of both sexes and every age, of priests and monks, of matrons and virgins, was exposed in the public market; the whip was frequently used to quicken the charity of redemption; and the indigent Greeks deplored the fate of their brethren, who were led away to the worst evils of temporal and spiritual bondage.⁷⁸ Cantacuzene was reduced to subscribe the same terms; and their execution must have been still more pernicious to the empire; a body of ten thousand Turks had been detached to the assistance of the empress Anne; but the entire forces of Orchan were exerted in the service of his father. Yet these calamities were of a transient nature; as soon as the storm had passed away, the fugitives might return to their habitations; and at the conclusion of the civil and foreign wars Europe was completely evacuated by the Moslems of Asia. It was in his last quarrel with his pupil that Cantacuzene inflicted the deep and deadly wound, which could never be healed by his successors, and which is poorly expiated by his theological dialogues against the prophet Mahomet. Ignorant of their own history, the modern Turks confound their first and their final passage of the Hellespont,⁷⁹ and describe the son of Orchan as a nocturnal robber, who, with eighty companions, explores by stratagem an hostile and unknown shore. Soliman, at the head of ten thousand horse, was transported in the vessels, and entertained as the friend, of the Greek emperor. In the civil wars of Roumania, he performed some service and perpetrated more mischief; but the Chersonesus was insensibly filled

⁷⁸ The most lively and concise picture of this captivity may be found in the history of Ducas (c. 8), who fairly transcribes what Cantacuzene confesses with a guilty blush!

⁷⁹ In this passage, and the first conquests in Europe, Cantemir (p. 27, &c.) gives a miserable idea of his Turkish guides; nor am I much better satisfied with Chalcondyles (l. i. p. 12, &c. [p. 25 ed. Bonn]). They forget to consult the most authentic record, the ivth book of Cantacuzene. I likewise regret the last books, which are still manuscript, of Nicephorus Gregoras. [They have been since published. See above vol. vi. p. 519. The Ottomans captured the little fortress of Tzympe, near Gallipoli, in 1356, and Gallipoli itself in 1358. For Tzympe, cp. Cantacuzenus, iv. 33; vol. iii. p. 242 ed. Bonn.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

sons, who followed at his summons the court and camp of the Ottoman prince. He marched against the Slavonian nations between the Danube and the Adriatic, the Bulgarians, Servians, Bosnians, and Albanians; and these warlike tribes who had so often insulted the majesty of the empire, were repeatedly broken by his destructive inroads. Their countries did not abound either in gold or silver; nor were their rustic hamlets and townships enriched by commerce or decorated by the arts of luxury. But the natives of the soil have been distinguished in every age by their hardiness of mind and body; and they were converted by a prudent institution into the firmest and most faithful supporters of the Ottoman greatness.⁸³ The vizir of Amurath reminded his sovereign that, according to the Mahometan law, he was entitled to a fifth part of the spoil and captives; and that the duty might easily be levied, if vigilant officers were stationed at Gallipoli, to watch the passage, and to select for his use the stoutest and most beautiful of the Christian youth. The advice was followed; the edict was proclaimed; many thousands of the European captives were educated in religion and arms; and the new militia was consecrated and named by a celebrated dervish. Standing in the front of their ranks, he stretched the sleeve of his gown over the head of the foremost soldier, and his blessing was delivered in these words: "Let them be called Janizaries (*Yengi cheri*, or new soldiers); may their countenance be ever bright! their hand victorious! their sword keen! may their spear always hang over the heads of their enemies; and, wheresoever they go, may they return with a *white face*!"⁸⁴ Such was the origin of these haughty troops, the terror of the nations, and sometimes of the sultans themselves. Their valour has declined, their discipline is relaxed, and their tumultuary array is incapable of contending with the order and weapons of modern tactics;⁸⁵ but at the time of their institution, they possessed a decisive superiority in war; since a regular body of infantry, in constant exercise and pay, was not maintained by any of the princes of Christendom. The Janizaries fought with the zeal of proselytes against their *idolatrous* countrymen; and in the battle of Cossova the league and

The Janizaries
(*Yeni Omeri*)

[A.D. 1299]

⁸³ See Cantemir, p. 37-41, with his own large and curious annotations. [The institution of the Janissaries is here wrongly ascribed to Murad; it belongs to the reign of Orchan. See above p. 25 note 67.]

⁸⁴ *White* and *black face* are common and proverbial expressions of praise and reproach in the Turkish language. *Hic niger est, hunc tu Romane caveto*, was likewise a Latin sentence.

⁸⁵ [They were abolished (massacred) by the sultan Mahmūd II. in 1826.]

independence of the Slavonian tribes was finally crushed.⁸⁵ As the conqueror walked over the field, he observed that the greatest part of the slain consisted of beardless youths; and listened to

The reign of
Bajazet I.
Ilderim,
A.D. 1389-1403,
9th March

[Crus =
Prusa]

⁸⁵ [Lazarus, the Kral of Servia, won important successes over Ottoman invaders of Bosnia in 1387. This emboldened the other Slavs of the Balkan peninsula. Sushman of Bulgaria revolted, and this led to the direct incorporation of Bulgaria in the Ottoman empire. The Servian Kral, who was the leader of the Slavs in their struggle to maintain their independence, took the field at the head of a federate army in spring 1389. He was supported by the King of Bosnia, the princes of Croatia, Albania and Chlum (afterwards Herzegovina) and Walachia; and there were some Bulgarians (who had escaped the wreck of their country) and Hungarian auxiliaries in his army. The battle was fought, 15th June, on the Kosovo-polje or Amselfeld (blackbird field) on the banks of the Lab, west of Pristina. The name of the Servian who stabbed Murad was Milosh Obilić (or Kobilović). See the Turkish historian Nesri's account of the campaign (Hungarian translation by Thury in *Türk történetirök*, i. p. 32 197.). For the general history of the Slavonic struggles against the Turks see Rački's articles in the *Rad* (South Slavonic Journal), vols. ii. iii. and iv.; on the battle of Kosovo, iii. p. 91.]

⁸⁶ See the life and death of Morad, or Amurath I., in Cantemir (p. 33-45), the 1st book of Chalcondyles, and the *Annales Turcici* of Leunclavius. According to another story, the sultan was stabbed by a Croat in his tent: and this accident was alleged to Busbequius (Epist. i. p. 98), as an excuse for the unworthy precaution of pinioning, as it were, between two attendants, an ambassador's arms when he is introduced to the royal presence.

⁸⁷ The reign of Bajazet I. or Ilderim Bayazid, is contained in Cantemir (p. 46), the 1st book of Chalcondyles, and the *Annales Turcici*. The surname of Ilderim, or lightning, is an example that the conquerors and poets of every age have felt the truth of a system which derives the sublime from the principle of terror.

Europe and Asia. From Angora to Amasia and the northern regions of Anatolia were reduced to him; he stripped of their hereditary possessions his brother, of Gherman and Caramania, of Aidin and Sarakhan; and after the conquest of Iconium the ancient kingdom of the Seljuks again revived in the Ottoman dynasty. Nor were the conquests of Bajazet less rapid or important in Europe. No sooner had he imposed a regular form of servitude on the Serbs and Bulgarians, than he passed the Danube to seek new conquests and new subjects in the heart of Moldavia.⁸⁸ Whatever had adhered to the Greek empire in Thrace, Macedonia, and Thessaly, acknowledged a Turkish master. An obstinate bishop led him through the gates of Thermopylæ into Greece; and we may observe, as a singular fact, that the widow of a Spanish chief, who possessed the ancient seat of the oracle of Delphi, deserved his favour by the sacrifice of a beautiful daughter. The Turkish communication between Europe and Asia had been dangerous and doubtful, till he stationed at Gallipoli a fleet of galleys, to command the Hellespont and intercept the Latin succours of Constantinople. While the monarch indulged his passions in a boundless range of injustice and cruelty, he imposed on his soldiers the most rigid laws of modesty and abstinence; and the harvest was peaceably reaped and sold within the precincts of his camp.⁸⁹ Provoked by the loose and corrupt administration of justice, he collected, in a house, the judges and lawyers of his dominions, who expected that in a few moments the fire would be kindled to reduce them to ashes. His ministers trembled in silence; but an Æthiopian buffoon presumed to insinuate the true cause of the evil; and future venality was left without excuse by annexing an adequate salary to the office of Cadhi.⁹⁰ The humble title of Emir was no longer suitable to the Ottoman greatness; and Bajazet condescended to accept a patent of Sultan from

⁸⁸ Cantemir, who celebrates the victories of the great Stephen over the Turks (p. 47), had composed the ancient and modern state of his principality of Moldavia, which has been long promised, and is still unpublished.

⁸⁹ [The reign of Bayezid [Bâyezid] was marked by a general corruption of morals and manners, propagated by the example of the court—especially of Bayezid himself and his grand vizir, Ali Pasha. See Zinkeisen. *Gesch. des ott. Reiches*, i. p. 384-6.]

⁹⁰ Leunclav. *Annal. Turcici*, p. 318, 319. The venality of the cadhis has long been an object of scandal and satire; and, if we distrust the observations of our travellers, we may consult the feeling of the Turks themselves (d'Herbelot, *Bibliot. Orientale*, p. 216, 217, 229, 230).

the caliphs who served in Egypt under the yoke of the Mamelukes; a last and frivolous homage that was yielded by force of opinion, by the Turkish conquerors to the house of Abbas and the successors of the Arabian prophet. The ambition of the sultan was inflamed by the obligation of deserving this august title; and he turned his arms against the kingdom of Hungary, the perpetual theatre of the Turkish victories and defeats. Sigismond, the Hungarian king, was the son and brother of the emperors of the West; his cause was that of Europe and the church; and, on the report of his danger, the bravest knights of France and Germany were eager to march under his standard and that of the cross. In the battle of Nicopolis, Bajazet defeated a confederate army of an hundred thousand Christians, who had proudly boasted that, if the sky should fall, they could uphold it on their lances. The far greater part were slain or driven into the Danube; and Sigismond, escaping to Constantinople by the river and the Black Sea, returned after a long circuit to his exhausted kingdom.⁹² In the pride of victory, Bajazet threatened that he would besiege Buda; that he would subdue the adjacent countries of Germany and Italy; and that he would feed his horse with a bushel of oats on the altar of St. Peter at Rome. His progress was checked, not by the miraculous interposition of the apostle, not by a crusade of the Christian powers, but by a long and painful fit of the gout. The disorders of the moral, are sometimes corrected by those of the h i l, world; and an ætlimonious humour falling on a single fibre of one man may prevent or suspend the misery of nations.

Battle of
Nicopolis,
A. D. 1396, 29th
Sept.

Such is the general idea of the Hungarian war; but the disastrous adventure of the French has procured us some

Crusade and
captivity of
the French
princes, A. D.
1206-1208

⁹² The fact, which is attested by the Arabic history of Ben Schounah (Ibn-Batuta), a contemporary Syrian (de Guignes, Hist. des Huns tom. iv. p. 336), destroys the testimony of Saad Effendi and Cantemir (p. 14, 15), of the election of Ottoman to the dignity of Sultan.

⁹³ See the Decades Rerum Hungaricarum (Dec. iii. l. ii. p. 379) of Bonfinius, an Italian, who, in the xvth century, was invited into Hungary to compose an eloquent history of that kingdom. Yet, if it be extant and accessible, I should give the preference to some homely chronicle of the time and country. [There is an account of the battle by John Schiltberger of Munich (who was made prisoner), in his story of his Captivity and Travels, 1394-1427, which has been translated into English by J. G. Taylor, 1879 (Hakluyt Society). Mirtschea the Great, prince of Walachia, was also engaged at Nicopolis, as the ally of the Hungarians; but seeing that the battle was hopeless, he drew off his forces in good order. He was followed by a Turkish force to Walachia, and defeated it near Gassava. See the confusion in the Turkish historians on the Nicopolis campaign, see Tilly, Türk történetének, i. p. 50 note.]

memorials which illustrate the victory and character of Bajazet.⁹³ The duke of Burgundy, sovereign of Flanders, and uncle of Charles the Sixth, yielded to the ardour of his son, John count of Nevers; and the fearless youth was accompanied by four princes, his cousins, and those of the French monarchy. Their inexperience was guided by the Sire de Coucy, one of the best and oldest captains of Christendom;⁹⁴ but the constable, admiral, and marshal of France⁹⁵ commanded an army which did not exceed the number of a thousand knights and squires. These splendid names were the source of presumption and the bane of discipline. So many might seem to command that none were willing to obey; their national spirit despised both their enemies and their allies; and in the persuasion that Bajazet would fly or must fall, they began to compute how soon they should visit Constantinople, and deliver the holy sepulchre. When their scouts announced the approach of the Turks,⁹⁶ the gay and thoughtless youths were at table, already heated with wine; they instantly clasped their armour, mounted their horses, rode full speed to the vanguard, and resented as an affront the advice of Sigismond, which would have deprived them of the right and honour of the foremost attack. The battle of Nicopolis would not have been lost, if the French would have obeyed the prudence of the Hungarians; but it might have been gloriously won, had the Hungarians

⁹³ I should not complain of the labour of this work, if my materials were always derived from such books as the Chronicle of honest Froissard (vol. iv. c. 67, 69, 72, 74, 79-83, 85, 87, 89), who read little, inquired much, and believed all. The original Mémoires of the Maréchal de Boucicault (Partie i. c. 29-28) add some facts, but they are dry and deficient, if compared with the pleasant garrulity of Froissard. [Very important is the Chronique du religieux de Saint Denys, published in a French translation under the title Histoire de Charles VI., roy de France, in 1663. The original Latin was first published by Bellaguet (in 6 vols.) in 1839-52. There is a study on the work by H. Delaborde, La vraie Chronique du Religieux de Saint Denis, 1890.]

⁹⁴ An accurate Memoir on the life of Enguerrand VII. Sire de Coucy, has been given by the Baron de Zurlauben (Hist. de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xiii.). His rank and possessions were equally considerable in France and England; and, in 1375, he led an army of adventurers into Switzerland, to recover a large patrimony which he claimed in right of his grandmother, the daughter of the emperor Albert I. of Austria (Sinner, Voyage dans la Suisse Occidentale, tom. i. p. 118-124).

⁹⁵ That military office, so respectable at present, was still more conspicuous when it was divided between two persons (Daniel, Hist. de la Milice Française, tom. ii. p. 5). One of these, the marshal of the crusade, was the famous Boucicault, who afterwards defended Constantinople, governed Genoa, invaded the coast of Asia, and died in the field of Azincour.

⁹⁶ [Bayezid was engaged in besieging Constantinople when he received news that the Franks were besieging Nicopolis.]

imitated the valour of the French. They dispersed the first line, consisting of the troops of Asia; forced a rampart of stakes, which had been planted against the cavalry; broke, after a bloody conflict, the Janizaries themselves; and were at length overwhelmed by the numerous squadrons⁹⁷ that issued from the woods, and charged on all sides this handful of intrepid warriors. In the speed and secrecy of his march, in the order and evolutions of the battle, his enemies felt and admired the military talents of Bajazet. They accuse his cruelty in the use of victory. After reserving the count of Nevers, and four-and-twenty lords, whose birth and riches were attested by his Latin interpreters, the remainder of the French captives, who had survived the slaughter of the day, were led before his throne: and, as they refused to abjure their faith, were successively beheaded in his presence. The sultan was exasperated by the loss of his bravest Janizaries; and if it be true that, on the eve of the engagement, the French had massacred their Turkish prisoners,⁹⁸ they might impute to themselves the consequences of a just retaliation. A knight, whose life had been spared, was permitted to return to Paris, that he might relate the deplorable tale and solicit the ransom of the noble captives. In the meanwhile the count of Nevers, with the princes and barons of France, were dragged along in the marches of the Turkish camp, exposed as a grateful trophy to the Moslems of Europe and Asia, and strictly confined at Bursa, as often as Bajazet resided in his capital. The sultan was pressed each day to expiate with their blood the blood of his martyrs; but he had pronounced that they should live, and either for mercy or destruction his word was irrevocable. He was assured of their value and importance by the return of the messenger, and the gifts and impressions of the kings of France and of Cyprus. Lusignan presented him with a gold salt-cellar of curious workmanship and of the price of ten thousand ducats; and Charles the Sixth dispatched by the way of Hungary a cast of Norwegian hawthorn, and six horse-loads of scarlet cloth, of fine linen of Arras, and of Arras tapestry, representing the battles of the great Alexander. After much delay, the effect of distance rather than of art, Bajazet agreed to accept a ransom of two

⁹⁷ [The Turkish army, which amounted altogether to about 100,000.]
⁹⁸ [The fact, the Abbé de Vertot quotes the Hist. Anonyme de St. Denis (see above note 93), l. xvi. c. 10, 11 (Ordre de Malthe, tom. ii. p. 310).]

hundred thousand ducats for the count of Nevers and the surviving princes and barons; the marshal Boucicault, a famous warrior, was of the number of the fortunate; but the marshal of France had been slain in the battle; and the constable, the Sire de Coucy, died in the prison of Bursa. The heavy demand, which was doubled by incidental costs, fell chiefly on the duke of Burgundy, or rather on his Flemish subjects, who were bound by the feudal laws to contribute for the knighthood and captivity of the eldest son of their lord. For the faithful discharge of the debt, some merchants of Ghent gave security to the amount of five times the sum: a lesson to those warlike times that commerce and credit are the lights of the society of nations. It had been stipulated in the treaty that the French captives should swear never to bear arms against the person of their conqueror; but the onerous restraint was abolished by Bajazet himself. "I despise," said he to the heir of Burgundy, "thy oaths and thy arms. Thou art young, and mayest be ambitious of effacing the disgrace or misfortune of thy first chivalry. Assemble thy powers, proclaim thy design, and be assured that Bajazet will rejoice to meet thee a second time in a field of battle." Before their departure, they were indulged in the freedom and hospitality of the court of Bursa. The French princes admired the magnificence of the Ottoman, whose hunting and hawking equipage was composed of seven thousand huntsmen, and seven thousand falconers.⁹⁹ In their presence, and at his command, the belly of one of his chamberlains was cut open, on a complaint against him for drinking the goat's milk of a poor woman. The strangers were astonished by this act of justice; but it was the justice of a sultan who disdains to balance the weight of evidence or to measure the degrees of guilt.

After his enfranchisement from an oppressive guardian, John Palaeologus remained thirty-six years the helpless and, as it should seem, the careless spectator of the public ruin.¹⁰⁰ Love, or rather

⁹⁹ Sherafeddin Ali (*Hist. de Timour Bec*, l. v. c. 13) allows Bajazet a round number of 12,000 officers and servants of the chase. A part of his spoils was afterwards displayed in a hunting-match of Timour: 1. Hounds with satin housings; 2. Leopards with collars set with jewels; 3. Grecian greyhounds; and, 4. dogs from Europe, as strong as African lions (*idem*, l. vi. c. 15). Bajazet was particularly fond of flying his hawks at cranes (*Chalcondyles*, l. ii. p. 35 [p. 67 ed. Bonn]).

¹⁰⁰ For the reigns of John Palaeologus and his son Manuel, from 1354 to 1402, see *Ducas*, a. 9-15, *Placanus*, l. l. c. 26-31, and the 1st and 2d books of *Chalcondyles*, whose proper subject is drowned in a sea of episodes.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the passions of John Palæologus survived his reason and his strength ; he deprived his favourite and heir of a blooming princess of Trebizond ; and, while the feeble emperor laboured to consummate his nuptials, Manuel, with an hundred of the noblest Greeks, was sent on a peremptory summons to the Ottoman *porte*. They served with honour in the wars of Bajazet ; but a plan of fortifying Constantinople excited his jealousy ; he threatened their lives ; the new works were instantly demolished ; and we shall bestow a praise, perhaps above the merit of Palæologus, if we impute this last humiliation as the cause of his death.

The earliest intelligence of that event was communicated to Manuel, who escaped with speed and secrecy from the palace of Bursa to the Byzantine throne. Bajazet affected a proud indifference at the loss of this valuable pledge ; and, while he pursued his conquests in Europe and Asia, he left the emperor to struggle with his blind cousin, John of Selybria, who, in eight years of civil war, asserted his right of primogeniture. At length the ambition of the victorious sultan pointed to the conquest of Constantinople ; but he listened to the advice of his vizir, who represented that such an enterprise might unite the powers of Christendom in a second and more formidable crusade. His epistle to the emperor was conceived in these words : " By the divine clemency, our invincible scymetar has reduced to our obedience almost all Asia, with many and large countries in Europe, excepting only the city of Constantinople ; for beyond the walls thou hast nothing left. Resign that city ; stipulate thy reward ; or tremble for thyself and thy unhappy people at the consequences of a rash refusal." But his ambassadors were instructed to soften their tone, and to propose a treaty, which was subscribed with submission and gratitude. A truce of ten years was purchased by an annual tribute of thirty thousand crowns of gold ; the Greeks deplored the public toleration of the law of Mahomet ; and Bajazet enjoyed the glory of establishing a Turkish cadhi and founding a royal mosque in the metropolis of the Eastern church.¹⁰³ Yet this truce was soon violated by the restless sultan. In the cause of the prince of Selybria, the lawful emperor,¹⁰⁴ an army of Ottomans again threatened Constantinople ; and the distress of Manuel implored the protection

¹⁰³ Cantemir, p. 50-53. Of the Greeks, Ducas alone (c. 13, 15) acknowledges the Turkish cadhi at Constantinople. Yet even Ducas dissembles the mosque.

¹⁰⁴ [The Sultan had forced John to come forward as pretender to the throne, extorting a secret promise that he would hand over Constantinople to himself.]

The emperor
Manuel, A.D.
1294-1328, 28th
July

Distress of
Constantino-
ple, A.D.
1393-1402

of the king of France. His plaintive embassy obtained much pity, and some relief; and the conduct of the succour was entrusted to the marshal Boucicault,¹⁰⁶ whose religious chivalry was inflamed by the desire of revenging his captivity on the infidels. He sailed with four ships of war from Aiguesmortes to the Hellespont; forced (A.D. 1399) the passage, which was guarded by seventeen Turkish galleys; landed at Constantinople a supply of six hundred men at arms and sixteen hundred archers; and reviewed them in the adjacent plain, without condescending to number or array the multitude of Greeks. By his presence, the blockade was raised both by sea and land; the flying squadrons of Bajazet were driven to a more respectful distance; and several castles in Europe and Asia were stormed by the emperor and the marshal, who fought with equal valour by each other's side. But the Ottomans soon returned with an increase of numbers; and the intrepid Boucicault, after a year's struggle, resolved to evacuate a country which could no longer afford either pay or provisions for his soldiers. The marshal offered to conduct Manuel to the French court, where he might solicit in person a supply of men and money; and advised in the meanwhile that, to extinguish all domestic discord, he should leave his blind competitor on the throne. The proposal was embraced; the prince of Selybria was introduced to the capital; and such was the public misery that the lot of the exile seemed more fortunate than that of the sovereign. Instead of applauding the success of his vassal, the Turkish sultan claimed the city as his own; and, on the refusal of the emperor John, Constantinople was more closely pressed by the calamities of war and famine. Against such an enemy prayers and resistance were alike unavailing; and the savage would have devoured his prey, if, in the fatal moment, he had not been overthrown by another savage stronger than himself. By the victory of Timour, or Tamerlane, the fall of Constantinople was delayed about fifty years; and this important though accidental service may justly introduce the life and character of the Mogul conqueror.

¹⁰⁶ Mémoires du bon Messire Jean le Maingre, dit *Boucicault*, Maréchal de France, partie i. c. 30-35.

CHAPTER LXV

*Elevation of Timour, or Tamerlane, to the Throne of Samarcand—
His Conquests in Persia, Georgia, Tartary, Russia, India, Syria,
and Anatolia—His Turkish War—Defeat and Captivity of Ba-
jazet—Death of Timour—Civil War of the Sons of Bajazet—
Restoration of the Turkish Monarchy by Mahomet the First—
Siege of Constantinople by Amurath the Second*

THE conquest and monarchy of the world was the first object of the ambition of TIMOUR. To live in the memory and esteem of future ages was the second wish of his magnanimous spirit. All the civil and military transactions of his reign were diligently recorded in the journals of his secretaries¹; the authentic narrative was revised by the persons best informed of each particular transaction; and it is believed in the empire and family of Timour that the monarch himself composed the *commentaries*² of his life and the *institutions*³ of his government.⁴

History of
Timour, or
Tamerlane

¹ These journals were communicated to Sherefeddin, or Cherefeddin Ali, a native of Yezd, who composed in the Persian language a history of Timour Beg [entitled *Zafar Nāma* = Book of Victory] which has been translated into French by M. Petis de la Croix (Paris, 1722, in 4 vols. 12mo), and has always been my faithful guide. [Translated into English under the title, *The History of Timur Beg* (in 2 vols.) 1793.] His geography and chronology are wonderfully accurate; and he may be trusted for public facts, though he servilely praises the virtue and fortune of the hero. Timour's attention to procure intelligence from his own and foreign countries may be seen in the *Institutions*, p. 215, 217, 349, 351. [There is an older *Life of Timur*, bearing the same title as that of Sheref ad-Din (Book of Victory). It was written by Nizām Shāmi, at the command of Timur himself. The work has never been published, but an edition is promised by Professor E. Denison Ross from a Ms. in the British Museum dated 1434. See note in Skrine and Ross, *The Heart of Asia*, p. 168.]

² These commentaries are yet unknown in Europe; but Mr. White gives some hope that they may be imported and translated by his friend Major Davy, who had read in the East this "minute and faithful narrative of an interesting and eventful period". [See Appendix 1.]

³ I am ignorant whether the original institution, in the Turkish or Mogul language, be still extant. The Persian version, with an English translation and most valuable index, was published (Oxford, 1783, in 4to) by the joint labours of Major Davy and Mr. White, the Arabic professor. This work has been since translated from the Persian into French (Paris, 1787) by M. Langlès, a learned Orientalist, who has added the *Life of Timour* and many curious notes.

⁴ Shaw Allum, the present Mogul, reads, values, but cannot imitate, the institutions of his great ancestor. The English translator relies on their internal evidence; but, if any suspicious should arise of fraud and fiction, they will not be dispelled

But these cares were ineffectual for the preservation of his fame, and these precious memorials in the Mogul or Persian language were concealed from the world, or at least from the knowledge of Europe. The nations which he vanquished exercised a base and impotent revenge; and ignorance has long repeated the tale of calumny,⁵ which had disfigured the birth and character, the person, and even the name, of *Tamerlane*.⁶ Yet his real merit would be enhanced, rather than debased, by the elevation of a peasant to the throne of Asia; nor can his lameness be a theme of reproach, unless he had the weakness to blush at a natural, or perhaps an honourable, infirmity.

In the eyes of the Moguls, who held the indefeasible succession of the house of Zingis, he was doubtless a rebel-subject; yet he sprang from the noble tribe of Berlass: his fifth ancestor, Casabar Nevian, had been the vizir of Zagatai, in his new realm of Transoxiana; and, in the ascent of some generations, the branch of Timour is confounded, at least by the females,⁷ with the Imperial stem.⁸ He was born forty miles to the

by Major Davy's letter. The Orientals have never cultivated the art of criticism; the patronage of a prince, less honourable perhaps, is not less lucrative than that of a bookseller; nor can it be deemed incredible that a Persian, the *real* author, should renounce the credit, to raise the value and price, of the work.

⁵The original of the tale is found in the following work, which is much esteemed for its florid elegance of style: *Ahmedis Arabshahae (Ahmed Ebn Arabshah) Vita et Res gestae Timuri. Arabice et Latine. Edidit Samuel Henricus Mauger. Francofurti, 1767, 2 tom. in 4to.* This Syrian author is ever a malicious and often an ignorant enemy; the very titles of his chapters are injurious; as how the wicked, as how the impious, as how the viper, &c. The copious article of *Timur*, in *Bibliothèque Orientale*, is of a mixed nature, as d'Herbelot indifferently draws his materials (p. 877-888) from Khondemir, Ebn Schounah, and the *Lebnak*.

⁶*Demir* or *Timour* (Timür) signifies, in the Turkish language, iron; and *Beg* is the appellation of a lord or prince. By the change of a letter or accent it is changed into *Lenc* (Lang), or lame; and a European corruption confounds the two words in the name of *Tamerlane*. [Timur's lameness was due to an arrow wound in the foot, received in a battle in Sistan, when he was conquering the countries south of the Oxus, before he won Transoxiana.]

⁷After relating some false and foolish tales of *Timour Lenc*, Arabshah is compelled to speak truth, and to own him for a kinsman of Zingis, per mulieres (as he possibly adds) laqueos Satanæ (pars i. c. i. p. 25). The testimony of Abulghazi Khan (p. ii. c. 5, p. v. c. 4) is clear, unquestionable and decisive. [M. Cahun also agrees that the claim to connexion with the family of Chingiz was justified.]

⁸According to one of the pedigrees, the fourth ancestor of Zingis, and the ninth of *Timour*, were brothers; and they agreed that the posterity of the elder should succeed to the dignity of Khan, and that the descendants of the younger should fill the office of their minister and general. This tradition was at least convenient to justify the first steps of Timour's ambition (Institutions, p. 24, 25, from the Ms. *History of Timour's History*).

[A.D. 1336]

[Jātā]

His first
adventures,
A.D. 1361-1370

south of Samarcand, in the village of Sehzar,⁹ in the fruitful territory of Cash, of which his fathers were the hereditary chiefs, as well as of a toman of ten thousand horse.¹⁰ His birth¹¹ was cast on one of those periods of anarchy which announce the fall of the Asiatic dynasties and open a new field to adventurous ambition. The khans of Zagatai were extinct; the emirs aspired to independence; and their domestic feuds could only be suspended by the conquest and tyranny of the khans of Kashgar, who, with an army of Getes or Calmucks,¹² invaded the Transoxian kingdom. From the twelfth year of his age Timour had entered the field of action; in the twenty-fifth, he stood forth as the deliverer of his country¹³; and the eyes and wishes of the people were turned towards an hero who suffered in their cause. The chiefs of the law and of the army had pledged their salvation to support him with their

⁹[Not Sebzewār but Shehr-i-sebz. The province of Kesh had been given as a fief to Taragai, Timur's father, by Kazghan, the emir or governor of Transoxiana.]

¹⁰ See the preface of Sherefeddin, and Abulfeda's Geography (Chorasmiae, &c. Descriptio, p. 60, 61), in the 3d volume of Hudson's Minor Greek Geographers. [Timur's family, the Barlas, belonged to the clan of the Kurikan (or Kureken) a Turkish clan mentioned in one of the old Turkish inscriptions of A.D. 733 (see above vol. iv. p. 540). Thus Timur was a Turk not a Mongol. Cp. Cahun, Intr. à l'histoire de l'Asie, p. 444-445.]

¹¹ See his nativity in Dr. Hyde (Syntagma Dissertat. tom. ii. p. 466), as it was cast by the astrologers of his grandson Ulugh Beg. He was born A.D. 1336 9th April, 11° 57' P. M. lat. 36. I know not whether they can prove the great conjunction of the planets from whence, like other conquerors and prophets, Timour derived the surname of Sahab Keran, or master of the conjunctions (Bibliot. Orient. p. 878). [Ulugh Beg founded his observatory at Samarcand in 1428. The "Gurganian" astronomical tables were calculated there.]

¹² In the institutions of Timour, these subjects of the Khan of Kashgar are most improperly styled Ouzbegs, or Uzbeks, a name which belongs to another branch and country of Tartars (Abulghazi, p. v. c. 5; p. vii. c. 5). Could I be sure that this word is in the Turkish original, I would boldly pronounce that the Institutions were framed a century after the death of Timour, since the establishment of the Uzbeks in Transoxiana. [The people of the Kirghiz steppes now came to be known as Uzbeks, and the reading in Timur's Institutes is quite genuine. Gibbon, with others, probably thought the Jātā were Getae. It is like the inveterate mistake (into which he also falls) of confounding the Goths with the Getae (who were Dacians). Jātā is regularly used for Mogolistān in the Zafar Nāma. It is a nickname, meaning "ne'er-do-well," applied to Central Asian Mongols by their neighbours. Petis de la Croix translated it Geta.]

¹³ [Timur had not entered the field of action so early. He says in his Memoirs that from the age of twelve he could receive his visitors with dignity. At eighteen, he was a good knight, skilled in the science of venery, and amused himself with reading pious books, playing chess, and exercising himself in arms. At twenty-two, we find him taking part (A.D. 1458) in an expedition of Kazghan the emir against the Iranians of Khorasan. On Kazghan's death, Timur (by the advice of the religious orders of Islam) supported the Chagatāy sultan Taghlak-Timur, who first made him emir of Transoxiana, and then deposed him in favour of his own son. Then Timur took to the desert.]

lives and fortunes; but in the hour of danger they were silent and afraid; and, after waiting seven days on the hills of Samarcand, he retreated to the desert with only sixty horsemen. The fugitives were overtaken by a thousand Getes, whom he repulsed with incredible slaughter, and his enemies were forced to exclaim, "Timour is a wonderful man; fortune and the divine favour are with him". But in this bloody action his own followers were reduced to ten, a number which was soon diminished by the desertion of three Carizmians.¹⁴ He wandered in the desert with his wife, seven companions, and four horses; and sixty-two days was he plunged in a loathsome dungeon, from whence he escaped by his own courage and the remorse of the oppressor. After swimming the broad and rapid stream of the Jiboon, or Oxus, he led during some months the life of a vagrant and outlaw, on the borders of the adjacent states. But his fame shone brighter in adversity; he learned to distinguish the friends of his person, the associates of his fortune, and to apply the various characters of men for their advantage, and above all for his own. On his return to his native country, Timour was successively joined by the parties of his confederates, who anxiously sought him in the desert; nor can I refuse to describe, in his pathetic simplicity, one of their fortunate encounters. He presented himself as a guide to three chiefs, who were at the head of seventy horse. "When their eyes fell upon me," says Timour, "they were overwhelmed with joy; and they alighted from their horses; and they came and kneeled; and they kissed my stirrup. I also came down from my horse, and took each of them in my arms. And I put my turban on the head of the first chief; and my girdle, rich in jewels and wrought with gold, I bound on the loins of the second; and the third I clothed in my own coat. And they wept, and I wept also; and the hour of prayer was arrived, and we prayed. And we mounted our horses and came to my dwelling; and I collected my people and made a feast." His trusty bands were soon increased by the bravest of the tribes; he led them against a superior foe; and after some vicissitudes of war the Getes were finally driven from the kingdom of Transoxiana. He had done much for his own glory; but much remained to be done, much art to be exerted, and some blood to be spilt, before he could teach his equals to obey him as their master. The birth and power of emir Houssein

¹⁴Timour himself says he had ten left; Sheref ad-Din says seven. The name of Timour's first wife, who was with him throughout his adventures, was Oljai.]

compelled him to accept a vicious and unworthy colleague, whose sister was the best beloved of his wives. Their union was short and jealous; but the policy of Timour, in their frequent quarrels, exposed his rival to the reproach of injustice and perfidy; and, after a small defeat, Houssein was slain by some sagacious friends, who presumed, for the last time, to disobey the commands of their lord. At the age of thirty-four,¹⁵ and in a general diet, or *couroullai*, he was invested with Imperial command; but he affected to revere the house of Zingis; and, while the emir Timour reigned over Zagatai and the East, a nominal khan served as a private officer in the armies of his servant. A fertile kingdom, five hundred miles in length and in breadth, might have satisfied the ambition of a subject; but Timour aspired to the dominion of the world; and before his death the crown of Zagatai was one of the twenty-seven crowns which he had placed on his head. Without expatiating on the victories of thirty-five campaigns; without describing the lines of march, which he repeatedly traced over the continent of Asia; I shall briefly represent his conquests in I. Persia, II. Tartary, and III. India¹⁶; and from thence proceed to the more interesting narrative of his Ottoman war.

He ascends
the throne of
Zagatai (and
is crowned at
Balkh) A. D.
1370 [1380]
[10th] April

His conquests,
A. D. 1370-1400
I. Of Persia,
A. D. 1380-1383

[Conquest of
Khorasan
A. D. 1381]

I. For every war, a motive of safety or revenge, of honour or zeal, of right or convenience, may be readily found in the jurisprudence of conquerors. No sooner had Timour re-united to the patrimony of Zagatai the dependent countries of Carizme and Candahar, than he turned his eyes towards the kingdoms of Iran or Persia. From the Oxus to the Tigris that extensive country was left without a lawful sovereign since the death of Abousaid, the last of the descendants of the great Holacou.¹⁷ Peace and justice had been banished from the land above forty years; and the Mogul invader might seem to listen to the cries of an oppressed people. Their petty tyrants might have opposed him with confederate arms; they separately stood, and successively fell; and the difference of their fate was only marked by the promptitude of submission or the obstinacy of resistance. Ibrahim, prince of

¹⁵ The 1st book of Sherefeddin is employed on the private life of the hero; and he himself, or his secretary (Institutions, p. 3-77), enlarges with pleasure on the thirteen designs and enterprises which most truly constitute his *personal* merit. It even shines through the dark colouring of Arabshah, p. l. c. 1-12.

¹⁶ The conquests of Persia, Tartary and India, are represented in the iid and iud books of Sherefeddin, and by Arabshah, c. 13-55. Consult the excellent Indexes to the Institutions.

¹⁷ [Rather Mūsā A. D. 1336: Abū Sa'īd reigned 1316-1335. See Lane-Poole, *Mohammadan Dynasties*, p. 220.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

II. OF TURKISTAN, A. D. 1370-1383

II. A just retaliation might be urged for the invasion of Turkestan, or the Eastern Tartary. The dignity of Timour could not endure the impunity of the Getes; he passed the Sihoon, subdued the kingdom of Cashgar, and marched seven times into the heart of their country. His most distant camp was two months' journey, or four hundred and eighty leagues to the north-east of Samarcand; and his emirs, who traversed the river Irtish, engraved in the forests of Siberia a rude memorial of their exploits. The conquest of Kipzak, or the Western Tartary,²¹ was founded on the double motive of aiding the distressed and chastising the ungrateful. Toctamish, a fugitive prince, was entertained and protected in his court; the ambassadors of Aurang Khan were dismissed with an haughty denial, and followed on the same day by the armies of Zagatai; and their success established Toctamish in the Mogul empire of the North. But, after a reign of ten years, the new khan forgot the merits and the strength of his benefactor, the base usurper, as he deemed him, of the sacred rights of the house of Zingis. Through the gates of Derbend, he entered Persia at the head of ninety thousand horse; with the innumerable forces of Kipzak, Bulgaria, Circassia, and Russia, he passed the Sihoon, burnt the palaces of Timour, and compelled him, amidst the winter snows, to contend for Samarcand and his life. After a mild expostulation, and a glorious victory, the emperor resolved on revenge; and by the east and the west of the Caspian and the Volga, he twice invaded Kipzak with such mighty²² powers that thirteen miles were

[A. D. 1375]

[A. D. 1376]

[A. D. 1377]

OF KIPZAK, BULGARIA, &c. A. D. 1380-1386

²¹ Arabshah had travelled into Kipzak, and acquired a singular knowledge of the geography, cities, and revolutions of that northern region (p. i. c. 45-49). [The position of Töktämish cannot be understood without a knowledge of the relations of the rulers of the Golden Horde. Orda, the eldest son of Jüji (eldest son of Chingiz Khan) had succeeded his father in the rule over the tribes north of the Jaxartes. The tribes of the Western Kipchak (the regions of the Volga and Ural, north of the Caspian) had been conquered by Bätü, a younger son of Jüji (see above pp. 14, 15). Tüka-Timür, another son, ruled over Great Bulgaria on the Middle Volga; and a fourth, named Shaybän was lord of the Kirghiz Kazaks, in Siberia, to the north of Orda's land. The tribes ruled over by all these brothers and their descendants were included under the "Golden Horde," which derived its name from the Sir Orda, the golden camp of the Khan. The tribes under the line of Orda were called the White Horde; and the Khans of this line were nominally the head of the family. The tribes subject to Bätü's line were the Blue Horde, and they were far the most important. The line of Bätü came to an end in 1358, and after 20 years of anarchy Töktämish won the Khanate with Timur's help in 1378. Töktämish was a descendant of Orda, and had won the lordship of the White Horde in 1376. Under him the Khanate of the Golden Horde reappeared itself in Russia, and Moscow was burned in 1382.]

²² [Timur routed Töktämish in 1391 at Urtupa, and in 1395 on the Terek. By thus destroying the power of the Khanate of the Golden Horde, Timur involuntarily delivered Russia.]

measured from his right to his left wing. In a march of five months, they rarely beheld the footsteps of man ; and their daily subsistence was often trusted to the fortune of the chase. At length the armies encountered each other ; but the treachery of the standard-bearer, who, in the heat of action, reversed the Imperial standard of Kipzak, determined the victory of the Zagatais ; and Toctamish (I speak the language of the Institutions) gave the tribe of Toushi to the wind of desolation.²³ He fled to the Christian duke of Lithuania ; again returned to the banks of the Volga ; and, after fifteen battles with a domestic rival, at last perished in the wilds of Siberia. The pursuit of a flying enemy carried Timour into the tributary provinces of Russia ; a duke of the reigning family was made prisoner amidst the ruins of his capital ; and Yeletz, by the pride and ignorance of the Orientals, might easily be confounded with the genuine metropolis of the nation. Moscow trembled at the approach of the Tartar, and the resistance would have been feeble, since the hopes of the Russians were placed in a miraculous image of the Virgin, to whose protection they ascribed the casual and voluntary retreat of the conqueror. Ambition and prudence recalled him to the south, the desolate country was exhausted, and the Mogul soldiers were enriched with an immense spoil of precious furs, of linen of Antioch,²⁴ and of ingots of gold and silver.²⁵ On the banks of the Don, or Tanais, he received an humble deputation from the consuls and merchants of Egypt,²⁶ Venice, Genoa, Catalonia, and Biscay, who occupied the commerce and city of Tana, or Asoph, at the mouth of the river. They offered their gifts, admired his magnificence, and trusted his royal word. But the peaceful visit of an emir, who explored the state of the

[Flight of
Toctamish to
Siberia, A.D.
1387]

²³ Institutions of Timour, p. 123, 125. Mr. White, the Editor, bestows some animadversion on the superficial account of Sherefeddin (l. iii. c. 12-14), who was ignorant of the designs of Timour, and the true springs of action. [M. Charmoy contributed to the 3rd vol. of the Transactions of the Academy of St. Petersburg an important account of these campaigns of Timur.]

²⁴ The furs of Russia are more credible than the ingots. But the linen of Antioch has never been famous ; and Antioch was in ruins. I suspect that it was some manufacture of Europe, which the Hanse merchants had imported by the way of Novogorod.

²⁵ M. Lemaque (Hist. de Russie, tom. ii. p. 247. Vie de Timour, p. 64-67, because the French version of the Institutes) has corrected the error of Sherefeddin, and marked the true limit of Timour's conquests. His arguments are superfluous, and a simple appeal to the Russian annals is sufficient to prove that Moscow, which six years before had been taken by Toctamish [A.D. 1382], escaped the arms of a more formidable invader.

²⁶ An Egyptian consul from Grand Cairo is mentioned in Barbaro's voyage to Tana in 1436, after the city had been rebuilt (Ramusio, tom. ii. fol. 92).

magazines and harbour, was speedily followed by the destructive presence of the Tartars. The city was reduced to ashes; the Moslems were pillaged and dismissed; but all the Christians who had not fled to their ships were condemned either to death or slavery.²⁷ Revenge prompted him to burn the cities of Serai and Astrachan, the monuments of rising civilisation; and his vanity proclaimed that he had penetrated to the region of perpetual daylight, a strange phenomenon, which authorised his Mahometan doctors to dispense with the obligation of evening prayer.²⁸

III. Of Hindos-
tan, A.D.
1206, 1209

III. When Timour first proposed to his princes and emirs the invasion of India or Hindostan,²⁹ he was answered by a murmur of discontent: "The rivers! and the mountains and deserts! and the soldiers clad in armour! and the elephants, destroyers of men!" But the displeasure of the emperor was more dreadful than all these terrors; and his superior reason was convinced that an enterprise of such tremendous aspect was safe and easy in the execution. He was informed by his spies of the weakness and anarchy of Hindostan; the soubahs of the provinces had erected the standard of rebellion; and the perpetual infancy of sultan Mahmoud was despised even in the harem of Delhi. The Mogul army moved in three great divisions; and Timour observes with pleasure that the ninety-two squadrons of a thousand horse most fortunately corresponded with the ninety-two names or epithets of the prophet Mahomet. Between the Ji-boon and the Indus, they crossed one of the ridges of mountains, which are styled by the Arabian geographers the Stony Girdles of the Earth. The highland robbers were subdued or extirpated; but great numbers of men and horses perished in the snow; the

emperor himself was let down a precipice on a portable scaffold, the ropes were one hundred and fifty cubits in length; and, before he could reach the bottom, this dangerous operation was five times repeated. Timour crossed the Indus at the ordinary passage of Attok; and successively traversed, in the footsteps of Alexander, the *Punjab*, or five rivers,²⁰ that fall into the master-stream. From Attok to Delhi the high road measures no more than six hundred miles; but the two conquerors deviated to the south-east; and the motive of Timour was to join his grandson, who had achieved by his command the conquest of Moultan. On the eastern bank of the Hyphasis, on the edge of the desert, the Macedonian hero halted and wept; the Mogul entered the desert, reduced the fortress of Batnir, and stood in arms before the gates of Delhi, a great and flourishing city, which had subsisted three centuries under the dominion of the Mahometan (A. D. 1207) kings. The siege, more especially of the castle, might have been a work of time; but he tempted, by the appearance of weakness, the sultan Mahmoud and his vizir to descend into the plain, with ten thousand cuirassiers, forty thousand of his foot-guards, and one hundred and twenty elephants, whose tusks are said to have been armed with sharp and poisoned daggers. Against these monsters, or rather against the imagination of his troops, he condescended to use some extraordinary precautions of fire and a ditch, of iron spikes and a rampart of bucklers; but the event taught the Moguls to smile at their own fears; and, as soon as these unwieldy animals were routed, the inferior species (the men of India) disappeared from the field. Timour made his triumphal entry into the capital of Hindostan; and admired, with a view to imitate, the architecture of the stately mosque; but the order or licence of a general pillage and massacre polluted the festival of his victory. He resolved to purify his soldiers in the blood of the idolaters, or Gentoos, who still surpass, in the proportion of ten to one, the numbers of the Mahometans. In this pious design, he advanced one hundred miles to the north-east of Delhi, passed the Ganges, fought several battles by land and water, and penetrated to the famous rock of Compele, the statue of the cow, that seems to discharge the mighty river, whose source is far distant among the mountains

²⁰The rivers of the Punjab, the five eastern branches of the Indus, have been hid down for the first time with truth and accuracy in Major Rennell's incomparable *Geographical History of Hindostan*. In his *Critical Memoir* he illustrates with judgment and accuracy the marches of Alexander and Timour.

of Thibet.²¹ His return was along the skirts of the northern hills; nor could this rapid campaign of one year justify the strange foresight of his emirs that their children in a warm climate would degenerate into a race of Hindus.

It was on the banks of the Ganges that Timour was informed, by his speedy messengers, of the disturbances which had arisen on the confines of Georgia and Anatolia, of the revolt of the Christians, and the ambitious designs of the sultan Bajazet. His vigour of mind and body was not impaired by sixty-three years and innumerable fatigues; and, after enjoying some tranquil months in the palace of Samarcand, he proclaimed a new expedition of seven years into the western countries of Asia.²² To the soldiers who had served in the Indian war, he granted the choice of remaining at home or following their prince; but the troops of all the provinces and kingdoms of Persia were commanded to assemble at Ispahan and wait the arrival of the Imperial standard. It was first directed against the Christians of Georgia, who were strong only in their rocks, their castles, and the winter-season; but these obstacles were overcome by the zeal and perseverance of Timour; the rebels submitted to the tribute or the Koran; and, if both religions boasted of their martyrs, that name is more justly due to the Christian prisoners, who were offered the choice of abjuration or death. On his descent from the hills, the emperor gave audience to the first ambassadors of Bajazet, and opened the hostile correspondence of complaints and menaces, which fermented two years before the final explosion. Between two jealous and haughty neighbours, the motives of quarrel will seldom be wanting. The Mogul and Ottoman conquests now touched each other in the neighbourhood of Erzerum and the Euphrates; nor had the doubtful limit been ascertained by time and treaty. Each of these ambitious monarchs might accuse his rival of violating his territory, of threatening his vassals, and protecting his rebels; and, by the name of rebels, each understood the fugitive princes,

²¹ The two great rivers, the Ganges and Burrampooter (Brahmapootra), rise in Thibet, from the opposite ridges of the same hills, separate from each other to the distance of 1200 miles, and, after a winding course of 2000 miles, again meet in one point near the gulf of Bengal. Yet, so capricious is fame that the Burrampooter is a late discovery, while his brother Ganges has been the theme of ancient and modern story. Coupele, the scene of Timour's last victory, must be situated near Loldong, 1100 miles from Calcutta; and, in 1774, a British camp! (Rennell's Memoir, p. 7, 59, 91, 99)

²² See the Institutions, p. 141, to the end of the 1st book, and Sherefeddin (l. v. c. 1-16), to the entrance of Timour into Syria.

The war
against
Bajazet
ended, A.D.
1395, 1st Sept.

He returns to
Samarcand,
A.D. 1395,
May)

whose kingdoms he had usurped and whose life or liberty he implacably pursued. The resemblance of character was still more dangerous than the opposition of interest; and, in their victorious career, Timour was impatient of an equal, and Bajazet was ignorant of a superior. The first epistle²³ of the Mogul emperor must have provoked instead of reconciling the Turkish sultan, whose family and nation he affected to despise.²⁴ "Dost thou not know that the greatest part of Asia is subject to our arms and our laws? that our invincible forces extend from one sea to the other? that the potentates of the earth form a line before our gate? and that we have compelled Fortune herself to watch over the prosperity of our empire? What is the foundation of thy insolence and folly? Thou has fought some battles in the woods of Anatolia; contemptible trophies! Thou hast obtained some victories over the Christians of Europe; thy sword was blessed by the apostle of God; and thy obedience to the precept of the Koran, in waging war against the infidels, is the sole consideration that prevents us from destroying thy country, the frontier and bulwark of the Moslem world. Be wise in time; reflect; repent; and avert the thunder of our vengeance, which is yet suspended over thy head. Thou art no more than a pismire; why wilt thou seek to provoke the elephants? Alas! they will trample thee under their feet." In his replies, Bajazet poured forth the indignation of a soul which was deeply stung by such unusual contempt. After retorting the basest reproaches on the thief and rebel of the desert, the Ottoman recapitulates his boasted victories in Iran, Deccan, and the Indies; and labours to prove that Timour had never triumphed, unless by his own perfidy and the vices of his foes. "Thy armies are innumerable: be they so; but what are the arrows of the flying Tartar against the scymetars and battle-axes of my firm and invincible Janizaries? I will guard the princes who have implored my protection; seek them in my tents. The cities of Arzingan and Erzeroum are mine; and,

²³ We have three copies of these hostile epistles in the Institutions (p. 147), in Sherahudin (l. v. c. 14), and in Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 19, p. 183-201), which agree with each other in the spirit and substance, rather than in the style. It is probable that they have been translated, with various latitude, from the Turkish original into the Arabic and Persian tongues. [The genuineness of these letters is doubtful.]

²⁴ The Mogul emir distinguishes himself and his countrymen by the name of *Tartars*, and signifies the race and nation of Bajazet with the less honourable epithet of *Turkians*. Yet I do not understand how the Ottomans could be descended from a Turkman sailor; those inland shepherds were so remote from the sea-coast, maritime affairs.

unless the tribute be duly paid, I will demand the tribute under the walls of Tauris and Sultania." The ungov~~ernable~~ ~~man~~ of the sultan at length betrayed him to an insult of a most de~~bauchic~~ ~~kind~~: "If I fly from my arms," said he, "may my wife be thrice divorced from my bed; but, if thou hast not ~~power~~ to meet me in the field, mayest thou again receive ~~thy~~ ~~wives~~ after they have thrice endured the embraces of a stranger".²⁶ Any violation, by word or deed, of the secrecy of the harem, is an unpardonable offence among the Turkish nations²⁷; and the political quarrel of the two monarchs was embittered by private and personal resentment. Yet in his first expedition ~~Timour~~ was satisfied with the siege and destruction of Suvas, or Schiste, a strong city on the borders of Anatolia; and he revenged the indiscretion of the Ottoman on a garrison of four thousand Armenians, who were buried alive for the brave and faithful discharge of their duty.²⁷ As a Musulman, he seemed to respect the pious occupation of Bajazet, who was still engaged in the blockade of Constantinople; and, after this salutary lesson, the Mogul conqueror checked his pursuit, and turned aside to the invasion of Syria and Egypt. In these transactions, the Ottoman prince, by the Orientals, and even by Timour, is styled the *Kaisar of Roum*, the Cæsar of the Romans: a title which, by a small anticipation, might be given to a monarch who possessed the provinces, and threatened the city, of the successors of Constantine.²⁸

[A.D. 1401.]

Timour
invades
Syria, A.D.
1400

The military republic of the Mamalukes still reigned in Egypt and Syria; but the dynasty of the Turks was overthrown by that of the Circassians;²⁹ and their favourite Barkok, from a slave

²⁶ According to the Koran (c. ii. p. 27, and Sale's Discourses, p. 134), a Musulman who had thrice divorced his wife (who had thrice repeated the words of a divorce) could not take her again, till after she had been married to, and repudiated by, another husband; an ignominious transaction, which it is needless to aggravate by supposing that the first husband must see her enjoyed by a second before his face (Rycant's State of the Ottoman Empire, l. ii. c. 21).

²⁷ The common delicacy of the Orientals, in never speaking of their women, is ascribed in a much higher degree by Arabshah to the Turkish nations; and it is remarkable enough that Chalcondyles (l. ii. p. 55 [p. 105. ed. Bonn]) had some knowledge of the prejudice and the insult.

²⁷ [And he put to death Bayezid's eldest son Ertogrul.]

²⁸ For the style of the Moguls, see the Institutions (p. 131, 147), and for the Persians, the Bibliothèque Orientale (p. 882); but I do not find that the title of Cæsar has been applied by the Arabians, or assumed by the Ottomans themselves. [From Timour to Bayezid the name is an insult; he will not give him a Musulman title.]

²⁹ See the reigns of Barkok and Pharadge, in M. de Guignes (tom. iv. l. xxi.), who from the Arabic texts of Aboulmahasen, Ebn Schounah, and Aintabi has

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the ensign, constitutes the martyr; and that the Moslems of either party, who fight only for the glory of God, may deserve that sacred appellation. The true succession of the caliphs was a controversy of a still more delicate nature, and the frankness of a doctor, too honest for his situation, provoked the emperor to exclaim, "Ye are as false as those of Damascus: Moawiyah was an usurper, Yezid a tyrant, and Ali alone is the lawful successor of the prophet". A prudent explanation restored his tranquillity; and he passed to a more familiar topic of conversation. "What is your age?" said he to the cadhi. "Fifty years." "It would be the age of my eldest son. You see me here (continued Timour) a poor, lame, decrepit mortal. Yet by my arm has the Almighty been pleased to subdue the kingdoms of Iran, Touran, and the Indies. I am not a man of blood; and God is my witness that in all my wars I have never been the aggressor, and that my enemies have always been the authors of their own calamity." During this peaceful conversation, the streets of Aleppo streamed with blood, and re-echoed with the cries of mothers and children, with the shrieks of violated virgins. The rich plunder that was abandoned to his soldiers might stimulate their avarice; but their cruelty was enforced by the peremptory command of producing an adequate number of heads, which, according to his custom, were curiously piled in columns and pyramids; the Moguls celebrated the feast of victory, while the surviving Moslems passed the night in tears and in chains. I shall not dwell on the march of the destroyer from Aleppo to Damascus, where he was rudely encountered, and almost overthrown, by the armies of Egypt. A retrograde motion was imputed to his distress and despair: one of his nephews deserted to the enemy; and Syria rejoiced in the tale of his defeat, when the sultan was driven, by the revolt of the Mamalukes, to escape with precipitation and shame to his palace of Cairo. Abandoned by their prince, the inhabitants of Damascus still defended their walls; and Timour consented to raise the siege, if they would adorn his retreat with a gift or ransom; each article of nine pieces. But no sooner had he introduced himself into the city, under colour of a truce, than he perfidiously violated the treaty; imposed a contribution of ten millions of gold; and animated his troops to chastise the posterity of those Syrians who had executed or approved the murder of the grandson of Mahomet. A family which had given honourable burial to the head of Hosein, and a colony of artificers whom he sent to labour at Samarcand, were alone reserved in the general massacre; and, after a period of seven centuries,

Damascus,
A.D. 1401, 29th
Jan.

Damascus was reduced to ashes, because a Tartar was moved by religious zeal to avenge the blood of an Arab.⁴² The losses and fatigues of the campaign obliged Timour to renounce the conquest of Palestine and Egypt; but in his return to the Euphrates he delivered Aleppo to the flames; and justified his pious motive by the pardon and reward of two thousand sectaries of Ali, who were desirous to visit the tomb of his son. I have expatiated on the personal anecdotes which mark the character of the Mogul hero; but I shall briefly mention⁴³ that he erected on the ruins of Bagdad a pyramid of ninety thousand heads; again visited Georgia; encamped on the banks of Araxes; and proclaimed his resolution of marching against the Ottoman emperor. Conscious of the importance of the war, he collected his forces from every province; eight hundred thousand men were enrolled on his military list;⁴⁴ but the splendid commands of five and ten thousand horse may be rather expressive of the rank and pension of the chiefs than of the genuine number of effective soldiers.⁴⁵ In the pillage of Syria, the Moguls had acquired immense riches; but the delivery of their pay and arrears for seven years more firmly attached them to the Imperial standard.

and Bagdad,
A. D. 1401, 23rd
July

During this diversion of the Mogul arms, Bajazet had two years to collect his forces for a more serious encounter. They consisted of four hundred thousand horse and foot,⁴⁶ whose merit and fidelity were of an unequal complexion. We may

Invades
Anatolia,
A. D. 1402

⁴² [The destruction attributed to Timur has been greatly exaggerated. That he did not burn the mosque of Damascus is proved by its remains. (It had been partly burnt in a tumult in 1068.) Compare the remarks of Cahun, *op. cit.*, p. 495-497.]

⁴³ The marches and occupations of Timour between the Syrian and Ottoman wars, are represented by Sherefeddin (l. v. c. 29-43) and Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 15-18).

⁴⁴ This number of 800,000 was extracted by Arabshah, or rather by Ebn Schounah, ex rationario Timuri, on the faith of a Carasian officer (tom. i. c. 68, p. 617); and it is remarkable enough that a Greek historian (Phranza, l. i. c. 29) adds no more than 20,000 men. Poggius reckons 1,000,000; another Latin contemporary (Chron. Tarvisianum, apud Muratori, tom. xix. p. 800) 1,100,000; and the enormous sum of 1,600,000, is attested by a German soldier who was present at the battle of Angora (Leunclav. ad Chalcondyl. l. iii. p. 82). Timour, in his institutions, has not deigned to calculate his troops, his subjects, or his revenues.

⁴⁵ A wide latitude of non-effectives was allowed by the Great Mogul for his own pride and the benefit of his officers. Bernier's patron was Penge-Hazari, commander of 6000 horse, of which he maintained no more than 500 (Voyages. tom. i. p. 201).

⁴⁶ Timour himself fixes at 400,000 men the Ottoman army (Institutions, p. 153), which is reduced to 150,000 by Phranza (l. i. c. 29), and swelled by the German author to 1,400,000. It is evident that the Moguls were the more numerous. The number of Bayesid are put at 90,000 by Sad ad-Din (tr. Bratutti, 214). Of course the number given by Timur cannot be accepted.]

discriminate the Janizaries, who have been gradually raised to an establishment of forty thousand men; a national cavalry, the Spahis of modern times; twenty thousand cuirassiers of Europe, clad in black and impenetrable armour; the troops of Anatolia, whose princes had taken refuge in the camp of Timour, and a colony of Tartars, whom he had driven from Kipzak, and to whom Bajazet had assigned a settlement in the plains of Hadrianople. The fearless confidence of the sultan urged him to meet his antagonist; and, as if he had chosen that spot for revenge, he displayed his banners near the ruins of the unfortunate Suvas. In the meanwhile, Timour moved from the Araxes through the countries of Armenia and Anatolia: his boldness was secured by the wisest precautions; his speed was guided by order and discipline; and the woods, the mountains, and the rivers were diligently explored by the flying squadrons, who marked his road and preceded his standard. Firm in his plan of fighting in the heart of the Ottoman kingdom, he avoided their camp; dexterously inclined to the left; occupied Cæsarea; traversed the salt desert and the river Halys; and invested Angora: while the sultan, immoveable and ignorant in his post, compared the Tartar swiftness to the crawling of a snail.⁴⁷ He returned on the wings of indignation to the relief of Angora; and, as both generals were alike impatient for action, the plains round that city were the scene of a memorable battle, which has immortalised the glory of Timour and the shame of Bajazet. For this signal victory, the Mogul emperor was indebted to himself, to the genius of the moment, and the discipline of thirty years. He had improved the tactics, without violating the manners, of his nation,⁴⁸ whose force still consisted in the missile weapons, and rapid evolutions, of a numerous cavalry. From a single troop to a great army, the mode of attack was the same: a foremost line first advanced to the charge, and was supported in a just order by the squadrons of the great vanguard. The general's eye watched over the field, and at his command the front and rear of the right and left wings successively moved forwards in their several divisions, and in a direct

⁴⁷ It may not be useless to mark the distances between Angora and the neighbouring cities, by the journeys of the caravans, each of twenty or twenty-five miles; to Smyrna 20, to Kiotahia 10, to Boursa 10, to Cæsarea 8, to Sinope 10, to Nicomedia 9, to Constantinople 12 or 13 (see Tournefort, Voyage au Levant, tom. ii. lettre 21).

⁴⁸ See the Systems of Tactics in the Institutions, which the English editors have illustrated with elaborate plans (p. 373-407).

[Spahis]

Battle of
Angora, A.D.
1401, 20th
[10th] July

or oblique line; the enemy was pressed by eighteen or twenty attacks; and each attack afforded a chance of victory. If they all proved fruitless or unsuccessful, the occasion was worthy of the emperor himself, who gave the signal of advancing to the standard and main body, which he led in person.⁴⁹ But in the battle of Angora, the main body itself was supported, on the flanks and in the rear, by the bravest squadrons of the reserve, commanded by the sons and grandsons of Timour. The conqueror of Hindostan ostentatiously shewed a line of elephants, the trophies, rather than the instruments, of victory: the use of the Greek fire was familiar to the Moguls and Ottomans; but, had they borrowed from Europe the recent invention of gunpowder and cannon, the artificial thunder, in the hands of either nation, must have turned the fortune of the day.⁵⁰ In that day, Bajazet displayed the qualities of a soldier and a chief; but his genius sunk under a stronger ascendant; and, from various motives, the greatest part of his troops failed him in the decisive moment. His rigour and avarice had provoked a mutiny among the Turks; and even his son Soliman too hastily withdrew from the field. The forces of Anatolia, loyal in their revolt, were drawn away to the banners of their lawful princes. His Tartar allies had been tempted by the letters and emissaries of Timour;⁵¹ who reproached their ignoble servitude under the slaves of their fathers, and offered to their hopes the dominion of their new, or the liberty of their ancient, country. In the right wing of Bajazet, the cuirassiers of Europe charged with faithful hearts and irresistible arms; but these men of iron were soon broken by an artful flight and headlong pursuit; and the Janizaries, alone, without cavalry or missile weapons, were encompassed by the circle of the Mogul hunters. Their valour was at length oppressed by heat, thirst, and the weight of numbers; and the unfortunate sultan, afflicted with the gout in his hands and feet, was transported from the field on the

⁴⁹ The Sultan himself (says Timour) must then put the foot of courage into the stirrup of patience. A Tartar metaphor, which is lost in the English, but preserved in the French, version of the Institutes (p. 156, 157).

⁵⁰ The Greek fire, on Timour's side, is attested by Sherefeddin (l. v. c. 47); but Voltaire's strange suspicion that some cannon, inscribed with strange characters, ~~must have been sent~~ by that monarch to Delhi is refuted by the universal silence of contemporaries.

⁵¹ Timour has dissembled this secret and important negotiation with the Tartars, which is indubitably proved by the joint evidence of the Arabian (tom. i. c. 47, p. 207), the Persian (Annals Leunclav. p. 321), and Persian historians (Khondemir, apud ~~the~~ p. 282). [And cp. Ducas p. 35 ed. Bonn.]

fleetest of his horses. He was pursued and taken by the ~~the~~ khan of Zagatai; and after his capture, and the defeat of the Ottoman powers, the kingdom of Anatolia submitted to the conqueror, who planted his standard at Kiotahia, and ~~dispatched~~ on all sides the ministers of rapine and destruction; ~~then~~ Mehemmed Sultan, the eldest and best beloved of his ~~grand-~~sons, was dispatched to Bursa with thirty thousand ~~horse~~; and such was his youthful ardour that he arrived with only ~~four~~ thousand at the gates of the capital, after performing in five days a march of two hundred and thirty miles. Yet ~~fast~~ is still more rapid in its course; and Soliman, the son of Bajazet, had already passed over to Europe with the royal treasure. The spoil, however, of the palace and city was immense; the inhabitants had escaped; but the buildings, for the most part of wood, were reduced to ashes. From Bursa, the grandson of Timour advanced to Nice, even yet a fair and flourishing city; and the Mogul squadrons were only stopped by the waves of the Propontis. The same success attended the other ~~mar-~~shas and emirs in their excursions; and Smyrna, defended by the zeal and courage of the Rhodian knights, alone deserved the presence of the emperor himself. After an obstinate defence, the place was taken by storm; all that breathed was put to the sword; and the heads of the Christian heroes were launched from the engines, on board of two carracks, or great ships of Europe, that rode at anchor in the harbour. The Moslems of Asia rejoiced in their deliverance from a dangerous and domestic foe, and a parallel was drawn between the two rivals, by observing that Timour, in fourteen days, had reduced a fortress which had sustained seven years the siege, or at least the blockade, of Bajazet.⁶²

The *iron cage* in which Bajazet was imprisoned by Tamerlane, so long and so often repeated as a moral lesson, is now rejected as a fable by the modern writers, who smile at the vulgar credulity.⁶³ They appeal with confidence to the Persian history

⁶² For the war of Anatolia, or Roum, I add some hints in the Institutions, to the copious narratives of Sberfeddin (l. v. c. 44-65) and Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 20-35). On this part only of Timour's history, it is lawful to quote the Turks (Cantemir, p. 53-55, Annal. Leunclav. p. 320-322), and the Greeks (Phranza, l. i. c. 29, Ducas, c. 15-17, Chalcondyles, l. iii.). [Add Sad ad-Din's account of the battle, tr. Bratutti, l. p. 213 sqq.]

⁶³ The scepticism of Voltaire (Essai sur l'Histoire Générale, c. 88) is ready on this, as on every, occasion to reject a popular tale, and to diminish the magnitude of vice and virtue; and on most occasions his incredulity is reasonable. [The fable of the iron cage is fully discussed by Hammer (Gesch. des osmanischen

of Sberafeddin Ali, which has been given to our curiosity in a French version, and from which I shall collect and abridge a more specious narrative of this memorable transaction. No sooner was Timour informed ^{disapproved by the Persian historian of Timour;} that the captive Ottoman was at the door of his tent, than he graciously stepped forwards to receive him, seated him by his side, and mingled with just reproaches a soothing pity for his rank and misfortune. "Alas!" said the emperor, "the decree of fate is now accomplished by your own fault: it is the web which you have woven, the thorns of the tree which yourself have planted. I wished to spare, and even to assist, the champion of the Moslems; you braved our threats; you despised our friendship; you forced us to enter your kingdom with our invincible armies. Behold the event. Had you vanquished, I am not ignorant of the fate which you reserved for myself and my troops. But I disdain to retaliate; your life and honour are secure; and I shall express my gratitude to God by my clemency to man." The royal captive shewed some signs of repentance, accepted the humiliation of a robe of honour, and embraced with tears his son Mousa, who, at his request, was sought and found among the captives of the field. The Ottoman princes were lodged in a splendid pavilion; and the respect of the guards could be surpassed only by their vigilance. On the arrival of the harem from Boura, Timour restored the queen Despina and her daughter ^(Despina = queen) to their father and husband; but he piously required that the Servian princess, who had hitherto been indulged in the profession of Christianity, should embrace without delay the religion of the prophet. In the feast of victory, to which Rajaset was invited, the Mogul emperor placed a crown on his head and a sceptre in his hand, with a solemn assurance of restoring him with an increase of glory to the throne of his ancestors. But the effect of this promise was disappointed by the sultan's untimely death: amidst the care of the most skilful physicians, he expired of an apoplexy at Akshehr, the Antioch of Pisidia, about

Reichas, l. 252-6); who refers to three points unknown to Gibbon: (1) the silence of the eye witness, John Schiltberger, whom we have already seen captured in the battle of Nicopolis, and who was again captured by the Mongols at Angora; (2) the evidence of the two oldest Ottoman historians, Neshri and Ashikpasha zâde; (3) the discussion and denial of the story by the later Ottoman historian Sad ad-Din. Hunter points out that the story arose out of a misconception of the words of Ashikpasha zâde and Neshri, who state that a litter, furnished with bars like a cage, was provided for Bayezid. Such litters were the kind of vehicle regularly used for conveying a prince's harem.]

According to Ducas, Timur was playing chess at the moment of Bayezid's death.

nine months after his defeat. The victor dropped him into his grave; his body, with royal pomp, was conveyed to the mausoleum which he had erected at Bouraa; and his name, after receiving a rich present of gold and jewels, of horses and arms, was invested by a patent in red ink with the sovereignty of Anatolia.

Such is the portrait of a generous conqueror, which is extracted from his own memorials, and dedicated to his son and grandson, nineteen years after his decease;⁵⁵ and, at a time when the truth was remembered by thousands, a manifest falsehood would have implied a satire on his real conduct. Weighty indeed, is this evidence, adopted by all the Persian historians; yet flattery, more especially in the East, is base and audacious; and the harsh and ignominious treatment of Bajazet is attested by a chain of witnesses, some of whom shall be produced in the order of their time and country. 1. The reader has not forgotten the garrison of French, whom the marshal Boucicault left behind him for the defence of Constantinople. They were on the spot to receive the earliest and most faithful intelligence of the overthrow of their great adversary; and it is more than probable that some of them accompanied the Greek embassy to the court of Tamerlane. From their account, the hardships of the prison and death of Bajazet are affirmed by the marshal's servant and historian, within the distance of seven years.⁵⁷ 2. The name of Poggius the Italian⁵⁸ is deservedly famous among the revivers of learning in the fifteenth century. His elegant dialogue of the vicissitudes of fortune⁵⁹ was composed in his fiftieth year,

⁵⁵ See the history of Sherefeddin (l. v. c. 49, 52, 53, 59, 60). This work was finished at Shiraz, in the year 1424, and dedicated to Sultan Ibrahim, the son of Sharokh, the son of Timour, who reigned in Farsistan in his father's lifetime.

⁵⁶ After the perusal of Khondemir, Ebn Schounah, &c., the learned d'Herbelot (Bibliot. Orientale, p. 882) may affirm that this fable is not mentioned in the most authentic histories; but his denial of the visible testimony of Arabshah leaves some room to suspect his accuracy.

⁵⁷ Et fut lui-même (*Bajazet*) pris, et mené en prison, en laquelle mourut de sa mort / Mémoires de Boucicault, p. i. c. 37. These Memoirs were composed while the Marshal was still governor of Genoa, from whence he was expelled in the year 1409 by a popular insurrection (Muratori Annali d'Italia, tom. xii. p. 473, 474). [On Boucicault's Memoirs and Life see Delaville Le Roulx, La France en Orient au 14^{me} siècle. Expéditions du Maréchal Boucicault, 2 vols., 1806.]

⁵⁸ The reader will find a satisfactory account of the life and writings of Poggius in the Poggiana, an entertaining work of M. Lenfant [A.D. 1730], and in the Bibliotheca Latina medice et infimæ Aetatis of Fabricius (tom. v. p. 305-308). Poggius was born in the year 1380, and died in 1459.

⁵⁹ The dialogue de Varietate Fortunæ (of which a complete and elegant edition has been published at Paris in 1723, in 4to) was composed a short time before the death of Pope Martin V. (p. 5), and consequently about the end of the year 1450.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

flourished in a later period, and who speak in a less positive tone ; but more attention is due to George Phranza,⁶⁴ protovestiare of the last emperors, and who was born a year before the battle of Angora. Twenty-two years after that event, he was sent ambassador to Amurath the Second ; and the historian might converse with some veteran Janizaries, who had been made prisoners with the sultan and had themselves seen him in his iron cage. 5. The last evidence, in every sense, is that of the Turkish annals, which have been consulted or transcribed by Leunclavius, Pocock, and Cantemir.⁶⁵ They unanimously deplore the captivity of the iron cage ; and some credit may be allowed to national historians, who cannot stigmatize the Tartar without uncovering the shame of their king and country.

From these opposite premises, a fair and moderate conclusion may be deduced. I am satisfied that Sherefeddin Ali has faithfully described the first ostentatious interview, in which the conqueror, whose spirits were harmonized by success, affected the character of generosity. But his mind was insensibly alienated by the unseasonable arrogance of Bajazet ; the complaints of his enemies, the Anatolian princes, were just and vehement ; and Timour betrayed a design of leading his royal captive in triumph to Samarcand. An attempt to facilitate his escape, by digging a mine under the tent, provoked the Mogul emperor to impose a harsher restraint ; and, in his perpetual marches, an iron cage on a waggon might be invented, not as a wanton insult, but as a rigorous precaution. Timour had read in some fabulous history a similar treatment of one of his predecessors, a king of Persia ; and Bajazet was condemned to represent the person, and expiate the guilt, of the Roman Cæsar.⁶⁶ But the strength of his mind and body fainted under the trial, and his premature death might, without injustice, be ascribed to the severity of Timour. He warred not with the dead ; a tear and a sepulchre were all that he could bestow on a captive who was delivered from his power ; and, if Mousa, the son of Bajazet, was permitted to reign over

⁶⁴ See the testimony of George Phranza (l. i. c. 29), and his life in Hanckins (*de Script. Byzant.* p. i. c. 40). Chalcondyles and Ducas speak in general terms of Bajazet's chains.

⁶⁵ *Annales Leunclav.* p. 321 ; Pocock, *Prolegomen.* ad *Abulpharag. Dynast.* ; Cantemir, p. 55. [See above note 53.]

⁶⁶ A Sapor, king of Persia, had been made prisoner, and inclosed in the figure of a cow's hide, by Maximian, or Galerius Cæsar. Such is the fable related by Eutychius (*Annal.* tom. i. p. 421, vers. Pocock). The recollection of the true history (*Decline and Fall*, &c., vol. i. p. 371 *sqq.*) will teach us to appreciate the knowledge of the Orientals of the ages which precede the Hegira.

by the
Turks

Probable
conclusion

Death of
Bajazet, A.D.
1402, 9th March

the ruins of Bursa, the greatest part of the province of Anatolia had been restored by the conqueror to their lawful sovereigns.

From the Irtish and Volga to the Persian Gulf, and from the Ganges to Damascus and the Archipelago, Asia was in the hand of Timour; his armies were invincible, his ambition was boundless, and his zeal might aspire to conquer and convert the Christian kingdoms of the West, which already trembled at his name. He touched the utmost verge of the land; but an insuperable, though narrow sea, rolled between the two continents of Europe and Asia;⁶⁷ and the lord of so many *tomans*, or myriads of horse, was not master of a single galley. The two passages of the Bosphorus and Hellespont, of Constantinople and Gallipoli, were possessed, the one by the Christians, the other by the Turks. On this great occasion, they forgot the difference of religion, to act with union and firmness in the common cause. The double straits were guarded with ships and fortifications; and they separately withheld the transports which Timour demanded of either nation, under the pretence of attacking their enemy. At the same time, they soothed his pride with tributary gifts and suppliant embassies, and prudently tempted him to retreat with the honours of victory. Soliman, the son of Bajazet, implored his clemency for his father and himself; accepted, by a red patent, the investiture of the kingdom of Romania, which he already held by the sword; and reiterated his ardent wish of casting himself in person at the feet of the king of the world. The Greek emperor⁶⁸ (either John or Manuel) submitted to pay the same tribute which he had stipulated with the Turkish sultan, and ratified the treaty by an oath of allegiance, from which he could absolve his conscience as soon as the Mogul arms had retired from Anatolia. But the fears and fancy of nations ascribed to the ambitious Tamerlane a new design of vast and romantic compass: a design of subduing Egypt and Africa, marching from the Nile to the Atlantic Ocean, entering Europe by the Straits of Gibraltar, and, after imposing his yoke on the kingdoms of Christendom, of returning home by the deserts of

Term of the
conquests of
Timour, A. D.
1403

⁶⁷ Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 25) describes, like a curious traveller, the straits of Gallipoli and Constantinople. To acquire a just idea of these events, I have compared the narratives and prejudices of the Moguls, Turks, Greeks, and Arabians. The Spanish ambassador mentions this hostile union of the Christians and Ottomans (Vie de Timour, p. 96).

⁶⁸ Since the name of Cæsar had been transferred to the sultans of Roum, the Greek princes of Constantinople (Sherefeddin, l. v. c. 54) were confounded with the Christian lords of Gallipoli, Thessalonica, &c. under the title of *Tekkur*, which is derived by corruption from the genitive τοῦ κυρίου (Cantemir, p. 51).

India and Tartary. This remote and perhaps imaginary danger was averted by the submission of the sultan of Egypt; the payment of the prayer and the coin attested at Cairo the submission of Timour; and a rare gift of a giraffe, or camelopard, and other curiosities, represented at Samarcand the tribute of the Asian world. Our imagination is not less astonished by the person of a Mogul, who, in his camp before Smyrna, meditates and almost accomplishes the invasion of the Chinese empire.⁶⁹ Timour was urged to this enterprise by national honour and religious zeal. The torrents which he had shed of Musulman blood could be expiated only by an equal destruction of the infidels; and, as he now stood at the gates of paradise, he might best secure his glorious entrance by demolishing the idols of China, founding mosques in every city, and establishing the profession of faith in one God and his prophet Mahomet. The recent expulsion of the house of Zingis was an insult on the Mogul name; and the disorders of the empire afforded the fairest opportunity for revenge. The illustrious Hongvou, founder of the dynasty of Ming, died four years before the battle of Angora; and his grandson, a weak and unfortunate youth, was burnt in a pyre after a million of Chinese had perished in the civil war.⁷⁰ Before he evacuated Anatolia, Timour dispatched beyond the Silesus a numerous army, or rather colony, of his old and new subjects, to open the road, to subdue the Pagan Calmucks and Mongols, and to found cities and magazines in the desert; and, by the diligence of his lieutenant, he soon received a perfect map and description of the unknown regions from the source of the Irtysh to the wall of China. During these preparations, the emperor achieved the final conquest of Georgia; passed the winter on the banks of the Araxes; appeased the troubles of Persia; and slowly returned to his capital, after a campaign of four years and nine months.

On the throne of Samarcand,⁷¹ he displayed, in a short reign, his magnificence and power; listened to the complaints of the people; distributed a just measure of rewards and punishments;

⁶⁹ See Sherefeddin, l. v. c. 4, who marks, in a just itinerary, the road to China, which Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 33) paints in vague and rhetorical colours.

⁷⁰ Synopsis Hist. Sinicæ, p. 74-76 (in the ivth part of the Relations de l'Inde), Duhalde, Hist. de la Chine (tom. i. p. 507, 508, folio edition); and for the chronology of the Chinese Emperors, de Guignes, Hist. des Huns, tom. i. p. 92-93.

⁷¹ For the return, triumph, and death of Timour, see Sherefeddin (l. vi. c. 2-3) and Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 35-47).

employed his riches in the architecture of palaces and temples ; and gave audience to the ambassadors of Egypt, Arabia, India, Tartary, Russia, and Spain, the last of whom presented a suit of tapestry which eclipsed the pencil of the Oriental artists. The marriage of six of the emperor's grandsons was esteemed an act of religion as well as of paternal tenderness ; and the pomp of the ancient caliphs was revived in their nuptials. They were celebrated in the gardens of Canighul, decorated with innumerable tents and pavilions, which displayed the luxury of a great city, and the spoils of a victorious camp. Whole forests were cut down to supply fuel for the kitchens ; the plain was spread with pyramids of meat and vases of every liquor, to which thousands of guests were courteously invited. The orders of the state and the nations of the earth were marshalled at the royal banquet ; nor were the ambassadors of Europe (says the haughty Persian) excluded from the feast ; since even the *casses*, the smallest of fish, find their place in the ocean.⁷⁸ The public joy was testified by illuminations and masquerades ; the trades of Samarcand passed in review ; and every trade was emulous to execute some quaint device, some marvellous pageant, with the materials of their peculiar art. After the marriage-contracts had been ratified by the cadhis, the bridegrooms and their brides retired to their nuptial chambers ; nine times, according to the Asiatic fashion, they were dressed and undressed ; and at each change of apparel pearls and rubies were showered on their heads, and contemptuously abandoned to their attendants. A general indulgence was proclaimed ; every law was relaxed, every pleasure was allowed ; the people was free, the sovereign was idle ; and the historian of Timour may remark that, after devoting fifty years to the attainment of empire, the only happy period of his life were the two months in which he ceased to exercise his power. But he was soon awakened to the cares of government and war. The standard was unfurled for the invasion of China : the emirs made their report of two hundred thousand, the select and veteran soldiers of Iran and Turan ; their baggage and provisions were

⁷⁸ Sherefeddin (l. xi. c. 24) mentions the ambassadors of one of the most potent sovereigns of Europe. We know that it was Henry III. King of Castile ; and the curious relation of his two embassies is still extant, Mariana, Hist. Hispan. l. xix. c. 11, tom. ii. p. 329, 330. *Advertissement à l'Hist. de Timur Bec*, p. 28-33. There appears likewise to have been some correspondence between the Mogul emperor, and the court of Charles VII. King of France (*Histoire de France*, par Velly et Villaret, tom. xii. p. 336). [The account of Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo of his embassy to the court of Timour in 1403-6, has been translated, with elucidations, by Sir Clements R. Markham, for the Hakluyt Society, 1859.]

transported by five hundred great waggons, and an immense train of horses and camels; and the troops might prepare for a long absence, since more than six months were employed in the tranquil journey of a caravan from Samarcand to Peking. Neither age nor the severity of the winter could retard the impatience of Timour; he mounted on horseback, passed the Sihoon on the ice, marched seventy-six parasangs, three hundred miles, from his capital, and pitched his last camp in the neighbourhood of Otrar, where he was expected by the angel of death. Fatigue, and the indiscreet use of iced water, accelerated the progress of his fever; and the conqueror of Asia expired in the seventieth year of his age, thirty-five years after he had ascended the throne of Zagatai. His designs were lost; his armies were disbanded; China was saved; and, fourteen years after his decease, the most powerful of his children sent an embassy of friendship and commerce to the court of Peking.⁷³

His death on
the road to
China, A.D.
1405, 1st April

The fame of Timour has pervaded the East and West; his posterity is still invested with the Imperial title; and the admiration of his subjects, who revered him almost as a deity, may be justified in some degree by the praise or confession of his bitterest enemies.⁷⁴ Although he was lame of an hand and foot, his form and stature were not unworthy of his rank; and his vigorous health, so essential to himself and to the world, was corroborated by temperance and exercise. In his familiar discourse he was grave and modest, and, if he was ignorant of the Arabic language,

Character
and merits of
Timour

⁷³ See the translation of the Persian account of their embassy, a curious and original piece (in the ivth part of the Relations de Thévenot). They presented the emperor of China with an old horse which Timour had formerly rode. It was in the year 1419, that they departed from the court of Herat, to which place they returned in 1422 from Peking. [Timour died in February, 1405, see Elias and Ross, Tarikh-i-Rashidi, p. 54 note.]

⁷⁴ From Arabshah, tom. ii. c. 96. The bright or softer colours are borrowed from Sherefeddin, d'Herbelot, and the Institutions. [In one important respect Gibbon's account of Timur and his work is deficient. He has not realised, or brought out, the fact that the greatest result of Timur's empire was the victory of Islam in Central Asia. Timur acted from the beginning in close co-operation with the Musulman ecclesiastics of Transoxiana, and when he won supreme power, he did away with the Mongol and Turkish legislative system of Chingiz and substituted the law of Islam. In regard to the very foundations of the political constitution there is a vast difference between the two systems. Chingiz and his successors were subject to the law (the Yāsák) and bound by its provisions; whereas according to the principles of Islam the head of the state is not bound by the law, but is responsible only to God. Thus the will of the sovereign is set above the law. Timur then broke completely with the Mongol tradition, such as it had been developed under Chinese influence, and drew the Turks of Central Asia out of touch with the far East. As the Mongol power in China was overthrown about the same time by the revolution which set the Ming dynasty on the throne (A.D. 1370), this period marks a general decline of Mongol influence in Asia.]

he spoke with fluency and elegance the Persian and Turkish idioms. It was his delight to converse with the learned on topics of history and science; and the amusement of his leisure hours was the game of chess, which he improved or corrupted with new refinements.⁷⁵ In his religion, he was a zealous, though not perhaps an orthodox, Musulman;⁷⁶ but his sound understanding may tempt us to believe that a superstitious reverence for omens and prophecies, for saints and astrologers, was only affected as an instrument of policy. In the government of a vast empire, he stood alone and absolute, without a rebel to oppose his power, a favourite to seduce his affections, or a minister to mislead his judgment. It was his firmest maxim that, whatever might be the consequence, the word of the prince should never be disputed or recalled; but his foes have maliciously observed that the commands of anger and destruction were more strictly executed than those of beneficence and favour. His sons and grandsons, of whom Timour left six-and-thirty at his decease, were his first and most submissive subjects; and, whenever they deviated from their duty, they were corrected, according to the laws of Zingis, with the bastonade, and afterwards restored to honour and command. Perhaps his heart was not devoid of the social virtues; perhaps he was not incapable of loving his friends and pardoning his enemies; but the rules of morality are founded on the public interest; and it may be sufficient to applaud the *wisdom* of a monarch, for the liberality by which he is not impoverished, and for the justice by which he is strengthened and enriched. To maintain the harmony of authority and obedience, to chastise the proud, to protect the weak, to reward the deserving, to banish vice and idleness from his dominions, to secure the traveller and merchant, to restrain the depredations of the soldier, to cherish the labours of the husbandman, to encourage industry and learning, and, by an equal and modern assessment, to increase the revenue without increasing the taxes, are indeed the duties of a prince; but, in the discharge of these duties, he finds an ample and immediate

⁷⁵ His new system was multiplied from 32 pieces and 64 squares, to 56 pieces and 110 or 130 squares. But, except in his court, the old game has been thought sufficiently elaborate. The Mogul emperor was rather pleased than hurt with the victory of a subject; a chess-player will feel the value of this encomium!

⁷⁶ See Sherefeddin, l. v. c. 15, 25. Arabshah (tom. ii. c. 96, p. 801, 803) reproves the impiety of Timour and the Moguls, who almost preferred to the Koran the *Yacsa*, or Law of Zingis (*cui Deus maledicat*): nor will he believe that Sharokh had abolished the use and authority of that Pagan code.

recompense. Timour might boast that, at his accession to the throne, Asia was the prey of anarchy and rapine; whilst under his prosperous monarchy, a child, fearless and unshaken, might carry a purse of gold from the East to the West. Such was his confidence of merit that from this reformation he derived ~~honour~~ for his victories and a title to universal dominion. The four following observations will serve to appreciate his claim to the public gratitude; and perhaps we shall conclude that the Mogul emperor was rather the scourge than the benefactor of mankind.

1. If some partial disorders, some local oppressions, were healed by the sword of Timour, the remedy was far more pernicious than the disease. By their rapine, cruelty, and discord, the petty tyrants of Persia might afflict their subjects; but whole nations were crushed under the footsteps of the reformer. The ground which had been occupied by flourishing cities was often marked by his abominable trophies, by columns or pyramids of human heads. Astracan, Carizme, Delhi, Ispahan, Bagdad, Aleppo, Damascus, Bursa, Smyrna, and a thousand others, were sacked, or burnt, or utterly destroyed, in his presence, and by his troops; and perhaps his conscience would have been startled if a priest or philosopher had dared to number the millions of victims whom he had sacrificed to the establishment of peace and order.⁷⁷ 2. His most destructive wars were rather inroads than conquests. He invaded Turkestan, Kipzak, Russia, Hindostan, Syria, Anatolia, Armenia, and Georgia, without a hope or a desire of preserving those distant provinces. From thence he departed, laden with spoil; but he left behind him neither troops to awe the contumacious, nor magistrates to protect the obedient, natives. When he had broken the fabric of their ancient government, he abandoned them to the evils which his invasion had aggravated or caused; nor were these evils compensated by any present or possible benefits. 3. The kingdoms of Transoxiana and Persia were the proper field which he laboured to cultivate and adorn as the perpetual inheritance of his family. But his peaceful labours were often interrupted, and sometimes blasted, by the absence of the conqueror. While he triumphed on the Volga or the Ganges, his servants, and even his sons, forgot their master and their duty. The public and

⁷⁷ Besides the bloody passages of this narrative, I must refer to an ~~article~~ in the third volume of the Decline and Fall, which, in a single note (p. 257, note 26), accumulates near 300,000 heads of the monuments of his cruelty. Except in Rowe's play on the fifth of November, I did not expect to hear of Timour's ~~unparalleled~~ moderation (White's preface, p. 7). Yet I can excuse a generous enthusiasm to the reader, and still more in the editor, of the Institutions.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the story of the true *Mustapha*, or of an impostor who personated that lost prince.⁸¹ He fought by his father's side in the battle of Angora; but, when the captive sultan was permitted to inquire for his children, Mousa alone could be found; and the Turkish historians, the slaves of the triumphant faction, are persuaded that his brother was confounded among the slain. If Mustapha escaped from that disastrous field, he was concealed twelve years from his friends and enemies, till he emerged in Thessaly and was hailed by a numerous party as the son and successor of Bajazet. His first defeat would have been his last, had not the true, or false, Mustapha been saved by the Greeks and restored, after the decease of his brother Mahomet, to liberty and empire. A degenerate mind seemed to argue his spurious birth; and, if, on the throne of Hadrianople, he was adored as the Ottoman sultan, his flight, his fetters, and an ignominious gibbet delivered the impostor to popular contempt. A similar character and claim was asserted by several rival pretenders; thirty persons are said to have suffered under the name of Mustapha; and these frequent executions may perhaps insinuate that the Turkish court was not perfectly secure of the death of the lawful prince.

2. After his father's captivity, Isa⁸² reigned for some time in the neighbourhood of Angora, Sinope, and the Black Sea; and his ambassadors were dismissed from the presence of Timour with fair promises and honourable gifts. But their master was soon deprived of his province and life by a jealous brother, the sovereign of Amasia; and the final event⁸³ suggested a pious allusion that the law of Moses and Jesus, of *Isa* and *Mousa*, had been abrogated by the greater *Mahomet*.

3. *Soliman* is not numbered in the list of the Turkish emperors; yet he checked the victorious progress of the Moguls, and after their departure united for a while the thrones of Hadrianople and Bursa. In war, he was brave, active, and fortunate; his courage was softened by clemency; but it was likewise inflamed by presumption, and corrupted by intemperance and idleness.

⁸¹ [It is difficult to decide whether he was an impostor, as the Ottoman, or genuine, as the Greek, historians allege. Zinkeisen leaves the question open (i. 383-384) but with an inclination to the former opinion; Hammer argues for the view that the claimant was the true Mustapha, i. 297.]

⁸² Arabshah, tom. ii. c. 26, whose testimony on this occasion is weighty and valuable. The existence of Isa (unknown to the Turks) is likewise confirmed by Sherefeddin (l. v. c. 57).

⁸³ [Mohammad defeated Isa in battle at Ulubad, A. D. 1403, and again in 1404 (Sad ad-Din, transl. Bratutti, p. 284).]

He relaxed the nerves of discipline in a government where either the subject or the sovereign must continually tremble; his vices alienated the chiefs of the army and the law; and his daily drunkenness, so contemptible in a prince and a man, was doubly odious in a disciple of the prophet. In the slumber of intoxication, he was surprised by his brother Mousa; and, as he fled from Hadrianople towards the Byzantine capital, Soliman was overtaken and slain in a bath, after a reign of seven years and ten months. 4. The investiture of Mousa degraded him as the slave of the Moguls; his tributary kingdom of Anatolia was confined within a narrow limit, nor could his broken militia and empty treasury contend with the hardy and veteran bands of the sovereign of Romania. Mousa fled in disguise from the palace of Boura; traversed the Propontis in an open boat; wandered over the Walachian and Servian hills; and, after some vain attempts, ascended the throne of Hadrianople, so recently stained with the blood of Soliman. In a reign of three years and a half, his troops were victorious against the Christians of Hungary and the Morea; but Mousa was ruined by his timorous disposition and unseasonable clemency. After resigning the sovereignty of Anatolia, he fell a victim to the perfidy of his ministers and the superior ascendant of his brother Mahomet. 5. The final victory of Mahomet was the just recompense of his prudence and moderation. Before his father's captivity, the royal youth had been entrusted with the government of Amasia, thirty days' journey from Constantinople and the Turkish frontier against the Christians of Trebizond and Georgia. The castle, in Asiatic warfare, was esteemed impregnable; and the city of Amasia,⁴⁴ which is equally divided by the river Iris, rises on either side in the form of an amphitheatre, and represents, on a smaller scale, the image of Bagdad. In his rapid career, Timour appears to have overlooked this obscure and contumacious angle of Anatolia; and Mahomet, without provoking the conqueror, maintained his silent independence, and chased from the province the last stragglers of the Tartar host. He relieved himself from the dangerous neighbourhood of Isa; but in the contests of their more powerful brethren his firm neutrality was respected; and, after the triumph of Mousa, he stood forth the heir and avenger of the unfortunate Soliman. Mahomet obtained Anatolia by treaty and Romania by arms; and the soldier who

4. Mousa, A. D. 1410

5. Mahomet I. A. D. 1413-1421

[Victory of Mohammed over Musa at Tihameru, near Sophia]

⁴⁴ *Abulfeda, Geograph. tab. xvii. p. 302. Busbequius, in Itinere C. P. et Amasiano.*

presented him with the head of Mousa was rewarded as the benefactor of his king and country. The eight years of his sole and peaceful reign were usefully employed in banishing the vices of civil discord, and restoring, on a firmer basis, the fabric of the Ottoman monarchy.⁸⁵ His last care was the choice of two vizirs, Bajazet and Ibrahim,⁸⁶ who might guide the youth of his son Amurath; and such was their union and prudence that they concealed, above forty days, the emperor's death, till the arrival of his successor in the palace of Bursa. A new war was kindled in Europe by the prince, or impostor, Mustapha; the first vizir lost his army and his head; but the more fortunate Ibrahim, whose name and family are still revered, extinguished the last pretender to the throne of Bajazet, and closed the scene of domestic hostility.

Reign of
Amurath II.
A.D. 1441-1461,
9th Feb.

Re-union of
the Ottoman
empire, A.D.
1451

In these conflicts, the wisest Turks, and indeed the body of the nation, were strongly attached to the unity of the empire; and Romania and Anatolia, so often torn asunder by private ambition, were animated by a strong and invincible tendency of cohesion. Their efforts might have instructed the Christian powers; and, had they occupied, with a confederate fleet, the straits of Gallipoli, the Ottomans, at least in Europe, must have been speedily annihilated. But the schism of the West, and the factions and wars of France and England, diverted the Latins from this generous enterprise; they enjoyed the present respite without a thought of futurity; and were often tempted by a momentary interest to serve the common enemy of their religion. A colony of Genoese,⁸⁷ which had been planted at Phocæa⁸⁸ on the Ionian coast, was enriched by the lucrative monopoly of alum⁸⁹; and their tranquillity, under the Turkish

⁸⁵ [Mohammad's character was marked by justice, mildness, and freedom from fanaticism.]

⁸⁶ The virtues of Ibrahim are praised by a contemporary Greek (Ducas, c. 25). His descendants are the sole nobles in Turkey; they content themselves with the administration of his pious foundations, are excused from public offices, and receive two annual visits from the sultan (Cantemir, p. 76).

⁸⁷ See Pachymer (l. v. c. 29), Nicephorus Gregoras (l. ii. c. i.), Sberfeddin (l. v. c. 57), and Ducas (c. 25). The last of these, a curious and careful observer, is entitled, from his birth and station, to particular credit in all that concerns Ionia and the islands. Among the nations that resorted to New Phocæa he mentions the English (Ἰγγλῆνοι): an early evidence of Mediterranean trade.

⁸⁸ For the spirit of navigation and freedom of ancient Phocæa, or rather of the Phocæans, consult the first book of Herodotus, and the Geographical Index of his last and learned French translator, M. Larcher (tom. vii. p. 299).

⁸⁹ Phocæa is not enumerated by Pliny (Hist. Nat. xxxv. 52) among the places productive of alum; he reckons Egypt as the first, and for the second the isle of

empire, was secured by the annual payment of tribute. In the last civil war of the Ottomans, the Genoese governor, Adorno, a bold and ambitious youth, embraced the party of Amurath; and undertook, with seven stout galleys, to transport him from Asia to Europe. The sultan and five hundred guards embarked on board the admiral's ship, which was manned by eight hundred of the bravest Franks. His life and liberty were in their hands; nor can we, without reluctance, applaud the fidelity of Adorno, who, in the midst of the passage, knelt before him, and gratefully accepted a discharge of his arrears of tribute. They landed in sight of Mustapha and Gallipoli; two thousand Italians, armed with lances and battle-axes, attended Amurath to the conquest of Hadrianople; and this venal service was soon repaid by the ruin of the commerce and colony of Phocæa.

If Timour had generously marched at the request, and to the relief of, the Greek emperor, he might be entitled to the praise and gratitude of the Christians.⁹⁰ But a Musulman, who carried into Georgia the sword of persecution, and respected the holy warfare of Bajazet, was not disposed to pity or succour the idolaters of Europe. The Tartar followed the impulse of ambition; and the deliverance of Constantinople was the accidental consequence. When Manuel abdicated the government, it was his prayer, rather than his hope, that the ruin of the church and state might be delayed beyond his unhappy days; and, after his return from a western pilgrimage, he expected every hour the news of the sad catastrophe. On a sudden, he was astonished and rejoiced by the intelligence of the retreat, the overthrow, and the captivity of the Ottoman. Manuel⁹¹ immediately sailed from Modon in the Morea; ascended the throne of Constantinople; and dismissed his blind competitor to an easy exile in the isle of Lesbos. The ambassadors of the son of Bajazet were soon introduced to his presence; but their pride was fallen, their

State of the
Greeks
empire, A. D.
1402-1425

Melos, whose alum mines are described by Tournefort (tom. i. lettre iv.), a traveller and a naturalist. After the loss of Phocæa, the Genoese, in 1459, found that useful mineral in the isle of Ischia (Ismael. Bouillaud, ad Ducam, c. 25).

⁹⁰The writer who has the most abused this fabulous generosity is our ingenious Sir William Temple (his Works, vol. iii. p. 349, 350, 8vo edition), that lover of exotic virtue. After the conquest of Russia, &c. and the passage of the Danube, his Tartar hero relieves, visits, admires, and refuses the city of Constantine. His flattering pencil deviates in every line from the truth of history; yet his pleasing fictions are more excusable than the gross errors of Cantemir.

⁹¹For the reigns of Manuel and John, of Mahomet I. and Amurath II. see the Ottoman history of Cantemir (p. 70-95), and the three Greeks, Chalcondyles, Foranias, and Ducas, who is still superior to his rivals.

tone was modest; they were awed by the just apprehensions lest the Greeks should open to the Moguls the gates of Europe. Soliman saluted the emperor by the name of father, and submitted at his hands the government or gift of Romania; and promised to deserve his favour by inviolable friendship, and the restitution of Thessalonica, with the most important places along the Strymon, the Propontis, and the Black Sea. The alliance of Soliman exposed the emperor to the enmity and revenge of Mousa. The Turks appeared in arms before the gates of Constantinople; but they were repulsed by sea and land; and, unless the city was guarded by some foreign mercenaries, the Greeks must have wondered at their own triumph. But, instead of prolonging the division of the Ottoman powers, the policy or passion of Manuel was tempted to assist the most formidable of the sons of Bajazet. He concluded a treaty with Mahomet, whose progress was checked by the insuperable barrier of Gallipoli: the sultan and his troops were transported over the Bosphorus; he was hospitably entertained in the capital; and his successful sally was the first step to the conquest of Romania. The ruin was suspended by the prudence and moderation of the conqueror; he faithfully discharged his own obligations, and those of Soliman; respected the laws of gratitude and peace; and left the emperor guardian of his two younger sons, in the vain hope of saving them from the jealous cruelty of their brother Amurath. But the execution of his last testament would have offended the national honour and religion; and the divan unanimously pronounced that the royal youths should never be abandoned to the custody and education of a Christian dog. On this refusal, the Byzantine councils were divided; but the age and caution of Manuel yielded to the presumption of his son John; and they unsheathed a dangerous weapon of revenge, by dismissing the true or false Mustapha, who had long been detained as a captive and hostage, and for whose maintenance they received an annual pension of three hundred thousand aspers.¹² At the door of his prison, Mustapha subscribed to every proposal; and

¹² The Turkish asper (from the Greek *ἀσπερ* [= white]) is, or was, a piece of white or silver money, at present much debased, but which was formerly equivalent to the 54th part, at least, of a Venetian ducat, or sequin; and the 300,000 aspers, a princely allowance or royal tribute, may be computed at 2500l. sterling (Lening. Pandect. Turc. p. 406-408). [Cantacuscino (in Sansovino, *Historia Universalis de Turchi*, fol. 11 v.) counts 54 aspers to a sultanin or ducat, and this was still the value about the beginning of the 16th century, but in the reign of Selim I., before 1520, 60 aspers went to a ducat, and this value was maintained during the reigns of Sulayman and Selim II.]

the keys of Gallipoli, or rather of Europe, were stipulated as the price of his deliverance. But no sooner was he seated on the throne of Romania than he dismissed the Greek ambassadors with a smile of contempt, declaring, in a pious tone, that, at the day of judgment, he would rather answer for the violation of an oath than for the surrender of a Musulman city into the hands of the infidels. The emperor was at once the enemy of the two rivals; from whom he had sustained, and to whom he had offered, an injury; and the victory of Amurath was followed, in the ensuing spring, by the siege of Constantinople.⁵³

The religious merit of subduing the city of the Cæsars attracted from Asia a crowd of volunteers, who aspired to the crown of martyrdom. Their military ardour was inflamed by the promise of rich spoils and beautiful females; and the sultan's ambition was consecrated by the presence and prediction of Seid Bochar, a descendant of the prophet,⁵⁴ who arrived in the camp, on a mule, with a venerable train of five hundred disciples. But he might blush, if a fanatic could blush, at the failure of his assurances. The strength of the walls resisted an army of two hundred thousand Turks⁵⁵; their assaults were repelled by the sallies of the Greeks and their foreign mercenaries; the old resources of defence were opposed to the new engines of attack; and the enthusiasm of the dervish, who was snatched to heaven in visionary converse with Mahomet, was answered by the credulity of the Christians, who beheld the Virgin Mary, in a violet garment, walking on the rampart and animating their courage.⁵⁶ After a siege of two months, Amurath was recalled to Boursa by a domestic revolt, which had been kindled by Greek treachery, and was soon extinguished by the death of a guiltless brother. While he led his Janisaries to new conquests in Europe and Asia, the Byzantine empire was indulged in a

Siege of
Constanti-
nople by
Amurath II.
A.D. 1422, 10th
June-24th
August

⁵³ For the siege of Constantinople in 1422, see the particular and contemporary narrative of John Cananus, published by Leo Allatius, at the end of his edition of *Acropolita* (p. 188-199).

⁵⁴ [This number, given by Ducas and Phrantza, is obviously a gross exaggeration, perhaps a slip of the pen. Cp. Zinkeisen i. 524 (and 527), who think the besiegers did not exceed 40,000 or 50,000. According to Cananus the first corps brought against the city was 10,000; then followed "another army" like a hail storm, p. 459 ed. Bonn.]

servile and precarious respite of thirty years. Manuel sank into the grave; and John Palæologus was permitted to reign, for an annual tribute of three hundred thousand aspera, and the dereliction of almost all that he held beyond the suburbs of Constantinople.

The emperor
John Palæolo-
gus II. A.D.
1422, 21st July-
A.D. 1448, 21st
October

Hereditary
succession and
merit of the
Ottomans

[A.D. 1299-
1306]

In the establishment and restoration of the Turkish empire, the first merit must doubtless be assigned to the personal qualities of the sultans; since, in human life, the most important scenes will depend on the character of a single actor. By some shades of wisdom and virtue they may be discriminated from each other; but, except in a single instance, a period of nine reigns and two hundred and sixty-five years is occupied from the elevation of Othman to the death of Soliman, by a rare series of warlike and active princes, who impressed their subjects with obedience and their enemies with terror. Instead of the slothful luxury of the seraglio, the heirs of royalty were educated in the council and the field; from early youth they were entrusted by their fathers with the command of provinces and armies; and this manly institution, which was often productive of civil war, must have essentially contributed to the discipline and vigour of the monarchy. The Ottomans cannot style themselves, like the Arabian caliphs, the descendants or successors of the apostle of God; and the kindred which they claim with the Tartar khans of the house of Zingis appears to be founded in flattery rather than in truth.⁹⁷ Their origin is obscure; but their sacred and indefeasible right, which no time can erase and no violence can infringe, was soon and unalterably implanted in the minds of their subjects. A weak or vicious sultan may be deposed and strangled; but his inheritance devolves to an infant or an idiot; nor has the most daring rebel presumed to ascend the throne of his lawful sovereign.⁹⁸ While the transient dynasties of Asia have been continually subverted by a crafty vizir in the palace or a victorious general in the camp, the Ottoman succession has been confirmed by the practice of five centuries, and is now incorporated with the vital principle of the Turkish nation.

⁹⁷ See Rycout (l. i. c. 13). The Turkish sultans assume the title of Khan. Yet Abulghasi is ignorant of his Ottoman cousins.

⁹⁸ The third grand vizir of the name of Kiuperli, who was slain at the battle of Salankamen in 1691 (Cantemir, p. 382), presumed to say that all the successors of Soliman had been fools or tyrants, and that it was time to abolish the race (Marnigli Stato Militare. &c. p. 28). This political heretic was a good Whig, and justified, against the French ambassador, the revolution of England (Mignot, Hist. des Ottomans, tom. iii. p. 434). His presumption condemns the singular
of continuing offices in the same family.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

leap, to run, to shoot with the bow, and afterwards with the musket; till they were drafted into the chambers and companies of the Janizaries, and severely trained in the military or monastic discipline of the order. The youths most conspicuous for birth, talents, and beauty, were admitted into the inferior class of *Agiamoglans*, or the more liberal rank of *Ichoglans*, of whom the former were attached to the palace, and the latter to the person of the prince. In four successive schools, under the rod of the white eunuchs, the arts of horsemanship and of darting the javelin were their daily exercise, while those of a more studious cast applied themselves to the study of the Koran and the knowledge of the Arabic and Persian tongues. As they advanced in seniority and merit, they were gradually dismissed to military, civil, and even ecclesiastical employments; the longer their stay, the higher was their expectation; till, at a mature period, they were admitted into the number of the forty agas, who stood before the sultan, and were promoted by his choice to the government of provinces and the first honours of the empire.¹⁰² Such a mode of institution was admirably adapted to the form and spirit of a despotic monarchy. The ministers and generals were, in the strictest sense, the slaves of the emperor, to whose bounty they were indebted for their instruction and support. When they left the seraglio, and suffered their beards to grow as the symbol of enfranchisement, they found themselves in an important office, without faction or friendship, without parents and without heirs, dependent on the hand which had raised them from the dust, and which, on the slightest displeasure, could break in pieces these statues of glass, as they are aptly termed by the Turkish proverb.¹⁰³ In the slow and painful steps of education, their character and talents were unfolded to a discerning eye: the man, naked and alone, was reduced to the standard of his personal merit; and, if the

(Ajami-
Oglans)

¹⁰² This sketch of the Turkish education and discipline is chiefly borrowed from Rycaut's State of the Ottoman Empire, the Stato Militare del' Imperio Ottomano of Count Marsigli (in Haya, 1732, in folio), and a Description of the Seraglio, approved by Mr. Greaves himself, a curious traveller, and inserted in the second volume of his works. [One important feature of the Ottoman education was that pains were taken to discover the natural faculties of each individual and to train him for the work to which he was best adapted. On the history of the Janissaries, their organisation and duties, the variations in their effective strength, see A. Djévad Bey, Etat militaire Ottoman, vol. i. 1882. There is a good brief account of the military establishment in Ranke's little work on the Ottoman Empire (Engl. transl. by Kelly, 1843).]

¹⁰³ From the series of 115 vizirs till the siege of Vienna (Marsigli, p. 13), their place may be valued at three years and a half purchase.

sovereign had wisdom to choose, he possessed a pure and boundless liberty of choice. The Ottoman candidates were trained by the virtues of abstinence to those of action; by the habits of submission, to those of command. A similar spirit was diffused among the troops; and their silence and sobriety, their patience and modesty, have extorted the reluctant praise of their Christian enemies.¹⁰⁴ Nor can the victory appear doubtful, if we compare the discipline and exercise of the Janizaries with the pride of birth, the independence of chivalry, the ignorance of the new levies, the mutinous temper of the veterans, and the vice of intemperance and disorder which so long contaminated the armies of Europe.

The only hope of salvation for the Greek empire and the adjacent kingdoms would have been some more powerful weapon, ^{Invention and use of gun-powder} some discovery in the art of war, that should give them a decisive superiority over their Turkish foes. Such a weapon was in their hands; such a discovery had been made in the critical moment of their fate. The chymists of China or Europe had found, by casual or elaborate experiments, that a mixture of saltpetre, sulphur, and charcoal produces, with a spark of fire, a tremendous explosion. It was soon observed that, if the expansive force were compressed in a strong tube, a ball of stone or iron might be expelled with irresistible and destructive velocity. The precise era of the invention and application of gunpowder¹⁰⁵ is involved in doubtful traditions and equivocal language; yet we may clearly discern that it was known before the middle of the fourteenth century; and that, before the end of the same, the use of artillery in battles and sieges, by sea and land, was familiar to the states of Germany, Italy, Spain, France, and England.¹⁰⁶ The priority of nations is of small account; none

¹⁰⁴ See the entertaining and judicious letters of Busbequius.

¹⁰⁵ The 1st and 2d volumes of Dr. Watson's Chemical Essays contain two valuable discourses on the discovery and composition of gunpowder.

¹⁰⁶ On this subject, modern testimonies cannot be trusted. The original passages are collected by Ducange (Gloss. Latin. tom. i. p. 675, *Bombarda*). But in the early doubtful twilight, the name, sound, fire, and effect, that seem to express an artillery, may be fairly interpreted of the old engines and the Greek fire. For the English cannon at Crecy, the authority of John Villani (Chron. l. xii. c. 65) might be weighed against the silence of Froissard [and the English authorities]. The historian (Antiquit. Italie medii Ævi, tom. ii. Dissert. xxvi. p. 514, 515) has mentioned a decisive passage from Petrarch (de Remediis utriusque Fortune lib. ii.), who, before the year 1344, execrates this terrestrial thunder, *numquam rara, nunquam commota*. [La Cabane, De la poudre à canon et de son introduction en France, &c.; Reinaud et Favé, Du feu grégois et des origines de la poudre à canon, &c.]

could derive any exclusive benefit from their previous or superior knowledge ; and in the common improvement they stood on the same level of relative power and military science. Nor was it possible to circumscribe the secret within the pale of the church ; it was disclosed to the Turks by the treachery of apostates and the selfish policy of rivals ; and the sultans had sense to adopt, and wealth to reward, the talents of a Christian engineer. The Genoese who transported Amurath into Europe must be accused as his preceptors ; and it was probably by their hands that his cannon was cast and directed at the siege of Constantinople.¹⁰⁷ The first attempt was indeed unsuccessful ; but in the general warfare of the age the advantage was on their side who were most commonly the assailants ; for a while the proportion of the attack and defence was suspended ; and this thundering artillery was pointed against the walls and turrets which had been erected only to resist the less potent engines of antiquity. By the Venetians, the use of gunpowder was communicated without reproach to the sultans of Egypt and Persia, their allies against the Ottoman power. The secret was soon propagated to the extremities of Asia ; and the advantage of the European was confined to his easy victories over the savages of the new world. If we contrast the rapid progress of this mischievous discovery with the slow and laborious advances of reason, science, and the arts of peace, a philosopher, according to his temper, will laugh or weep at the folly of mankind.

¹⁰⁷ The Turkish cannon, which Ducas (c. 30) first introduces before Belgrade (A.D. 1436), is mentioned by Chalcondyles (l. v. p. 123 [p. 231 ed. Bonn]) in 1444, at the siege of Constantinople.

CHAPTER LXVI

Applications of the Eastern Emperors to the Popes—Visits to the West, of John the First, Manuel, and John the Second, Palæologus—Union of the Greek and Latin Churches, promoted by the Council of Basil, and concluded at Ferrara and Florence—State of Literature at Constantinople—Its Revival in Italy by the Greek Fugitives—Curiosity and Emulation of the Latins

IN the four last centuries of the Greek emperors, their friendly or hostile aspect towards the pope and the Latins may be observed as the thermometer of their prosperity or distress, as the scale of the rise and fall of the barbarian dynasties.¹ When the Turks of the house of Seljuk pervaded Asia and threatened Constantinople, we have seen at the council of Placentia the suppliant ambassadors of Alexius imploring the protection of the common father of the Christians. No sooner had the arms of the French pilgrims removed the sultan from Nice to Iconium than the Greek princes resumed, or avowed, their genuine hatred and contempt for the schismatics of the West, which precipitated the first downfall of their empire. The date of the Mogul invasion is marked in the soft and charitable language of John Vatases. After the recovery of Constantinople, the throne of the first Palæologus was encompassed by foreign and domestic enemies; as long as the sword of Charles was suspended over his head, he basely courted the favour of the Roman pontiff, and sacrificed to the present danger his faith, his virtue, and the affection of his subjects. On the decease of Michael, the prince and people asserted the independence of their church

Embassy of
the younger
Andronicus to
Pope Benedict
XII. A. D. 1260

¹[The following works deal with the general history of the schism of the Greek and Latin Churches and the attempts at reunion: Maimbourg, *Histoire du Schisme d'Occident*, 2 vols., 1677; Pitsipios, *L'Église orientale*, 1855; Pichler, *Geschichte der christlichen Trennung zwischen Orient und Occident*, 2 vols., 1864-5; Demitriades, *Ἱστορία τῆς ὀρθοδόξου καὶ σχισματικῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀπὸ τῆς ὁμοδόξου Ἑλληνικῆς ἐκκλησίας*, *History of the Byzantine-Oriental Church from the end of the 11th to the middle of the 15th century* (in Russian) 1892.]

and the purity of their creed; the elder Andronicus neither feared nor loved the Latins; in his last distress, pride was the safeguard of superstition; nor could he decently retract in his age the firm and orthodox declarations of his youth. His grandson, the younger Andronicus, was less a slave in his temper and situation; and the conquest of Bithynia by the Turks admonished him to seek a temporal and spiritual alliance with the Western princes. After a separation and silence of fifty years, a secret agent, the monk Barlaam, was dispatched to Pope Benedict the Twelfth; and his artful instructions appear to have been drawn by the master-hand of the great domestic.² "Most holy father," was he commissioned to say, "the emperor is not less desirous than yourself of an union between the two churches; but in this delicate transaction he is obliged to respect his own dignity and the prejudices of his subjects. The ways of union are twofold, force and persuasion. Of force, the inefficacy has been already tried; since the Latins have subdued the empire, without subduing the minds, of the Greeks. The method of persuasion, though slow, is sure and permanent. A deputation of thirty or forty of our doctors would probably agree with those of the Vatican, in the love of truth and the unity of belief; but on their return, what would be the use, the recompense, of such agreement? the scorn of their brethren, and the reproaches of a blind and obstinate nation. Yet that nation is accustomed to reverence the general councils which have fixed the articles of our faith; and, if they reprobate the decrees of Lyons, it is because the Eastern churches were neither heard nor represented in that arbitrary meeting. For this salutary end it will be expedient, and even necessary, that a well-chosen legate should be sent into Greece, to convene the patriarchs of Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem, and, with their aid, to prepare a free and universal synod. But at this moment," continued the subtle agent, "the empire is assaulted and endangered by the Turks, who have occupied four of the greatest cities of Anatolia. The Christian inhabitants have expressed a wish of returning to their allegiance and religion; but the forces and revenues of the emperor are insufficient for their deliverance; and the Roman legate must be accompanied, or preceded, by an

The arguments for a crusade and union

² This curious instruction was transcribed (I believe) from the Vatican archives by Odoricus Raynaldus, in his Continuation of the Annals of Baronius (Rome, 1646-1677, in 20 volumes in folio). I have contented myself with the Abbé Fleury (Hist. Ecclésiastique, tom. xx, p. 1-8), whose extracts I have always found to be clear, accurate, and impartial. [For Barlaam the Calabrian see below p. 118.]

army of Franks, to expel the infidels and open a way to the holy sepulchre." If the suspicious Latins should require some pledge, some previous effect of the sincerity of the Greeks, the answers of Barlaam were perspicuous and rational. "1. A general synod can alone consummate the union of the churches: ~~now can~~ such a synod be held till the three Oriental patriarchs, and a great number of bishops, are enfranchised from the Mahometan yoke. 2. The Greeks are alienated by a long series of oppression and injury: they must be reconciled by some act of brotherly love, some effectual succour, which may fortify the authority and arguments of the emperor and the friends of the union. 3. If some difference of faith or ceremonies should be found incurable, the Greeks, however, are the disciples of Christ, and the Turks are the common enemies of the Christian name. The Armenians, Cyprians, and Rhodians are equally attacked; and it will become the piety of the French princes to draw their swords in the general defence of religion. 4. Should the subjects of Andronicus be treated as the worst of schismatics, of heretics, of pagans, a judicious policy may yet instruct the powers of the West to embrace an useful ally, to uphold a sinking empire, to guard the confines of Europe; and rather to join the Greeks against the Turks than to expect the union of the Turkish arms with the troops and treasures of captive Greece." The reasons, the offers, and the demands of Andronicus were eluded with cold and stately indifference. The kings of France and Naples declined the dangers and glory of a crusade: the pope refused to call a new synod to determine old articles of faith; and his regard for the obsolete claims of the Latin emperor and clergy engaged him to use an offensive superscription: "To the moderator³ of the Greeks, and the persons who style themselves the patriarchs of the Eastern churches". For such an embassy, a time and character less propitious could not easily have been found. Benedict the Twelfth⁴ was a dull peasant, perplexed

³ The ambiguity of this title is happy or ingenious; and *moderator*, as synonymous to *rector*, *gubernator*, is a word of classical, and even Ciceronian, Latinity, which may be found, not in the Glossary of Ducange, but in the Thesaurus of Robert Stephens.

⁴ The first epistle (sive titulo) of Petrarch exposes the danger of the *dark* and *dim* incapacity of the *pilot*. *Hæc inter, vino madidus, ævo gravis ac soporifero sum peritus, jamjam nutitat, dormitat, jam somno præceps, atque (utinam solus) sulc.* . . . *Non quanto felicius patrio terram sulcasset aratro, quam scalmum piscationis ascendisset.* This satire engages his biographer to weigh the virtues and ~~charges~~ *charges* of Benedict XII., which have been exaggerated by Guelphs and Ghibelines, by English and Protestants (see Mémoires sur la Vie de Pétrarque, tom. i. p. 259; l. not. 15, p. 13-16). He gave occasion to the saying, *Bibamus papaliter*.

with scruples, and immersed in sloth and wine; his pride might enrich with a third crown the papal tiara, but he was alike unfit for the regal and the pastoral office.

After the decease of Andronicus, while the Greeks were distracted by intestine war, they could not presume to agitate a general union of the Christians. But, as soon as Cantacuzene had subdued and pardoned his enemies, he was anxious to justify, or at least to extenuate, the introduction of the Turks into Europe and the nuptials of his daughter with a Musulman prince. Two officers of state, with a Latin interpreter, were sent in his name to the Roman court, which was transplanted to Avignon, on the banks of the Rhone, during a period of seventy years; they represented the hard necessity which had urged him to embrace the alliance of the miscreants, and pronounced by his command the specious and edifying sounds of union and crusade. Pope Clement the Sixth,^b the successor of Benedict, received them with hospitality and honour, acknowledged the innocence of their sovereign, excused his distress, applauded his magnanimity, and displayed a clear knowledge of the state and revolutions of the Greek empire, which he had imbibed from the honest accounts of a Savoyard lady, an attendant of the empress Anne.^c If Clement was ill endowed with the virtues of a priest, he possessed, however, the spirit and magnificence of a prince, whose liberal hand distributed benefices and kingdoms with equal facility. Under his reign, Avignon was the seat of pomp and pleasure; in his youth he had surpassed the licentiousness of a baron; and the palace, nay, the bed-chamber of the pope was adorned, or polluted, by the visits of his female favourites. The wars of France and England were adverse to the holy enterprise; but his vanity was amused by the splendid idia; and the Greek ambassadors returned with two Latin bishops, the ministers of the pontiff. On their arrival at Constantinople, the emperor and the nuncios admired each other's piety and eloquence; and their frequent conferences were filled with mutual

^a See the original Lives of Clement VI. in Muratori (*Script. Rerum Italicarum*, tom. iii. p. ii. p. 550-589); Matteo Villani (*Chron.* l. iii. c. 43, in Muratori, tom. xiv. p. 186), who styles him, *molto cavalleresco, poco religioso*; Fleury (*Hist. Ecclés.* tom. xx. p. 126); and the *Vie de Pétrarque* (tom. ii. p. 42-45). The Abbé de Sade treats him with the most indulgence; but he is a gentleman as well as a priest.

^b Her name (most probably corrupted) was Zampea. She had accompanied and alone remained with her mistress at Constantinople, where her prudence, erudition, and politeness deserved the praises of the Greeks themselves (*Cantacuzene*, l. i. c. 42).

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

acene was in arms at Hadrianople; and Palæologus could depend neither on himself nor on his people. By his mother's advice, and in the hope of foreign aid, he abjured the rights both of the church and state; and the act of slavery,⁶ subscribed in purple ink and sealed with the golden bull, was privately entrusted to an Italian agent. The first article of the treaty is an oath of fidelity and obedience to Innocent the Sixth and his successors, the supreme pontiffs of the Roman and Catholic church. The emperor promises to entertain, with due reverence, their legates and nuncios; to assign a palace for their residence, and a temple for their worship; and to deliver his second son Manuel as the hostage of his faith. For these condescensions, he requires a prompt succour of fifteen galleys, with five hundred men at arms and a thousand archers, to serve against his Christian and Mussulman enemies. Palæologus engages to impose on his clergy and people the same spiritual yoke; but, as the resistance of the Greeks might be justly foreseen, he adopts the two effectual methods of corruption and education. The legate was empowered to distribute the vacant benefices among the ecclesiastics who should subscribe the creed of the Vatican; three schools were instituted to instruct the youth of Constantinople in the language and doctrine of the Latins; and the name of Andronicus, the heir of the empire, was enrolled as the first student. Should he fail in the measures of persuasion or force, Palæologus declares himself unworthy to reign; transfers to the pope all regal and paternal authority; and invests Innocent with full power to regulate the family, the government, and the marriage of his son and successor. But this treaty was neither executed nor published. The Roman galleys were as vain and imaginary as the submission of the Greeks; and it was only by the secrecy, that their sovereign escaped the dishonour, of this fruitless humiliation.

The tempest of the Turkish arms soon burst on his head; and, after the loss of Hadrianople and Romania, he was inclosed in his capital, the vassal of the haughty Amurath, with the miserable hope of being the last devoured by the savage. In this abject state, Palæologus embraced the resolution of embarking for Venice and casting himself at the feet of the pope. He was the first of the Byzantine princes who had ever visited the unknown regions of the West, yet in them alone he could seek

⁶ See this ignominious treaty in Fleury (Hist. Eccles. p. 152-154), from Raynaldus, who drew it from the Vatican archives. It was not worth the trouble of a paper forgery.

Visit of John
Palæologus
to Rome, V. 15
1453, A. D.
October 24.

lief; and with less violation of his dignity be
 the sacred college than at the Ottoman *Porte*.
 ence, the Roman pontiffs were returning from
 banks of the Tiber; Urban the Fifth,⁹ of a mild
 nature, encouraged or allowed the pilgrimage of
 him; and, within the same year, enjoyed the glory
 at the Vatican the two imperial shadows who repre-
 sent of Constantine and Charlemagne. In this
 the emperor of Constantinople, whose vanity
 mistress, gave more than could be expected of
 and formal submissions. A previous trial was
 in the presence of four cardinals, he acknow-
 ledged Catholic, the supremacy of the pope and the
 gift of the Holy Ghost. After this purification,
 he went to a public audience in the church of St.
 Peter, in the midst of the cardinals, was seated on his
 throne as monarch, after three genuflexions, devoutly
 raised his hands, and at length the mouth, of the holy
 father read high mass in his presence, allowed him to
 ride on his mule, and treated him with a sumptuous
 Italian. The entertainment of Palæologus was
 admirable; yet some difference was observed be-
 tween the East and West;¹⁰ nor could the former
 enjoy the rare privilege of chanting the gospel in
 the conclave.¹¹ In favour of his proselyte Urban strove
 against the French king and the other powers of
 the East; he found them cold in the general cause and active
 in domestic quarrels. The last hope of the emperor
 was a mercenary, John Hawkwood,¹² or Acuto,

original Lives of Urban V. (in Muratori, Script. Rerum Itali-
 carum, tom. vi. p. 623, 635), and the Ecclesiastical Annals of Spondanus (tom.
 i. p. 7) and Raynaldus (Fleury, Hist. Eccles. tom. xx. p. 223,
 &c.) variations, I suspect the papal writers of slightly magnify-
 ing Palæologus.

nam si fuisset Imperator Romanorum. Yet his title of Im-
 perator was no longer disputed (Vit. Urban V. p. 623).

and the successors of Charlemagne, and to them only on Christ-
 mas festivals, these Imperial deacons were content to serve the
 pope, with the book and the *corporal*. Yet the Abbé de Sade
 thought the merits of Charles IV. might have entitled him, though
 he died young (A.D. 1368, 1st November), to the whole privilege. He
 speaks of the privilege and the man (Vie de Pétrarque, tom.

of the corruptions, the etymology of *Falcone in bosco* (Matteo
 Villani, l. xi. c. 79, in Muratori, tom. vi. p. 107)
 and the English word *Hawkwood*, the true name of our adventur-

who, with a band of adventurers, the White Brotherhood, had ravaged Italy from the Alps to Calabria; sold his services to the hostile states; and incurred a just excommunication by shooting his arrows against the papal residence. A special licence was granted to negotiate with the outlaw; but the forces, or the spirit, of Hawkwood were unequal to the enterprise; and it was for the advantage perhaps of Palæologus to be disappointed of a succour that must have been costly, that could not be effectual, and which might have been dangerous.¹³ The disconsolate Greek¹⁴ prepared for his return, but even his return was impeded by a most ignominious obstacle. On his arrival at Venice, he had borrowed large sums at exorbitant usury; but his coffers were empty, his creditors were impatient, and his person was detained as the best security for the payment. His eldest son Andronicus, the regent of Constantinople, was repeatedly urged to exhaust every resource, and, even by stripping the churches, to extricate his father from captivity and disgrace. But the unnatural youth was insensible of the disgrace, and secretly pleased with the captivity of the emperor; the state was poor, the clergy was obstinate; nor could some religious scruple be wanting to excuse the guilt of his indifference and delay. Such undutiful neglect was severely reprov'd by the piety of his brother Manuel, who instantly sold or mortgaged all that he possessed, embarked for Venice, relieved his father, and pledged his own freedom to be responsible for the debt. On his return to Constantinople, the parent and king distinguished his two sons with suitable rewards; but the faith and manners of the slothful Palæologus had not been improved by his Roman pilgrimage; and his apostacy or conversion, devoid of any spiritual or temporal effects, was speedily forgotten by the Greeks and Latins.¹⁶

His return to
Constantinople, A.D.
1370

ous countryman (Thomas Walsingham, *Hist. Anglican.* inter *Scriptores Camdeni*, p. 184). After two and twenty victories and one defeat, he died, in 1394, General of the Florentines, and was buried with such honours as the republic has not paid to Dante or Petrarch (Muratori, *Annali d'Italia*, tom. xii. p. 212-371).

¹³ This torrent of English (by birth or service) overflowed from France into Italy after the peace of Bretigny in 1360. Yet the exclamation of Muratori (*Annali*, tom. xii. p. 197) is rather true than civil. "Ci mancava ancor questo, che dopo essere calpestrata l'Italia da tanti masnadieri Tedeschi ed Ungberi, venissero fin dall'Inghilterra nuovi cani a finire di divorarla."

¹⁴ Chalcondyles, l. i. p. 25, 26 [p. 50 ed. Bonn]. The Greek supposes his journey to the king of France, which is sufficiently refuted by the silence of the national historians. Nor am I much more inclined to believe that Palæologus departed from Italy, *valde bene consolatus et contentus* (Vit. Urban. V. p. 623).

¹⁵ His return in 1370, and the coronation of Manuel, 25th September, 1373 (Ducange, *Fam. Byzant.* p. 241), leaves some intermediate æra for the conspiracy and punishment of Andronicus.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

of the French, to display their magnificence and amuse his grief. He was indulged in the liberty of his chapel; and the doctors of the Sorbonne were astonished, and possibly scandalized, by the language, the rites, and the vestments of his Greek clergy. But the slightest glance on the state of the kingdom must teach him to despair of any effectual assistance. The unfortunate Charles, though he enjoyed some lucid intervals, continually relapsed into furious or stupid insanity; the reins of government were alternately seized by his brother and uncle, the dukes of Orleans and Burgundy, whose factious competition prepared the miseries of civil war. The former was a gay youth, dissolved in luxury and love; the latter was the father of John, count of Nevers, who had so lately been ransomed from Turkish captivity; and, if the fearless son was ardent to revenge his defeat, the more prudent Burgundy was content with the cost and peril of the first experiment. When Manuel had satiated the curiosity, and perhaps fatigued the patience, of the French, he resolved on a visit to the adjacent island. In his progress from Dover, he was entertained at Canterbury with due reverence by the prior and monks of St. Austin; and, on Blackheath, King Henry the Fourth, with the English court, saluted the Greek hero (I copy our old historian), who, during many days, was lodged and treated in London as Emperor of the East.²⁰ But the state of England was still more adverse to the design of the holy war. In the same year, the hereditary sovereign had been deposed and murdered; the reigning prince was a successful usurper, whose ambition was punished by jealousy and remorse; nor could Henry of Lancaster withdraw his person or forces from the defence of a throne incessantly shaken by conspiracy and rebellion. He pitied, he praised, he feasted, the emperor of Constantinople; but, if the English monarch assumed the cross, it was only to appease his people, and perhaps his conscience, by the merit or semblance of this pious intention.²¹ Satisfied, however, with gifts and honours, Manuel returned to Paris; and, after

of England,
A.D. 1400,
December

His return to
Greece, A.D.
1402

²⁰ A short note of Manuel in England is extracted by Dr. Hody from a Ms. at Lambeth (*de Græcis illustribus*, p. 14), C. P. Imperator, diu variisque et horrendis Paganorum insultibus coartatus, ut pro eisdem resistentiâ triumphalem perquireret Anglorum Regem visitare decrevit, &c. Rex (says Walsingham, p. 364) nobili apparatu . . . suscepit (ut debuit) tantum Heroa, duxitque Londonias, et per multos dies exhibuit gloriose, pro exensis hospitii sui solvens, et eum respiciens [dignis] tanto fastigio donativis. He repeats the same in his *Upodigma Neustrisæ* p. 556).

²¹ Shakespeare begins and ends the play of Henry IV. with that prince's vow of a crusade, and his belief that he should die in Jerusalem.

a residence of two years in the West, shaped his course through Germany and Italy, embarked at Venice, and patiently expected, in the *Mæra*, the moment of his ruin or deliverance. Yet he had escaped the ignominious necessity of offering his religion to public or private sale. The Latin church was distracted by the great schism; the kings, the nations, the universities, of Europe were divided in their obedience between the popes of Rome and Avignon; and the emperor, anxious to conciliate the friendship of both parties, abstained from any correspondence with the indigent and unpopular rivals. His journey coincided with the year of the jubilee; but he passed through Italy without desiring or deserving the plenary indulgence which abolished the guilt or penance of the sins of the faithful. The Roman pope was offended by this neglect; accused him of irreverence to an image of Christ; and exhorted the princes of Italy to reject and abandon the obstinate schismatic.²²

During the period of the crusades, the Greeks beheld, with Greek knowledge and descriptions astonishment and terror, the perpetual stream of emigration that flowed, and continued to flow, from the unknown climates of the West. The visits of their last emperors removed the veil of separation, and they disclosed to their eyes the powerful nations of Europe, whom they no longer presumed to brand with the name of barbarians. The observations of Manuel and his more inquisitive followers have been preserved by a Byzantine historian of the times;²³ his scattered ideas I shall collect and stridge; and it may be amusing enough, perhaps instructive, to contemplate the rude pictures of Germany, France, and England, whose ancient and modern state are so familiar to our minds. I. of Germany *Gunawr* (says the Greek Chalcondyles) is of ample latitude from Vienna to the Ocean; and it stretches (a strange geography!) from Prague in Bohemia to the river Tartessus and the Pyrenean Mountains.²⁴ The soil, except in figs and olives, is sufficiently

²² This fact is preserved in the *Historia Politica*, A.D. 1391-1478, published by *Marin Crusius* (*Turco-Græci*, p. 1-43). The image of Christ which the Greek emperor refused to worship was probably a work of sculpture.

²³ The Greek and Turkish history of *Laonicus Chalcondyles* ends with the winter of 1463, and the abrupt conclusion seems to mark that he laid down his pen in the same year. We know that he was an Athenian, and that some contemporaries of the same name contributed to the revival of the Greek language in Italy. But in his numerous digressions the modest historian has never introduced himself; and his editor *Leunclavius*, as well as *Fabricius* (*Bibliot. Græc. tom. vi. p. 974*), seems ignorant of his life and character. For his descriptions of Germany, France and England, see l. ii. p. 36, 37 [p. 70 sqq.], 44-50 [p. 85 sqq.].

²⁴ I shall not animadvert on the geographical errors of Chalcondyles. In this instance, he perhaps followed and mistook *Herodotus* (l. ii. c. 33), whose text may

fruitful; the air is salubrious; the bodies of the natives are robust and healthy; and these cold regions are seldom visited with the calamities of pestilence or earthquakes. After the Scythians or Tartars, the Germans are the most numerous of nations; they are brave and patient, and, were they united under a single head, their force would be irresistible. By the gift of the pope, they have acquired the privilege of choosing the Roman emperor;²⁶ nor is any people more devoutly attached to the faith and obedience of the Latin patriarch. The greatest part of the country is divided among the princes and prelates; but Strasburg, Cologne, Hamburg, and more than two hundred free cities are governed by sage and equal laws, according to the will, and for the advantage, of the whole community. The use of duels, or single combats on foot, prevails among them in peace and war; their industry excels in all the mechanic arts; and the Germans may boast of the invention of gunpowder and cannon, which is now diffused over the greatest part of the world. II. The kingdom of FRANCE is spread above fifteen or twenty days' journey from Germany to Spain, and from the Alps to the British Ocean, containing many flourishing cities, and among these Paris, the seat of the king, which surpasses the rest in riches and luxury. Many princes and lords alternately wait in his palace and acknowledge him as their sovereign; the most powerful are the dukes of Bretagne and Burgundy, of whom the latter possesses the wealthy province of Flanders, whose harbours are frequented by the ships and merchants of our own and the more remote seas. The French are an ancient and opulent people; and their language and manners, though somewhat different, are not dissimilar from those of the Italians. Vain of the Imperial dignity of Charlemagne, of their victories over the Saracens, and of the exploits of their heroes, Oliver and Rowland,²⁶ they esteem themselves the first of the western nations; but this foolish

of France; be explained (Herodote de Larcher, tom. ii. p. 219, 220), or whose ignorance may be excused. Had these modern Greeks never read Strabo, or any of their lesser geographers?

²⁶ A citizen of new Rome, while new Rome survived, would have scorned to dignify the German *Ῥῆξ* with the titles of *Βασιλεὺς*, or *Ἀυτοκράτωρ Ῥωμαίων*; but all pride was extinct in the bosom of Chalcondyles; and he describes the Byzantine prince and his subject, by the proper, though humble names of *Ἕλληνας*, and *Βασιλεὺς Ἑλλήνων*. [Cp. above vol. vi. pp. 328-9.]

²⁷ Most of the old romances were translated in the xivth century into French prose, and soon became the favourite amusement of the knights and ladies in the court of Charles VI. If a Greek believed in the exploits of Rowland and Oliver, he may surely be excused, since the monks of St. Denys, the national historians, have inserted the fables of Archbishop Turpin in their Chronicles of France.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

England, and assured of the virtue of our mothers, we may smile at the credulity, or resent the injustice, of the Greeks, who must have confounded a modest salute²⁰ with a voluntary embrace. But his credulity and injustice may teach an important lesson: to distrust the accounts of foreign and remote nations, and to suspend our belief of every tale that deviates from the laws of nature and the character of man.²¹

After his return, and the victory of Timour, Manuel reigned many years in prosperity and peace. As long as the sons of Bajaset solicited his friendship and spared his dominions, he was satisfied with the national religion; and his leisure was employed in composing twenty theological dialogues for its defence.²² The appearance of the Byzantine ambassadors at the council of Constance²³ announces the restoration of the Turkish power, as well as of the Latin church; the conquest of the sultan, Mahomet and Amurath, reconciled the emperor to the Vatican; and the siege of Constantinople almost tempted him to acquiesce in the double procession of the Holy Ghost. When Martin the Fifth ascended, without a rival, the chair of St. Peter, a friendly intercourse of letters and embassies was revived between the East and West. Ambition on one side and distress on the other dictated the same decent language of charity and peace. The artful Greek expressed a desire of marrying his six sons to Italian princesses; and the Roman, not less artful, dispatched the

Indifference
of Manuel
towards the
Latin, A.D.
1402-1417

The negro
tradition,
A.D.
1417-1418

²⁰ Erasmus (Epist. Fausto Andreliano) has a pretty passage on the English custom of kissing strangers on their arrival and departure, from whence, however, he draws no scandalous inferences.

²¹ Perhaps we may apply this remark to the community of wives among the old Britons, as it is supposed by Caesar and Dion (Dion Cassius, l. lxxii. tom. ii. p. 1007 [c. 6]), with Reimar's judicious annotation. The *Arroy of Otabeite*, so curious at first, is become less visible and scandalous, in proportion as we have studied the manners of that gentle and amorous people.

²² [Manuel composed in 26 dialogues a defence of orthodox Christianity against Islam. The whole work was entitled *Διάλογος ἐπι τῆς τῆς Ἰσλαμικῆς ἀποσκευῆς ἐπι τῆς ἰσλαμικῆς ἰστορίας*, and grew out of conversations which Manuel had had at Ancyra in 1300 with a Turkish muteritis. Only the two first dialogues have been published (Migne, P.G. 156, p. 126-127). Manuel wrote much and most of his published works will be found in Migne, *op. cit.* His letters have been edited by Legrand, 1893, and this volume contains the interesting essay of Manuel, "What Timour may have said to the conquered Bajaset". There is an excellent monograph on Manuel and his writings by Berger de Xivrey in the *Mémoires de l'Institut de France, Ac. des Inscr.* xix. 1 297. (1853).]

²³ See Lefant, *Hist. du Concile de Constance*, tom. ii. p. 576; and for the ecclesiastical history of the times, the *Annals of Spoudana*; the *Bibliothèque of Dupin*, tom. xii.; and xxix. and xxx. volumes of the *History*, or rather the *Continuation of Fleury*.

daughters of the marquis of Montferrat, with a company of noble
 virgins, to soften, by their charms, the obstinacy of the schis-
 matic. Yet, under this mask of zeal, a discerning eye will per-
 ceive that all was hollow and insincere in the court and church
 of Constantinople. According to the vicissitudes of danger
 and repose, the emperor advanced or retreated; alternately
 instructed and disavowed his ministers; and escaped from an
 importunate pressure by urging the duty of inquiry, the obliga-
 tion of collecting the sense of his patriarchs and bishops, and
 the impossibility of convening them at a time when the Turkish
 arms were at the gates of his capital. From a review of the
 public transactions, it will appear that the Greeks insisted on
 three successive measures, a succour, a council, and a final
 meeting, while the Latins eluded the second, and only promised
 the first as a consequential and voluntary reward of the third.
 Manuel has an opportunity of unfolding the most secret
 intentions of Manuel, as he explained them in a private conver-
 sation, without artifice or disguise. In his declining age the
 emperor had associated John Palæologus, the second of the name
 and youngest of his sons, on whom he devolved the greatest
 part of the authority and weight of government. One day,
 in the presence only of the historian Phranza,²³ his favourite
 counsellor, he opened to his colleague and successor the true
 principles of his negotiations with the pope.²⁴ "Our last
 resistance," said Manuel, "against the Turks is their fear of our
 union with the Latins, of the warlike nations of the West, who
 may arm for our relief, and for their destruction. As often
 as you are threatened by the miscreants, present this danger
 before their eyes. Propose a council; consult on the means;
 but ever delay and avoid the convocation of an assembly, which
 cannot tend either to our spiritual or temporal emolument. The
 Latins are proud; the Greeks are obstinate: neither party will

His private
 motives

²³ From his early youth, George Phranza, or Phranzes, was employed in the
 service of the senate and palace; and Hanckius (de Script. Byzant. p. i. c. 40) has
 collected his life from his own writings. He was no more than four and twenty
 years of age at the death of Manuel, who recommended him, in the strongest
 terms, to his successor: Imprimis vero hunc Phranzen tibi commendo, qui minist-
 rans mihi fideliter et diligenter (Phranzes, l. ii. c. 1). Yet the emperor John was
 not, and he preferred the service of the despots of Peloponnesus.

²⁴ See Phranzes, l. ii. c. 13. While so many manuscripts of the Greek original
 remain in the libraries of Rome, Milan, the Escorial, &c. it is a matter of shame
 and reproach that we should be reduced to the Latin version, or abstract, of James
 Phranza, ad calcem Theophylact. Simocattæ (Ingolstadt, 1604), so deficient in
 energy and elegance (Fabric. Bibliot. Græc. tom. vi. p. 615-620). [See Ap-
 pendix.]

recede or retract ; and the attempt of a perfect union will confirm the schism, alienate the churches, and leave us, without hope or defence, at the mercy of the barbarians." Impatient of this salutary lesson, the royal youth arose from his seat and departed in silence ; and the wise monarch (continues Phranza) casting his eyes on me, thus resumed his discourse : " My son deems himself a great and heroic prince ; but alas ! our miserable age does not afford scope for heroism or greatness. His daring spirit might have suited the happier times of our ancestors ; but the present state requires not an emperor, but a cautious steward of the last relics of our fortunes. Well do I remember the lofty expectations which he built on our alliance with Mustapha ; and much do I fear that his rash courage will urge the ruin of our house, and that even religion may precipitate our downfall." Yet the inexperience and authority of Manuel preserved the peace and eluded the council ; till, in the seventy-eighth year of his age, and in the habit of a monk, he terminated his career, dividing his precious moveables among his children and the poor, his physicians, and his favourite servants. Of his six sons,²⁶ Andronicus the Second was invested with the principality of Thessalonica, and died of a leprosy soon after the sale of that city to the Venetians and its final conquest by the Turks. Some fortunate incidents had restored Peloponnesus, or the Morea, to the empire ; and in his more prosperous days Manuel had fortified the narrow isthmus of six miles²⁶ with a stone wall and one hundred and fifty-three towers. The wall was overthrown by the first blast of the Ottomans ; the fertile peninsula might have been sufficient for the four younger brothers, Theodore and Constantine, Demetrius and Thomas ; but they wasted, in domestic contests, the remains of their strength ; and the least successful of the rivals were reduced to a life of dependence in the Byzantine palace.

The eldest of the sons of Manuel, John Palæologus the Second, was acknowledged, after his father's death, as the sole emperor of the Greeks. He immediately proceeded to repudiate his wife and to contract a new marriage with the princess of Trebizond ; beauty was in his eye the first qualification of an empress ; and

²⁶ See Ducange, *Fam. Byzant.* p. 243-248.

²⁶ The exact measure of the Hexamilion from sea to sea, was 3800 *orgyias*, or *toises*, of six Greek feet (*Phranzes*, l. i. c. 38), which would produce a Greek mile, still smaller than that of 660 French *toises*, which is assigned by d'Anville as still in use in Turkey. Five miles are commonly reckoned for the breadth of the Isthmus. See the *Travels of Spon, Wheeler, and Chandler*.

His death
(21st July,
A.D. 1459)

(A.D. 1459)

Seal of John
Palæologus II.
A.D. 1459-1477

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

corruption. These manifold scandals were aggravated by the great schism of the West, which continued above fifty years. In the furious conflicts of Rome and Avignon, the vices of the rivals were mutually exposed; and their precarious situation degraded their authority, relaxed their discipline, and multiplied their wants and exactions. To heal the wounds, and restore the monarchy, of the church, the synods of Pisa and Constance⁴⁰ were successively convened; but these great assemblies, conscious of their strength, resolved to vindicate the privileges of the Christian aristocracy. From a personal sentence against two pontiffs, whom they rejected, and a third, their acknowledged sovereign, whom they deposed, the fathers of Constance proceeded to examine the nature and limits of the Roman supremacy; nor did they separate till they had established the authority, above the pope, of a general council. It was enacted that, for the government and reformation of the church, such assemblies should be held at regular intervals; and that each synod, before its dissolution, should appoint the time and place of the subsequent meeting. By the influence of the court of Rome, the next convocation at Sienna was easily eluded; but the bold and vigorous proceedings of the council of Basil⁴¹ had almost been fatal to the reigning pontiff, Eugenius the Fourth. A just suspicion of his design prompted the fathers to hasten the promulgation of their first decree, that the representatives of the church-militant on earth were invested with a divine and spiritual jurisdiction over all Christians, without excepting the

⁴⁰ A learned and liberal Protestant, M. Lenfant, has given a fair history of the councils of Pisa, Constance, and Basil, in six volumes in quarto; but the last part is the most hasty and imperfect, except in the account of the troubles of Bohemia. [For the Council of Pisa see Erler, *Zur Geschichte des Pisaner Konzils*, 1884. The history of the Council of Constance has been rewritten by L. Tosti, *Storia del concilio di Costanza*, 1853 (in 2 vols.), a work which has been translated into German by W. Arnold (1860). See also F. Stühr, *Die Organisation und Geschäftsordnung des Pisaner und Costanzer Konzils*, 1891; and the document (Ein Tagebuch-fragment über das Kostanzer Konzil) edited by Knöpfler in the *Historisches Jahrbuch der Görresgesellschaft*, vol. xi. p. 267 199., 1890. Gibbon does not mention the big work of Hardt: *Magnum œcumenicum Constantiense concilium* (6 vols.) 1697-1700 (Index, 1742).]

⁴¹ The original acts or minutes of the council of Basil are preserved in the public library, in twelve volumes in folio. Basil was a free city, conveniently situate on the Rhine, and guarded by the arms of the neighbouring and confederate Swiss. In 1459, the university was founded by Pope Pius II. (*Æneas Sylvius*), who had been secretary to the council. But what is a council, or an university, to the presses of Froben and the studies of Erasmus? [The first 3 vols. (1853-94) of the *Vienna Monumenta conciliorum generalium* are devoted to the council of Basil. For the union question see Mugnier, *L'Expédition du concile de Bale à Constantinople pour l'union de l'église grecque à l'église latine* (1437-8), 1892.]

Schism, A.D.
1377-1418

Council of
Pisa, A.D.
1409; of Con-
stance, A.D.
1414-1418

of Basil, A.D.
1431-1448

pope ; and that a general council could not be dissolved, pro-
 rogued, or transferred, unless by their free deliberation and
 consent. On the notice that Eugenius had fulminated a bull
 for that purpose, they ventured to summon, to admonish, to
 threaten, to censure, the contumacious successor of St. Peter.
 After many delays, to allow time for repentance, they finally
 declared that, unless he submitted within the term of sixty
 days, he was suspended from the exercise of all temporal and
 ecclesiastical authority. And to mark their jurisdiction over
 the prince as well as the priest, they assumed the government
 of Avignon, annulled the alienation of the sacred patrimony,
 and protected Rome from the imposition of new taxes. Their
 boldness was justified, not only by the general opinion of the
 clergy, but by the support and power of the first monarchs of
 Christendom: the emperor Sigismond declared himself the
 servant and protector of the synod; Germany and France
 adhered to their cause; the duke of Milan was the enemy of
 Eugenius; and he was driven from the Vatican by an insurrec-
 tion of the Roman people. Rejected at the same time by his
 temporal and spiritual subjects, submission was his only choice;
 by a most humiliating bull, the pope repealed his own acts and
 ratified those of the council; incorporated his legates and car-
 dinals with that venerable body; and seemed to resign himself
 to the decrees of the supreme legislature. Their fame pervaded
 the countries of the East; and it was in their presence that
 Sigismond received the ambassadors of the Turkish sultan,⁴²
 who laid at his feet twelve large vases, filled with robes of silk
 and pieces of gold. The fathers of Basil aspired to the glory
 of reducing the Greeks, as well as the Bohemians, within the
 pale of the church; and their deputies invited the emperor and
 patriarchs of Constantinople to unite with an assembly which
 possessed the confidence of the Western nations. Palæologus
 was not averse to the proposal; and his ambassadors were
 introduced with due honours into the Catholic senate. But the
 choice of the place appeared to be an insuperable obstacle, since
 he refused to pass the Alps or the sea of Sicily, and positively
 required that the synod should be adjourned to some convenient
 city in Italy, or at least on the Danube. The other articles of
 this treaty were more readily stipulated: it was agreed to
 defray the travelling expenses of the emperor, with a train of

Their opposi-
 tion to Euge-
 nius IV.

Negotiations
 with the
 Greeks, A. D.
 1434-1437

⁴²This Turkish embassy, attested only by Crantzius, is related with some doubt
 by the annalist Spondanus, A. D. 1433, No. 25, tom. i. p. 824.

seven hundred persons,⁴³ to remit an immediate sum of eight thousand ducats⁴⁴ for the accommodation of the Greek clergy; and in his absence to grant a supply of ten thousand ducats, with three hundred archers, and some galleys for the protection of Constantinople. The city of Avignon advanced the funds for the preliminary expenses; and the embarkation was prepared at Marseilles with some difficulty and delay.

John Palaeologus embarks in the pope's galleys, A.D. 1457, 6th Nov.

In his distress, the friendship of Palaeologus was disputed by the ecclesiastical powers of the West; but the dexterous activity of a monarch prevailed over the slow debates and inflexible temper of a republic. The decrees of Basil continually tended to circumscribe the despotism of the pope and to erect a supreme and perpetual tribunal in the church. Eugenius was impatient of the yoke; and the union of the Greeks might afford a decent pretence for translating a rebellious synod from the Rhine to the Po. The independence of the fathers was lost if they passed the Alps; Savoy or Avignon, to which they acceded with reluctance, were described at Constantinople as situate far beyond the Pillars of Hercules;⁴⁵ the emperor and his clergy were apprehensive of the dangers of a long navigation; they were offended by an haughty declaration that, after suppressing the *new* heresy of the Bohemians, the council would soon eradicate the *old* heresy of the Greeks.⁴⁶ On the side of Eugenius, all was smooth and yielding and respectful; and he invited the Byzantine monarch to heal, by his presence, the schism of the Latin, as well as of the Eastern, church. Ferrara,

⁴³ Syropulus, p. 19. In this list, the Greeks appear to have exceeded the real numbers of the clergy and laity which afterwards attended the emperor and patriarch, but which are not clearly specified by the great ecclesiarch. The 75,000 florins which they asked in this negotiation of the pope (p. 9) were more than they could hope or want.

⁴⁴ I use indifferently the words *ducat* and *florin*, which derive their names, the former from the *dukes* of Milan, the latter from the republic of *Florence*. These gold pieces, the first that were coined in Italy, perhaps in the Latin world, may be compared, in weight and value, to one third of the English guinea.

⁴⁵ At the end of the Latin version of Phranzes, we read a long Greek epistle or declamation of George of Trebizond, who advises the emperor to prefer Eugenius and Italy. He treats with contempt the schismatic assembly of Basil, the barbarians of Gaul and Germany, who had conspired to transport the chair of St. Peter beyond the Alps: οἱ ἄλλοι (says he) οὐ καὶ τὴν μετὰ σοῦ σύνοδον ἐφ' ἧν τῶν Ἑσπερίων σπηλαίων καὶ πέρα Γαθάρων ἐξέβουον. Was Constantinople unprovided with a map? [The writings of the humanist George of Trebizond, on the union question, will be found in Migne, P. G. vol. 161, 829 297.]

⁴⁶ Syropulus (p. 26-31) attests his own indignation, and that of his countrymen; and the Basil deputies, who excused the rash declaration, could neither deny nor alter an act of the council.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Joseph was more susceptible of fear than of hope; he trembled at the perils of the sea, and expressed his apprehension that his feeble voice, with thirty, perhaps, of his orthodox brethren, would be oppressed in a foreign land by the power and numbers of a Latin synod. He yielded to the royal mandate, to the flattering assurance that he would be heard as the oracle of nations, and to the secret wish of learning from his brother of the West to deliver the church from the yoke of kings.⁶⁰ The five *cross-bearers*, or dignitaries of St. Sophia, were bound to attend his person; and one of these, the great ecclesiarch or preacher, Sylvester Syropulus,⁶¹ has composed⁶² a free and curious history of the *false union*.⁶³ Of the clergy that reluctantly obeyed the summons of the emperor and the patriarch, submission was the first duty, and patience the most useful virtue. In a chosen list of twenty bishops, we discover the metropolitan titles of Heraclea and Cyzicus, Nice and Nicomedia, Ephesus and Trebizond, and the personal merit of Mark and Bessarion, who, in the confidence of their learning and eloquence, were promoted to the episcopal rank. Some monks and philosophers were named to display the science and sanctity of the Greek church; and the service of the choir was performed by a select band of singers and musicians. The patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem appeared by their genuine or fictitious deputies, the primate of Russia represented a national church, and the Greeks might contend with the Latins

⁶⁰ The reader will smile at the simplicity with which he imparted these hopes to his favourites: *τοιαύτην πληροφορίαν σχήσειν ἤλπιζε καὶ διὰ τοῦ Παπᾶ ἐθέρει ἐλευθερώσει τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀποθεθείσης αὐτοῦ δουλείας παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως* (p. 92). Yet it would have been difficult for him to have practised the lessons of Gregory VII.

⁶¹ The Christian name of Sylvester is borrowed from the Latin Calendar. In modern Greek, *σουλός*, as a diminutive, is added to the end of words; nor can any reasoning of Creighton, the editor, excuse his changing into *Syropulus* (*Syros*, fuscus) the Syropulus of his own manuscript, whose name is subscribed with his own hand in the acts of the council of Florence. Why might not the author be of Syrian extraction? [The name Syropulos occurs repeatedly in the Collection of Letters (dating from the 14th century) in the Florentine Codex S. Marco 356. See Krumbacher, *Gesch. der byzantinischen Litteratur*, p. 485.]

⁶² From the conclusion of the history, I should fix the date to the year 1444, four years after the synod, when the great ecclesiarch had abdicated his office (sectio xii. p. 330-350). His passions were cooled by time and retirement; and, although Syropulus is often partial, he is never intemperate.

⁶³ *Vera Historia unionis non verae inter Graecos et Latinos* (*Hagae Comitibus*, 1660, in folio) was first published with a loose and florid version, by Robert Creighton, chaplain to Charles II. in his exile. The zeal of the editor has prefixed a polemic title, for the beginning of the original is wanting. Syropulus may be ranked with the best of the Byzantine writers for the merit of his narration, and even of his style; but he is excluded from the orthodox collections of the councils,

in the extent of their spiritual empire. The precious vases of St. Sophia were exposed to the winds and waves, that the patriarch might officiate with becoming splendour; whatever gold the emperor could procure was expended in the massy ornaments of his bed and chariot;⁶⁴ and, while they affected to maintain the prosperity of their ancient fortune, they quarrelled for the division of fifteen thousand ducats, the first alms of the Roman pontiff. After the necessary preparations, John Palæologus, with a numerous train, accompanied by his brother Demetrius, and the most respectable persons of the church and state, embarked in eight vessels with sails and oars, which steered through the Turkish straits of Gallipoli to the Archipelago, the Morea, and the Adriatic Gulf.⁶⁵

After a tedious and troublesome navigation of seventy-seven days, this religious squadron cast anchor before Venice; and their reception proclaimed the joy and magnificence of that powerful republic. In the command of the world, the modest Augustus had never claimed such honours from his subjects as were paid to his feeble successor by an independent state. Seated on the poop, on a lofty throne, he received the visit, or, in the Greek style, the *adoration*, of the Doge and senators.⁶⁶ They sailed in the Bucentaur, which was accompanied by twelve stately galleys; the sea was overspread with innumerable gondolas of pomp and pleasure; the air resounded with music and acclamations; the mariners, and even the vessels, were dressed in silk and gold; and in all the emblems and pageants the Roman eagles were blended with the lions of St. Mark. The triumphal procession, ascending the great canal, passed under the bridge of the Rialto; and the eastern strangers gazed with admiration on the palaces, the churches, and the populousness of a city that seems to float on the bosom of the

His triumphal
entry at
Venice, A.D.
1202, 9th Feb.

⁶⁴ Syropulus (p. 63) simply expresses his intention: ἰν' οὕτω πομπῶν ἰν' Ἰταλίῳις αἰγυε βασιλεὺς παρ' ἑκείνων νομίζοιτο; and the Latin of Creighton may afford a specimen of his florid paraphrase. Ut pompa circumductus noster Imperator Italiae populis aliquis deauratus Jupiter crederetur, aut Croesus ex Opulenta Lydia. [In the Greek citation πομπῶν is unintelligible, but so it stands in Creighton's text. Evidently Syropulus wrote πομπῶν.]

⁶⁵ Although I cannot stop to quote Syropulus for every fact, I will observe that the navigation of the Greeks from Constantinople to Venice and Ferrara is contained in the ivth section (p. 67-100), and that the historian has the uncommon talent of placing each scene before the reader's eye.

⁶⁶ At the time of the synod, Phranzes was in Peloponnesus; but he received from the despot Demetrius a faithful account of the honourable reception of the emperor and patriarch, both at Venice and Ferrara (Dux . . . sedentem Imperatorem adorant), which are more slightly mentioned by the Latins (l. ii. c. 14-16).

waves.⁶⁷ They sighed to behold the spoils and trophies with which it had been decorated after the sack of Constantinople. After an hospitable entertainment of fifteen days, Palæologus pursued his journey by land and water, from Venice to Ferrara; and on this occasion the pride of the Vatican was tempered by policy to indulge the ancient dignity of the emperor of the East. He made his entry on a *black* horse; but a milk-white steed, whose trappings were embroidered with golden eagles, was led before him; and the canopy was borne over his head by the princes of Este, the sons or kinsmen of Nicholas, marquis of the city, and a sovereign more powerful than himself.⁶⁸ Palæologus did not alight till he reached the bottom of the staircase; the pope advanced to the door of the apartment; refused his proffered genuflexion; and, after a paternal embrace, conducted the emperor to a seat on his left hand. Nor would the patriarch descend from his galley, till a ceremony, almost equal, had been stipulated between the bishops of Rome and Constantinople. The latter was saluted by his brother with a kiss of union and charity; nor would any of the Greek ecclesiastics submit to kiss the feet of the Western primate. On the opening of the synod, the place of honour in the centre was claimed by the temporal and ecclesiastical chiefs; and it was only by alleging that his predecessors had not assisted in person at Nice or Chalcedon that Eugenius could evade the ancient precedents of Constantine and Marcian. After much debate, it was agreed that the right and left sides of the church should be occupied by the two nations; that the solitary chair of St. Peter should be raised the first of the Latin line; and that the throne of the Greek emperor, at the head of his clergy, should be equal and opposite to the second place, the vacant seat of the emperor of the West.⁶⁹

⁶⁷ The astonishment of a Greek prince and a French ambassador (*Mémoires de Philippe de Cominés*, l. vii. c. 18) at the sight of Venice abundantly proves that in the xvth century it was the first and most splendid of the Christian cities. For the spoils of Constantinople at Venice, see Syropulus (p. 87).

⁶⁸ Nicholas III. of Este reigned forty-eight years (A.D. 1393-1441), and was lord of Ferrara, Modena, Reggio, Parma, Rovigo, and Commachio. See his life in Muratori (*Antichità Estense*, tom. ii. p. 159-201).

⁶⁹ The Latin vulgar was provoked to laughter at the strange dresses of the Greeks, and especially the length of their garments, their sleeves, and their beards; nor was the emperor distinguished, except by the purple colour, and his diadem or tiara with a jewel on the top (*Hody de Græcis Illustribus*, p. 31). Yet another spectator confesses that the Greek fashion was *piu grave e piu degna* than the Italian (*Vespasiano*, in *Vit. Eugen. IV.* in Muratori, tom. xxv. p. 261).

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Ferrara ; the government of Venice had engaged to arrest and send back the fugitives ; and inevitable punishment awaited them at Constantinople : excommunication, fines, and a sentence which did not respect the sacerdotal dignity, that they should be stripped naked and publicly whipped.⁶² It was only by the alternative of hunger or dispute that the Greeks could be persuaded to open the first conference ; and they yielded with extreme reluctance to attend, from Ferrara to Florence, the rear of a flying synod. This new translation was urged by inevitable necessity : the city was visited by the plague ; the fidelity of the marquis might be suspected ; the mercenary troops of the duke of Milan were at the gates ; and, as they occupied Romagna, it was not without difficulty and danger that the pope, the emperor, and the bishops explored their way through the unfrequented paths of the Apennine.⁶³

Yet all these obstacles were surmounted by time and policy. The violence of the fathers of Basil rather promoted than injured the cause of Eugenius : the nations of Europe abhorred the schism, and disowned the election, of Felix the Fifth, who was successively a duke of Savoy, an hermit, and a pope ; and the great princes were gradually reclaimed by his competitor to a favourable neutrality and a firm attachment. The legates, with some respectable members, deserted to the Roman army, which insensibly rose in numbers and reputation : the council of Basil was reduced to thirty-nine bishops and three hundred of the inferior clergy⁶⁴ ; while the Latins of Florence could produce the subscriptions of the pope himself, eight cardinals, two patriarchs, eight archbishops, fifty-two bishops, and forty-five abbots, or chiefs of religious orders. After the labour of nine months, and the debates of twenty-five sessions, they attained the advantage and glory of the reunion of the Greeks. Four principal questions had been agitated between the two churches :

⁶² Syropulus (p. 141, 142, 204, 221) deploras the imprisonment of the Greeks, and the tyranny of the Emperor and patriarch.

⁶³ The wars of Italy are most clearly represented in the xiiith volume of the Annals of Muratori. The schismatic Greek, Syropulus (p. 145), appears to have exaggerated the fear and disorder of the pope in his retreat from Ferrara to Florence, which is proved by the acts to have been somewhat more decent and deliberate.

⁶⁴ Syropulus is pleased to reckon seven hundred prelates in the council of Basil. The error is manifest, and perhaps voluntary. That extravagant number could not be supplied by *all* the ecclesiastics, of every degree, who were present at the council, nor by *all* the absent bishops of the West, who, expressly or tacitly, might adhere to its decrees.

1. The use of unleavened bread in the communion of Christ's body; 2. The nature of purgatory; 3. The supremacy of the pope; and 4. The single or double procession of the Holy Ghost. The cause of either nation was managed by ten theological champions: the Latins were supported by the inexhaustible eloquence of Cardinal Julian; and Mark of Ephesus and Basilius of Nice were the bold and able leaders of the Greek faction. We may bestow some praise on the progress of human reason by observing that the first of these questions was *now* treated as an immaterial rite, which might innocently vary with the fashion of the age and country. With regard to the second, both parties were agreed in the belief of an intermediate state of purgation for the venial sins of the faithful; and, whether their souls were purified by elemental fire was a doubtful point, which in a few years might be conveniently settled on the spot by the disputants. The claims of supremacy appeared of a *more* weighty and substantial kind; yet, by the Orientals, the Roman bishop had ever been respected as the first of the five patriarchs; nor did they scruple to admit that his jurisdiction should be exercised agreeable to the holy canons: a vague allowance which might be defined or eluded by occasional convenience. The procession of the Holy Ghost from the Father alone, or from the Father and the Son, was an article of faith which had sunk much deeper into the minds of men; and in the sessions of Ferrara and Florence the Latin addition of *filioque* was subdivided into two questions, whether it were *legal*, and whether it were orthodox. Perhaps it may not be necessary to boast on this subject of my own impartial indifference; but I must think that the Greeks were strongly supported by the prohibition of the council of Chalcedon against adding any article whatsoever to the creed of Nice or rather of Constantinople.⁶⁵ In earthly affairs, it is not easy to conceive how an assembly of legislators can bind their successors invested with powers equal to their own. But the dictates of inspiration must be true and unchangeable; nor should a private bishop, or a provincial synod, have presumed to innovate against the judgment of the Catholic church. On the substance of the *doctrine*, the controversy was equal and endless: reason is confounded by the procession of a deity; the gospel, which lay on

⁶⁵ The Greeks, who disliked the union, were unwilling to sally from this strong ground (p. 176, 193, 195, 202, of Syropulus). The shame of the Latins was *increased* by their producing an old Ms. of the second council of Nice, with *filioque* in the Nicene creed. A palpable forgery! (p. 173).

the altar, was silent; the various texts of the fathers might be corrupted by fraud or entangled by sophistry; and the Greeks were ignorant of the characters and writings of the Latin saints.⁶⁶ Of this, at least, we may be sure, that neither side could be convinced by the arguments of their opponents. Prejudice may be enlightened by reason, and a superficial glance may be rectified by a clear and more perfect view of an object adapted to our faculties. But the bishops and monks had been taught from their infancy to repeat a form of mysterious words; their national and personal honour depended on the repetition of the same sounds; and their narrow minds were hardened and inflamed by the acrimony of a public dispute.

Negotiations
with the
Greeks

While they were lost in a cloud of dust and darkness, the pope and emperor were desirous of a seeming union, which could alone accomplish the purposes of their interview; and the obstinacy of public dispute was softened by the arts of private and personal negotiation. The patriarch Joseph had sunk under the weight of age and infirmities; his dying voice breathed the counsels of charity and concord, and his vacant benefice might tempt the hopes of the ambitious clergy. The ready and active obedience of the archbishops of Russia and Nice, of Isidore and Bessarion, was prompted and recompensed by their speedy promotion to the dignity of cardinals. Bessarion, in the first debates, had stood forth the most strenuous and eloquent champion of the Greek church; and, if the apostate, the bastard, was reprobated by his country,⁶⁷ he appears in ecclesiastical story a rare example of a patriot who was recommended to court favour by loud opposition and well-timed compliance. With the aid of his two spiritual coadjutors, the emperor applied his arguments to the general situation and personal characters of the bishops, and each was successively moved by authority and example. Their revenues were in the hands of the Turks,

⁶⁶ 'Ος ἐγὼ (said an eminent Greek) ὅταν εἰς τὰν εἰσιλθεῖς Λατίνων οὐ προσποιῶ τινος τὸν δόκιμον ἄγνωτον, ἀλλὰ εὐθεὶ γινώσκω τινὰ (Syropulus, p. 109). See the perplexity of the Greeks (p. 217, 218, 252, 253, 273).

⁶⁷ See the polite altercation of Mark and Bessarion in Syropulus (p. 257), who never dissembles the vices of his own party, and fairly praises the virtues of the Latins. [The works of Bessarion are collected in Migne's Greek Patrology, vol. cxi., where Bandini's monograph on his life and writings (1777) is reprinted. There are two recent monographs: Le Cardinal Bessarion, by H. Vast (1878), and a Russian monograph by A. Sadov (1883). The writings of his opponent Markos Eugenikos, metropolitan of Ephesus, will be found in Migne, P. G., vols. cix. and cxl. There is a Greek work on these two men by N. Kalogeris (Μάρκος ὁ Ἐφεσῶν καὶ Βησσαρίων ὁ Καρδινάλιος, 1893). Cp. J. Drilseke, Byzantinische Zeitschrift, iv., p. 145 277.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

one principle and one substance ; that he proceeds *by* the Son, being of the same nature and substance ; and that he proceeds from the Father *and* the Son, by one *spiration* and production. It is less difficult to understand the articles of the preliminary treaty : that the pope should defray all the expenses of the Greeks in their return home ; that he should annually maintain two galleys and three hundred soldiers for the defence of Constantinople ; that all the ships which transported pilgrims to Jerusalem should be obliged to touch at that port ; that, as often as they were required, the pope should furnish ten galleys for a year, or twenty-six months ; and that he should powerfully solicit the princes of Europe, if the emperor had occasion for land-forces.

The same year, and almost the same day, were marked by the deposition of Eugenius at Basil, and, at Florence, by his reunion of the Greeks and Latins. In the former synod (which he styled indeed an assembly of dæmons), the pope was branded with the guilt of simony, perjury, tyranny, heresy, and schism ;⁷³ and declared to be incorrigible in his vices, unworthy of any title, and incapable of holding any ecclesiastical office. In the latter, he was revered as the true and holy vicar of Christ, who, after a separation of six hundred years, had reconciled the Catholics of the East and West, in one fold and under one shepherd. The act of union was subscribed by the pope, the emperor, and the principal members of both churches ; even by those who, like Syropulus,⁷⁴ had been deprived of the right of voting. Two copies might have sufficed for the East and West ; but Eugenius was not satisfied, unless four authentic and similar transcripts were signed and attested as the monuments of his victory.⁷⁵

⁷³ From the original Lives of the Popes, in Muratori's Collection (tom. iii. p. 2, tom. xxv.), the manners of Eugenius IV. appear to have been decent, and even exemplary. His situation, exposed to the world and to his enemies, was a restraint, and is a pledge.

⁷⁴ Syropulus, rather than subscribe, would have assisted, as the least evil, at the ceremony of the union. He was compelled to do both ; and the great ecclesiarch poorly excuses his submission to the emperor (p. 290-292).

⁷⁵ None of these original acts of union can at present be produced. Of the ten Mss. that are preserved (five at Rome, and the remainder at Florence, Bologna, Venice, Paris, and London), nine have been examined by an accurate critic (M. de Brequigny), who condemns them for the variety and imperfections of the Greek signatures. Yet several of these may be esteemed as authentic copies, which were subscribed at Florence before (26th August 1439) the final separation of the Pope and emperor (Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xliii. p. 287-311). [On these copies see Hefele, Conciliengeschichte, vol. vii. part 2, p. 757 seq. The true original is the copy which is kept under glass in the Laurentian Library at Florence. The text of the Union decree—in Greek, in Latin, and a German translation—is given in Hefele. — 742-753.]

Eugenius
deposed at
Basil, A.D.
1439, 26th June

Reunion of
the Greeks of
Florence, A.D.
1439, 6th July

On a memorable day, the sixth of July, the successors of St. Peter and Constantine ascended their thrones; the two nations assembled in the cathedral of Florence; their representatives, Cardinal Julian, and Bessarion, Archbishop of Nice, appeared in the pulpit, and, after reading, in their respective tongues, the act of union, they mutually embraced, in the name and the presence of their applauding brethren. The pope and his ministers then officiated according to the Roman liturgy; the creed was chanted with the addition of *filioque*; the acquiescence of the Greeks was poorly excused by their ignorance of the harmonious, but inarticulate, sounds;⁷⁵ and the more scrupulous Latins refused any public celebration of the Byzantine rite. Yet the emperor and his clergy were not totally unmindful of national honour. The treaty was ratified by their consent; it was tacitly agreed that no innovation should be attempted in their creed or ceremonies; they spared, and secretly respected, the generous firmness of Mark of Ephesus; and, on the decease of the patriarch, they refused to elect his successor, except in the cathedral of St. Sophia. In the distribution of public and private rewards, the liberal pontiff exceeded their hopes and his promises; the Greeks, with less pomp and pride, returned by the same road of Ferrara and Venice; and their reception at Constantinople was such as will be described in the following chapter.⁷⁶ The success of the first trial encouraged Eugenius to repeat the same edifying scenes; and the deputies of the Armenians, the Maronites, the Jacobites of Syria and Egypt, the Nestorians, and the Ethiopians, were successively introduced, to kiss the feet of the Roman pontiff, and to announce the obedience and the orthodoxy of the East. These Oriental embassies, unknown in the countries which they presumed to represent,⁷⁷ diffused over the West the fame of Eugenius; and a clamour was artfully propagated against the remnant of a schism in Switzerland and Savoy, which alone impeded the harmony of the Christian world. The vigour of opposition was succeeded by the lassitude of despair: the council of Basil was silently dissolved; and Felix, renouncing the tiara, again with-

Their return
to Constantinople, A.D.
1440, 1st Feb.

⁷⁵ *Ἡμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἔσμεν ἰσχυροὶ φῶναι* (Syropul. p. 297).

⁷⁶ In their return, the Greeks conversed at Bologna with the ambassadors of England; and, after some questions and answers, these impartial strangers laughed at the pretended union of Florence (Syropul. p. 307).

⁷⁷ The embassy, or rather so fabulous, are these reunions of the Nestorians, Jacobites, &c. that I have turned over, without success, the Bibliotheca Orientalis of Aleppo, a faithful slave of the Vatican.

Final peace of
the church
A.D. 1449

drew to the devout or delicious hermitage of Ripaille.⁷⁸ A general peace was secured by mutual acts of oblivion and indemnity; all ideas of reformation subsided; the popes continued to exercise and abuse their ecclesiastical despotism; nor has Rome been since disturbed by the mischiefs of a contested election.⁷⁹

State of the
Greek lan-
guage at Con-
stantinople,
A.D. 1500-1600

The journeys of three emperors were unavailing for their temporal, or perhaps their spiritual, salvation; but they were productive of a beneficial consequence, the revival of the Greek learning in Italy, from whence it was propagated to the last nations of the West and North. In their lowest servitude and depression, the subjects of the Byzantine throne were still possessed of a golden key that could unlock the treasures of antiquity; of a musical and prolific language, that gives a soul to the objects of sense and a body to the abstractions of philosophy. Since the barriers of the monarchy, and even of the capital, had been trampled under foot, the various barbarians had doubtless corrupted the form and substance of the national dialect; and ample glossaries have been composed, to interpret a multitude of words of Arabic, Turkish, Slavonian, Latin, or French origin.⁸⁰ But

⁷⁸ Ripaille is situate near Thonon in Savoy, on the southern side of the lake of Geneva. It is now a Carthusian abbey; and Mr. Addison (Travels into Italy, vol. ii. p. 147, 148, of Baskerville's edition of his works) has celebrated the place and the founder. Æneas Sylvius, and the fathers of Basil, applaud the austere life of the ducal hermit; but the French and Italian proverbs most unluckily attest the popular opinion of his luxury.

⁷⁹ In this account of the councils of Basil, Ferrara, and Florence, I have consulted the original acts, which fill the xviiith and xviiith tomes of the edition of Venice, and are closed by the perspicuous, though partial, history of Augustin Patricius, an Italian of the xvth century. They are digested and abridged by Dupin (Bibliothèque Ecclésiastique, tom. xii.), and the continuator of Fleury (tom. xxii.); and the respect of the Gallican church for the adverse parties confines their members to an awkward moderation. [An English translation of Gorski's (Russian) History of the Council of Florence, appeared in 1861 (ed. by Neale). Kalligas wrote an important essay on it, which is published in his Μελέται και Λόγοι (1882) pp. 1-181. See also Dräseke Zum Kircheneinigungsversuch des Jahres 1439, in Byz. Zeitsch. v. p. 572 sqq.; Frommann, Kritische Beiträge zur Geschichte der florentinischen Kircheneinigung, 1862. The full story of the Councils of Constance, Basil, Ferrara, and Florence is contained in vol. vii., parts i. and ii., of Hefele's Conciliengeschichte.]

⁸⁰ In the first attempt, Meursius collected 3600 Græco-barbarous words, to which, in a second edition, he subjoined 1800 more; yet what plenteous gleanings did he leave to Portius, Ducange, Fabrotti, the Bollandists, &c. ! (Fabric. Bibliot. Græc. tom. x. p. 101, &c.). Some Persic words may be found in Xenophon, and some Latin ones in Plutarch; and such is the inevitable effect of war and commerce; but the form and substance of the language were not affected by this slight alloy. [On foreign words in Greek see: G. Meyer, Neugriechische Studien, ii. (Slavonic, Albanian, and Roumanian loanwords in modern Greek), iii. and iv. (Latin and Romance loanwords), in the Sitzungsberichte of the Vienna Academy,

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Seldom are they seen in the streets; and, when they leave their houses, it is in the dusk of evening, on visits to the churches and their nearest kindred. On these occasions, they are on horse-back, covered with a veil, and encompassed by their parents, their husbands, or their servants."⁸⁴

Among the Greeks, a numerous and opulent clergy was dedicated to the service of religion; their monks and bishops have ever been distinguished by the gravity and austerity of their manners; nor were they diverted, like the Latin priests, by the pursuits and pleasures of a secular and even military life. After a large deduction for the time and talents that were lost in the devotion, the laziness, and the discord of the church and cloister, the more inquisitive and ambitious minds would explore the sacred and profane erudition of their native language. The ecclesiastics presided over the education of youth; the schools of philosophy and eloquence were perpetuated till the fall of the empire; and it may be affirmed that more books and more knowledge were included within the walls of Constantinople than could be dispersed over the extensive countries of the West.⁸⁵ But an important distinction has been already noticed: the Greeks were stationary or retrograde, while the Latins were advancing with a rapid and progressive motion. The nations were excited by the spirit of independence and emulation; and even the little world of the Italian states contained more people and industry than the decreasing circle of the Byzantine empire. In Europe, the lower ranks of society were relieved from the yoke of feudal servitude; and freedom is the first step to curiosity and knowledge. The use, however rude and corrupt, of the Latin tongue had been preserved by superstition; the universities, from Bologna to Oxford,⁸⁶ were peopled

Comparison of
the Greeks
and Latins

⁸⁴ Philoepus, absurdly enough, derives this Greek or Oriental jealousy from the manners of ancient Rome.

⁸⁵ See the state of learning in the xiiith and xivth centuries, in the learned and judicious Mosheim (Institut. Hist. Eccles. p. 434-440, 490-494).

⁸⁶ At the end of the xvth century, there existed in Europe about fifty universities, and of these the foundation of ten or twelve is prior to the year 1300. They were crowded in proportion to their scarcity. Bologna contained 10,000 students, chiefly of the civil law. In the year 1357, the number at Oxford had decreased from 30,000 to 6000 scholars (Henry's History of Great Britain, vol. iv. p. 478). Yet even this decrease is much superior to the present list of the members of the university. [These numbers are grossly exaggerated. See Mr. H. Rashdall, Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages, vol. ii., pt. ii., where a short chapter (xiii.) is devoted to the subject. He concludes (p. 589) that "the maximum number at Oxford was something between 1500 and 3000. By about 1438 the numbers had fallen to under 1000." He thinks it improbable that the number at Bologna or at Paris ever went beyond about 6000 or 7000.]

with thousands of scholars; and their misguided ardour might be directed to more liberal and manly studies. In the resurrection of science, Italy was the first that cast away her shroud; and the eloquent Petrarch, by his lessons and his example, may justly be applauded as the first harbinger of day. A purer style of composition, a more generous and rational strain of sentiment, flowed from the study and imitation of the writers of ancient Rome; and the disciples of Cicero and Virgil approached, with reverence and love, the sanctuary of their Grecian masters. In the sack of Constantinople, the French, and even the Venetians, had despised and destroyed the works of Lysippus and Homer; the monuments of art may be annihilated by a single blow; but the immortal mind is renewed and multiplied by the copies of the pen; and such copies it was the ambition of Petrarch and his friends to possess and understand. The arms of the Turks undoubtedly pressed the flight of the Muses; yet we may tremble at the thought that Greece might have been overwhelmed, with her schools and libraries, before Europe had emerged from the deluge of barbarism; that the seeds of science might have been scattered by the winds, before the Italian soil was prepared for their cultivation.

The most learned Italians of the fifteenth century have confessed and applauded the restoration of Greek literature, after a long oblivion of many hundred years.⁸⁷ Yet in that country, and beyond the Alps, some names are quoted: some profound scholars, who, in the darker ages, were honourably distinguished by their knowledge of the Greek tongue; and national vanity has been loud in the praise of such rare examples of erudition. Without scrutinising the merit of individuals, truth must observe that their science is without a cause and without an effect; that it was easy for them to satisfy themselves and their more ignorant contemporaries; and that the idiom, which they had so

Revival of the
Greek learning
in Italy

⁸⁷ Of those writers, who professedly treat of the restoration of the Greek learning in Italy, the two principal are Hodus, Dr. Humphrey Hody (*de Græcis Illustribus, Linguae Græcæ Literarumque humaniorum Instauratoribus*; Londini, 1742, in large octavo), and Tiraboschi (*Istoria della Letteratura Italiana*, tom. v. p. 364-377, tom. vii. p. 112-143). The Oxford professor is a laborious scholar, but the librarian of Modena enjoys the superiority of a modern and national historian. [Cp. above note 81. Legrand, *Biographie hellénique*, vol. i., 1885. J. A. Symonds, *The Renaissance in Italy*, ii, *The Revival of Learning*, 1877. Therianos, in the first volume of his biography of Koraës (*Ἀδαμάντιος Κοραῆς*, 1889), gives a good summary of the movement. G. Fioretto, *Gli umanisti, o lo studio del Latino e del Greco nel secolo xv. in Italia*, 1881. See also the excellent monograph on Vitorino da Feltre, dealing with the education of the Humanist teachers in Italy, by W. H. Woodward, 1897.]

marvellously acquired, was transcribed in few manuscripts, and was not taught in any university of the West. In a corner of Italy it faintly existed as the popular, or at least as the ecclesiastical, dialect.⁸⁸ The first impression of the Doric and Ionic colonies has never been completely erased; the Calabrian churches were long attached to the throne of Constantinople; and the monks of St. Basil pursued their studies in Mount Athos and the schools of the East. Calabria was the native country of Barlaam, who has already appeared as a sectary and an ambassador; and Barlaam was the first who revived, beyond the Alps, the memory, or at least the writings, of Homer.⁸⁹ He is described, by Petrarch and Boccace,⁹⁰ as a man of a diminutive stature, though truly great in the measure of learning and genius; of a piercing discernment, though of a slow and painful elocution. For many ages (as they affirm) Greece had not produced his equal in the knowledge of history, grammar, and philosophy; and his merit was celebrated in the attestations of the princes and doctors of Constantinople. One of these attestations is still extant; and the emperor Cantacuzene, the protector of his adversaries, is forced to allow that Euclid, Aristotle, and Plato were familiar to that profound and subtle logician.⁹¹ In the court of Avignon, he formed an intimate connexion with Petrarch,⁹² the first of the Latin scholars; and

Lessons of
Barlaam, A.D.
1380

⁸⁸ In Calabria quæ olim magna Græcia dicebatur, coloniis Græcis repleta, remansit quædam linguæ veteris cognitio (Hodius, p. 2). If it were eradicated by the Romans, it was revived and perpetuated by the monks of St. Basil, who possessed seven convents at Rossano alone (Giannone, Istoria di Napoli, tom. I. p. 520). [Greek is still spoken by a population of about 20,000 in both the heel and the toe of Italy—in the land of Otranto and in the territory of Bova; these two dialects differ considerably. Comparetti, Saggi dei dialetti greci dell' Italia meridionale, 1866; Morosi, Studi sui dialetti greci della Terra d'Otranto, 1870, and Dialetti romaici del mandamento di Bova in Calabria, 1874; Pellegrini, Il dialetto greco-calabro di Bova, 1880; H. F. Tozer, The Greek-speaking Population of Southern Italy, in Journal of Hellenic Studies, x. p. 11 *seq.*]

⁸⁹ *li Barbari* (says Petrarch, the French and Germans) *vix non dicam libros sed nomen Homeri audiverunt*. Perhaps, in that respect, the xiiith century was less happy than the age of Charlemagne. [Barlaam was a native of Seminaria in Calabria. His work (against the Roman church) *περι της αρχης του κειμε* is published in Migne, P. G. 151, p. 1256 *seq.* There is an account of Barlaam's work in T. Uspenski's essay, *Philosophiskoe i bogoslovskoe dvizhenie v xiv viekie*, printed in his *Ocherki*, p. 246-364 (1892).]

⁹⁰ See the character of Barlaam in Boccace de Genealog. Deorum, l. xv. c. 6.

⁹¹ Cantacuzen. l. ii. c. 36.

⁹² For the connexion of Petrarch and Barlaam, and the two interviews at Avignon in 1339, and at Naples in 1342, see the excellent *Mémoires sur la Vie de Pétrarque*, tom. i. p. 406-410, tom. ii. p. 75-77. [G. Mandolori, *Fra Barlaamo Calabrese, maestro del Petrarca*, 1888; P. de Nolhac, *Pétrarque et l'humanisme*, 1892. On Petrarch see further below chap. lxx. ad init.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

omer in the schools of Florence. It was from his explanation that Boccace composed and transcribed a literal prose version of the Iliad and Odyssey, which satisfied the thirst of his friend Petrarch, and which perhaps, in the succeeding century, was clandestinely used by Laurentius Valla, the Latin interpreter. It was from his narratives that the same Boccace collected the materials for his treatise on the genealogy of the heathen gods; a work, in that age, of stupendous erudition, and which he ostentatiously sprinkled with Greek characters and passages, to excite the wonder and applause of his more ignorant

ders.⁹⁶ The first steps of learning are slow and laborious: no more than ten votaries of Homer could be enumerated in all Italy; and neither Rome nor Venice nor Naples could add a single name to this studious catalogue. But their numbers would have multiplied, their progress would have been accelerated, if the inconstant Leo, at the end of three years, had not relinquished an honourable and beneficial station. In his passage, Petrarch entertained him at Padua a short time: he enjoyed the scholar, but was justly offended with the gloomy and unsocial temper of the man. Discontented with the world and with himself, Leo depreciated his present enjoyments, while absent persons and objects were dear to his imagination. In Italy, he was a Thessalian, in Greece, a native of Calabria; in the company of the Latins, he disdained their language, religion, and manner: no sooner was he landed at Constantinople,

of
 he depended on their curiosity and indulgence, and embarked on a second voyage; but, on his entrance into the Adriatic, the ship was assailed by a tempest, and the unfortunate teacher, who, like Ulysses, had fastened himself to the mast, was struck dead by a flash of lightning. The humane Petrarch dropped a tear on his disaster; but he was most anxious to learn whether some copy of Euripides or Sophocles might not be saved from the hands of the mariners.⁹⁷

⁹⁶ Boccace indulges an honest vanity: *Ostentationis causâ Græca carmina adscripsi . . . jure utor meo; meum est hoc decus, mea gloria scilicet inter Etruscos Græcis uti carminibus.* Nonne ego fui qui Leontium Pilatum, &c. (*de Genealogiâ Deorum*, l. xv. c. 7. a work, which, though now forgotten, has run through thirteen or fourteen editions). [It was Leontius Pilatus himself who

⁹⁷ Leontius, or Leo Pilatus, is sufficiently made known by Hody (p. 2-11), and the Abbé de Sade (*Vie de Pétrarque*, tom. iii. p. 625-634, 670-673), who has very happily caught the lively and dramatic manner of his original.

Foundation of
the Greek
language in
Italy by
Manuel
Chrysoloras
A.D. 1390-1415

But the faint rudiments of Greek learning, which Petrarch had encouraged and Boccace had planted, soon withered and expired. The succeeding generation was content for a while with the improvement of Latin eloquence; nor was it before the end of the fourteenth century that a new and perpetual flame was rekindled in Italy.⁹⁸ Previous to his own journey, the emperor Manuel dispatched his envoys and orators to implore the compassion of the Western princes. Of these envoys, the most conspicuous or the most learned was Manuel Chrysoloras,⁹⁹ of noble birth, and whose Roman ancestors are supposed to have migrated with the great Constantine. After visiting the courts of France and England, where he obtained some contributions and more promises, the envoy was invited to assume the office of a professor; and Florence had again the honour of this second invitation. By his knowledge, not only of the Greek but of the Latin tongue, Chrysoloras deserved the stipend and surpassed the expectation of the republic; his school was frequented by a crowd of disciples of every rank and age; and one of these, in a general history, has described his motives and his success. "At that time," says Leonard Aretin,¹⁰⁰ "I was a student of the civil law; but my soul was inflamed with the love of letters; and I bestowed some application on the sciences of logic and rhetoric. On the arrival of Manuel, I hesitated whether I should desert my legal studies or relinquish this golden opportunity; and thus, in the ardour of youth, I communed with my own mind—Wilt thou be wanting to thyself and thy fortune? Wilt thou refuse to be introduced to a familiar converse with Homer, Plato, and Demosthenes? with

[c. A.D. 1397-
1400]

⁹⁸ Dr. Hody (p. 54) is angry with Leonard Aretin, Guarinus, Paulus Jovius, &c. for affirming that the Greek letters were restored in Italy *post septingentos annos*; as if, says he, they had flourished till the end of the viith century. These writers most probably reckoned from the last period of the exarchate; and the presence of the Greek magistrates and troops at Ravenna and Rome must have preserved, in some degree, the use of their native tongue.

⁹⁹ See the article of Emanuel, or Manuel Chrysoloras, in Hody (p. 13-54), and Tiraboschi (tom. vii. p. 113-118). The precise date of his arrival floats between the years 1390 and 1400, and is only confined by the reign of Boniface IX. [The Greek grammar of Chrysoloras was printed in Venice in 1484. For the chronology of his life cp. Klette, *op. cit.* part i.]

¹⁰⁰ The name of *Aretinus* has been assumed by five or six natives of *Arrezzo* in Tuscany, of whom the most famous and the most worthless lived in the xvith century. Leonardus Brunus Aretinus, the disciple of Chrysoloras, was a linguist, an orator, and an historian, the secretary of four successive popes, and the chancellor of the republic of Florence, where he died, A.D. 1444, at the age of seventy-five (Fabric. *Bibliot. medii Ævi*, tom. i. p. 190, &c.; Tiraboschi, tom. vii. p. 33-38).

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Cardinal Bessarion, &c.

tian but for the Catholic cause. A patriot who sacrifices his party and conscience to the allurements of favour may be possessed, however, of the private and social virtues; he no longer bears the reproachful epitheta of slave and apostate; and the consideration which he acquires among his new associates will restore in his own eyes the dignity of his character. The prudent conformity of Bessarion was rewarded with the Roman purple; he fixed his residence in Italy; and the Greek cardinal, the titular patriarch of Constantinople, was respected as the chief and protector of his nation.¹⁰⁴ His abilities were exercised in the legations of Bologna, Venice, Germany, and France; and his election to the chair of St. Peter floated for a moment on the uncertain breath of a conclave.¹⁰⁵ His ecclesiastical honours diffused a splendour and pre-eminence over his literary merit and service: his palace was a school; as often as the cardinal visited the Vatican, he was attended by a learned train of both nations;¹⁰⁶ of men applauded by themselves and the public; and whose writings, now overspread with dust, were popular and useful in their own times. I shall not attempt to enumerate the restorers of Grecian literature in the fifteenth century; and it may be sufficient to mention with gratitude the names of Theodore Gaza, of George of Trebizond, of John Argyropulus, and Demetrius Chalcondyles, who taught their native language in the schools of Florence and Rome. Their labours were not inferior to those of Bessarion, whose purple they revered, and whose fortune was the secret object of their envy. But the lives of these grammarians were humble and obscure; they had declined the lucrative paths of the church; their dress and manners secluded them from the commerce of the world; and, since they were confined to the merit, they might be content with the rewards, of learning. From this character Janus Lascaris¹⁰⁷ will deserve

¹⁰⁴ See in Hody the article of Bessarion (p. 136-177). Theodore Gaza [of Thessalonica], George of Trebizond, and the rest of the Greeks whom I have named or omitted, are inserted in their proper chapters of his learned work. See likewise Tiraboschi, in the 1st and 2d parts of the vith tome. [See Legrand's work quoted above, note 87.]

¹⁰⁵ The cardinals knocked at his door, but his conclavist refused to interrupt the studies of Bessarion: "Nicholas," said he, "thy respect hath cost thee an hat, and me the tiara".

¹⁰⁶ Such as George of Trebizond, Theodore Gaza, Argyropulus, Andronicus of Thessalonica, Philelphus, Poggius, Blondus, Nicholas Perrot, Valla, Campanus, Platina, &c. Viri (says Hody, with the pious zeal of a scholar) nullo ævo perituri (p. 156).

¹⁰⁷ He was born before the taking of Constantinople, but his honourable life was stretched far into the xvth century (A.D. 1535). Leo X. and Francis I. were his noblest patrons, under whose auspices he founded the Greek colleges of Rome

an exception. His eloquence, politeness, and Imperial descent recommended him to the French monarchs; and in the same cities he was alternately employed to teach and to negotiate. Duty and interest prompted them to cultivate the study of the Latin language; and the most successful attained the faculty of writing and speaking with fluency and elegance in a foreign idiom. But they ever retained the inveterate vanity of their country: their praise, or at least their esteem, was reserved for the national writers, to whom they owed their fame and subsistence; and they sometimes betrayed their contempt in licentious criticism or satire on Virgil's poetry and the oratory of Tully.¹⁰⁸ The superiority of these masters arose from the familiar use of a living language; and their first disciples were incapable of discerning how far they had degenerated from the knowledge, and even the practice, of their ancestors. A vicious pronunciation,¹⁰⁹ which they introduced, was banished from the schools by the reason of the succeeding age. Of the power of the Greek accents they were ignorant; and those musical notes, which, from an Attic tongue and to an Attic ear, must have been the secret soul of harmony, were to their eyes, as to our own, no more than mute or unmeaning marks, in prose superfluous and troublesome in verse.^{109a} The art of grammar they truly possessed; the valuable fragments of Apollonius and Herodian

and Paris (Hody, p. 247-275). He left posterity in France; but the counts de Vintimille, and their numerous branches, derive the name of Lascaris from a doubtful marriage, in the xiiith century, with the daughter of a Greek emperor (Ducange, Fam. Byzant. p. 224-230).

¹⁰⁸ Two of his epigrams against Virgil, and three against Tully, are preserved and refuted by Franciscus Floridus, who can find no better names than *Græculus ineptus et impudens* (Hody, p. 274). In our own times, an English critic has accused the *Aeneid* of containing *multa languida, nugatoria, spiritu et majestate carminis herolci defecta*; many such verses as he, the said Jeremiah Markland, would have been ashamed of owning (præfat. ad Statii Sylvas, p. 21, 22).

¹⁰⁹ Emanuel Chrysoloras, and his colleagues, are accused of ignorance, envy, or avarice (Sylloge, &c. tom. ii. p. 235). The modern Greek pronounces the β as a V consonant, and confound three vowels (η & υ) and several diphthongs [$\alpha\epsilon$, $\alpha\iota$, $\upsilon\iota$]. Such was the vulgar pronunciation which the stern Gardiner maintained by penal statutes in the University of Cambridge; but the monosyllable $\beta\eta$ represented to an Attic ear the bleating of sheep; and a bell-wether is better evidence than a bishop or a chancellor. The treatises of those scholars, particularly Erasmus, who asserted a more classical pronunciation, are collected in the Sylloge of Havercamp (2 vols. in octavo, Lugd. Bat. 1736, 1740); but it is difficult to paint sounds by words; and in their reference to modern use they can be understood only by their respective countrymen. We may observe that our peculiar pronunciation of the β is approved by Erasmus (tom. ii. p. 130) [β is so pronounced in modern Greek].

^{109a} [It is to be observed however that the system of accent-notation was first introduced by the Alexandrines. Gibbon assumes that the meaning of the accents was in ancient times entirely different from their meaning in modern Greek. This is improbable. But it is still a problem how the Greeks conciliated their accentuation with the rhythms of their verses.]

were transfused into their lessons; and their treatises of syntax and etymology, though devoid of philosophic spirit, are still useful to the Greek student. In the shipwreck of the Byzantine libraries, each fugitive seized a fragment of treasure, a copy of some author, who, without his industry, might have perished; the transcripts were multiplied by an assiduous, and sometimes an elegant, pen; and the text was corrected and explained by their own comments or those of the elder scholiasts. The sense, though not the spirit, of the Greek classics was interpreted to the Latin world; the beauties of style evaporate in a version; but the judgment of Theodore Gaza selected the more solid works of Aristotle and Theophrastus, and their natural histories of animals and plants opened a rich fund of genuine and experimental science.¹¹⁰

Yet the fleeting shadows of metaphysics were pursued with more curiosity and ardour. After a long oblivion, Plato was revived in Italy by a venerable Greek,¹¹¹ who taught in the house of Cosmo of Medicis. While the synod of Florence was involved in theological debate, some beneficial consequences might flow from the study of his elegant philosophy; his style is the purest standard of the Attic dialect; and his sublime thoughts are sometimes adapted to familiar conversation, and sometimes adorned with the richest colours of poetry and eloquence. The dialogues of Plato are a dramatic picture of the life and death of a sage; and, as often as he descends from the clouds, his moral system inculcates the love of truth, of our country, and of mankind. The precept and example of Socrates recommended a modest doubt and liberal inquiry; and, if the Platonists, with blind devotion, adored the visions and errors of their divine master, their enthusiasm might correct the dry dogmatic method of the Peripatetic school. So equal, yet so

¹¹⁰ [On Theodore Gaza see the biographical essay of L. Stein in the *Archiv für Geschichte der Philosophie*, ii. p. 426 seq., 1889.]

¹¹¹ George Gemistus Pletho, a various and voluminous writer, the master of Bessarion and all the Platonists of the times. He visited Italy in his old age, and soon returned to end his days in Peloponnesus. See the curious *Diatrise* of Leo Allatius de Georgiis, in Fabricius (*Bibliot. Græc.* tom. x. p. 739-756). [The study of Plato was revived in the 11th century by Michael Psellus. For Plethon see H. F. Tozer, *A Byzantine Reformer*, in the *Journal of Hellenic Studies*, vii. p. 353 seq. 1886; and F. Schultze, *Geschichte der Philosophie der Renaissance*, vol. i. 1874. The *Memoir* on the state of the Peloponnesus, which he addressed to the emperor Manuel, is edited by Ellissen in his *Analekten der mittel-und neugriechischen Litteratur*, vol. iv., part ii., with a German translation. Plethon's works are collected in Migne's *P. G.* vol. clx. On the theological side of his works see W. Gass, *Gennadius und Pletho, Aristotelismus und Platonismus in der griechischen Kirche*, 1844.]

The Platonic
philosophy

[Continue de
Medici]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

nation repaid the liberality of her princes. The Latins held the exclusive property of their own literature; and these disciples of Greece were soon capable of transmitting and improving the lessons which they had imbibed. After a short succession of foreign teachers, the tide of emigration subsided; but the language of Constantinople was spread beyond the Alps; and the natives of France, Germany, and England¹¹⁷ imparted to their country the sacred fire which they had kindled in the schools of Florence and Rome.¹¹⁸ In the productions of the mind, as in those of the soil, the gifts of nature are excelled by industry and skill; the Greek authors, forgotten on the banks of the Ilissus, have been illustrated on those of the Elbe and the Thames; and Bessarion or Gaza might have envied the superior science of the barbarians: the accuracy of Budæna, the taste of Erasmus, the copiousness of Stephens, the erudition of Scaliger, the discernment of Reiske or of Bentley. On the side of the Latins, the discovery of printing was a casual advantage; but this useful art has been applied by Aldus, and his innumerable successors, to perpetuate and multiply the works of antiquity.¹¹⁹ A single manuscript imported from Greece is revived in ten thousand copies; and each copy is fairer than the original. In this form, Homer and Plato would peruse with more satisfaction their own writings; and their scholiasts must resign the prize to the labours of our western editors.

Before the revival of classic literature, the barbarians in Europe were immersed in ignorance; and their vulgar tongues were marked with the rudeness and poverty of their manners.

Use and abuse
of ancient
learning

¹¹⁷ The Greek language was introduced into the University of Oxford in the last years of the xvth century, by Grocyn, Linacer, and Latimer, who had all studied at Florence under Demetrius Chalcondyles. See Dr. Knight's curious Life of Erasmus. Although a stout academical patriot, he is forced to acknowledge that Erasmus learned Greek at Oxford and taught it at Cambridge.

¹¹⁸ The jealous Italians were desirous of keeping a monopoly of Greek learning. When Aldus was about to publish the Greek scholiasts on Sophocles and Euripides, Cave (say they), cave hoc facias, ne Barbari istis adjuti domi maneat, et pauciores in Italiam ventitent (Dr. Knight, in his Life of Erasmus, p. 365, from Beatus Rhenanus).

¹¹⁹ The press of Aldus Manutius, a Roman, was established at Venice about the year 1494. He printed above sixty considerable works of Greek literature, almost all for the first time; several containing different treatises and authors, and of several authors two, three, or four editions (Fabric. Bibliot. Græc. tom. xiii. p. 605, &c.). Yet his glory must not tempt us to forget that the first Greek book, the Grammar of Constantine Lascaris, was printed at Milan in 1476; and that the Florence Homer of 1488 displays all the luxury of the typographical art. See the *Annales Typographici* of Mattaire and the *Bibliographie Instructive* of De Bure, a knowing bookseller of Paris. [A. F. Didot, *Alde Manuce et l'hellénisme à Venise*, 1775.]

The students of the more perfect idioms of Rome and Greece were introduced to a new world of light and science; to the society of the free and polished nations of antiquity; and to a familiar converse with those immortal men who spoke the sublime language of eloquence and reason. Such an intercourse must tend to refine the taste, and to elevate the genius, of the moderns; and yet, from the first experiments, it might appear that the study of the ancients had given fetters, rather than wings, to the human mind. However laudable, the spirit of imitation is of a servile cast; and the first disciples of the Greeks and Romans were a colony of strangers in the midst of their age and country. The minute and laborious diligence which explored the antiquities of remote times might have improved or adorned the present state of society: the critic and metaphysician were the slaves of Aristotle; the poets, historians, and orators were proud to repeat the thoughts and words of the Augustan age; the works of nature were observed with the eyes of Pliny and Theophrastus; and some pagan votaries professed a secret devotion to the gods of Homer and Plato.¹²⁰ The Italians were oppressed by the strength and number of their ancient auxiliaries: the century after the deaths of Petrarch and Boccace was filled with a crowd of Latin imitators, who decently repose on our shelves; but in that æra of learning it will not be easy to discern a real discovery of science, a work of invention or eloquence, in the popular language of the country.¹²¹ But, as soon as it had been deeply saturated with the celestial dew, the soil was quickened into vegetation and life; the modern idioms were refined; the classics of Athens and Rome inspired a pure taste and a generous emulation; and in Italy, as afterwards in France and England, the

¹²⁰ I will select three singular examples of this classic enthusiasm. 1. At the synod of Florence, Gemistus Pletho said in familiar conversation to George of Trebizond, that in a short time mankind would unanimously renounce the Gospel and the Koran for a religion similar to that of the Gentiles (Leo Allatius, apud Fabricium, tom. x. p. 751). 2. Paul II. persecuted the Roman academy which had been founded by Pomponius Lætus; and the principal members were accused of heresy, impiety, and *paganism* (Tiraboschi, tom. vi. p. i. p. 81, 82). [Cp. Burckhardt, *Die Cultur der Renaissance in Italien*, ii. 252.] 3. In the next century, some scholars and poets in France celebrated the success of Jodelle's tragedy of Cleopatra by a festival of Bacchus; and, it is said, by the sacrifice of a goat (Bayle, *Dictionnaire*, JODELLE; Fontenelle, tom. iii. p. 56-61). Yet the spirit of bigotry might often discern a serious impiety in the sportive play of fancy and learning.

¹²¹ The survivor of Boccace died in the year 1375; and we cannot place before 1480 the composition of the *Morgante Maggiore* of Pulci, and the *Orlando Innamorato* of Boyardo (Tiraboschi, tom. vi. p. ii. p. 174-177).

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

CHAPTER LXVII

Schism of the Greeks and Latins—Reign and Character of Amurath the Second—Crusade of Ladislaus, King of Hungary—His Defeat and Death—John Huniades—Scanderbeg—Constantine Palæologus, last Emperor of the East

Comparison of
Rome and
Constanti-
nople

THE respective merits of Rome and Constantinople are compared and celebrated by an eloquent Greek, the father of the Italian schools.¹ The view of the ancient capital, the seat of his ancestors, surpassed the most sanguine expectations of Emanuel Chrysoloras; and he no longer blamed the exclamation of an old sophist, that Rome was the habitation, not of men, but of gods. Those gods and those men had long since vanished; but, to the eye of liberal enthusiasm, the majesty of ruin restored the image of her ancient prosperity. The monuments of the consuls and Cæsars, of the martyrs and apostles, engaged on all sides the curiosity of the philosopher and the Christian; and he confessed that in every age the arms and religion of Rome were destined to reign over the earth. While Chrysoloras admired the venerable beauties of the mother, he was not forgetful of his native country, her fairest daughter, her Imperial colony; and the Byzantine patriot expatiates with seal and truth on the eternal advantages of nature and the more transitory glories of art and dominion, which adorned, or had adorned, the city of Constantine. Yet the perfection of the copy still redounds (as he modestly observes) to the honour of the original; and parents are delighted to be renewed, and even excelled, by the superior merit of their children. “Con-

¹ The epistle of Emanuel Chrysoloras to the emperor John Palæologus will not offend the eye or ear of a classical student (*ad calcem Codini de Antiquitatibus C. P.* p. 107-126). The superscription suggests a chronological remark that John Palæologus II. was associated in the empire before the year 1414, the date of Chrysoloras's death. A still earlier date, at least 1408, is deduced from the age of his youngest sons Demetrius and Thomas, who were both *Porphyrogeniti* (Ducange, *Fam. Byzant.* p. 244. 247).

stantinople," says the orator, "is situate on a commanding point, between Europe and Asia, between the Archipelago and the Euxine. By her interposition, the two seas and the two continents are united for the common benefit of nations; and the gates of commerce may be shut or opened at her command. The harbour, encompassed on all sides by the sea and the continent, is the most secure and capacious in the world. The walls and gates of Constantinople may be compared with those of Babylon; the towers are many; each tower is a solid and lofty structure; and the second wall, the outer fortification, would be sufficient for the defence and dignity of an ordinary capital. A broad and rapid stream may be introduced into the ditches; and the artificial island may be encompassed, like Athens,² by land or water." Two strong and natural causes are alleged for the perfection of the model of new Rome. The royal founder reigned over the most illustrious nations of the globe; and, in the accomplishment of his designs, the power of the Romans was combined with the art and science of the Greeks. Other cities have been reared to maturity by accident and time; their beauties are mingled with disorder and deformity; and the inhabitants, unwilling to remove from their natal spot, are incapable of correcting the errors of their ancestors and the original vices of situation or climate. But the free idea of Constantinople was formed and executed by a single mind; and the primitive model was improved by the obedient zeal of the subjects and successors of the first monarch. The adjacent isles were stored with an inexhaustible supply of marble; but the various materials were transported from the most remote shores of Europe and Asia; and the public and private buildings, the palaces, churches, aqueducts, cisterns, porticoes, columns, baths, and hippodromes, were adapted to the greatness of the capital of the East. The superfluity of wealth was spread along the shores of Europe and Asia; and the Byzantine territory, as far as the Euxine, the Hellespont, and the long wall, might be considered as a populous suburb and a perpetual garden. In this pleasing picture, the past and the present, the times of prosperity and decay, are artfully confounded; but a sigh and a wish escape from the orator, that his wretched country

² Somebody observed, that the city of Athens might be circumnavigated (*ὅτι δὲ τὴν πόλιν τὴν Ἀθηναίων ὑπερβαίνει καὶ παραλαίῳ καὶ περιπλάτῳ*). But what may be true in a rhetorical sense of Constantinople cannot be applied to the situation of Athens, five miles from the sea, and not intersected or surrounded by any

was the shadow and sepulchre of its former self. The works of ancient sculpture had been defaced by Christian zeal or barbaric violence; the fairest structures were demolished; and the marbles of Paros or Numidia were burnt for lime or applied to the meanest uses. Of many a statue, the place was marked by an empty pedestal; of many a column, the size was determined by a broken capital; the tombs of the emperors were scattered on the ground; the stroke of time was accelerated by storms and earthquakes; and the vacant space was adorned, by vulgar tradition, with fabulous monuments of gold and silver. From these wonders, which lived only in memory or belief, he distinguishes, however, the porphyry pillar, the column and colossus of Justinian,³ and the church, more especially the dome, of St. Sophia: the best conclusion, since it could not be described according to its merits, and after it no other object could deserve to be mentioned. But he forgets that a century before the trembling fabrics of the colossus and the church had been saved and supported by the timely care of Andronicus the Elder. Thirty years after the emperor had fortified St. Sophia with two new buttresses, or pyramids, the eastern hemisphere suddenly gave way; and the images, the altars, and the sanctuary were crushed by the falling ruin. The mischief indeed was speedily repaired; the rubbish was cleared by the incessant labour of every rank and age; and the poor remains of riches and industry were consecrated by the Greeks to the most stately and venerable temple of the East.⁴

The Greek schism after the council of Florence, A.D. 1429-1448

The last hope of the falling city and empire was placed in the harmony of the mother and daughter, in the maternal tenderness of Rome and the filial obedience of Constantinople.

³ Nicephorus Gregoras has described the colossus of Justinian (l. vii. 18); but his measures are false and inconsistent. The editor, Boivin, consulted his friend Girardon; and the sculptor gave him the true proportions of an equestrian statue. That of Justinian was still visible to Peter Gyllius, not on the column, but in the outward court of the seraglio; and he was at Constantinople when it was melted down and cast into a brass cannon (de Topograph. C. P. l. ii. c. 17). [The equestrian statue of Justinian was in the Augusteum. What seems to be the base of the statue has been found near the Church of SS. Sergius and Bacchus (the Kutchuk Aya Sophia) with an inscription beginning: 'Επιβίαι (sic) ἐπὶ τοῖς ἰσθμοῖς σου καὶ ἡ ἰσθμὸς σου στήριξις from Habakkuk, iii. 8]. See Mordtmann, Esquisse topographique, § 97 (p. 55).]

⁴ See the decay and repairs of St. Sophia, in Nicephorus Gregoras (l. vii. 12; l. xv. 2). The building was propped by Andronicus in 1317, the eastern hemisphere fell in 1345. The Greeks, in their pompous rhetoric, exalt the beauty and holiness of the church, an earthly heaven, the abode of angels, and of God himself, &c. [Cp. Cantacuzenus, i. p. 30, ed. Bonn. See Lethaby and Swainson, Sancta Sophia, p. 124 and p. 152.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

THE DECLINE AND FALL

...that which has signed the union should be cut off; and the ... that has pronounced the Latin creed deserves to be ... the root." The best proof of their repentance was an ... of zeal for the most trivial rites and the most in- ... doctrines; and an absolute separation from all, without excepting their prince, who preserved some regard for ... and consistency. After the decease of the patriarch ... the archbishops of Heraclea and Trebizond had courage to refuse the vacant office; and Cardinal Bessarion preferred the ... and comfortable shelter of the Vatican. The choice of the emperor and his clergy was confined to Metrophanes of ...: he was consecrated in St. Sophia, but the temple was vacant; the cross-bearers abdicated their service; the in- ... spread from the city to the villages; and Metrophanes discharged, without effect, some ecclesiastical thunders against a nation of schismatics. The eyes of the Greeks were directed to Mark of Ephesus, the champion of his country; and the sufferings of the holy confessor were repaid with a tribute of admiration and applause. His example and writings propagated the flame of religious discord; age and infirmity soon removed him from the world; but the gospel of Mark was not a law of forgiveness; and he requested with his dying breath that none of the adherents of Rome might attend his obsequies or pray for his soul.⁷

The schism was not confined to the narrow limits of the By- zantine empire. Secure under the Mamaluke sceptre, the three patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem assembled a

⁷ [Since the publication of the *De Ecclesiae occidentalis atque Orientalis perpetua consensione* of Leo Allatius, it has been generally supposed that a Synod, held at St. Sophia in A.D. 1450, under the auspices of the Emperor Constantine, repudiated the Acts of the Council of Florence. Allatius (c. 1380) gave an account of the "Acts" of this Synod, and condemned them as spurious, on account of some obvious blunders which appeared in their Title. An edition of these Acts was shortly afterwards published by Dositheus, Patriarch of Jerusalem, in his *Τόμος ορθόδοξος*, p. 454 177.; but in the Title, in his edition, the blunders were corrected, and he defended the genuineness of the document. But, quite apart from the title, the document is marked by anachronisms and blunders which have been recently exposed by Ch. Papaioannu. This Russian scholar has submitted the Acts to a thorough-going criticism (*Akty tak nazyvavemago posliedniago Sophiiskago Sobora (1450 g.) i ich istoricheskoe dostoinstvo*, in *Vizantiiskii Vremennik*, il. p. 394 177., 1895), and has shown convincingly not only that the Acts are spurious but that no such Synod was ever held. The first Synod that rejected the decrees of Florence was that of A.D. 1484. The Synod of 1450 was invented and the Acts forged probably not later than the beginning of the 17th century. One of the anachronisms which the unknown forger committed was making Marcus of Ephesus take part in the Synod. But Marcus had died before 1448; probably (as Papaioannu shows, pp. 398-399) in 1447.]

East of the
Caucasus and
Bulgaria

numerous synod ; disowned their representatives at Ferrara and Florence ; condemned the creed and council of the Latins ; and threatened the emperor of Constantinople with the censures of the Eastern church. Of the sectaries of the Greek communion, the Russians were the most powerful, ignorant, and superstitious. Their primate, the cardinal Isidore, hastened from Florence to Moscow,⁸ to reduce the independent nation under the Roman yoke. But the Russian bishops had been educated at Mount Athos ; and the prince and people embraced the theology of their priests. They were scandalized by the title, the pomp, the Latin cross, of the legate, the friend of those impious men who shaved their beards and performed the divine office with gloves on their hands and rings on their fingers. Isidore was condemned by a synod ; his person was imprisoned in a monastery ; and it was with extreme difficulty that the cardinal could escape from the hands of a fierce and fanatic people.⁹ The Russians refused a passage to the missionaries of Rome, who aspired to convert the pagans beyond the Tanais¹⁰ ; and their refusal was justified by the maxim that the guilt of idolatry is less damnable than that of schism. The errors of the Bohemians were excused by their abhorrence for the pope ; and a deputation of the Greek clergy solicited the friendship of those sanguinary enthusiasts.¹¹ While Eugenius triumphed in the union and orthodoxy of the Greeks, his party was contracted to the walls, or rather to the palace, of Constantinople. The zeal of Palæologus had been excited by interest ; it was soon cooled by opposi-

⁸ Isidore was metropolitan of Kiow, but the Greeks subject to Poland have removed that see from the ruins of Kiow to Lemberg or Leopold [Lvov] (Herbstain, in Ramusio, tom. ii. p. 127). On the other hand, the Russians transferred their spiritual obedience to the archbishop, who became, in 1588, the patriarch of Moscow (Levesque, Hist. de Russie, tom. iii. p. 188, 190, from a Greek Ms. at Turin, *Iter et labores Archiepiscopi Arsenii*).

⁹ The curious narrative of Levesque (Hist. de Russie, tom. ii. p. 242-247) is extracted from the patriarchal archives. The scenes of Ferrara and Florence are described by ignorance and passion ; but the Russians are credible in the account of their own prejudices.

¹⁰ The Shamanism, the ancient religion of the Samanseans and Gymnosophists, has been driven by the more popular Bramins from India into the northern deserts ; the naked philosophers were compelled to wrap themselves in fur ; but they insensibly sunk into wizards and physicians. The Mordvans and Tcheremisses, in the European Russia, adhere to this religion, which is formed on the earthly model of one King or God, his ministers or angels, and the rebellious spirits who oppose his government. As these tribes of the Volga have no images, they might more justly retort on the Latin missionaries the name of Idolaters (Levesque, Hist. des Peuples soumis à la Domination des Russes, tom. i. p. 194-237, 423-460).

¹¹ Spodanus, Annal. Eccles. tom. ii. A. D. 1451, NO. 13. The epistle of the Greeks, with a Latin version, is extant in the college library at Prague.

THE DECLINE AND FALL

... attempt to violate the national... nor could the... and domestic aid. The sword... had maintained a... insinuated in the cause of... sultan, was deposed and... of the Greeks and Latins.

Murad, or Anmuth, lived... years, six months, and eight days... prince, of a great soul, patient... religious, charitable, a lover... and of all who excelled in any... and a great general. No man... victories than Anmuth. Belgrad... Under his reign the soldier was... rich and secure. If he subdued any... was to build mosques and caravans... Every year he gave a thousand... of the Prophet, and sent two thousand... religious persons of Mecca, Medina, and... contrast is transcribed from the history of the... but the applause of a servile and superstitious... been lavished on the word of tyrants; and the... sultan are often the vices most useful... agreeable to his subjects. A nation... benefits of liberty and law must be awed by the... arbitrary power: the cruelty of a despot will... of justice, his profusion, of liberality; his... If the most reasonable excuse be rejected... evidence will be found impossible; and guilt must... innocence cannot always be secure. The tranquility of... people and the discipline of the troops were best maintained... perpetual action in the field; war was the trade of the

... History of the Ottoman Empire, p. 64. Murad is Murad... but I have preferred the popular name to that obscure... successful in translating an Oriental into the Roman... knight, Bertrand de la Broquerie (see below p. 155... description of Murad: "A little short thick man, with the phylagony of a Tartar. He has... two high cheek bones, a round beard, a great and... but they say he is kind, good, generous, and willingly gives... He is thought not to love war, and this seems to... He loves liquor and those who drink hard." He threw... to admonish him against indulgence in wine. (T. ... Palestine, p. 346-347.)

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

CLINE AND FALL

of the Hegira that the religion
by an institution so adverse to
of the crusades the various orders of
by the example of the Christians, and
the lord of nations submitted to fast,
in endless rotation with the fanatics
of the head for the illumination of
was now awakened from this dream of
Hungarian invasion; and his obedient son
the public danger and the wishes of
honour of their veteran leader, the
surrendered; but he withdrew from the
to pray, to fast, and to turn round with
These pious occupations were again
danger of the state. A victorious army
of their youthful ruler; the city of
dedicated to rapine and slaughter; and the
sought his presence to appease the tumult,
of the Janizaries. At the well-known
they trembled and obeyed; and the re-
compelled to support his splendid servitude,
years, he was relieved by the angel of
disease, misfortune or caprice, have tempted
descend from the throne; and they have had
of their irretrievable step. But Amurath
liberty of choice, after the trial of empire and
his preference of a private life.
capture of his Greek brethren, Eugenius had
of their temporal interest; and his tender
Byzantine empire was animated by a just appre-
Turks, who approached, and might soon invade,
Italy. But the spirit of the crusades had expired;
of the Franks was not less unreasonable than
passion. In the eleventh century, a fanatic
precipitate Europe on Asia for the recovery of the

Derviche, Fakir, Nasser, Rakkasial, in d'Herbelot's Biblio-
Yet the subject is superficially treated from the Persian and
It is among the Turks that these orders have principally flour-

(the Present State of the Ottoman Empire, p. 242-268) affords much
which he drew from his personal conversation with the heads of the
of whom ascribed their origin to the time of Orchan. He does not
of Chalcondyles (l. vii. p. 286), among whom Amurath re-
of that author are the descendants of Mahomet.

holy sepulchre ; but, in the fifteenth, the most pressing motives of religion and policy were insufficient to unite the Latins in the defence of Christendom. Germany was an inexhaustible storehouse of men and arms ;¹⁸ but that complex and languid body required the impulse of a vigorous hand ; and Frederic the Third was alike impotent in his personal character and his Imperial dignity. A long war had impaired the strength, without satiating the animosity, of France and England ;¹⁹ but Philip, duke of Burgundy, was a vain and magnificent prince ; and he enjoyed, without danger or expense, the adventurous piety of his subjects, who sailed, in a gallant fleet, from the coast of Flanders to the Hellespont. The maritime republics of Venice and Genoa were less remote from the scene of action ; and their hostile fleets were associated under the standard of St. Peter. The kingdoms of Hungary and Poland, which covered, as it were, the interior pale of the Latin church, were the most nearly concerned to oppose the progress of the Turks. Arms were the patrimony of the Scythians and Sarmatians ; and these nations might appear equal to the contest, could they point, against the common foe, those swords that were so wantonly drawn in bloody and domestic quarrels. But the same spirit was adverse to concord and obedience ; a poor country and a limited monarch are incapable of maintaining a standing force ; and the loose bodies of Polish and Hungarian horse were not armed with the sentiments and weapons which, on some occasions, have given irresistible weight to the French chivalry. Yet, on this side, the designs of the Roman pontiff and the eloquence of Cardinal Julian, his legate, were promoted by the circumstances of the times ;²⁰ by the union of the two crowns

(Juliano Cesarini)

¹⁸ In the year 1431, Germany raised 40,000 horse, men at arms, against the Hussites of Bohemia (L'enfant, Hist. du Concile de Basle, tom. i. p. 318). At the siege of Nuys (Neuss) on the Rhine, in 1474, the princes, prelates, and cities sent their respective quotas ; and the bishop of Munster (qui n'est pas des plus grands) furnished 1400 horse, 6000 foot, all in green, with 1200 waggons. The united armies of the king of England and the duke of Burgundy scarcely equalled one-third of this German host (Mémoires de Philippe de Comines, l. iv. c. 2). At present, six or seven hundred thousand men are maintained in constant pay and admirable discipline by the powers of Germany.

¹⁹ It was not till the year 1444, that France and England could agree on a truce of some months (see Rymer's Fœdera, and the chronicles of both nations).

²⁰ In the Hungarian crusade, Spondanus (Annal. Eccles. A.D. 1443, 1444) has been my leading guide. He has diligently read, and critically compared, the Greek and Turkish materials, the historians of Hungary, Poland, and the West. His narrative is perspicuous ; and, where he can be free from a religious bias, the judgment of Spondanus is not contemptible.

on the head of Ladislaus,²¹ a young and ambitious soldier; by the valour of an hero, whose name, the name of John Huniades, was already popular among the Christians and formidable to the Turks. An endless treasure of pardons and indulgences were scattered by the legate; many private warriors of France and Germany enlisted under the holy banner; and the crusade derived some strength, or at least some reputation, from the new allies, both of Europe and Asia. A fugitive despot of Serbia exaggerated the distress and ardour of the Christians beyond the Danube, who would unanimously rise to vindicate their religion and liberty. The Greek emperor,²² with a spirit unknown to his fathers, engaged to guard the Bosphorus, and to sally from Constantinople at the head of his national and mercenary troops. The sultan of Caramania²³ announced the retreat of Amurath and a powerful diversion in the heart of Anatolia; and, if the fleets of the West could occupy at the same moment the straits of the Hellespont, the Ottoman monarchy would be severed and destroyed. Heaven and earth must rejoice in the perdition of the miscreants; and the legate, with prudent ambiguity, instilled the opinion of the invisible, perhaps the visible, aid of the Son of God and his divine mother.

Of the Polish and Hungarian diets, a religious war was the unanimous cry; and Ladislaus, after passing the Danube, led an army of his confederate subjects as far as Sophia, the capital of the Bulgarian kingdom.²⁴ In this expedition they obtained two signal victories, which were justly ascribed to the valour and conduct of Huniades. In the first, with a vanguard of ten thousand men, he surprised the Turkish camp; in the second, he vanquished and made prisoner the most renowned of their

²¹ I have curtailed the harsh letter (Wladislaus) which most writers affix to his name, either in compliance with the Polish pronunciation, or to distinguish him from his rival the infant Ladislaus of Austria. Their competition for the crown of Hungary is described by Callimachus (l. i. ii. p. 447-486), Bonfinius (Decad. lii. l. iv.), Spondanus, and Lenfant.

²² The Greek historians, Phranza, Chalcondyles, and Ducas, do not ascribe to their prince a very active part in this crusade, which he seems to have promoted by his wishes and injured by his fears.

²³ Cantemir (p. 88) ascribes to his policy the original plan, and transcribes his animating epistle to the king of Hungary. But the Mahometan powers are seldom informed of the state of Christendom; and the situation and correspondence of the knights of Rhodes must connect them with the sultan of Caramania.

²⁴ [For this expedition see Katona, *Histor. crit. reg. Hung. Stirpis mxtiae*, v. p. 245 277. ; Neri (in Thury's *Török történetiök*, vol. i.) p. 58; the Anonymous of 1486. *ib.* p. 18, 19; Sad ad-Din, *ib.* p. 196 277. ; Zinkeisen, *Gesch. des osmanischen Reiches*, i. 611 277.]

(George Brankovic)

Ladislaus, king of Poland and Hungary, marches against them. (A. D. 1457) [Battle of Nitoch, 3rd Nov.] [Battle of Kunovitz, 20th Dec.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

were masters of the Hellespont; and that the allies, ignorant of the treaty, of Ladislaus, waited for the return of his victorious army. And he exhorted the cardinal, "that you will desert their expectations and your own fortune? It is to them, to your fellow-Christians, that you have pledged your great obligation annihilates a rash and sacrilegious vicar of Christ. His vicar on earth is the pope; without whose sanction you can neither promise nor perform. In his name I absolve your perjury and sanctify my footsteps in the paths of glory and salvation. If still ye have scruples, devolve on my head the guilt and the sin." This mischievous casuistry was supported by his respectable character and the levity of popular opinion. War was resolved on the same spot where peace had been sworn; and, in the execution of the treaty, the Latins were assaulted by the Christians; to whom, with justice, they might apply the epithet of Infidels. The breach of Ladislaus to his word and oath was palliated by the success of the times; the most perfect, or at least the most plausible excuse would have been the success of his arms and the assistance of the Eastern church. But the same treaty which should have bound his conscience had diminished his strength. On the proclamation of the peace, the French and Germans departed with indignant murmurs; the Poles were exhausted by distant warfare, and perhaps disgusted with foreign command; and their palatines accepted the first licence and retired to their provinces and castles. Even Hungary was divided by faction or restrained by a laudable scruple; and the ranks of the crusade that marched in the second expedition were reduced to an inadequate force of twenty thousand men. A Wallachian chief, who joined the royal standard with his usual retinue that sometimes attended the sultan; and the gift of two horses of matchless speed might admonish Ladislaus of his secret foresight of the event. But the despot

I do not pretend to warrant the literal accuracy of Julian's speech, which is variously worded by Callimachus (l. iii. p. 505-507), Boetius (Dec. iii. l. vi. p. 107, 108), and other historians, who might indulge their own eloquence, while they represent one of the orators of the age. But they all agree in the advice and argument for perjury, which in the field of controversy are fiercely attacked by the Protestants and freely defended by the Catholics. The latter are discouraged by the misfortune of Varna.

of Servia, after the restoration of his country and children, was tempted by the promise of new realms; and the inexperience of the king, the enthusiasm of the legate, and the martial presumption of Huniades himself were persuaded that every obstacle must yield to the invincible virtue of the sword and the cross. After the passage of the Danube, two roads might lead to Constantinople and the Hellespont: the one direct, abrupt, and difficult, through the mountains of Hæmus; the other more tedious and secure, over a level country, and along the shores of the Euxine; in which their flanks, according to the Scythian discipline, might always be covered by a moveable fortification of waggons. The latter was judiciously preferred: the Catholics marched through the plains of Bulgaria, burning, with wanton cruelty, the churches and villages of the Christian natives; and their last station was at **Warna**, near the sea-shore, on which the defeat and death of Ladislaus have bestowed a memorable name.²⁸

It was on this fatal spot that, instead of finding a confederate fleet to second their operations, they were alarmed by the approach of Amurath himself, who had issued from his Magnesian solitude and transported the forces of Asia to the defence of Europe. According to some writers, the Greek emperor had been awed, or seduced, to grant the passage of the Bosphorus; and an indelible stain of corruption is fixed on the Genoese, or the pope's nephew, the Catholic admiral, whose mercenary connivance betrayed the guard of the Hellespont.²⁹ From Hadrianople, the sultan advanced, by hasty marches, at the head of sixty thousand men; and, when the cardinal and Huniades had taken a nearer survey of the numbers and order of the Turks, these ardent warriors proposed the tardy and impracticable measure of a retreat. The king alone was resolved to conquer or die; and his resolution had almost been crowned with a glorious and salutary victory. The princes were opposite to each other in the centre; and the Beglerbegs, or generals of Anatolia and Romania, commanded on the right and left against the adverse

*Battle of
Warna, A.D.
1444, 10th Nov.*

²⁸ Warna, under the Grecian name of Odessus, was a colony of the Milesians which they denominated from the hero Ulysses (Cellarius, tom. i. p. 374; d'Anville, tom. i. p. 312). According to Arrian's Periplus of the Euxine (p. 24, 25, in the first volume of Hudson's Geographers), it was situate 1740 stadia, or furlongs, from the mouth of the Danube, 2140 from Byzantium, and 360 to the north of a ridge or promontory of Mount Hæmus, which advances into the sea.

²⁹ [It is difficult to understand what the Papal fleet was doing. The place where it was stationed is uncertain. The Turkish sources differ; they agree only that he did not cross at Gallipoli. Cp. Thury's note, *op. cit.* p. 21.]

divisions of the despot and Huniades. The Turkish wings were broken on the first onset; but the advantage was fatal; and the rash victors, in the heat of the pursuit, were carried away far from the annoyance of the enemy or the support of their friends. When Amurath beheld the flight of his squadrons, he despaired of his fortune and that of the empire: a veteran Janizary seized his horse's bridle; and he had magnanimity to pardon and reward the soldier who dared to perceive the terror, and arrest the flight, of his sovereign. A copy of the treaty, the monument of Christian perfidy, had been displayed in the front of battle; and it is said that the sultan in his distress, lifting his eyes and his hands to heaven, implored the protection of the God of truth; and called on the prophet Jesus himself to avenge the impious mockery of his name and religion.²⁰ With inferior numbers and disordered ranks, the king of Hungary rushed forwards in the confidence of victory, till his career was stopped by the impenetrable phalanx of the Janizaries. If we may credit the Ottoman annals, his horse was pierced by the javelin of Amurath²¹; he fell among the spears of the infantry; and a Turkish soldier proclaimed with a loud voice, "Hungarians, behold the head of your king!" The death of Ladislaus was the signal of their defeat. On his return from an intemperate pursuit, Huniades deplored his error and the public loss; he strove to rescue the royal body, till he was overwhelmed by the tumultuous crowd of the victors and vanquished; and the last efforts of his courage and conduct were exerted to save the remnant of his Walachian cavalry. Ten thousand Christians were slain in the disastrous battle of Warna. The loss of the Turks, more considerable in numbers, bore a smaller proportion to their total strength; yet the philosophic sultan was not ashamed to confess that his ruin must be the consequence of a second and similar victory. At his command, a column was erected on the spot where Ladislaus had fallen; but the modest inscription, instead of accusing the rashness, recorded the valour, and bewailed the misfortune, of the Hungarian youth.²²

²⁰ Some Christian writers affirm that he drew from his bosom the host or wafer on which the treaty had not been sworn. The Moslems suppose, with more simplicity, an appeal to God and his prophet Jesus, which is likewise insinuated by Callimachus (l. iii. p. 516, Spondan. A.D. 1444, No. 8).

²¹ A critic will always distrust these *spolia opima* of a victorious general, so difficult for valour to obtain, so easy for flattery to invent (Cantemir, p. 90, 91). Callimachus (l. iii. p. 517) more simply and probably affirms, *supervenientibus Janisariis, telorum multitudine non tam confosus est quam obrutus*.

²² Besides some valuable hints from Æneas Sylvius, which are diligently collected by Spondanus, our best authorities are three historians of the xvth century, Philip-

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

first victim. The cardinal, who performed the duties of a priest and a soldier, was lost in the defeat of Warna. The circumstances of his death are variously related; but it is believed that a weighty incumbrance of gold impeded his flight, and tempted the cruel avarice of some Christian fugitives.

John Corvinus
Huniades

From an humble or at least a doubtful origin, the merit of John Huniades promoted him to the command of the Hungarian armies. His father was a Walachian, his mother a Greek: her unknown race might possibly ascend to the emperors of Constantinople; and the claims of the Walachians, with the surname of Corvinus, from the place of his nativity, might suggest a thin pretence for mingling his blood with the patricians of ancient Rome.²⁵ In his youth, he served in the wars of Italy, and was retained, with twelve horsemen, by the bishop of Zagrab; the valour of the *white knight*²⁶ was soon conspicuous; he increased his fortunes by a noble and wealthy marriage; and in the defence of the Hungarian borders he won, in the same year, three battles against the Turks. By his influence, Ladislaus of Poland obtained the crown of Hungary; and the important service was rewarded by the title and office of Waivod of Transylvania. The first of Julian's crusades added two Turkish laurels on his brow; and in the public distress the fatal errors of Warna were forgotten. During the absence and minority of Ladislaus of Austria, the titular king, Huniades was elected supreme captain and governor of Hungary; and, if envy at first was silenced by terror, a reign of twelve years supposes the arts of policy as well as of war. Yet the idea of a consummate general is not delineated in his campaigns; the white knight fought with the hand rather than the head, as the chief of desultory barbarians, who attack without fear and fly without shame; and his military life is composed of a romantic alternative of victories and escapes. By the Turks, who employed his name to frighten their perverse children, he was corruptly denominated *Jancus Lain*, or the Wicked; their hatred is the proof of their esteem; the kingdom which

²⁵ See Bonfinius, decad iii. l. iv. p. 423. Could the Italian historian pronounce, or the king of Hungary bear, without a blush, the absurd flattery which confounded the name of a Walachian village with the casual though glorious epithet of a single branch of the Valerian family at Rome? [For the Walachian origin of Hunyady, cp. Xénopol, Histoire des Roumains, i. p. 264.]

²⁶ Philip de Comines (Mémoires, l. vi. c. 13), from the tradition of the times, mentions him with high encomiums, but under the whimsical name of the Chevalier Blanc de Valaigne (Valachia). The Greek Chalcondyles, and the Turkish Annals of Leunclavius, presume to accuse his fidelity or valour. [Teleki, A Hunyadiak kora Magyarországon (The Age of the Hunyadys in Hungary), vols. 1-5, 1852-7.];

he guarded was inaccessible to their arms; and they felt him most daring and formidable, when they fondly believed the captain of his country irrecoverably lost. Instead of confining himself to a defensive war, four years after the defeat of Warna he again penetrated into the heart of Bulgaria; and in the plain of Cossova sustained, till the third day, the shock of the Ottoman army, four times more numerous than his own. As he fled alone through the woods of Walachia, the hero was surprised by two robbers; but, while they disputed a gold chain that hung at his neck, he recovered his sword, slew the one, terrified the other; and, after new perils of captivity or death, consoled by his presence an afflicted kingdom. But the last and most glorious action of his life was the defence of Belgrade against the powers of Mahomet the Second in person. After a siege of forty days, the Turks, who had already entered the town, were compelled to retreat; and the joyful nations celebrated Huniades and Belgrade as the bulwarks of Christendom.³⁷ About a month after this great deliverance, the champion expired; and his most splendid epitaph is the regret of the Ottoman prince, who sighed that he could no longer hope for revenge against the single antagonist who had triumphed over his arms. On the first vacancy of the throne, Matthias Corvinus, a youth of eighteen years of age, was elected and crowned by the grateful Hungarians. His reign was prosperous and long. Matthias aspired to the glory of a conqueror and a saint; but his purest merit is the encouragement of learning; and the Latin orators and historians, who were invited from Italy by the son, have shed the lustre of their eloquence on the father's character.³⁸

His defence of
Belgrade, and
death, A. D.
1456, 22nd
July-4th
Sept.

³⁷ See Bonfinius (decad iii. l. viii. p. 499) and Spondanus (A. D. 1456, No. 1-7). Huniades shared the glory of the defence of Belgrade with Capistran, a Franciscan friar; and in their respective narratives neither the saint nor the hero condescends to take notice of his rival's merit. [On John Capistrano see Hermann, *Capistranus triumphans seu historia fundamentalis de S. Joanne Cap.*, 1700; Cataneo, *Vita di S. Giovanni da Capistrano*, 1691; Guérard, *S. Jean de Capistran et son temps*, 1865. The last campaign of Hunyady is the subject of a monograph by Kiss (*Hunyadi János utolsó hadjárata*, 1857). The siege of Belgrade has been treated fully by Mr. R. N. Bain in the *Eng. Historical Review* for July, 1892.]

³⁸ See Bonfinius, decad iii. l. viii.-decad iv. l. viii. The observations of Spondanus on the life and character of Matthias Corvinus are curious and critical (A. D. 1464, No. 1; 1475, No. 6; 1476, No. 14-16; 1490, No. 4, 5). Italian fame was the object of his vanity. His actions are celebrated in the *Épitome Rerum Hungaricarum* (p. 329-412) of Peter Ranzanus, a Sicilian. His wise and facetious sayings are registered by Galeotus Martius of Narni (528-568); and we have a particular narrative of his wedding and coronation. These three tracts are all contained in the first vol. of Bel's *Scriptores Rerum Hungaricarum*. [The best monograph

In the list of heroes, John Huniades and Scanderbeg are commonly associated³⁹; and they are both entitled to our notice, since their occupation of the Ottoman arms delayed the ruin of the Greek empire. John Castriot, the father of Scanderbeg,⁴⁰ was the hereditary prince of a small district of Epirus of Albania, between the mountains and the Adriatic Sea. Unable to contend with the sultan's power, Castriot submitted to the hard conditions of peace and tribute; he delivered his four sons as the pledges of his fidelity; and the Christian youths, after receiving the mark of circumcision, were instructed in the Mahometan religion, and trained in the arms and arts of Turkish policy.⁴¹ The three elder brothers were confounded in the crowd of slaves; and the pain to which their deaths are ascribed cannot be verified or disproved by any positive evidence. Yet the suspicion is in a great measure removed by the kind and paternal treatment of George Castriot, the fourth brother, who, from his tender youth, displayed the strength and spirit of a soldier. The successive overthrow of a Tartar and two Persians, who carried a proud defiance to the Turkish court, recommended him to the favour of Amurath, and his Turkish appellation of Scanderbeg (*Iskender beg*), or the lord Alexander, is an indelible memorial of his glory and servitude. His father's principality was reduced into a province; but the loss was compensated by the rank and

on Matthias Corvinus is that of W. Fraknoi which has appeared in a German translation (from the Hungarian) in 1891. It is furnished with interesting illustrations.]

³⁹ They are ranked by Sir William Temple, in his pleasing Essay on Heroic Virtue (Works, vol. iii. p. 385), among the seven chiefs who have deserved, without wearing, a royal crown; Belisares, Narses, Gonsalvo of Cordova, William first prince of Orange, Alexander duke of Parma, John Huniades, and George Castriot, or Scanderbeg.

⁴⁰ I could wish for some simple authentic memoirs of a friend of Scanderbeg, which would introduce me to the man, the time, and the place. In the old and national history of Marinus Barletius, a priest of Scodra (*de Vita, Moribus, et Rebus gestis Georgii Castrioti, &c. libri xiii. p. 367. Argentorati, 1537, in fol.*), his gaudy and cumbersome robes are stuck with many false jewels. See likewise Chalcondyles, l. vii. p. 185 [p. 350, ed. B.]; l. viii. p. 225 [p. 432]. [Besides the contemporary authority, Barletius, we know indirectly of another contemporary source written by an anonymous man of Antivari. This work (*Historia Scanderbegi edita per quendam Albanensem*) was printed at Venice in 1480, but is now lost. But it is known to us through Giammaria Bicrami, who used it for his *Istoria di Giorgio Castriota, detto Scander Begh, 1742*. The best modern work on the life and exploits of Scanderbeg is that of Julius Pisko: *Skanderbeg, 1894*; a number of new documents are printed in an appendix.]

⁴¹ His circumcision, education, &c. are marked by Marinus with brevity and reluctance (l. l. p. 6, 7).

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

some hold companions, to whom he had revealed his design, he escaped in the night, by rapid marches, from the field of battle to his paternal mountains. The gates of Croya were opened to the royal mandate; and no sooner did he command the ~~troops~~ than George Castriot dropped the mask of dissimulation, ~~aligned~~ the Prophet and the sultan, and proclaimed himself the avenger of his family and country. The names of religion and liberty provoked a general revolt: the Albanians, a martial race, were unanimous to live and die with their hereditary prince; and the Ottoman garrisons were indulged in the choice of martyrdom or baptism. In the assembly of the states of Epirus, Scanderbeg was elected general of the Turkish war; and each of the allies engaged to furnish his respective proportion of men and money. From these contributions, from his patrimonial estate, and from the valuable salt-pits of Selina, he drew an annual revenue of two hundred thousand ducats;⁴³ and the entire sum, exempt from the demands of luxury, was strictly appropriated to the public use. His manners were popular; but his discipline was severe; and every superfluous vice was banished from his camp; his example strengthened his command; and under his conduct the Albanians were invincible in their own opinion and that of their enemies. The bravest adventurers of France and Germany were allured by his fame and retained in his service; his standing militia consisted of eight thousand horse and seven thousand foot; the horses were small, the men were active; but he viewed with a discerning eye the difficulties and resources of the mountains; and, at the blaze of the beacons, the whole nation was distributed in the strongest posts. With such unequal arms, Scanderbeg resisted twenty-three years the powers of the Ottoman empire; and two conquerors, Amurath the Second and his greater son, were repeatedly baffled by a rebel whom they pursued with seeming contempt and implacable resentment. At the head of sixty thousand horse and forty thousand Janizaries,⁴⁴ Amurath entered Albania: he might ravage the open country, occupy the defenceless towns, convert the churches into mosques, circumcise the Christian youths, and punish with death his adult and obstinate captives, but the conquests of the sultan were confined to the petty fortress of Sfetigrade; and the garrison, invincible to his arms, was oppressed by a paltry artifice and a

[Assembly at
Alonzo, 2nd
March, A.D.
1464]

His valour

A.D. 1460]

⁴³ His revenue and forces are luckily given by Marinus (l. ii. p. 44).

⁴⁴ [Biemmi says that the total number of fighting men did not exceed 70,000; see Pisko, p. 47.]

superstitious scruple.⁴⁵ Amurath retired with shame and loss from the walls of Croya, the castle and residence of the Castriots; the march, the siege, the retreat, were harassed by a vexatious and almost invisible adversary; ⁴⁶ and the disappointment might tend to embitter, perhaps to shorten, the last days of the sultan.⁴⁷ In the fulness of conquest, Mahomet the Second still felt at his bosom this domestic thorn; his lieutenants were permitted to negotiate a truce; and the Albanian prince may justly be praised as a firm and able champion of his national independence. The enthusiasm of chivalry and religion has ranked him with the names of Alexander and Pyrrhus, nor would they blush to acknowledge their intrepid countryman; but his narrow dominion and slender powers must leave him at an humble distance below the heroes of antiquity, who triumphed over the East and the Roman legions. His splendid achievements, the bashaws whom he encountered, the armies that he discomfited, and the three thousand Turks who were slain by his single hand, must be weighed in the scales of suspicious criticism. Against an illiterate enemy, and in the dark solitude of Epirus, his partial biographers may safely indulge the latitude of romance; but their fictions are exposed by the light of Italian history; and they afford a strong presumption against their own truth by a fabulous tale of his exploits, when he passed the Adriatic with eight hundred horse to the succour of the king of Naples.⁴⁸

[Scanderbeg in the kingdom of Naples, A.D. 1481, middle of August, - a. December]

⁴⁵ There were two Dibras, the upper and lower, the Bulgarian and Albanian: the former, 70 miles from Croya (l. i. p. 17), was contiguous to the fortress of Stetigrad, whose inhabitants refused to drink from a well into which a dead dog had gratuitously been cast (l. v. p. 139, 140). We want a good map of Epirus. [The site of Stetigrad is uncertain. It was in the Upper Dibre, and perhaps near Teshka. See Pisko, p. 18 note; and for the mode of its capture, p. 50, 51.]

⁴⁶ Compare the Turkish narrative of Cantemir (p. 92) with the pompous and prolix declamation in the ivth, vth, and vith books of the Albanian priest, who has been copied by the tribe of strangers and moderns.

⁴⁷ In honour of his hero, Barletius (l. vi. p. 188-192) kills the sultan, by disease indeed, under the walls of Croya. But this audacious fiction is disproved by the Greeks and Turks, who agree in the time and manner of Amurath's death at Hadrianople.

⁴⁸ See the marvels of his Calabrian expedition in the ixth and xth books of *Milano's Barletius*, which may be rectified by the testimony or silence of Muratori (*Annali d'Italia*, tom. xiii. p. 291), and his original authors (Joh. Simonetta de *Principibus Scortie*, in Muratori, *Script. Rerum Ital.* tom. xxi. p. 728, et alios). The Albanian cavalry, under the name of *Stradiots*, soon became famous in the wars of Italy (*Mémoires de Comines*, l. viii. c. 5). [The date of Scanderbeg's expedition to Italy is fixed by Pisko (p. 86-88) by means of new documents. According to Antonino Guidobonus, the ambassador of Milan at Venice, the troops which Scanderbeg took with him numbered 2000 foot and 1000 horse.]

Without disparagement to his fame, they might have owned that he was finally oppressed by the Ottoman powers; in his extreme danger, he applied to Pope Pius the Second for a refuge in the ecclesiastical state; and his resources were almost exhausted, since Scanderbeg died a fugitive at Lissus, on the Venetian territory.⁴⁰ His sepulchre was soon violated by the Turkish conquerors; but the Janizaries, who wore his bones enchased in a bracelet, declared by this superstitious amulet their involuntary reverence for his valour. The instant ruin of his country may redound to the hero's glory; yet, had he balanced the consequences of submission and resistance, a patriot, perhaps, would have declined the unequal contest which must depend on the life and genius of one man. Scanderbeg might indeed be supported by the rational though fallacious hope that the pope, the king of Naples, and the Venetian republic would join in the defence of a free and Christian people, who guarded the sea-coast of the Adriatic and the narrow passage from Greece to Italy. His infant son was saved from the national shipwreck; the Castriots⁴¹ were invested with a Neapolitan dukedom, and their blood continues to flow in the noblest families of the realm. A colony of Albanian fugitives obtained a settlement in Calabria, and they preserve at this day the language and manners of their ancestors.⁴¹

In the long career of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, I have reached at length the last reign of the princes of Constantinople, who so feebly sustained the name and majesty of the Cæsars.⁴² On the decease of John Paleologus, who survived about four years the Hungarian crusade,⁴³ the royal family,

⁴⁰ Spondanus, from the best evidence and the most rational criticism, has reduced the giant Scanderbeg to the human size (A.D. 1461, No. 20; 1463, No. 9; 1465, No. 12, 13; 1467, No. 1). His own letter to the pope, and the testimony of Phranza (l. iii. c. 28), a refugee in the neighbouring isle of Corfu, demonstrate his last distress, which is awkwardly concealed by Marinus Barletius (l. x.).

⁴¹ See the family of the Castriots in Ducange (*Fam. Dalmaticæ, &c.* aviii. p. 348-350).

⁴² This colony of Albanese is mentioned by Mr. Swinburne (*Travels into the Two Sicilies*, vol. i. p. 350-354).

⁴³ [Constantine is generally numbered as Constantine XI., but Gibbon (who counts Constantine, son of Romanus I., as Constantine VIII.; see above, vol. v. p. 209) makes him Constantine XII. He was distinguished by the surname *Dracagus*, derived through his mother Irene, who was daughter of Constantine Dracagus, a Servian prince.]

⁴⁴ The chronology of Phranza is clear and authentic; but, instead of four years and seven months, Spondanus (A.D. 1445, No. 7) assigns seven or eight years to the reign of the last Constantine, which he deduces from a spurious epistle of Eugenius IV. to the king of Ethiopia.

and death (at
Albania) A.D.
1467, 17th Jan.

(A.D. 1479)

Constantine,
the last of the
Roman or
Greek
emperors.
A.D. 1459, 1st
Nov. A.D. 1462,
24th May

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Phranza of
A. D.
1400-1402

The *protovestiar*, or great chamberlain, Phranza, sailed from Constantinople as minister of a bridegroom; and the relics of wealth and luxury were applied to his pompous appearance. His numerous retinue consisted of nobles and guards, of physicians and monks; he was attended by a band of music; and the term of his costly embassy was protracted above two years. On his arrival in Georgia or Iberia, the natives from the towns and villages flocked around the strangers; and such was their simplicity that they were delighted with the effects, without understanding the cause, of musical harmony. Among the crowd was an old man, above an hundred years of age, who had formerly been carried away a captive by the barbarians,⁶⁶ and who amused his hearers with a tale of the wonders of India,⁶⁷ from whence he had returned to Portugal by an unknown sea.⁶⁸ From this hospitable land Phranza proceeded to the court of Trebizond, where he was informed by the Greek prince of the recent decease of Amurath. Instead of rejoicing in the deliverance, the experienced statesman expressed his apprehension that an ambitious youth would not long adhere to the sage and pacific system of his father. After the sultan's decease, his Christian wife Maria,⁶⁹ the daughter of the Servian despot, had been honourably restored to her parents: on the fame of her beauty and merit, she was recommended by the ambassador as the most worthy object of the royal choice; and Phranza recapitulates and refutes the specious objections that might be raised against the proposal. The majesty of the purple would ennoble an unequal alliance; the bar of affinity might be removed by liberal

⁶⁶ Suppose him to have been captured in 1394, in Timour's first war in Georgia (Sbereseddin, l. iii. c. 50), he might follow his Tartar master into Hindostan in 1398, and from thence sail to the spice-islands.

⁶⁷ The happy and pious Indians lived 150 years, and enjoyed the most perfect productions of the vegetable and mineral kingdoms. The animals were on a large scale: dragons seventy cubits, ants (the *formica Indica*) nine inches long, sheep like elephants, elephants like sheep. *Quidlibet audendi, &c.*

⁶⁸ He sailed in a country vessel from the spice-islands to one of the ports of the exterior India; *invenitque navem grandem Ibericam, qua in Portugalliam est delatus.* This passage, composed in 1477 (Phranza, l. iii. c. 30), twenty years before the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope, is spurious or wonderful. But this new geography is sullied by the old and incompatible error which places the source of the Nile in India.

⁶⁹ Cantemir (p. 83), who styles her the daughter of Lazarus Ogli, and the Helen of the Servians, places her marriage with Amurath in the year 1424. It will not easily be believed that in six and twenty years' cohabitation the Sultan corpus ejus non tetigit. After the taking of Constantinople, she fled to Mahomet II. (Phranza, l. iii. c. 22).

alms and the dispensation of the church ; the disgrace of Turkish nuptials had been repeatedly overlooked ; and, though the fair Maria was near fifty years of age, she might yet hope to give an heir to the empire. Constantine listened to the advice, which was transmitted in the first ship that sailed from Trebizond ; but the factions of the court opposed his marriage ; and it was finally prevented by the pious vow of the sultana, who ended her days in the monastic profession. Reduced to the first alternative, the choice of Phranza was decided in favour of a Georgian princess ; and the vanity of her father was dazzled by the glorious alliance. Instead of demanding, according to the primitive and national custom, a price for his daughter,⁶⁰ he offered a portion of fifty-six thousand, with an annual pension of five thousand, ducats ; and the services of the ambassador were repaid by an assurance that, as his son had been adopted in baptism by the emperor, the establishment of his daughter should be the peculiar care of the empress of Constantinople. On the return of Phranza, the treaty was ratified by the Greek monarch, who with his own hand impressed three vermilion crosses on the Golden Bull, and assured the Georgian envoy that in the spring his galleys should conduct the bride to her Imperial palace. But Constantine embraced his faithful servant, not with the cold approbation of a sovereign, but with the warm confidence of a friend, who, after a long absence, is impatient to pour his secrets into the bosom of his friend. "Since the death of my mother and of Cantacuzene, who alone advised me without interest or passion,⁶¹ I am surrounded," said the emperor, "by men whom I can neither love nor trust nor esteem. You are not a stranger to Lucas Notaras, the great admiral : obstinately attached to his own sentiments, he declares, both in private and public, that his sentiments are the absolute measure of my thoughts and actions. The rest of the courtiers are swayed by their personal or factions views ; and how can I consult the monks on questions of policy and marriage ? I have yet much employment for your diligence and fidelity. In the spring you shall engage one of my brothers to solicit the succour of the Western powers ; from the Morea you shall sail to Cyprus on a particular commission ; and from

State of the
 Byzantine
 court

⁶⁰ The classical reader will recollect the offers of Agamemnon (Iliad, l. v. 144) and the general practice of antiquity.

⁶¹ Cantacuzene (I am ignorant of his relation to the emperor of that name) was a great domestic, a firm assertor of the Greek creed, and a brother of the queen of Sicily, whom he visited with the character of ambassador (Syropulus, p. 37, 38, 41).

thence proceed to Georgia to receive and conduct the future empress." "Your commands," replied Phranza, "are irresistible; but deign, great Sir," he added, with a serious smile, "to consider that, if I am thus perpetually absent from my family, my wife may be tempted either to seek another husband or to throw herself into a monastery." After laughing at his apprehensions, the emperor more gravely consoled him by the pleasing assurance that *this* should be his last service abroad, and that he destined for his son a wealthy and noble heiress; for himself, the important office of great logothete, or principal minister of state. The marriage was immediately stipulated; but the office, however incompatible with his own, had been usurped by the ambition of the admiral. Some delay was requisite to negotiate a consent and an equivalent; and the nomination of Phranza was half declared and half suppressed, lest it might be displeasing to an insolent and powerful favourite. The winter was spent in the preparations of his embassy; and Phranza had resolved that the youth his son should embrace this opportunity of foreign travel, and be left, on the appearance of danger, with his maternal kindred of the Morea. Such were the private and public designs, which were interrupted by a Turkish war, and finally buried in the ruins of the empire.⁶²

⁶²[A Burgundian knight, Bertrandon de la Brocquière, returning from a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, visited Constantinople in 1439, and has left us a very interesting description of life in that city, and also of Murad's court at Hadrianople. Legrand D'Aussy published this work (*Voyage d'Outremer et Retour de Jérusalem en France*) in 1804, and it has been re-edited by C. Schefer, 1892. An English edition appeared in T. Wright's *Early Travels in Palestine* (ed. Bohn, 1848, p. 283-382).

Finlay writes (*Hist. of Greece*, iii. p. 492): "Court processions, religious ceremonies, and national vanity amused and consoled the Greeks as they hastened along the path of degradation and ruin. Dramatic representations of sacred subjects were performed in the Church of St. Sophia, as musical exhibitions had been celebrated in earlier days. Exercises of archery and imitations of Turkish horsemanship replaced the military pageants and the games of the hippodrome which had been the delight of the Byzantine populace in better days."]'

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

masters, Mahomet advanced with an early and rapid progress in the paths of knowledge; and, besides his native tongue, it is affirmed that he spoke or understood five languages,² the Arabic, the Persian, the Chaldean or Hebrew, the Latin, and the Greek. The Persian might, indeed, contribute to his amusement, and the Arabic to his edification; and such studies are familiar to the Oriental youth. In the intercourse of the Greeks and Turks, a conqueror might wish to converse with the people over whom he was ambitious to reign; his own praises in Latin poetry⁴ or prose⁵ might find a passage to the royal ear; but what use or merit could recommend to the statesman, or the scholar the uncouth dialect of his Hebrew slaves? The history and geography of the world were familiar to his memory; the lives of the heroes of the East, perhaps of the West,⁶ excited his emulation; his skill in astrology is excused by the folly of the times, and supposes some rudiments of mathematical sciences; and a profane taste for the arts is betrayed in his liberal

² *Quinguo lingua prieter suam noverat; Græcam, Latinam, Chaldaicam, Persicam.* The Latin translator of Phranza has dropt the Arabic, which the Koran must recommend to every Musulman. [The Greek text of Phranza, l. 90 (p. 28 14). *ἰκνῆ*) has *Ἀραβικῆν*. The historian Critobulus (for whom see Appendix L) gives us the means of criticizing this statement of Phranza. He says (l. 5, 2) that Mohammed was thoroughly conversant with Arabic and Persian and had studied Greek philosophical works (Aristotelian and Stoic) that were translated into those languages. He repeats this statement, v. 10, 4, and describes the Sultan studying the cosmographical diagrams of Ptolemy. Villoison (*Notices et extraits des Manuscrits*, vol. viii. part 2. p. 22) quotes from a description of Mohammed given by Nicolaus Sagundinus to King Alfonso of Aragon, in Jan. 1455, the statement that the Sultan kept by him two physicians, one versed in Latin, the other in Greek; and they instructed him in ancient history.]

⁴ Philephus, by a Latin ode, requested and obtained the liberty of his wife, mother and sisters from the conqueror of Constantinople. It was delivered into the sultan's hands by the envoys of the duke of Milan. Philephus himself was suspected of a design of retiring to Constantinople; yet the orator often sounded the trumpet of holy war (see his Life by M. Lancelot, in the *Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions*, tom. x. p. 718, 724. &c.). [The Letter of Philephus to Mohammed, 11th March, 1454, is published in his biography by Rosmini (1805) vol. ii. p. 305.]

⁵ Robert Valturio published at Verona, in 1483, his twelve books, *de Re Militari*, in which he first mentions the use of bombs. By his patron Sigismund Malatesta, prince of Rimini, it had been addressed with a Latin epistle to Mahomet II.

⁶ According to Phranza, he assiduously studied the lives and actions of Alexander, Augustus, Constantine and Theodosius. I have read somewhere that Plutarch's Lives were translated by his orders into the Turkish language. If the sultan himself understood Greek, it must have been for the benefit of his subjects. Yet these Lives are a school of freedom as well as of valour. [Critobulus (l. 5, 2) says that Mohammed's examples were Alexander, Pompey and Caesar—*Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ καὶ Πόμπητον καὶ Καίσαρα καὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς βασιλεῖς ἑλληνικοὺς ἀποβύβησεν*.]

n and reward of the painters of Italy.⁷ But the influence of religion and learning were employed without effect on his savage and licentious nature. I will not transcribe, nor do I firmly believe, the stories of his fourteen pages, whose bellies were ripped open in search of a stolen melon; or of the beautiful slave, whose head he severed from her body, to convince the Janisaries that their master was not the votary of love.⁸ His sobriety is attested by the silence of the Turkish annals, which accuse three, and three only, of the Ottoman line of the vice of drunkenness.⁹ But it cannot be denied that his passions were at once furious and inexorable; that in the palace, as in the field, a torrent of blood was spilt on the slightest provocation; and that the noblest of the captive youth were often dishonoured by his unnatural lust. In the Albanian war, he studied the lessons, and soon surpassed the example, of his father; and the conquest of two empires, twelve kingdoms, and two hundred cities, a vain and flattering account, is ascribed to his invincible sword. He was doubtless a soldier, and possibly a general; Constantinople has sealed his glory; but, if we compare the means, the obstacles, and the achievements, Mahomet the Second must blush to sustain a parallel with Alexander or Timour. Under his command, the Ottoman forces were always more numerous than their enemies; yet their progress was bounded by the Euphrates and the Adriatic; and his arms were checked by Huniades and Scanderbeg, by the Rhodian knights, and by the Persian king.

In the reign of Amurath, he twice tasted of royalty, and twice descended from the throne; his tender age was incapable of opposing his father's restoration, but never could he forgive the vizirs who had recommended that salutary measure. His nuptials were celebrated with the daughter of a Turkman emir; and, after a festival of two months, he departed from Hadrianople with his bride to reside in the government of Magnesia.

His reign,
A.D. 1481,
Feb. 9-A.D.
1481, July 2

⁷ The famous Gentile Bellino, whom he had invited from Venice, was dismissed with a chain and collar of gold, and a purse of 3000 ducats. With Voltaire I laugh at the foolish story of a slave purposely beheaded, to instruct the painter in the action of the muscles. [Bellini painted a portrait of Mohammad, which is extant. It passed into the possession of Sir Henry Layard. For Bellini at the Sultan's court (1479-80) see L. Thuasne, *Gentile Bellini et Sultan Mohammed II.*]

⁸ [The story is an invention, and is likewise rejected by Thuasne (*op. cit.* p. 53 277), who points out that a similar story was told about Parrhasius (see the elder Seneca's *Controversiæ*, x. 5).]

⁹ These Imperial drunkards were Soliman I., Selim II., and Amurath IV. (Cantemir, p. 61). The sophis of Persia can produce a more regular succession; and in the last age our European travellers were the witnesses and the companions of their revels.

Before the end of six weeks, he was recalled by a sudden message from the divan, which announced the decease of Amurath and the mutinous spirit of the Janizaries. His speed and vigour commanded their obedience; he passed the Hellespont with a chosen guard; and, at the distance of a mile from Hadrianople, the vizirs and emirs, the imams and cadhis, the soldiers and the people, fell prostrate before the new sultan. They affected to weep, they affected to rejoice; he ascended the throne at the age of twenty-one years, and removed the cause of sedition by the death, the inevitable death, of his infant brothers.¹⁰ The ambassadors of Europe and Asia soon appeared to congratulate his accession, and solicit his friendship; and to all he spoke the language of moderation and peace. The confidence of the Greek emperor was revived by the solemn oaths and fair assurances with which he sealed the ratification of the treaty; and a rich domain on the banks of the Strymon was assigned for the annual payment of three hundred thousand aspers, the pension of an Ottoman prince who was detained at his request in the Byzantine court. Yet the neighbours of Mahomet might tremble at the severity with which a youthful monarch reformed the pomp of his father's household; the expenses of luxury were applied to those of ambition, and an useless train of seven thousand falconers was either dismissed from his service or enlisted in his troops. In the first summer of his reign, he visited with an army the Asiatic provinces; but, after humbling the pride, Mahomet accepted the submission, of the Caramanian, that he might not be diverted by the smallest obstacle from the execution of his great design.¹¹

The Mahometan, and more especially the Turkish, casuists have pronounced that no promise can bind the faithful against the interest and duty of their religion; and that the sultan may abrogate his own treaties and those of his predecessors. The justice and magnanimity of Amurath had scorned this immoral privilege; but his son, though the proudest of men, could stoop from ambition to the basest arts of dissimulation

¹⁰ Calapin, one of these royal infants, was saved from his cruel brother, and baptized at Rome under the name of Callistus Othomannus. The emperor Frederic III. presented him with an estate in Austria, where he ended his life; and Cuspinian, who in his youth conversed with the aged prince at Vienna, applauds his piety and wisdom (*de Cæsaribus*, p. 672, 673).

¹¹ See the accession of Mahomet II. in Ducas (c. 33.), Phranza (l. i. c. 33, l. ii. c. 2), Chalcondyles (l. vii. p. 199 [p. 376, ed. Bonn]), and Cantemir (P. 96).

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

of the Bosphorus, Asia is inhabited by the Turks, and Europe is deserted by the Romans. Return, and inform your king that the present Ottoman is far different from his predecessors; that *his* resolutions surpass *their* wishes; and that *he* performs more than *they* could resolve. Return in safety; but the next who delivers a similar message may expect to be flayed alive." After this declaration, Constantine, the first of the Greeks in spirit as in rank,¹⁵ had determined to unsheath the sword, and to resist the approach and establishment of the Turks on the Bosphorus. He was disarmed by the advice of his civil and ecclesiastical ministers, who recommended a system less generous, and even less prudent, than his own, to approve their patience and long-suffering, to brand the Ottoman with the name and guilt of an aggressor, and to depend on chance and time for their own safety and the destruction of a fort which could not be long maintained in the neighbourhood of a great and populous city. Amidst hope and fear, the fears of the wise and the hopes of the credulous, the winter rolled away; the proper business of each man, and each hour, was postponed; and the Greeks shut their eyes against the impending danger, till the arrival of the spring and the sultan decided the assurance of their ruin.

Of a master who never forgives, the orders are seldom disobeyed. On the twenty-sixth of March, the appointed spot of Asomaton was covered with an active swarm of Turkish artificers; and the materials by sea and land were diligently transported from Europe and Asia.¹⁶ The lime had been burnt in Cataphrygia; the timber was cut down in the woods of Heraclea and Nicomedia; and the stones were dug from the Anatolian quarries. Each of the thousand masons was assisted by two workmen; and a measure of two cubits was marked for their daily task. The fortress¹⁷ was built in a triangular form; each angle was flanked

He builds a fortress on the Bosphorus, A.D. 1452, March

¹⁵ Phranza does justice to his master's sense and courage: *Calliditatem hominis non ignorans Imperator prior arma movere constituit, and stigmatizes the folly of the cum sacri tum profani proceres, which he had heard, amentes spe vana pasci. Ducas was not a privy counsellor.*

¹⁶ Instead of this clear and consistent account, the Turkish Annals (Cantemir) p. 97) revived the foolish tale of the ox's hide, and Dido's stratagem in the foundation of Carthage. These annals (unless we are swayed by an antichristian prejudice) are far less valuable than the Greek historians.

¹⁷ In the dimensions of this fortress, the old castle of Europe, Phranza does not exactly agree with Chalcondyles, whose description has been verified on the spot by his editor Leunclavius. [Phrantzes (p. 234) gives the breadth of the towers as 25 feet, and this nearly agrees with Critobulus (i. 11, 4) who says "12 cubits," i.e., 24 feet. Chalcondyles says 22 feet, and Ducas "30 spans," i.e., 22½ feet. Critobulus alone gives the height of the wall, 100 feet, and adds that in size the fortress resembled not a fortress but a little town (πολιχρον).]

by a strong and massy tower; one on the declivity of the hill, two along the sea-shore; a thickness of twenty-two feet was assigned for the walls, thirty for the towers; and the whole building was covered with a solid platform of lead. Mahomet himself pressed and directed the work with indefatigable ardour; his three vizirs claimed the honour of finishing their respective towers; the zeal of the cadhis emulated that of the Janissaries; the meanest labour was ennobled by the service of God and the sultan; and the diligence of the multitude was quickened by the eye of a despot, whose smile was the hope of fortune, and whose frown was the messenger of death. The Greek emperor beheld with terror the irresistible progress of the work; and vainly strove, by flattery and gifts, to assuage an implacable foe, who sought, and secretly fomented, the slightest occasion of a quarrel. Such occasions must soon and inevitably be found. The ruins of stately churches, and even the marble columns which had been consecrated to St. Michael the archangel, were employed without scruple by the profane and rapacious Moslems; and some Christians, who presumed to oppose the removal, received from their hands the crown of martyrdom. Constantine had solicited a Turkish guard to protect the fields and harvests of his subjects: the guard was fixed; but their first order was to allow free pasture to the mules and horses of the camp, and to defend their brethren if they should be molested by the natives. The retinue of an Ottoman chief had left their horses to pass the night among the ripe corn: the damage was felt; the insult was resented; and several of both nations were slain in a tumultuous conflict. Mahomet listened with joy to the complaint; and a detachment was commanded to exterminate the guilty village: the guilty had fled; but forty innocent and unsuspecting reapers were massacred by the soldiers. Till this provocation, Constantinople had been open to the visits of commerce and curiosity: on the first alarm, the gates were shut; but the emperor, still anxious for peace, released on the third day his Turkish captives,¹⁸ and expressed, in a last message, the firm resignation of a Christian and a soldier. "Since neither oaths, nor treaty, nor submission, can secure peace, pursue," said he to Mahomet, "your impious warfare. My trust is in God alone: if it should please him to mollify your heart, I shall re-

The Turkish
War, June;

¹⁸ Among these were some pages of Mahomet, so conscious of his inexorable rigour that they begged to lose their beads in the city unless they could return before sunset.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

was confirmed in his office and the appearances of favour; but the veteran statesman was not insensible that he trode on a thin and slippery ice, which might break under his footsteps and plunge him in the abyss. His friendship for the Christians, which might be innocent under the late reign, had stigmatised him with the name of Gabour Ortachi, or foster brother of the infidels;²² and his avarice entertained a venal and treasonable correspondence, which was detected and punished after the conclusion of the war. On receiving the royal mandate, he embraced, perhaps for the last time, his wife and children; filled up a cup with pieces of gold, hastened to the palace, adored the sultan, and offered, according to the Oriental custom, the slight tribute of his duty and gratitude.²³ "It is not my wish," said Mahomet, "to resume my gifts, but rather to heap and multiply them on thy head. In my turn, I ask a present far more valuable and important,—Constantinople." As soon as the vizir had recovered from his surprise, "The same God," said he, "who has already given thee so large a portion of the Roman empire, will not deny the remnant, and the capital. His providence and thy power assure thy success; and myself, with the rest of thy faithful slaves, will sacrifice our lives and fortunes." "Lala"²⁴ (or preceptor), continued the sultan, "do you see this pillow? all the night, in my agitation, I have pulled it on one side and the other; I have risen from my bed, again have I lain down; yet sleep has not visited these weary eyes. Beware of the gold and silver of the Romans; in arms we are superior; and with the aid of God, and the prayers of the prophet, we shall speedily become masters of Constantinople." To sound the disposition of his soldiers, he often wandered through the streets alone and in disguise; and it was fatal to discover the sultan, when he wished to escape from the vulgar eye. His hours were spent in delineating the plan of the hostile city; in debating with his

²² *Συγγρηγοί*, by the president Cousin, is translated *le nourricier*, most correctly indeed from the Latin version; but in his haste he has overlooked the note by which Ismael Roillaud (ad Ducam, c. 35) acknowledges and rectifies his own error.

²³ The Oriental custom of never appearing without gifts before a sovereign or a superior is of high antiquity, and seems analogous with the idea of sacrifice, still more ancient and universal. See the examples of such Persian gifts, *Ælian, Hist. Var. l. 1, c. 31-33*.

²⁴ The *Lala* of the Turks (*Cantemir, p. 34*) and the *Tata* of the Greeks (*Ducas, c. 43*) are derived from the natural language of children; and it may be observed that all such primitive words which denote their parents are the simple repetition of one syllable, composed of a labial or dental consonant and an open vowel (*de la Bruère, Mécanisme des Langues, tom. 1, p. 231-247*).

generals and engineers, on what spot he should erect his batteries ; on which side he should assault the walls ; where he should spring his mines ; to what place he should apply his scaling-ladders ; and the exercises of the day repeated and proved the incubations of the night.

Among the implements of destruction, he studied with peculiar care the recent and tremendous discovery of the Latins ; and his artillery surpassed whatever had yet appeared in the world. A founder of cannon, a Dane or Hungarian,²⁵ who had been almost starved in the Greek service, deserted to the Moslems, and was liberally entertained by the Turkish sultan. Mahomet was satisfied with the answer to his first question, which he eagerly pressed on the artist. "Am I able to cast a cannon capable of throwing a ball or stone of sufficient size to batter the walls of Constantinople? I am not ignorant of their strength, but, were they more solid than those of Babylon, I could oppose an engine of superior power ; the position and management of that engine must be left to your engineers." On this assurance, a foundry was established at Hadrianople : the metal was prepared ; and, at the end of three months, Urban produced a piece of brass ordnance of stupendous and almost incredible magnitude ; a measure of twelve palms is assigned to the bore ; and the stone bullet weighed above six hundred pounds.²⁶ A vacant place before the new palace was chosen for the first experiment ; but, to prevent the sudden and mischievous effects of astonishment and fear, a proclamation was issued that the cannon would be discharged the ensuing day. The explosion was felt or heard in the circuit of an hundred furlongs : the ball, by the force of gunpowder, was driven above a mile ; and on the spot where it fell, it buried itself a fathom deep in the ground. For the conveyance of this destructive engine,²⁷ a frame or carriage of thirty waggons was linked together and drawn along by a team of sixty

The great
cannon of
Mahomet

[Urban]

[The great
cannon starts,
beginning of
February,
A.D. 1453]

²⁵[Orban (Ὀρβανός), was a Hungarian ; no authority says that he was a Dane. Gibbon has mistaken the phrase of Chalcondyles who pedantically describes him as a "Dacian" (Δάκ) p. 385, ed. Bonn. *τραυβολιστής* is the word Chalcondyles uses for a "gunner". Strictly Orban was a *τραυβολοποιός*.]

²⁶The Attic talent weighed about sixty minæ, or avoirdupois pounds (see Hooper on Ancient Weights, Measures, &c.); but among the modern Greeks that classic appellation was extended to a weight of one hundred or one hundred and twenty-five pounds (Ducange, *τάλαντον*). Leonardus Chiensis measured the ball or stone of the second canon : Lapidem, qui palmis undecim ex meis ambibat in gyro. [The palm, or span, being reckoned at 8 inches, it is calculated that the ball would have weighed 1456 lbs. avoirdupois. Mordtmann, *op. cit.* p. 36.]

²⁷[According to Zorro Dolfin, *Assedio e presa di Cpli* § 16 (Paspates, *op. cit.* p. 120 n.) the cannon was conveyed in pieces.]

oxen ; two hundred men on both sides were stationed to poise and support the rolling weight ; two hundred and fifty workmen marched before to smooth the way and repair the bridges ; and near two months were employed in a laborious journey of one hundred and fifty miles. A lively ²⁸ philosopher derides, on this occasion, the credulity of the Greeks, and observes, with much reason, that we should always distrust the exaggerations of a vanquished people. He calculates that a ball, even of two hundred pounds, would require a charge of one hundred and fifty pounds of powder ; and that the stroke would be feeble and impotent, since not a fifteenth part of the mass could be inflamed at the same moment. A stranger as I am to the art of destruction, I can discern that the modern improvements of artillery prefer the number of pieces to the weight of metal ; the quickness of the fire to the sound, or even the consequence, of a single explosion. Yet I dare not reject the positive and unanimous evidence of contemporary writers ; nor can it seem improbable that the first artists, in their rude and ambitious efforts, should have transgressed the standard of moderation. A Turkish cannon, more enormous than that of Mahomet, still guards the entrance of the Dardanelles ; and, if the use be inconvenient, it has been found on a late trial that the effect was far from contemptible. A stone bullet of *eleven* hundred pounds' weight was once discharged with three hundred and thirty pounds of powder ; at the distance of six hundred yards, it shivered into three rocky fragments, traversed the strait, and, leaving the waters in a foam, again rose and bounded against the opposite hill.²⁹

While Mahomet threatened the capital of the East, the Greek emperor implored with fervent prayers the assistance of earth and heaven. But the invisible powers were deaf to his supplications ; and Christendom beheld with indifference the fall of Constantinople, while she derived at least some promise of supply from the jealous and temporal policy of the sultan of Egypt. Some states were too weak, and others too remote ; by some the danger was considered as imaginary, by others as inevitable :

²⁸ See Voltaire (Hist. Générale, c. xci. p. 294, 295). He was ambitious of universal monarchy ; and the poet frequently aspires to the name and style of an astronomer, a chemist, &c. [Mordtmann (*loc. cit.*) says that stone balls, measuring from 72 to 88 inches round, have been found in the Arsenal, in the walls of Galata, and elsewhere.]

²⁹ The Baron de Tott (tom. iii. p. 85-89), who fortified the Dardanelles against the Russians, describes in a lively, and even comic, strain his own prowess and the consternation of the Turks. But that adventurous traveller does not possess the art of gaining our confidence.

[Arrival, end
of March]

Mahomet II.
forms the
siege of Con-
stantinople,
A. D. 1453,
April 6

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

captives in the public market. But on the approach of **Mahomet** himself all was silent and prostrate; he first halted at the distance of five miles; and from thence advancing in battle-array planted before the gate of St. Romanus the Imperial standard; and, on the sixth day of April, formed the memorable siege of Constantinople.

Forces of the
Turks;

The troops of Asia and Europe extended on the right and left from the Propontis to the harbour; the Janizaries in the front were stationed before the sultan's tent; the Ottoman line was covered by a deep entrenchment; and a subordinate army inclosed the suburb of Galata, and watched the doubtful faith of the Genoese. The inquisitive Philelphus, who resided in Greece about thirty years before the siege, is confident that all the Turkish forces, of any name or value, could not exceed the number of sixty thousand horse and twenty thousand foot; and he upbraids the pusillanimity of the nations who had tamely yielded to a handful of barbarians. Such, indeed, might be the regular establishment of the *Capiculi*,²³ the troops of the Porte who marched with the prince and were paid from his royal treasury. But the bashaws, in their respective governments, maintained or levied a provincial militia; many lands were held by a military tenure; many volunteers were attracted by the hope of spoil; and the sound of the holy trumpet invited a swarm of hungry and fearless fanatics, who might contribute at least to multiply the terrors, and in a first attack to blunt the

²³ The palatine troops are styled *Capiculi*, the provincials, *Seraculi*: and most of the names and institutions of the Turkish militia existed before the *Canon Names* of Soliman II., from which, and his own experience, Count Marsigli has composed his Military State of the Ottoman empire. [Mohammed pitched his headquarters on the hill of Maltepe, a short distance from the middle part of the land wall, opposite to the gate of St. Romanus (Top Kapussi) and the part of the wall known as Myriandron (cp. Mordtmann, *Esquisse topographique de Constantinople*, p. 24). The Anatolic army (under Isaac) was on his right, stretching to the sea of Marmora, the Rumeliot (under Karatzas) on his left, towards the Golden Horn. A special force was committed to Zagan Pasha, and posted behind Galata, on the ground which is now Pera, to watch the Genoese; and Zagan was also to survey the building of a bridge across the Golden Horn to the north point of Constantinople (Porta Cynegii, Aiwan Kapussi). See Critobulus, i. 27 (p. 75); N. Barbaro, p. 30.—The numbers of the besieging army are given as follows: Phrantzes, 258,000; Critobulus, over 300,000 (not counting camp followers, &c.); Chalcondyles, 400,000; Ducas, over 400,000 (p. 267), but his particular items (p. 283) amount to 260,000; Leonardus, over 300,000; N. Barbaro, 160,000; the Threnos of Constantinople, 217,000. Tedardi, a Florentine witness (for whose work see Appendix 3), nearly agrees with Barbaro; counting 140,000 fighting men and 60,000 traders, tailors, &c., who followed the army in hope of gain (Informacion, p. 81). Mordtmann is inclined to accept the number of Barbaro; Hammer, that of Phrantzes. It is to be observed that there were a large number of Christians in the Turkish army according to Tedardi (the Threnos gives the number at 30,000; l. 752.)

swords, of the Christians. The whole mass of the Turkish powers is magnified by Ducas, Chalcondyles, and Leonard of Chios, to the amount of three or four hundred thousand men; but Phranza was a less remote and more accurate judge; and his precise definition of two hundred and fifty-eight thousand does not exceed the measure of experience and probability.²⁴ The navy of the besiegers was less formidable: the Propontis was overspread with three hundred and twenty sail; but of these no more than eighteen could be rated as galleys of war; and the far greater part must be degraded to the condition of storeships and transports, which poured into the camp fresh supplies of men, ammunition, and provisions. In her last decay, of the Greeks Constantinople was still peopled with more than an hundred thousand inhabitants; but these numbers are found in the accounts, not of war, but of captivity; and they mostly consisted of mechanics, of priests, of women, and of men devoid of that spirit which even women have sometimes exerted for the common safety. I can suppose, I could almost excuse, the reluctance of subjects to serve on a distant frontier, at the will of a tyrant; but the man who dares not expose his life in the defence of his children and his property has lost in society the first and most active energies of nature. By the emperor's command, a particular inquiry had been made through the streets and houses, how many of the citizens, or even of the monks, were able and willing to bear arms for their country. The lists were intrusted to Phranza;²⁵ and, after a diligent addition, he informed his master, with grief and surprise, that the national defence was reduced to four thousand nine hundred and seventy *Romans*. [1013] Between Constantine and his faithful minister, this comfortless secret was preserved; and a sufficient proportion of shields, cross-bows, and muskets was distributed from the arsenal to the city-bands. They derived some accession from a body of two [Arrival of Justinian, Jan. 29, A.D. 1453] thousand strangers, under the command of John Justiniani, a

²⁴ The observation of Philephus is approved by Cuspinian in the year 1508 (*de Caesaribus, in Epilog. de Militiâ Turcicâ, p. 697*). Marsigli proves that the effective armies of the Turks are much less numerous than they appear. In the army that besieged Constantinople, Leonardus Chiensis reckons no more than 15,000 Janissaries. [The usual strength of the Ottoman army on an important expedition was about 200,000.]

²⁵ *Ego eidem (Imp.) tabellas extribui non absque dolore et mœstitiâ, mansitque apud nos duos alios occultus numerus (Phranza, l. iii. c. 3)*. With some indulgence for national prejudices, we cannot desire a more authentic witness, not only of public facts, but of private counsels. [The statement of Phrantzes as to the numbers is confirmed by Tedardi.]

noble Genoese ;³⁶ a liberal donative was advanced to these auxiliaries ; and a princely recompense, the isle of Lemnos, was promised to the valour and victory of their chief. A strong chain **was drawn across the mouth of the harbour ;³⁷ it was supported by some Greek and Italian vessels of war and merchandise ; and the ships of every Christian nation, that successively arrived from Candia and the Black Sea, were detained for the public service. Against the powers of the Ottoman empire, a city of the extent of thirteen, perhaps of sixteen, miles was defended by a scanty garrison of seven or eight thousand soldiers. Europe and Asia were open to the besiegers ; but the strength and provisions of the Greeks must sustain a daily decrease ; nor could they indulge the expectation of any foreign succour or supply.³⁸**

[Harbour
blocked by
chain April 21]

The primitive Romans would have drawn their swords in the resolution of death or conquest. The primitive Christians might have embraced each other, and awaited in patience and charity the stroke of martyrdom. But the Greeks of Constantinople were animated only by the spirit of religion, and that spirit was productive only of animosity and discord. Before his death, the emperor John Palæologus had renounced the unpopular measure of an union with the Latins ; nor was the idea revived, till the distress of his brother Constantine imposed a last trial of flattery and dissimulation.³⁹ With the demand of temporal aid, his ambassadors were instructed to mingle the assurance of spiritual

False union of
the two
churches, A.D.
1452, Dec. 12

³⁶ [All these strangers had not come with Giustiniani ; he brought 700 (Barbaro, p. 13) or perhaps only 400 (Critobulus, i., 25 ; Leonardus, p. 319).]

³⁷ [For the chain see above vol. ii. p. 144. A part of the chain is preserved in the court of the church of St. Irene, and may be seen figured in Mordtmann's *Esquisse Topographique*, p. 49. Cp. above, vol. vi., p. 395.]

³⁸ [Since the fourth century, various emperors had improved the fortifications of the city. Heraclius had strengthened the Palace of Blachern on the west (at the time of the Avar siege) by a new wall, between the Tower of Anemas and the Xyloporta ; and Leo V. had built another wall outside the wall of Heraclius. In the twelfth century Manuel Comnenus built a wall enclosing the quarter called Caligaria, from the Tower of Anemas to the gate of Xylokerkos (or Kerkoporta). The Gate of Caligaria (Egri Kapu) was in this new wall of Manuel. The ineffective siege of Constantinople by Murad in 1432 moved John Palæologus to repair and strengthen the whole outer line of wall, and inscriptions recording this are found on the towers. The fortifications on the seaside, the walls along the Golden Horn and the Propontis, were mainly the work of Theophilus in the 9th century. It is interesting to find an inscription on a tower (near the Porta Contoscali) stating that it was repaired by George Branković, Despot of Servia, in 1448. In 1453 George contributed troops to the army of Mohammad.]

³⁹ In Spondanus, the narrative of the union is not only partial but imperfect. The bishop of Pamiers died in 1642, and the history of Ducas, which represents these scenes (c. 36, 37) with such truth and spirit, was not printed till the year 1649.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

sider, pause, and repent. At the same moment that you renounce the religion of your fathers, by embracing impiety, you submit to a foreign servitude." According to the advice of Gennadius, the religious virgins, as pure as angels and as proud as dæmons, rejected the act of union and abjured all communion with the present and future associates of the Latins; and their example was applauded and imitated by the greatest part of the clergy and people. From the monastery, the devout Greeks dispersed themselves in the taverns; drank confusion to the slaves of the pope;⁴² emptied their glasses in honour of the image of the holy Virgin; and besought her to defend against Mahomet the city which she had formerly saved from Chosroes and the Chagan. In the double intoxication of seal and wine, they valiantly exclaimed, "What occasion have we for succour, or union, or Latins? far from us be the worship of the Azymites!" During the winter that preceded the Turkish conquest, the nation was distracted by this epidemical frenzy; and the season of Lent, the approach of Easter, instead of breathing charity and love, served only to fortify the obstinacy and influence of the zealots. The confessors scrutinised and alarmed the conscience of their votaries, and a rigorous penance was imposed on those who had received the communion from a priest who had given an express or tacit consent to the union. His service at the altar propagated the infection to the mute and simple spectators of the ceremony; they forfeited, by the impure spectacle, the virtue of their sacerdotal character; nor was it lawful, even in danger of sudden death, to invoke the assistance of their prayers

Renaudot (p. 343-383) has restored the identity of his person, and the duplicity of his character. [Monograph by C. Sathas, Γενώργιος Σχολάριος, 1865. On "the identity of this person" cp. Dräseke, Byzant. Zeitsch. iv. p. 3 (1895). The writings of Gennadius are collected in Migne, P.G. 160.]

⁴²[Ubertinus Pusculus (ii. l. 498 seq., ed. Ellissen, p. 36-7) narrates that Gennadius suborned a Bohemian heretic, who happened to be in the city, to stir up the people against the Union and inveigh against the Pope.]

or absolution. No sooner had the church of St. Sophia been polluted by the Latin sacrifice than it was deserted as a Jewish synagogue, or an heathen temple, by the clergy and people; and a vast and gloomy silence prevailed in that venerable dome, which had so often smoked with a cloud of incense, blazed with innumerable lights, and resounded with the voice of prayer and thanksgiving. The Latins were the most odious of heretics and infidels; and the first minister of the empire, the great duke, was heard to declare that he had rather behold, in Constantinople, the turban of Mahomet than the pope's tiara or a cardinal's hat.⁴³ A sentiment so unworthy of Christians and patriots was familiar and fatal to the Greeks: the emperor was deprived of the affection and support of his subjects; and their native cowardice was sanctified by resignation to the divine decree or the visionary hope of a miraculous deliverance.

Of the triangle which composes the figure of Constantinople, the two sides along the sea were made inaccessible to an enemy: the Propontis by nature, and the harbour by art. Between the two waters, the basis of the triangle, the land-side was protected by a double wall and a deep ditch of the depth of one hundred feet.⁴⁴ Against this line of fortification, which Phranza, an eye-witness, prolongs to the measure of six miles,⁴⁵ the Ottomans directed their principal attack; and the emperor, after distributing the service and command of the most perilous stations, undertook the defence of the external wall. In the first days of the siege, the Greek soldiers descended into the ditch, or sallied into the field; but they soon discovered that, in the proportion of their numbers, one Christian was of more value than twenty Turks; and, after these bold preludes, they were prudently content to maintain the rampart with their missile weapons. Nor should this prudence be accused of pusillanimity. The nation was indeed pusillanimous and base; but the last

[Luce
Notaras]

Siege of Constantinople by Mahomet II. A. D. 1453, April 6-May 29

⁴³ Κασιόλιον, καλύπτρα, may be fairly translated a cardinal's hat. The difference of the Greek and Latin habits embittered the schism.

⁴⁴ [Niccolò Barbaro, p. 14. 15, mentions that during the last two weeks of March, a Venetian sea-captain named Diedo, with the crews of his vessels, was employed by the emperor to dig a ditch in front of a portion of the wall near the Porta Caligaria (Egri Kapu). This was a weak spot.]

⁴⁵ We are obliged to reduce the Greek miles to the smallest measure which is preserved in the wersts of Russia, of 547 French *toises*, and of 104 $\frac{1}{2}$ to a degree. The six miles of Phranza do not exceed four English miles (D'Anville, *Mesures Linéaires*, p. 61, 123, &c.). [Cp. Critobulus, i. 28; he gives 126 stadia (15 $\frac{1}{2}$ miles) as the circuit of the city, allowing 48 for the land wall, 35 for the side of the Golden Horn. For the walls cp. above vol ii. p. 149. n. 33.]

Constantine deserves the name of an hero ; his noble band of volunteers was inspired with Roman virtue ; and the foreign auxiliaries supported the honour of the Western chivalry. The incessant volleys of lances and arrows were accompanied with the smoke, the sound, and the fire of their musketry and cannon. Their small arms discharged at the same time either five or even ten balls of lead of the size of a walnut ; and, according to the closeness of the ranks and the force of the powder, several breast-plates and bodies were transpierced by the same shot. But the Turkish approaches were soon sunk in trenches or covered with ruins. Each day added to the science of the Christians ; but their inadequate stock of gunpowder was wasted in the operations of each day. Their ordnance was not powerful either in size or number ; and, if they possessed some heavy cannon, they feared to plant them on the walls, lest the aged structure should be shaken and overthrown by the explosion.⁴⁶ The same destructive secret had been revealed to the Moslems ; by whom it was employed with the superior energy of zeal, riches, and despotism. The great cannon of Mahomet has been separately noticed : an important and visible object in the history of the times ; but that enormous engine was flanked by two fellows almost of equal magnitude ;⁴⁷ the long order of the Turkish artillery was pointed against the walls ; fourteen batteries thundered at once on the most accessible places ; and of one of these it is ambiguously expressed that it was mounted with one hundred and thirty guns, or that it discharged one hundred and thirty bullets. Yet, in the power and activity of the sultan, we may

[Bombardment begins April 11]

⁴⁶ At indies doctiores nostri facti paravere contra hostes machinamenta, que tamen avare dabantur. Pulvis erat nitri modica, exigua ; tela modica ; bombardas si aderant incommoditate loci primum hostes offendere maceriebus alveisque tectos non poterant. Nam siquæ magnæ erant, ne murus concuteretur noster, quiescebant. This passage of Leonardus Chiensis is curious and important. [The Turks had directed twelve large cannons (apart from the fourteen batteries) against the land wall ; three against the Tekfour Serai Palace, four against the Gate of Romanus, three against the Gate of Selymbria, and two against the Golden Gate. The Gate of Romanus, against which the great cannon (which was named the *Basilica*) was set, is hence called Top Kapussi, "Cannon Gate". The reader should observe that between the Golden Gate and Blachernæ there were four chief gates in this order : Porta Selymbriæ (or Pegana), Porta Rusii (or Rhegii), Porta S. Romani, and Porta Charisii (or Charsæ : the same as the Gate of Hadrianople). The most dangerous and important post at the S. Romanus Gate was defended by 3000 men (including 500 Genoese), under the command of the Emperor and Giustiniani, who were supported by Don Francisco of Toledo, a relative of the Emperor.]

⁴⁷ According to Chalcondyles and Phraasa, the great cannon burst : an accident which, according to Ducas, was prevented by the artist's skill. It is evident that they do not speak of the same gun.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

chanical engines for casting stones and darts; ⁶² the battering-ram were directed against the same walls; ⁶³ the discovery of gunpowder superseded the use of the ⁶⁴ unextinguishable fire. A wooden turret of the largest advanced on rollers; this portable magazine of ammunition fascines was protected by a threefold covering of bulk; incessant volleys were securely discharged from the loop-holes; in the front, three doors were contrived for the alternate and retreat of the soldiers and workmen. They ascended by a staircase to the upper platform, and, as high as the level of that platform, a scaling ladder could be raised by pulleys to a bridge and grapple with the adverse rampart. By these various arts of annoyance, some as new as they were pernicious to the Greeks, the tower of St. Romanus was at length overhauled; after a severe struggle, the Turks were repulsed from the breach and interrupted by darkness; but they trusted that with the return of light they should renew the attack with fresh vigour and decisive success. Of this pause of action, this interval of hope, each moment was improved by the activity of the emperor and Justiniani, who passed the night on the spot, and urged the labours which involved the safety of the church and city. At the dawn of day, the impatient sultan perceived, with astonishment and grief, that his wooden turret had been reduced to ashes: the ditch was cleared and restored; and the tower of St. Romanus was again strong and entire. He deplored the failure of his design; and uttered a profane exclamation that the word of the thirty-seven thousand prophets should not have compelled him to believe that such a work, in so short a time, should have been accomplished by the infidels.

The generosity of the Christian princes was cold and tardy; but, in the first apprehension of a siege, Constantine had negotiated, in the isles of the Archipelago, the Morea, and Sicily, the most indispensable supplies. As early as the beginning of April, five ⁶⁵ great ships, equipped for merchandise and war, would

⁶² [Cp. Blanchin and Tedardi, *Informacion*, p. 23 (for this work see Appendix 31.)]

⁶³ It is singular that the Greeks should not agree in the number of these illustrious vessels; the *five* of Ducas, the *four* of Phranza and Leonardus (and *three* and Pusculus), and the *two* of Chalcondyles (and *Sad ad-Din*, ii. p. 237) may be extended to the smaller, or confined to the larger, size. Voltaire, in giving an account of these ships to Frederic III., confounds the emperors of the East and West. [Crotubulus does not mention the Imperial ship but only the three Italian ships, which, he says, were sent by the Pope with provisional help till he should prepare a large armament, i. 39. Ducas describes them as Genoese merchant vessels. The date of the engagement is known from Barbaro (p. 23, 24), who supplies the chronology of the siege.]

[The halopelta
at the Char-
seas Gate, May
18]

[May 19]

Success and
victory of four
ships.

[four]

have sailed from the harbour of Chios, had not the wind blown obstinately from the north.⁵⁴ One of these ships bore the Imperial flag; the remaining four belonged to the Genoese; ^(March) and they were laden with wheat and barley, with wine, oil, and vegetables, and, above all, with soldiers and mariners, for the service of the capital. After a tedious delay, a gentle breeze, and, on the second day, a strong gale from the south, carried them through the Hellespont and the Propontis; but the city was already invested by sea and land; and the Turkish fleet, at the entrance of the Bosphorus, was stretched from shore to shore, in the form of a crescent, to intercept, or at least to repel, these bold auxiliaries.⁵⁵ The reader who has present to his mind the geographical picture of Constantinople, will conceive and admire the greatness of the spectacle. The five Christian ships continued ^(April 20) to advance with joyful shouts, and a full press both of sails and oars, against an hostile fleet of three hundred vessels⁵⁶; and the rampart, the camp, the coasts of Europe and Asia, were lined with innumerable spectators, who anxiously awaited the event of this momentous succour. At the first view, that event could not appear doubtful: the superiority of the Moslems was beyond all measure or account; and, in a calm, their numbers and valour must inevitably have prevailed. But their hasty and imperfect navy had been created, not by the genius of the people, but by the will of the sultan. In the height of their prosperity, the Turks have acknowledged that, if God had given them the earth, he had left the sea to the infidels⁵⁷; and a series of defeats, a rapid progress of decay, has established the truth of their modest confession. Except eighteen galleys of some force, the rest of their fleet consisted of open boats, rudely constructed and awkwardly

⁵⁴ In bold defiance, or rather in gross ignorance, of language and geography, the President Cousin detains them at Chios with a south, and wafts them to Constantinople with a north, wind.

⁵⁵ [The fleet had arrived on April 12 (a small part of it had arrived earlier, on the same day as Mohammad, April 2, according to Phrantzes, p. 237). It weighed anchor, and made its headquarters, at Diplokionion, now Beshik Tashi, on the Thracian side of the Bosphorus at a short distance north of the mouth of the Golden Horn.]

⁵⁶ [Our authorities give very various statements as to the strength of the Turkish fleet. Critobolus (i. 23) says 350 (not counting ships of freight); Phrantzes, 480 (comparing p. 237 with p. 239 ed. Bonn); Marino Sanuto (Muratori, S. R. I. xxii. 1164, 375; Leonardus, 250; Chalcondyles, 230; Pusculus (4. 332), 170; Barbaro, 145.]

⁵⁷ The perpetual decay and weakness of the Turkish navy may be observed in Buzand (State of the Ottoman Empire, p. 372-378), Thévenot (Voyages, p. i. p. 200-201), and Tott (Mémoires, tom. iii.); the last of whom is always solicitous to amuse and amaze his reader.

managed, crowded with troops and destitute of cannon ; and, since courage arises in a great measure from the consciousness of strength, the bravest of the Janizaries might tremble on a new element. In the Christian squadron, five stout and lofty ships were guided by skilful pilots, and manned with the veterans of Italy and Greece, long practised in the arts and perils of the sea. Their weight was directed to sink or scatter the weak obstacles that impeded their passage ; their artillery swept the waters ; their liquid fire was poured on the heads of the adversaries who, with the design of boarding, presumed to approach them ; and the winds and waves are always on the side of the ablest navigators. In this conflict, the Imperial vessel, which had been almost overpowered, was rescued by the Genoese ; but the Turks, in a distant and closer attack, were twice repulsed with considerable loss. Mahomet himself sat on horseback on the beach, to encourage their valour by his voice and presence, by the promise of reward, and by fear more potent than the fear of the enemy. The passions of his soul, and even the gestures of his body,⁵⁸ seemed to imitate the actions of the combatants ; and, as if he had been the lord of nature, he spurred his horse with a fearless and impotent effort into the sea. His loud reproaches, and the clamours of the camp, urged the Ottomans to a third attack, more fatal and bloody than the two former ; and I must repeat, though I cannot credit, the evidence of Phranza, who affirms, from their own mouth, that they lost above twelve thousand men in the slaughter of the day.⁵⁹ They fled in disorder to the shores of Europe and Asia, while the Christian squadron, triumphant and unhurt, steered along the Bosphorus and securely anchored within the chain of the harbour. In the confidence of victory, they boasted that the whole Turkish power must have yielded to their arms ; but the admiral, or captain-bashaw, found some consolation for a painful wound in his eye, by representing that accident as the cause of his defeat. Baltha Ogli was a renegade of the race of

⁵⁸ I must confess that I have before my eyes the living picture which Thucydides (l. vii. c. 71) has drawn of the passions and gestures of the Athenians in a naval engagement in the great harbour of Syracuse. [Mordtmann, *Belagerung*, p. 138, n. 17, thinks that the spot where Mohammad looked on at the conflict was Zeitin Burnou, at a quarter of an hour's distance from the Seven Towers (at the Golden Gate) ; at this point the sea near the shore is very shallow.]

⁵⁹ [Leonardus says 20,000. Critobulus gives more reasonable numbers, but he, writing from the Turkish point of view, may have been inclined to understate the Turkish losses. He says that a little more than 100 were killed, and more than 300 wounded.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

chain was now defended by eight large ships, more than twenty of a smaller size, with several galleys and sloops; and, instead of forcing this barrier, the Turks might apprehend a naval battle and a second encounter in the open sea. In this perplexity, the genius of Mahomet conceived and executed a plan of a bold and marvellous cast,⁶² of transporting by land his lighter vessels and military stores from the Bosphorus into the higher part of the harbour. The distance is about ten miles; the ground is uneven, and was overspread with thickets; and, as the road must be opened behind the suburb of Galata, their free passage or total destruction must depend on the option of the Genoese.⁶³ But these selfish merchants were ambitious of the favour of being the last devoured; and the deficiency of art was supplied by the strength of obedient myriads. A level way was covered with a broad platform of strong and solid planks; and to render them more slippery and smooth, they were anointed with the fat of sheep and oxen. Fourscore⁶⁴ light galleys and brigantines of fifty and thirty oars were disembarked on the Bosphorus shore; arranged successively on rollers; and drawn forwards by the power of men and pulleys. Two guides or pilots were stationed at the helm and the prow of each vessel; the sails were unfurled to the winds; and the labour was cheered by song and acclamation. In the course of a single night, this Turkish fleet painfully climbed the hill, steered over the plain, and was launched from the declivity into the shallow waters of the harbour, far above the molestation of the deeper vessels of the Greeks. The real importance of this operation was magnified by the consternation and confidence which it inspired; but the notorious, unquestionable fact was displayed before the eyes, and is recorded by the pens, of the two nations.⁶⁵ A similar

(A. 112-13)

⁶² [N. Barbaro says that the idea was suggested to the Sultan by a Christian (p. 27).]

⁶³ [Starting from Diplokionion (Beshiktash) the ship sailed up the hill of Staurodromion, and descended to the little bay of Kasimpasha in the Golden Horn. See Paspates, *op. cit.*, 136. We do not know how long before its execution the plan had been prepared. The distance was between two and three miles. The best description of the transport of the vessels is given by Critobulus, i. 42. According to Michael the Janissary (for his Memoirs see Appendix 3) "the batteries kept up an incessant cannonade that night," to distract attention (Mijatovich, Constantine, Last Emperor of the Greeks, p. 163).]

⁶⁴ [The number of ships is given by Barbaro as 72, by Tedardi as between 70 and 80, by Critobulus as 67 (Chalcondyles 70, Ducas 80).]

⁶⁵ The unanimous testimony of the four Greeks is confirmed by Cantemir (p. 96) from the Turkish annals; but I could wish to contract the distance of ten miles, and to prolong the term of one night.

stratagem had been repeatedly practised by the ancients ; ⁶⁶ the Ottoman galleys (I must again repeat) should be considered as large boats ; and, if we compare the magnitude and the distance, the obstacles and the means, the boasted miracle ⁶⁷ has perhaps been equalled by the industry of our own times. ⁶⁸ As soon as Mahomet had occupied the upper harbour with a fleet and army, ^(May 19, bridge completed) he constructed, in the narrowest part, a bridge, or rather mole, of fifty cubits in breadth and one hundred in length ; it was formed of casks and bogsheads, joined with rafters linked with iron, and covered with a solid floor. On this floating battery he planted one of his largest cannon, while the fourscore galleys, with troops and scaling-ladders, approached the most accessible side, which had formerly been stormed by the Latin conquerors. The indolence of the Christians has been accused for not destroying these unfinished works ; but their fire, by a superior fire, was controlled and silenced ; nor were they wanting in a nocturnal attempt to burn the vessels as well as the bridge ⁶⁹ of the sultan. His vigilance prevented their approach ; their foremost galliots were sunk or taken ; forty youths, the bravest of Italy and Greece, were inhumanly massacred at his command ; nor could the emperor's grief be assuaged by the just though cruel retaliation of exposing from the walls the heads of two hundred and sixty Musulman captives. After a siege of forty ^(April 28) days, the fate of Constantinople could no longer be averted. ^(Distress of the city) The diminutive garrison was exhausted by a double attack ; the fortifications, which had stood for ages against hostile violence,

⁶⁶ Phranza relates two examples of a similar transportation over the six miles of the isthmus of Corinth : the one fabulous, of Augustus after the battle of Actium ; the other true, of Nicetas, a Greek general, in the xth century. To these he might have added a bold enterprise of Hannibal, to introduce his vessels into the harbour of Tarentum (Polybius, l. viii. p. 749, edit. Gronov [c. 36]). [Cp. also Thucydides, iii. 15 ; 81 ; iv. 8 ; and the dragging of the Syracusan fleet of Dionysius I., over the isthmus of Motya, a distance of 2½ miles, on a wooden road (Diodorus, xiv. 50 ; Polyænus, v. 2).]

⁶⁷ A Greek of Candia, who had served the Venetians in a similar undertaking (Spood. A. D. 1438, No. 37), might possibly be the adviser and agent of Mahomet.

⁶⁸ I particularly allude to our own embarkations on the lakes of Canada, in the years 1776 and 1777, so great in the labour, so fruitless in the event.

⁶⁹ [Barbaro states that the bridge was not completed till May 19 ; and he places this attempt to burn the vessels on April 28. Gibbon follows Phrantzes. Ducas also mentions (p. 277 ed. Bonn) an attempt to burn the Turkish ships, and attributes its failure to the treachery of the Genoese of Galata who revealed it to Mohammed. Ducas mentions the construction of the bridge *after* this unlucky enterprise. Critobulus relates how Mohammad foiled a plan of the Greeks to ~~send his ships~~ ^{send his ships} to the little harbour (Kasim Pasha) ; and he places this episode ~~after the building of the bridge~~ ^{after the building of the bridge} (i. 44). It seems from this that Ducas has mixed together the incident recorded by Phrantzes with that recorded by Critobulus.]

were dismantled on all sides by the Ottoman cannon; many breaches were opened; and near the gate of St. Romanus four towers had been levelled with the ground.⁷⁰ For the payment of his feeble and mutinous troops, Constantine was compelled to despoil the churches, with the promise of a fourfold restitution; and his sacrilege offered a new reproach to the enemies of the union. A spirit of discord impaired the remnant of the Christian strength; the Genoese and Venetian auxiliaries asserted the pre-eminence of their respective service; and Justiniani and the Great Duke, whose ambition was not extinguished by the common danger, accused each other of treachery and cowardice.

During the siege of Constantinople, the words of peace and capitulation had been sometimes pronounced; and several embassies had passed between the camp and the city.⁷¹ The Greek emperor was humbled by adversity; and would have yielded to any terms compatible with religion and royalty.⁷² The Turkish sultan was desirous of sparing the blood of his soldiers; still more desirous of securing for his own use the Byzantine treasures; and he accomplished a sacred duty in presenting to the *Gibours* the choice of circumcision, of tribute, or of death.⁷³ The avarice of Mahomet might have been satisfied

Preparations
of the Turks
for the
general
assault, May
26

[May 28]

⁷⁰ [The Turks also essayed mining operations against the Caligaria region (south of Blachernæ), where the ground was most favourable. But all their mines (the first was discovered on May 16, see Barbaro, p. 41) were foiled by the skill of a German engineer, Johannes Grant, who was entrusted with the defence of this part of the wall. Cp. Phrantzes, p. 254, and Tedardi, Informacion, p. 25.]

⁷¹ Chalcondyles and Ducas differ in the time and circumstances of the negotiation; and, as it was neither glorious nor salutary, the faithful Phranza spares his prince even the thought of a surrender.

⁷² [The author of the Slavonic relation of the siege (see Appendix 3) states that a council was held on May 3, and that all the military officers, the senators, and the patriarch advised the emperor to leave the city, and attempt to create a diversion. "The emperor" (the passage is thus translated by M. Ch. Mijatovich, *op. cit.* p. 173) "listened to all this quietly and patiently. At last, after having been for some time in deep thought, he began to speak: 'I thank all for the advice which you have given me. I know that my going out of the city might be of some benefit to me, inasmuch as all that you foresee might really happen. But it is impossible for me to go away! How could I leave the churches of our Lord and his servants the clergy, and the throne, and my people in such a plight? What would the world say about me? I pray you, my friends, in future do not say to me anything else but: "Nay, sire, do not leave us!" Never, never will I leave you! I am resolved to die here with you!' And saying this, the emperor turned his head aside, because tears filled his eyes; and with him wept the patriarch and all who were there."]

⁷³ [On this mission Mohammad sent his brother-in-law Ismail Hamaa, lord of Sinope and Castamboly, who was on friendly terms with Constantine. The incident is entirely omitted by Barbaro, Phrantzes, and Critobulus.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

of spending an immortal youth amidst the rivers and gardens of paradise and in the embraces of the black-eyed virgins. Yet Mahomet principally trusted to the efficacy of temporal and visible rewards. A double pay was promised to the victorious troops: "The city and the buildings," said Mahomet, "are mine; but I resign to your valour the captives and the spoil, the treasures of gold and beauty; be rich and be happy. Many are the provinces of my empire: the intrepid soldier who first ascends the walls of Constantinople shall be rewarded with the government of the fairest and most wealthy; and my gratitude shall accumulate his honours and fortunes above the measure of his own hopes." Such various and potent motives diffused among the Turks a general ardour, regardless of life and impatient for action; the camp re-echoed with the Moslem shouts of "God is God, there is but one God, and Mahomet is the apostle of God";⁷⁵ and the sea and land, from Galata to the seven towers, were illuminated by the blaze of their nocturnal fires.

[Sunday]

Last farewell
of the em-
peror and the
Greeks
[Monday, May
28]

Far different was the state of the Christians; who, with loud and impotent complaints, deplored the guilt, or the punishment, of their sins. The celestial image of the Virgin had been exposed in solemn procession; but their divine patroness was deaf to their entreaties: they accused the obstinacy of the emperor for refusing a timely surrender; anticipated the horrors of their fate; and sighed for the repose and security of Turkish servitude. The noblest of the Greeks, and the bravest of the allies, were summoned to the palace, to prepare them, on the evening of the twenty-eighth, for the duties and dangers of the general assault. The last speech of Palæologus was the funeral oration of the Roman Empire:⁷⁶ he promised, he conjured, and he vainly attempted to infuse the hope which was extinguished in his own mind. In this world all was comfortless and gloomy; and neither the gospel nor the church have proposed any conspicuous recompense to the heroes who fall in the service of their country. But the example of their prince and the con-

⁷⁵ Phranza quarrels with these Moslem acclamations, not for the name of God, but for that of the Prophet: the pious zeal of Voltaire is excessive, and even ridiculous. [There was a great illumination in the Turkish camp on the night of the 24th May, when the Sultan first proclaimed his plan for a general assault (Barbaro, p. 46; it is mentioned also by the Slavonic chronicle). Gibbon refers to the illumination on May 27.]

⁷⁶ I am afraid that this discourse was composed by Phranza himself; and it smells so grossly of the sermon and the convent that I almost doubt whether it was pronounced by Constantine. Leonardus assigns him another speech, in which he addresses himself more respectfully to the Latin auxiliaries.

finement of a siege had armed these warriors with the courage of despair; and the pathetic scene is described by the feelings of the historian Phranza, who was himself present at this mournful assembly. They wept, they embraced; regardless of their families and fortunes, they devoted their lives; and each commander, departing to his station, maintained all night a vigilant and anxious watch on the rampart. The emperor, and some faithful companions, entered the dome of St. Sophia, which in a few hours was to be converted into a mosque; and devoutly received, with tears and prayers, the sacrament of the holy communion. He reposed some moments in the palace, which resounded with cries and lamentations; solicited the pardon of all whom he might have injured;⁷⁷ and mounted on horseback to visit the guards and explore the motions of the enemy. The distress and fall of the last Constantine are more glorious than the long prosperity of the Byzantine Cæsars.

In the confusion of darkness an assailant may sometimes succeed; but, in this great and general attack, the military judgment and astrological knowledge of Mahomet advised him to expect the morning,⁷⁸ the memorable twenty-ninth of May, in the fourteen hundred and fifty-third year of the Christian æra. The preceding night had been strenuously employed: the troops, the cannon, and the fascines were advanced to the edge of the ditch, which, in many parts, presented a smooth and level passage to the breach; and his fourscore galleys almost touched, with the prows and their scaling-ladders, the less defensible walls of the harbour. Under pain of death, silence was enjoined; but the physical laws of motion and sound are not obedient to discipline or fear; each individual might suppress his voice and measure his footsteps; but the march and labour of thousands must inevitably produce a strange confusion of dissonant clamours, which reached the ears of the watchmen of the towers. At daybreak, without the customary signal of the morning-gun, the Turks assaulted the city by sea and land; and the similitude of a twined or twisted thread has been applied to the closeness and continuity of their line of attack.⁷⁹ The foremost ranks con-

The general
assault, May
29
[Tuesday]

⁷⁷ This abasement, which devotion has sometimes extorted from dying princes, is an improvement of the gospel doctrine of the forgiveness of injuries; it is more easy to forgive 490 times than once to ask pardon of an inferior.

⁷⁸ [So the eyewitnesses, Phrantzes and Barbaro. But Critobulus and Ducas set the beginning of the final assault on the 28th, and make the fighting go on all night.]

⁷⁹ Besides the 10,000 guards, and the sailors and the marines, Ducas numbers in this general assault 250,000 Turks, both horse and foot.

sisted of the refuse of the host, a voluntary crowd, who fought without order or command; of the feebleness of age or childhood, of peasants and vagrants, and of all who had joined the camp in the blind hope of plunder and martyrdom. The common impulse drove them onwards to the wall; the most audacious to climb were instantly precipitated; and not a dart, not a bullet of the Christians was idly wasted on the accumulated throng. But their strength and ammunition were exhausted in this laborious defence; the ditch was filled with the bodies of the slain; they supported the footsteps of their companions; and of this devoted vanguard the death was more serviceable than the life. Under their respective bashaws and sanjaks, the troops of Anatolia and Romania were successively led to the charge: their progress was various and doubtful; but, after a conflict of two hours, the Greeks still maintained and improved their advantage; and the voice of the emperor was heard, encouraging his soldiers to achieve, by a last effort, the deliverance of their country. In that fatal moment, the Janizaries arose, fresh, vigorous, and invincible. The sultan himself on horseback, with an iron mace in his hand, was the spectator and judge of their valour; he was surrounded by ten thousand of his domestic troops, whom he reserved for the decisive occasion; and the tide of battle was directed and impelled by his voice and eye. His numerous ministers of justice were posted behind the line, to urge, to restrain, and to punish; and, if danger was in the front, shame and inevitable death were in the rear of the fugitives. The cries of fear and of pain were drowned in the martial music of drums, trumpets, and attaballs; and experience has proved that the mechanical operation of sounds, by quickening the circulation of the blood and spirits, will act on the human machine more forcibly than the eloquence of reason and honour. From the lines, the galleys, and the bridge, the Ottoman artillery thundered on all sides; and the camp and city, the Greeks and the Turks, were involved in a cloud of smoke, which could only be dispelled by the final deliverance or destruction of the Roman empire. The single combats of the heroes of history or fable amuse our fancy and engage our affections; the skilful evolutions of war may inform the mind, and improve a necessary though pernicious science. But, in the uniform and odious pictures of a general assault, all is blood, and horror, and confusion; nor shall I strive, at the distance of three centuries and a thousand miles, to delineate a scene of which there could be no spectators, and of which the actors

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

into a single point, the whole city was irre-
 first who deserved the sultan's reward was Fir-
 of gigantic stature and strength. With his
 hand and his bow to the other, he asse-
 fortification; of the thirty Janizaries, who were
 valour, eighteen perished in the bold advent
 his teacher's companions had reached the summit
 precipitated from the summit; he rose on
 again opposed by a shower of darts and stones
 had proved that the achievement was possible
 towers were instantly covered with a swarm of
 Goths, now driven from the village-ground,
 by increasing multitudes. Amidst these in-
 per, who accomplished all the duties of
 soldier, was long seen, and finally lost. The
 round his person retained, till their last
 names of Palaeologus and Constantine.

In this account of the last conflict Gibbon
 fact which involved the capture of the city. The
 Ptolemy; it rests on the authority of Ducas (a
 short statement of Ortelius (i. 26. ad fin.) Much of the
 of the Porta Calpurnia, is a transverse wall which
 Theodosian wall, there is a small passage (called by
 called the Karthopora by Ducas (viii. 7.) and
 had been opened by Constantine's order for the purpose of
 of the Goths who were fighting in the narrow lanes the
 passed by the enemy, retreated through the Karthopora
 them, as they supposed to shut the gate. When the
 surrounded the wall, captured the tower close to the gate
 made in the wall. The retreat of the Goths
 wall, by the Karthopora was now cut off, and
 battlements they struggled back through the
 established, so that the Turks could enter by the
 remained open to have broken themselves as first
 did were then obliged before the commencement of the
 the light was rising next day, beyond what had
 continuing, describes the arrival of the Goths (p. 276.)
 fighting with the last is taken, the standard of the
 then Constantine opened his horse into the thick of the

Gibbon tells him with two slaves of Turkish
 light the standard, and then brought him to the gate
 carrying him among the enemy's weapons from the
 prison without injury, upon these walls there is

In the Introduction, he then makes the
 fact where they had a constant

was heard, "Cannot there be found a Christian to cut off my head?"⁸⁴ and his last fear was that of falling alive into the hands of the infidels.⁸⁵ The prudent despair of Constantine cast away the purple; amidst the tumult, he fell by an unknown hand, and his body was buried under a mountain of the slain. After his death, resistance and order were no more; the Greeks fled towards the city; and many were pressed and stifled in the narrow pass of the gate of St. Romanus. The victorious Turks rushed through the breaches of the inner wall; and, as they advanced into the streets, they were soon joined by their brethren, who had forced the gate Phenar on the side of the harbour.⁸⁶ In the first heat of the pursuit, about two thousand Christians were put to the sword; but avarice soon prevailed over cruelty; and the victors acknowledged that they should immediately have given quarter, if the valour of the emperor and his chosen bands had not prepared them for a similar opposition in every part of the capital. It was thus, after a siege of fifty-three days, that Constantinople, which had defied the power of Choroës, the Chagan, and the caliphs, was irretrievably subdued by the arms of Mahomet the Second. Her empire only had been subverted by the Latins; her religion was trampled in the dust by the Moslem conquerors.⁸⁷

Death of the emperor Constantine Palæologus

Loss of the city and empire

The tidings of misfortune fly with a rapid wing; yet such was the extent of Constantinople that the more distant quarters might prolong, some moments, the happy ignorance of their ruin.⁸⁸ But

The Turks enter and pillage Constantinople

⁸⁴ *Speusippus* (A.D. 1453, No. 10), who has hopes of his salvation, wishes to elude this demand from the guilt of suicide.

⁸⁵ *Leonardus Chiensis* very properly observes that the Turks, had they known the emperor, would have laboured to save and secure a captive so acceptable to themselves. [It appears that Constantine fell in the space between the inner and outer walls (Ducas, p. 283), near the Gate of St. Romanus (*Phrantzes*, p. 287). *Critobulus* is mistaken in saying that it was near the Kerkoporta (i. 60). *Theodore Spandugino Cantacuzino* in his work "Della origine de principi Turchi" (ed. 1564, p. 295) describes Constantine as rejecting the proposals which were made to him to flee to the harbour, and crying, "God forbid that I should live an Emperor without enjoying the Empire! I will die with my city!"]

⁸⁶ *Cantemir*, p. 96. The Christian ships in the mouth of the harbour had flanked and regarded this naval attack. [Cp. *Barbaro*, p. 56; *Critobulus*, i. 65.]

⁸⁷ *Chalcondyles* most absurdly supposes that Constantinople was sacked by the Greeks in revenge for the ancient calamities of Troy; and the grammarians of the city are happy to melt down the uncouth appellation of Turks into the more classical name of *Teucri*.

⁸⁸ When Cyrus surprised Babylon during the celebration of a festival, so vast was the city, and so careless were the inhabitants, that much time elapsed before the distant quarters knew that they were captives. *Herodotus* (l. i. c. 191), and *Josephus* (*Judæa*, p. 78), who has quoted from the prophet Jeremiah a passage of similar import.

in the general consternation, in the feelings of selfish or social anxiety, in the tumult and thunder of the assault, a *sleepless* night and morning must have elapsed; nor can I believe that many Grecian ladies were awakened by the Janizaries from a sound and tranquil slumber. On the assurance of the public calamity, the houses and convents were instantly deserted; and the trembling inhabitants flocked together in the streets, like an herd of timid animals, as if accumulated weakness could be productive of strength, or in the vain hope that amid the crowd each individual might be safe and invisible. From every part of the capital, they flowed into the church of St. Sophia: in the space of an hour, the sanctuary, the choir, the nave, the upper and lower galleries, were filled with the multitudes of fathers and husbands, of women and children, of priests, monks, and religious virgins; the doors were barred on the inside, and they sought protection from the sacred dome which they had so lately abhorred as a profane and polluted edifice. Their confidence was founded on the prophecy of an enthusiast or impostor, that one day the Turks would enter Constantinople, and pursue the Romans as far as the column of Constantine in the square before St. Sophia; but that this would be the term of their calamities; that an angel would descend from heaven, with a sword in his hand, and would deliver the empire, with that celestial weapon, to a poor man seated at the foot of the column. "Take this sword," would he say, "and avenge the people of the Lord." At these animating words, the Turks would instantly fly, and the victorious Romans would drive them from the West, and from all Anatolia, as far as the frontiers of Persia. It is on this occasion that Ducas, with some fancy and much truth, upbraids the discord and obstinacy of the Greeks. "Had that angel appeared," exclaims the historian, "had he offered to exterminate your foes if you would consent to the union of the church, even then, in that fatal moment, you would have rejected your safety or have deceived your God."⁸⁹

⁸⁹ This lively description is extracted from Ducas (c. 39), who two years afterwards was sent ambassador from the prince of Lesbos to the sultan (c. 44). Till Lesbos was subdued in 1463 (Phranza, l. iii. c. 27), that island must have been full of the fugitives of Constantinople, who delighted to repeat, perhaps to adorn, the tale of their misery. [The terrible description of the wasting of Constantinople given by Critobulus (i. 61-63), who wrote as a friend of the Turks, proves that the other historians have not exaggerated the frightful scenes. He has an interesting notice of the destruction of books sacred and profane (c. 62, 3); some were destroyed, but "the greater number of them" were sold for small sums, cp. Ducas, p. 312.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Mahomet himself. The daughter of Phranza died in the seraglio, perhaps a virgin; his son, in the fifteenth year of his age, preferred death to infamy, and was stabbed by the hand of the royal lover.⁹¹ A deed thus inhuman cannot surely be excused by the taste and liberality with which he released a Christian matron and her two daughters, on receiving a Latin ode from Philephus, who had chosen a wife in that noble family.⁹² The pride or cruelty of Mahomet would have been most sensibly gratified by the capture of a Roman legate; but the dexterity of Cardinal Isidore eluded the search, and he escaped from Galata in a plebeian habit.⁹³

The chain and entrance of the outward harbour was still occupied by the Italian ships of merchandise and war. They had signalised their valour in the siege; they embraced the moment of retreat, while the Turkish mariners were dissipated in the pillage of the city. When they hoisted sail, the beach was covered with a suppliant and lamentable crowd; but the means of transportation were scanty; the Venetians and Genoese selected their countrymen; and, notwithstanding the fairest promises of the sultan, the inhabitants of Galata evacuated their houses and embarked with their most precious effects.

In the fall and the sack of great cities, an historian is condemned to repeat the tale of uniform calamity; the same effects must be produced by the same passions; and, when those passions may be indulged without control, small, alas! is the difference between civilised and savage man. Amidst the vague exclamations of bigotry and hatred, the Turks are not accused of a wanton or immoderate effusion of Christian blood; but, according to their maxims (the maxims of antiquity), the lives of the vanquished were forfeited; and the legitimate reward of the conqueror was derived from the service, the sale, or the ransom,

⁹¹ See Phranza, l. iii. c. 20, 21. His expressions are positive: *Ameras sol mana jugulavit . . . volebat enim eo turpiter et nefarie abuti. Me miserum et infelice.* Yet he could only learn from report the bloody or impure scenes that were acted in the dark recesses of the seraglio.

⁹² See Tiraboschi (tom. vi. p. i. p. 290), and Lancelot (*Mém. de l'Académie des Inscriptions*, tom. x. p. 718). I should be curious to learn how he could praise the public enemy, whom he so often reviles as the most corrupt and inhuman of tyrants.

⁹³ The Commentaries of Pius II. suppose that he craftily placed his cardinal's hat on the head of a corpse, which was cut off and exposed in triumph, while the legate himself was bought and delivered, as a captive of no value. The great Belgic Chronicle adorns his escape with new adventures, which he suppressed (says Spoodanus, A.D. 1453, No. 15) in his own letters, lest he should lose the merit and reward of suffering for Christ.

of his captives of both sexes.⁹⁴ The wealth of Constantinople had been granted by the sultan to his victorious troops; and the empire of an hour is more productive than the industry of years. But, as no regular division was attempted of the spoil, the respective shares were not determined by merit; and the rewards of valour were stolen away by the followers of the camp, who had declined the toil and danger of the battle. The narrative of their depredations could not afford either amusement or instruction; the total amount, in the last poverty of the empire, has been valued at four millions of ducats;⁹⁵ and of this sum a small part was the property of the Venetians, the Genoese, the Florentines, and the merchants of Ancona. Of these foreigners, the stock was improved in quick and perpetual circulation; but the riches of the Greeks were displayed in the idle ostentation of palaces and wardrobes, or deeply buried in treasures of ingots and old coin, lest it should be demanded at their hands for the defence of their country. The profanation and plunder of the monasteries and churches excited the most tragic complaints. The dome of St. Sophia itself, the earthly heaven, the second firmament, the vehicle of the cherubim, the throne of the glory of God,⁹⁶ was despoiled of the oblations of ages; and the gold and silver, the pearls and jewels, the vases and sacerdotal ornaments, were most wickedly converted to the service of mankind. After the divine images had been stripped of all that could be valuable to a profane eye, the canvas, or the wood, was torn, or broken, or burnt, or trod under foot, or applied, in the stables or the kitchen, to the vilest uses. The example of sacrilege was imitated, however, from the Latin conquerors of Constantinople; and the treatment which Christ, the Virgin, and the saints had sustained from the guilty Catholic might be inflicted by the zealous Musulman on the monuments of idolatry. Perhaps, instead of joining the public clamour, a philosopher will observe that in the decline of the arts the workmanship could not be more valuable than the work, and that a fresh supply of visions and miracles would speedily be renewed by the craft of the

⁹⁴ Hieronymus expatiates with pleasure and applause on the rights of war and slavery among the ancients and the Turks (*de Legat. Turcica*, epist. iii.

⁹⁵ This sum is specified in a marginal note of Leunclavius (*Chalcondyles*, l. viii. p. 200), but in the distribution to Venice, Genoa, Florence, and Ancona, of 50, 20, 20, and 10 ducats, I suspect that a figure has been dropt. Even with the rest of the foreign property would scarcely exceed one-fourth.

⁹⁶ See the enthusiastic praises and lamentations of Phranza (*l. iii. c. 17*).

priest and the credulity of the people. He will more seriously deplore the loss of the Byzantine libraries, which were destroyed or scattered in the general confusion: one hundred and twenty thousand manuscripts are said to have disappeared;⁹⁷ ten volumes might be purchased for a single ducat; and the same ignominious price, too high perhaps for a shelf of theology, included the whole works of Aristotle and Homer, the noblest productions of the science and literature of ancient Greece. We may reflect with pleasure that an inestimable portion of our classic treasures was safely deposited in Italy; and that the mechanics of a German town had invented an art which derides the havoc of time and barbarism.

Mahomet II.
visits the city,
St. Sophia,
the palace, &c.

From the first hour⁹⁸ of the memorable twenty-ninth of May, disorder and rapine prevailed in Constantinople till the eighth hour of the same day; when the sultan himself passed in triumph through the gate of St. Romanus. He was attended by his vizirs, bashaws, and guards, each of whom (says a Byzantine historian) was robust as Hercules, dexterous as Apollo, and equal in battle to any ten of the race of ordinary mortals. The conqueror⁹⁹ gazed with satisfaction and wonder on the strange though splendid appearance of the domes and palaces, so dissimilar from the style of Oriental architecture. In the hippodrome, or *atmeidan*, his eye was attracted by the twisted column of the three serpents; and, as a trial of his strength, he shattered with his iron mace or battle-axe the under-jaw of one of these monsters,¹⁰⁰ which in the eye of the Turks were the idols or talismans of the city. At the principal door of St. Sophia, he alighted from his horse and entered the dome;¹⁰¹ and such was his jealous regard for that monument of his glory that, on observing a zealous Musulman in the act of breaking the marble pavement, he admonished him with his scymetar that, if the spoil and captives

⁹⁷ See Ducas (c. 43), and an epistle, 15th July, 1453, from Laurus Quirinus to Pope Nicholas V. (*Hody de Græcis*, p. 192, from a Ms. in the Cotton Library). [Cp. above, p. 194, note 89.]

⁹⁸ The Julian calendar, which reckons the days and hours from midnight, was used at Constantinople. But Ducas seems to understand the natural hours from sunrise.

⁹⁹ See the Turkish Annals, p. 329, and the Pandects of Leunclavius, p. 448.

¹⁰⁰ I have had occasion (vol. ii. p. 152) to mention this curious relic of Grecian antiquity.

¹⁰¹ [According to the Slavonic Relation, he stooped down at the threshold of the church, took some earth, and scattered it on his head, in token of humiliation to God. In the same source it is stated that, at the prayers of the priests who met him in St. Sophia, he issued a proclamation to stay the pillage, c. 21-22.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

portant prisoner. When he offered his person and his treasures at the foot of the throne, "And why," said the indignant sultan, "did you not employ these treasures in the defence of your prince and country?" "They were yours," answered the slave; "God had reserved them for your hands." "If he reserved them for me," replied the despot, "how have you presumed to withhold them so long by a fruitless and fatal resistance?" The great duke alleged the obstinacy of the strangers, and some secret encouragement from the Turkish vizir; and from this perilous interview he was at length dismissed with the assurance of pardon and protection. Mahomet condescended to visit his wife, a venerable princess, oppressed with sickness and grief; and his consolation for her misfortunes was in the most tender strain of humanity and filial reverence. A similar clemency was extended to the principal officers of state, of whom several were ransomed at his expense; and during some days he declared himself the friend and father of the vanquished people. But the scene was soon changed; and before his departure the hippodrome streamed with the blood of his noblest captives. His perfidious cruelty is execrated by the Christians. They adorn with the colours of heroic martyrdom the execution of the great duke and his two sons; and his death is ascribed to the generous refusal of delivering his children to the tyrant's lust.¹⁰⁷ Yet a Byzantine historian has dropt an unguarded word of conspiracy, deliverance, and Italian succour: such treason may be glorious; but the rebel who bravely ventures has justly forfeited his life; nor should we blame a conqueror for destroying the enemies whom he can no longer trust. On the eighteenth of June, the victorious sultan returned to Hadrianople; and smiled at the base and hollow embassies of the Christian princes, who viewed their approaching ruin in the fall of the Eastern empire.

No repeopled
and adorned
Constantinople

Constantinople had been left naked and desolate, without a prince or a people. But she could not be despoiled of the incomparable situation which marks her for the metropolis of a great empire; and the genius of the place will ever triumph over the accidents of time and fortune. Bursa and Hadrianople, the ancient seats of the Ottomans, sunk into provincial towns; and Mahomet the Second established his own residence, and that of his successors, on the same commanding spot which had

¹⁰⁷ [So Ducas, p. 303 seq. Chalcondyles, p. 402. Putschus, iv. 1071. Crotobulus says generally that Notaras and his sons were put to death by the advice of the Sultan's councillors (i. 73. 91.)

been chosen by Constantine.¹⁰⁸ The fortifications of Galata, which might afford a shelter to the Latins, were prudently destroyed; but the damage of the Turkish cannon was soon repaired; and before the month of August great quantities of lime had been burnt for the restoration of the walls of the capital. As the entire property of the soil and buildings, whether public or private, or profane or sacred, was now transferred to the conqueror, he first separated a space of eight furlongs from the point of the triangle for the establishment of his seraglio, or palace. It is here, in the bosom of luxury, that the *Grand Signor* (as he has been emphatically named by the Italians) appears to reign over Europe and Asia; but his person on the shores of the Bosphorus may not always be secure from the insults of an hostile navy. In the new character of a mosque, the cathedral of St. Sophia was endowed with an ample revenue, crowned with lofty minarets, and surrounded with groves and fountains, for the devotion and refreshment of the Moslems. The same model was imitated in the *jami*, or royal mosques; and the first of these was built by Mahomet himself, on the ruins of the church of the Holy Apostles and the tombs of the Greek emperors. On the third day after the conquest, the grave of Abu Ayub, or Job, who had fallen in the first siege of the Arabs, was revealed in a vision; and it is before the sepulchre of the martyr that the new sultans are girded with the sword of empire.¹⁰⁹ Constantinople no longer appertains to the Roman historian; nor shall I enumerate the civil and religious edifices that were profaned or erected by its Turkish masters: the population was speedily renewed; and before the end of September five thousand families of Anatolia and Rumania had obeyed the royal mandate, which enjoined them, under pain of death, to occupy their new habitations in the capital.¹¹⁰ The throne of Mahomet was guarded by the numbers

¹⁰⁸ For the restitution of Constantinople and the Turkish foundations, see Cantelani (p. 109-109), Ducas (c. 42), with Thévenot, Tournefort, and the rest of our modern travellers. [Cp. Zinkeisen, *op. cit.*, ii. p. 5-8.] From a gigantic picture of the greatness, population, &c., of Constantinople and the Ottoman empire (*Abrégé de l'Histoire Ottomane*, tom. i. p. 16-21), we may learn that in the year 1586 the Moslems were less numerous in the capital than the Christians or even the Jews.

¹⁰⁹ The *Turbé*, or sepulchral monument of Abu Ayub, is described and engraved in the *Tableau Général de l'Empire Ottoman* (Paris, 1787, in large folio), a work of less use, perhaps, than magnificence (tom. i. p. 305, 306).

¹¹⁰ [Subsequently 4000 Servians were settled in Constantinople; 2000 Peloponnesian families after the reduction of the Peloponnesus; two-thirds of the population of Anastris, the Genoese colony on the Black Sea; also Trapezus, Sinope, Caffa, Eubœa, Samothrace, &c., were forced, when they were conquered, to augment the population of the capital. See Zinkeisen, *loc. cit.*]

and fidelity of his Moslem subjects; but his rational
aspired to collect the remnant of the Greeks; and they re
in crowds, as soon as they were assured of their lives

xtare of
throne,

till it was
Greeks¹¹³
partition.
d to elude
presumed

to allege that this division had been an act, not of generosity
but of justice; not a concession, but a compact; and that, if
one half of the city had been taken by storm, the other moiety
had surrendered on the faith of a sacred capitulation. The
original grant had indeed been consumed by fire; but the loss
was supplied by the testimony of three aged Janizaries who
remembered the transaction; and their venal oaths are of
more weight in the opinion of Cantemir than the positive and
unanimous consent of the history of the times.¹¹⁴

¹¹³ [The first volume of a history of the Greek Church under Turkish rule by Prof. Lebedev appeared in 1896. It is entitled: *Istoria greko-vostochnoi tserkvi pod vlastiu Turok, ot padeniia Konstantinopolia do nastoiashago vremeni.*]

¹¹⁴ Phranza (l. iii. c. 19) relates the ceremony, which has possibly been adorning in the Greek reports to each other, and to the Latins. The fact is confirmed by Emanuel Malaxus, who wrote, in vulgar Greek, the history of the Patriarchs after the taking of Constantinople, inserted in the *Turco-Grecia* of Crusius (l. v. p. 106-184). [C. Sathas has shown that the *Historia Patriarchica* was not the work of Malaxus but of Damascenus Studites, to whom he also ascribes the *Historia Politica*, which is likewise printed in *Turco-Grecia*.] But the most patient reader will not believe that Mahomet adopted the Catholic form, "Sancta Trinitas que nihil domavit imperium te in patriarcham novam Romam deligit".

¹¹⁵ From the *Turco-Grecia* of Crusius, &c. Spondanus (A.D. 1453, No. 31; 1458, No. 16) describes the slavery and domestic quarrels of the Greek Church. The patriarch who succeeded Gennadius threw himself in despair into a well.

¹¹⁶ Cantemir (p. 101-105) insists on the unanimous consent of the Turkish historians, ancient as well as modern, and argues that they would not have violated the truth to diminish their national glory, since it is esteemed more honourable to take a city by force than by composition. But 1. I doubt this consent, since by

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

SPRING AND FALL

of their future conduct. Neither
which they repeatedly pledged
the altar, nor the stronger pressure
or suspend their domestic quarrels.
patrimony with fire and sword; the
West were consumed in civil hostility;
exercised in savage and arbitrary exor-
revenge of the weaker rival trampled
in the season of maturity and
the friend of Demetrius, and
an irresistible force. When he had taken
"You are too weak," said the sultan, "to
I will take your daughter to
I will pass the remainder of your life in security
Demetrius sighed, and obeyed; surrendered his
castles; followed to Hadrianople his sovereign
for his own maintenance, and that of his
city in Thrace, and the adjacent isles of Imbros,
and Samothrace. He was joined the next year by a
of moderate, the last of the COMNENIAN race, who
of Constantinople by the Latins, had founded
on the coast of the Black Sea.¹¹⁸ In the progress
Mabomet invested, with a fleet and
the capital of David, who presumed to style himself
Trebizond;¹¹⁹ and the negotiation was comprised in
and peremptory question, "Will you secure your life and
by resigning your kingdom? or had you rather forfeit
kingdom, your treasures, and your life?" The feeble
was subdued by his own fears, and the example of a
neighbour, the prince of Sinope,¹²⁰ who, on a similar

¹¹⁸ See the history of conquest of Trebizond in Chalcondyles (l. ix. p. 273 and
of Bled), Ducas (c. 45), Phrasar (l. iii. c. 27), and Comnenus (p. 207).
The last days of the Empire of Trebizond are described by Finlay in History of
Greece, iii. p. 479, 480.]
¹¹⁹ Though Tournefort (tom. iii. lettre xvii. p. 279) speaks of Trebizond as well
known, the latest and most accurate observer, can find no more inhabi-
tants (Commerce de la Mer Noire, tom. ii. p. 72, and for the province, p. 279).
The commerce and trade are perpetually disturbed by the furious quarrels of two
parties, in one of which 30,000 Lari are commonly employed (Mémorial
de Venise, tom. ii. p. 26, 27).
¹²⁰ The Sinop, prince of Sinope or Sinople, was possessed (thirty from his
ancestors) of a revenue of 200,000 drachms (Chalcond. l. ix. p. 271, 272). Pev-
sner (Commerce de la Mer Noire, tom. ii. p. 204) ascribes to the modern city
30,000 inhabitants. This amount seems enormous; yet it is by trading with a
people that we become acquainted with their wealth and numbers.

summons, had yielded a fortified city with four hundred cannon and ten or twelve thousand soldiers. The capitulation of Trebizond was faithfully performed; and the emperor, with his family, was transported to a castle in Romania; but on a slight suspicion of corresponding with the Persian king, David and the whole Comnenian race were sacrificed to the jealousy or avarice of the conqueror. Nor could the name of father long protect the unfortunate Demetrius from exile and confiscation: his abject submission moved the pity and contempt of the sultan; his followers were transplanted to Constantinople; and his poverty was alleviated by a pension of fifty thousand aspers, till a monastic habit and a tardy death released Palæologus from an earthly master. It is not easy to pronounce whether the servitude of Demetrius or the exile of his brother Thomas ¹²¹ be the most inglorious. On the conquest of the Morea, the despot escaped to Corfu, and from thence to Italy, with some naked adherents; his name, his sufferings, and the head of the apostle St. Andrew entitled him to the hospitality of the Vatican; and his misery was prolonged by a pension of six thousand ducats from the pope and cardinals. His two sons, Andrew and Manuel, were educated in Italy; but the eldest, contemptible to his enemies and burdensome to his friends, was degraded by the baseness of his life and marriage. A title was his sole inheritance; and that inheritance he successively sold to the kings of France and Arragon. ¹²² During this transient prosperity, Charles the Eighth was ambitious of joining the empire of the East with the kingdom of Naples: in a public festival, he assumed the appellation and the purple of *Augustus*: the Greeks rejoiced, and the Ottoman already trembled, at the approach of the French chivalry. ¹²³ Manuel Palæologus, the second son, was tempted to revisit his native country: his return might be grateful, and could not be dangerous, to the Porte; he was maintained at Constantinople

of Trebizond,
A.D. 1461

¹²¹ Spondanus (from Gobelin, Comment. Pii II. l. v.) relates the arrival and reception of the despot Thomas at Rome (A.D. 1461, No. 3).

¹²² By an act dated A.D. 1494, 6th Sept., and lately transmitted from the archives of the Capitol to the royal library of Paris, the despot Andrew Palæologus, reserving the Morea, and still retaining some private advantages, conveys to Charles VIII. King of France, the empires of Constantinople and Trebizond (Spondanus, A.D. 1495, No. 2). M. de Foncemagne (Mém. de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xvii. p. 539-578) has bestowed a dissertation on this national title, of which he had obtained a copy from Rome.

¹²³ See Philippe de Comines (l. vii. c. 14), who reckons with pleasure the number of Greeks who were prepared to rise, sixty miles of an easy navigation, eighteen days' journey from Valona to Constantinople, &c. On this occasion the Turkish empire was saved by the policy of Venice.

honourable train of Christians and
 If there be some animals
 that they refuse to propagate in a
 of the Imperial race must be ascribed
 accepted from the sultan's liberality, two
 and his surviving son was lost in the habit
 of a slave.

Constantinople was felt and magnified in
 of Nicholas the Fifth, however peaceful
 by the fall of the Eastern
 and terror of the Latins revived, or seemed
 enthusiasm of the crusades. In one of the
 of the West, Philip, duke of Burgundy,
 in Flanders, an assembly of his nobles; and
 of the feast were skilfully adapted to their

In the midst of the banquet, a gigantic
 hall, leading a fictitious elephant with a
 a matron in a mourning robe, the symbol of
 to issue from the castle; she deplored her
 accused the slowness of her champions; the
 of the golden fleece advanced, bearing on his
 which, according to the rites of chivalry, he

At this extraordinary summons, Philip
 engaged his person and powers in the
 the Turks; his example was imitated by the
 knights of the assembly; they swore to God, the
 and the pleasant; and their particular vows
 more extravagant than the general sanction of their

the performance was made to depend on some future
 contingency; and, during twelve years, till the last
 the duke of Burgundy might be scrupulously
 secretly, on the eve of his departure. Had every
 guard with the same ardour; had the union of the
 corresponded with their bravery; had every country,
 to Naples, supplied a just proportion of cavalry
 of men and money, it is indeed probable that

The original feast is Olivier de la Marche (Mémoires, p. i. c. 17, 18) with
 and observations of M. de St. Palais (Mémoires sur la Chevalerie, tom.
 1. p. 141). The peacock and the pleasant were distinguished as royal
 by an actual convention that Sweden, Gothland, and Finland
 were fighting men, and consequently were the more populous than

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

have prevented the subsequent invasion of the kingdom of Naples. The siege and sack of Otranto by the Turks diffused a general consternation; and Pope Sixtus was preparing to fly beyond the Alps, when the storm was instantly dispelled by the death of Mahomet the Second, in the fifty-first year of his age.¹²⁷ His lofty genius aspired to the conquest of Italy: he was possessed of a strong city and a capacious harbour; and the same reign might have been decorated with the trophies of the New and the ANCIENT ROME.¹²⁸

¹²⁷ Besides the two annalists, the reader may consult Giannone (*Istoria Civile*, tom. iii. p. 449-455) for the Turkish invasion of the kingdom of Naples. (See the *Diarium Parmense* (p. 350-377.) in the xxiid volume of Muratori; the *Relazione della presa di Otranto* (by a commissario of the Duke of Bari) in the *Archivio storico per le province Napolitane*, vi. l. 74-162, 169-176 (1880); *Joannis Alibi Lucani de gestis regum Neap. ab Aragonia qui extant libri iv.*, 1609; Antonio de' Ferrariis, *Successi dell' armata turchesca nella città d'Otranto nell' anno MCCC.LXXX.*, 1612.) For the reign and conquests of Mahomet II. I have occasionally used the *Memorie Istoriche de' Monarchi Ottomanni di Giovanni Sagredo* (Venezia, 1677, in 4to). In peace and war, the Turks have ever engaged the attention of the republic of Venice. All her dispatches and archives were open to a procurator of St. Mark, and Sagredo is not contemptible either in sense or style. Yet he too bitterly hates the infidels; he is ignorant of their language and manners; and his narrative, which allows only seventy pages to Mahomet II. (p. 69-140), becomes more copious and authentic as he approaches the years 1640 and 1641, the term of the historic labours of John Sagredo. [Mohammad died on 3rd May, 1489. Zinkelsen, ii. p. 468.]

¹²⁸ As I am now taking an everlasting farewell of the Greek empire, I shall briefly mention the great collection of Byzantine writers, whose names and testimonies have been successively repeated in this work. The Greek presses of Athens and the Italians were confined to the classics of a better age; and the first rude editions of Procopius, Agathias, Cedrenus, Zonaras, &c., were published by the learned diligence of the Germans. The whole Byzantine series (36 volumes in folio) has gradually issued (A.D. 1648, &c.) from the royal press of the Louvre, with some collateral aid from Rome and Leipsic; but the Venetian edition (A.D. 1729), though cheaper and more copious, is not less inferior in correctness than in magnificence to that of Paris. The merits of the French editors are various; but the value of Anna Comnena, Cinnamus, Villehardouin, &c., is enhanced by the historical notes of Charles du Fresne du Cange. His supplemental works, the *Greek Glossary*, the *Constantinopolis Christiana*, the *Familie Byzantine*, diffuse a steady light over the darkness of the Lower Empire.

CHAPTER LXIX.

State of Rome from the Twelfth Century—Temporal Dominion of the Popes—Seditions of the City—Political Heresy of Arnold of Brescia—Restoration of the Republic—The Senators—Pride of the Romans—Their Wars—They are deprived of the Election and Presence of the Popes, who retire to Avignon—The Jubilee—Noble Families of Rome—Feud of the Colonna and Ursini.

In the first ages of the decline and fall of the Roman empire our eye is invariably fixed on the royal city which had given laws to the fairest portion of the globe. We follow her fortunes, at first with admiration, at length with pity, always with attention; and, when that attention is diverted from the capital to the provinces, they are considered as so many branches which have been successively severed from the Imperial trunk. The foundation of a second Rome on the shores of the Bosphorus has compelled the historian to follow the successors of Constantine; and our curiosity has been tempted to visit the most remote countries of Europe and Asia, to explore the causes and the authors of the long decay of the Byzantine monarchy. By the conquest of Justinian we have been recalled to the banks of the Tiber, to the deliverance of the ancient metropolis; but that deliverance was a change, or perhaps an aggravation, of servitude. Rome had been already stripped of her trophies, her gods, and her Cæsars; nor was the Gothic dominion more inglorious and oppressive than the tyranny of the Greeks. In the eighth century of the Christian æra, a religious quarrel, the worship of images, provoked the Romans to assert their independence; their bishop became the temporal as well as the spiritual father of a free people; and of the Western empire, which was reared by Charlemagne, the title and image still decorate the singular constitution of modern Germany.¹ The

State and
revolutions of
Rome, A.D.
1100-1200

¹[But no longer, as the Roman empire ceased to exist in 1806 (August) when Francis II. resigned the Imperial Crown. He had taken the new title of Emperor of Austria in 1804.]

name of Rome must yet command our involuntary respect; the climate (whatsoever may be its influence) was no longer the same;² the purity of blood had been contaminated through a thousand channels; but the venerable aspect of her ruins, and the memory of past greatness, rekindled a spark of the national character. The darkness of the middle ages exhibits some scenes not unworthy of our notice. Nor shall I dismiss the present work till I have reviewed the state and revolutions of the ROMAN CITY, which acquiesced under the absolute dominion of the Popes about the same time that Constantinople was enslaved by the Turkish arms.

The French
and German
emperors of
Rome, A.D.
1000-1100

In the beginning of the twelfth century,³ the era of the first crusade, Rome was revered by the Latins, as the metropolis of the world, as the throne of the pope and the emperor, who, from the eternal city, derived their title, their honours, and the right or exercise of temporal dominion. After so long an interruption, it may not be useless to repeat that the successors of Charlemagne and the Othos were chosen beyond the Rhine in a national diet; but that these princes were content with the humble names of kings of Germany and Italy, till they had passed the Alps and the Apennine, to seek their Imperial crown on the banks of the Tiber.⁴ At some distance from the city, their approach was saluted by a long procession of the clergy and

² The Abbé Dubos, who, with less genius than his successor Montesquieu, has asserted and magnified the influence of climate, objects to himself the degeneracy of the Romans and Batavians. To the first of these examples he replies, 1. That the change is less real than apparent, and that the modern Romans prudently conceal in themselves the virtues of their ancestors. 2. That the air, the soil, and the climate of Rome have suffered a great and visible alteration (*Réflexions sur la Poesie et sur la Peinture*, part. ii. sect. 16). [The chief work now on the subject of this and the two following chapters is Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom im Mittelalter*, which has been excellently translated into English by Mrs. Hamilton.]

³ The reader has been so long absent from Rome, that I would advise him to recollect or review the 49th chapter, in the 5th volume of this history.

⁴ The coronation of the German Emperors at Rome, more especially in the 10th century, is best represented from the original monuments by Muratori (*Antiquitat. Italizæ mediæ Ævi*, tom. i. dissertat. ii. p. 99, &c.) and Cenni (*Monument. Domus Pontif.*, tom. ii. diss. vi. p. 261), the latter of whom I only know from the copious extract of Schmidt (*Hist. des Allemands*, tom. iii. p. 255-266). [Cenni quotes the *Ordo coronationis* given by Cencius Camerarius, which critics variously refer to Henry III. and Henry VI. See Waitz, *Die Formeln der deutschen Könige und der römischen Kaiserkrönung vom 10ten bis 12ten Jahrhundert* (in the *Abhandlungen* of the Göttingen Gesellschaft der Wiss. 1873, No. 18); and Schwarzer, *Die Ordnung der Kaiserkrönung* (in *Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte*, xxii. 161 sqq., 1882). The coronations of the 9th century have been treated by W. Sichel in his article on *Die Kaiserkrönungen von Karl bis Berengar*, in the *Historische Zeitschrift*, N. 7. xlv. 1 sqq.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

coins ;⁹ and their jurisdiction was marked by the sword of justice, which they delivered to the præfect of the city. But every Roman prejudice was awakened by the name, the language, and the manners, of a barbarian lord. The Cæsars of Saxony or Franconia were the chiefs of a feudal aristocracy ; nor could they exercise the discipline of civil and military power, which alone secures the obedience of a distant people, impatient of servitude, though perhaps incapable of freedom. Once, and once only, in his life, each emperor, with an army of Teutonic vassals, descended from the Alps. I have described the peaceful order of his entry and coronation ; but that order was commonly disturbed by the clamour and sedition of the Romans, who encountered their sovereign as a foreign invader : his departure was always speedy, and often shameful ; and, in the absence of a long reign, his authority was insulted, and his name was forgotten. The progress of independence in Germany and Italy undermined the foundations of the Imperial sovereignty, and the triumph of the popes was the deliverance of Rome.

Of her two sovereigns, the emperor had precariously reigned by the right of conquest ; but the authority of the pope was founded on the soft, though more solid, basis of opinion and habit. The removal of a foreign influence restored and endeared the shepherd to his flock. Instead of the arbitrary or venal nomination of a German court, the vicar of Christ was freely chosen by the college of cardinals, most of whom were either natives or inhabitants of the city. The applause of the magistrates and people confirmed his election ; and the ecclesiastical power that was obeyed in Sweden and Britain had been ultimately derived from the suffrage of the Romans. The same suffrage gave a prince, as well as a pontiff, to the capital. It was universally believed that Constantine had invested the popes with the temporal dominion of Rome ; and the boldest civilians, the most profane sceptics, were satisfied with disputing the right of the emperor and the validity of his gift. The truth of

Authority of
the popes in
Rome,

from affec-
tion ;

⁹ Muratori has given the series of the papal coins (*Antiquitat. tom. ii. diss. xxvii. p. 548-554*). He finds only two more early than the year 800 ; fifty are still extant from Leo III. to Leo IX. with the addition of the reigning emperor ; none remain of Gregory VII. or Urban II. ; but in those of Paschal II. he seems to have renounced this badge of dependence. [There are no Papal denarii between Benedict VII. (ob. A.D. 984) and Leo IX. But, as Gregorovius observes (*op. cit. iv. p. 78* note), this is an accident, for coins must have been struck. In the 11th century we have one coin of Leo IX. and one of Paschal II. The interval between Paschal and Benedict XI. (ob. A.D. 1304) is filled by the coinage of the Senate ; but, after the installation of the Senate, "solidi Pape" (sous of the Pope) are still spoken of. See Gregorovius, *ib. p. 498.*]

the fact, the authenticity of his donation, was deeply rooted in the ignorance and tradition of four centuries; and the fabulous origin was lost in the real and permanent effects. The name of *Dominus*, or Lord, was inscribed on the coin of the bishops; their title was acknowledged by acclamations and oaths of allegiance; ^{rights} and, with the free or reluctant consent of the German Cæsars, they had long exercised a supreme or subordinate jurisdiction over the city and patrimony of St. Peter. The reign of the popes, which gratified the prejudices, was not incompatible with the liberties of Rome; and a more critical inquiry would have revealed a still nobler source of their power: the gratitude of a nation, whom they had rescued from the heresy and oppression of the Greek tyrant. In an age of superstition, it should seem that the union of the royal and sacerdotal characters would mutually fortify each other, and that the keys of paradise would be the surest pledge of earthly obedience. The sanctity of the office might indeed be degraded by the personal vices of ^{virtues} the man; but the scandals of the tenth century were obliterated by the austere and more dangerous virtues of Gregory the Seventh and his successors; and, in the ambitious contests which they maintained for the rights of the church, their sufferings or their success must equally tend to increase the popular veneration. They sometimes wandered in poverty and exile, the victims of persecution; and the apostolic zeal with which they offered themselves to martyrdom must engage the favour and sympathy of every Catholic breast. And sometimes, thundering from the Vatican, they created, judged, and deposed the kings of the world; nor could the proudest Roman be disgraced by submitting to a priest whose feet were kissed, and whose stirrup was held, by the successors of Charlemagne.¹⁰ Even the temporal interest of the city should have protected in peace and honour the residence of the popes; from whence a vain and lazy people derived the greatest part of their subsistence and riches. The fixed revenue of the popes was probably impaired: ^{benefits} many of the old patrimonial estates, both in Italy and the provinces, had been invaded by sacrilegious hands; nor could the loss be compensated by the claim rather than the possession of the more ample gifts of Pepin and his descendants. But the Vatican and Capitol were nourished by the incessant and increas-

¹⁰See DuRoi, *Gloss. medise et infimæ Latinitat.* tom. vi. p. 364, 365. STAFFA. This charge was paid by kings to archbishops, and by vassals to their lords (*Monasticon* tom. ii. p. 266); and it was the nicest policy of Rome to confound the ~~idea of~~ and of feudal subjection.

ing swarms of pilgrims and suppliants; the pale of Christianity was enlarged, and the pope and cardinals were overwhelmed by the judgment of ecclesiastical and secular causes. A new jurisprudence had established in the Latin church the right and practice of appeals;¹¹ and, from the North and West, the bishops and abbots were invited or summoned to solicit, to complain, to accuse, or to justify, before the threshold of the apostles. A rare prodigy is once recorded, that two horses, belonging to the Archbishops of Mentz and Cologne, repassed the Alps, yet laden with gold and silver;¹² but it was soon understood that the success, both of the pilgrims and clients, depended much less on the justice of their cause than on the value of their offering. The wealth and piety of these strangers were ostentatiously displayed; and their expenses, sacred or profane, circulated in various channels for the emolument of the Romans.

Inconstancy
of superstition

Such powerful motives should have firmly attached the voluntary and pious obedience of the Roman people to their spiritual and temporal father. But the operation of prejudice and interest is often disturbed by the sallies of ungovernable passion. The Indian who fells the tree that he may gather the fruit,¹³ and the Arab who plunders the caravans of commerce, are actuated by the same impulse of savage nature, which overlooks the future in the present, and relinquishes for momentary rapine the long and secure possession of the most important blessings. And it was thus that the shrine of St. Peter was profaned by the thoughtless Romans, who pillaged the offerings, and wounded the pilgrims, without computing the number and value of similar visits, which they prevented by their inhospitable sacrilege. Even the influence of superstition is fluctuating and precarious; and the slave, whose reason is subdued, will often be delivered by his avarice or pride. A credulous devotion for the fables and oracles of the priesthood most powerfully acts on

¹¹ The appeals from all the churches to the Roman Pontiff are deplored by the zeal of St. Bernard (de Consideratione, l. iii. tom. ii. p. 431-442, edit. Mabillon, Venet. 1750), and the judgment of Fleury (Discours sur l'Hist. Ecclésiastique, iv. and vii.). But the saint, who believed in the false decretals, condemns only the abuse of these appeals; the more enlightened historian investigates the origin, and rejects the principles, of this new jurisprudence.

¹² Germanici . . . summarii non levatis sarcinis onusti nihilominus repatriant inviti. Nova res! quando hæcenus aurum Roma refudit? Ex nunc Romanorum consilio id usurpatum non credimus (Bernard, de Consideratione, l. iii. c. 3. p. 437). The first words of the passage are obscure, and probably corrupt.

¹³ Quand les sauvages de la Louisiane veulent avoir du fruit, ils coupent l'arbre au pied et cueillent le fruit. Voilà le gouvernement despotique (Esprit des Loix, l. v. c. 13); and passion and ignorance are always despotic.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

potentate of the age, found the utmost difficulty to make their way to him and to throw themselves at his feet".¹⁵

Since the primitive times, the wealth of the popes was exposed to envy, their power to opposition, and their persons to violence. But the long hostility of the mitre and the crown increased the numbers, and inflamed the passions, of their enemies. The deadly factions of the Guelphs and Ghibelines, so fatal to Italy, could never be embraced with truth or constancy by the Romans, the subjects and adversaries both of the bishop and emperor; but their support was solicited by both parties; and they alternately displayed in their banners the keys of St. Peter and the German eagle. Gregory the Seventh, who may be adored or detested as the founder of the papal monarchy, was driven from Rome, and died in exile at Salerno. Six-and-thirty of his successors,¹⁶ till their retreat to Avignon, maintained an unequal contest with the Romans; their age and dignity were often violated; and the churches, in the solemn rites of religion, were polluted with sedition and murder. A repetition¹⁷ of such capricious brutality, without connection or design, would be tedious and disgusting; and I shall content myself with some events of the twelfth century, which represent the state of the popes and the city. On Holy Thursday, while Paschal officiated before the altar, he was interrupted by the clamours of the

¹⁵ Hume's History of England, vol. i. p. 419. The same writer has given us, from Fitz Stephen, a singular act of cruelty perpetrated on the clergy by Geoffrey, the father of Henry II. "When he was master of Normandy, the chapter of Sens presumed, without his consent, to proceed to the election of a bishop; upon which, he ordered all of them, with the bishop elect, to be castrated, and made all their testicles be brought him in a platter." Of the pain and danger they might justly complain; yet, since they had vowed chastity, he deprived them of a superfluous treasure.

¹⁶ From Leo IX. and Gregory VII. an authentic and contemporary series of the lives of the Popes, by the Cardinal of Arragon [Nicolò Roselli (ob. A.D. 1360)], Pandulphus Pisanus, Bernard Guido, &c. is inserted in the Italian historians of Muratori (tom. iii. p. i. p. 277-685), and has been always before my eyes. [This collection of Lives, printed by Muratori under the false title of the Cardinal of Aragon, is contained in the Liber Censuum sanctæ Romanæ Ecclesiæ (which is noticed above, vol. vi. p. 187 note). The Lives were also published, as Acta Vaticana, by Baronius in his Annales ecclesiastici (scattered about under the various years); and his text is said to be better than that of Muratori. There is a new edition of the Liber Censuum (put together A.D. 1192 by Cencius Camerarius) by P. Fabre. On the whole subject cp. Fabre's Etude sur le Liber censuum de l'église romaine, 1892.]

¹⁷ The dates of years in the margin may, throughout this chapter, be understood as tacit references to the Annals of Muratori, my ordinary and excellent guide. He uses, and indeed quotes, with the freedom of a master, his great Collection of the Italian Historians, in xxviii volumes; and, as that treasure is in my library, I have thought it an amusement, if not a duty, to consult the originals.

Successors of
Gregory VII.
A.D. 1086-1118

Paschal II.
A.D. 1099-1118

multitude, who imperiously demanded the confirmation of a favourite magistrate.¹⁸ His silence exasperated their fury; his pious refusal to mingle the affairs of earth and heaven was encountered with menaces and oaths, that he should be the cause and the witness of the public ruin. During the festival of Easter, while the bishop and the clergy, barefoot and in procession, visited the tombs of the martyrs, they were twice assaulted, at the bridge of St. Angelo and before the Capitol, with volleys of stones and darts. The houses of his adherents were levelled with the ground; Paschal escaped with difficulty and danger; he levied an army in the patrimony of St. Peter; and his last days were embittered by suffering and inflicting the calamities of civil war. The scenes that followed the election of his successor Gelasius the Second were still more scandalous to the church and city. Cencio Frangipani,¹⁹ a potent and factious baron, burst into the assembly furious, and in arms: the cardinals were stripped, beaten, and trampled under foot; and he seized, without pity or respect, the vicar of Christ by the throat. Gelasius was dragged by his hair along the ground, buffeted with blows, wounded with spurs, and bound with an iron chain in the house of his brutal tyrant. An insurrection of the people delivered their bishop; the rival families opposed the violence of the Frangipani; and Cencio, who sued for pardon, repented of the failure rather than of the guilt of his enterprise. Not many days had elapsed when the pope was again assaulted at the altar. While his friends and enemies were engaged in a bloody contest, he escaped in his sacerdotal garments. In this cowardly flight, which excited the compassion of the Roman senators, his attendants were scattered or unhorsed; and, in the fields behind the church of St. Peter, his successor was found alone and half dead with fear and fatigue. Shaking the dust from his feet, the apostle withdrew from a city in which his

Gelasius II.
A.D. 1122, 1123

(Frangipani)

[The magistrate meant is the Prefect of the City (cp. below, p. 227), the criminal judge of Rome. His election often caused party conflicts. Paschal wished a son of Pierleone to be chosen, and the riot was marked by an attack on the towers of the Pierleoni near the theatre of Marcellus.]

¹⁹ I cannot refrain from transcribing the high-coloured words of Pandolphus Pisanus (p. 354): Hoc audiens inimicus pacis atque turbator jam fatus Centius Frangipane, inde draconis immanissimi sibilans, et ab imis pectoribus trahens longa sagitta, accinctus retro gladio sine more cocurrit, valvas ac fores confregit. Ecclesiam furibundus introiit, inde custode remoto papam per gulam accepit. Detraxit, pugnis calcibusque percussit, et tanquam brutum animal intra limen ecclesie acriter calcibus cruciavit; et latro tantum dominum per capillos et brachia, Jezu bono interim dormiente, detraxit, ad domum usque deduxit, ibi calcavit et inclavit.

dignity was insulted and his person was endangered; and the vanity of sacerdotal ambition is revealed in the involuntary confession that one emperor was more tolerable than twenty.²⁰ These examples might suffice; but I cannot forget the sufferings of two pontiffs of the same age, the second and third of the name of Lucius. The former, as he ascended in battle-array to assault the Capitol, was struck on the temple by a stone, and expired in a few days;²¹ the latter was severely wounded in the persons of his servants.²² In a civil commotion several of his priests had been made prisoners; and the inhuman Romans, reserving one as a guide for his brethren, put out their eyes, crowned them with ludicrous mitres, mounted them on asses, with their faces to the tail, and extorted an oath that in this wretched condition they should offer themselves as a lesson to the head of the church. Hope or fear, lassitude or remorse, the characters of the men and the circumstances of the times, might sometimes obtain an interval of peace and obedience; and the pope was restored with joyful acclamations to the Lateran or Vatican, from whence he had been driven with threats and violence. But the root of mischief was deep and perennial;²³ and a momentary calm was preceded and followed by such tempests as had almost sunk the bark of St. Peter. Rome continually presented the aspect of war and discord; the churches and palaces were fortified and assaulted by the factions and families; and, after giving peace to Europe, Calixtus the Second alone had resolution and power to prohibit the use of private arms in the metropolis.²⁴ Among the nations who revered the apostolic throne, the tumults of Rome provoked a general indignation; and, in a letter to his disciple Eugenius the Third, St. Bernard, with the sharpness of his wit and zeal, has stigma-

²⁰ Ego coram Deo et Ecclesia dico, si unquam possibile esset, malletm unum imperatorem quam tot dominos (Vit. Gelas. II. p. 398). [Henry V., called in by the Frangipani, appeared in Rome on 11th March, 1119. Gelasius escaped to Gaeta. Gregorovius appropriately observes that "the flight to Gaeta was repeated 799 years later in the history of Pius IX" (iv. 983).]

²¹ [Godfrey of Viterbo, in Muratori vii. p. 461.]

²² [The sources for this outrage on Lucius III. (who finally sought the emperor's protection at Verona, where he died) are: Sigebertus Gemblacensis, Auctarium Aquicmense, ad ann. 1184 (Bethmann's ed. of Sigibert in the Monum. Germ. Hist. vi. p. 300 397. has superseded all others); Albertus Stadenis (= Annales Stadenis, in Mon. Germ. Hist. xvi.) ad 1183.]

²³ [As Gregorovius puts it (iv. 609): "The spirit of Arnold still survived in Rome, and each Pope was obliged to win toleration for himself or else to live in exile".]

²⁴ [Calixtus also forbade the fortification of churches. See Mansi, Concilia xxi. 285. He restored the Lateran.]

Lucius II. A.D. 1144, 1145

Lucius III. A.D. 1181-1185

Calixtus II. A.D. 1119-1124
Innocent II. A.D. 1130-1143

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Arnold of Brescia,²⁹ whose promotion in the church was confined to the lowest rank, and who wore the monastic habit rather as a garb of poverty than as an uniform of obedience. His adversaries could not deny the wit and eloquence which they severely felt; they confess with reluctance the specious purity of his morals; and his errors were recommended to the public by a mixture of important and beneficial truths. In his theological studies, he had been the disciple of the famous and unfortunate Abelard,³⁰ who was likewise involved in the suspicion of heresy; but the lover of Eloisa was of a soft and flexible nature; and his ecclesiastic judges were edified and disarmed by the humility of his repentance. From this master Arnold most probably imbibed some metaphysical definitions of the Trinity, repugnant to the taste of the times; his ideas of baptism and the eucharist are loosely censured; but a *political* heresy was the source of his fame and misfortunes. He presumed to quote the declaration of Christ that his kingdom is not of this world: he boldly maintained that the sword and the sceptre were entrusted to the civil magistrate; that temporal honours and possessions were lawfully vested in secular persons; that the abbots, the bishops, and the pope himself must renounce either their state or their salvation; and that, after the loss of their revenues, the voluntary tithes and oblations of the faithful would suffice, not indeed for luxury and avarice, but for a frugal life in the exercise of spiritual labours. During a short time the preacher was revered as a patriot; and the discontent, or revolt, of Brescia against her bishop was the first-fruits of his dangerous lessons. But the favour of the people is less permanent than the resentment of

²⁹ The original pictures of Arnold of Brescia are drawn by Otho bishop of Frisingen (Chron. l. vii. c. 31, de Gestis Frederici I. l. i. c. 27, l. ii. c. 21), and in l. iii. of the *Ligurinus* [composed in A. D. 1186-7], a poem of Gunther, who flourished A. D. 1200, in the monastery of Paris [not Paris, but Paris, in Elsass], near Basil (Fabric. Bibliot. Latin. med. et infimæ Ætatis, tom. iii. p. 174, 175). The long passage that relates to Arnold, is produced by Guilliman (de Rebus Helveticis, l. iii. c. 5, p. 108). [Gibbon does not seem to know of the attack made on the genuineness of the poem "Ligurinus" by Senckenberg in his *Parerga Gottingensia*, i. (1737). Up to the year 1871, the orthodox view of critics was that the work was a forgery. But the authorship of Gunther was proved by Paanenberg in the *Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte*, xi. p. 163 seq. (1871). Cp. his *Programm "Der Verfasser des Ligurinus,"* 1883. There is a German translation of the poem by T. Vulpinus, 1889. On Arnold of Brescia, see Giesebrecht's monograph, *Arnold von Brescia*.]

³⁰ The wicked wit of Bayle was amused in composing, with much levity and learning, the articles of ABELARD, FOULQUERS, HELOISE, in his *Dictionnaire Critique*. The dispute of Abelard and St. Bernard, of scholastic and positive divinity, is well understood by Mosheim (*Institut. Hist. Ecclæ* p. 412-415).

the priest ; and, after the heresy of Arnold had been condemned by Innocent the Second ³¹ in the general council of the Lateran, (A.D. 1130) the magistrates themselves were urged by prejudice and fear to execute the sentence of the church. Italy could no longer afford a refuge ; and the disciple of Abelard escaped beyond the Alps, till he found a safe and hospitable shelter in Zurich, now the first of the Swiss cantons. From a Roman station, ³² a royal villa, a chapter of noble virgins, Zurich had gradually increased to a free and flourishing city, where the appeals of the Milanese were sometimes tried by the Imperial commissaries. ³³ In an age less ripe for reformation, the præcursor of Zuinglius was heard with applause ; a brave and simple people imbibed, and long retained, the colour of his opinions ; and his art, or merit, seduced the bishop of Constance, and even the pope's legate, who forgot, for his sake, the interest of their master and their order. Their tardy zeal was quickened by the fierce exhortations of St. Bernard ; ³⁴ and the enemy of the church was driven by persecution to the desperate measure of erecting his standard in Rome itself, in the face of the successor of St. Peter.

Yet the courage of Arnold was not devoid of discretion : he was protected, and had perhaps been invited, by the nobles and people ; and in the service of freedom his eloquence thundered over the seven hills. Blending in the same discourse the texts

He exhorts the Romans restore the republic, A.D. 1164-1184

31

— Damnatus ab illo

Præsule, qui numeros vetitum contingere nostros
Nomen ab *innocent* ducit laudabile vitæ.

We may applaud the dexterity and correctness of Ligurinus, who turns the unpoetical name of Innocent II. into a compliment. [For the acts of the Lateran Council see Mansi, Concil., xxi. p. 523 299.]

³² A Roman inscription of *Statio Turicensis* has been found at Zurich (d'Anville, *Notice de l'ancienne Gaule*, p. 642-644) ; but it is without sufficient warrant that the city and canton have usurped and even monopolized the names of *Tigurum* and *Pagus Tigrinus*. [See Otto of Freisingen, *Gesta Frederici*, ii. 29.]

³³ Guilliman (de *Rebus Helveticis*, l. iii. c. 5, p. 106) recapitulates the donation (A.D. 833) of the emperor Lewis the Pious to his daughter the abbess Hildegardis. *Curtim nostram Turegum in ducatu Alamanniae in pago Durgaugensi*, with villages, woods, meadows, waters, slaves, churches, &c., a noble gift. Charles the Bold gave the *jus monetæ*, the city was walled under Otho I., and the line of the bishop of Frisingen.

Nobile Turegum multarum copia rerum, is repeated with pleasure by the antiquaries of Zurich.

³⁴ Bernard, *epistol.* cxcv. cxcvi. tom. i. p. 187-190. Amidst his invectives, he drops a precious acknowledgment, *qui utinam quam sanæ esset doctrinæ quam desideramus esse vitæ*. He owns that Arnold would be a valuable acquisition for the church. [Bernard himself—though he opposed Arnold as a heretic—strongly condemned the temporal dominion of the Pope, in his *De Consideratione*. He shews, for instance : *sermo militans Deo implicet se negotiis secularibus*. Cp. *Consolationes, et c.*, iv. p. 483-4.]

of Livy and St. Paul, uniting the motives of gospel and of civic enthusiasm, he admonished the Romans how strangely their patience and the vices of the clergy had degenerated from the primitive times of the church and the city. He exhorted them to assert the inalienable rights of men and Christians; to revere the laws and magistrates of the republic; to respect the authority of the emperor; but to confine their shepherd to the spiritual government of his flock.³⁵ Nor could his spiritual government escape the censure and control of the reformer; and the inferior clergy were taught by his lessons to resist the cardinals, who had usurped a despotic command over the twenty-eight regions or parishes of Rome.³⁶ The revolution was not accomplished without rapine and violence, the effusion of blood, and the demolition of houses; the victorious faction was enriched with the spoils of the clergy and the adverse nobles. Arnold of Brescia enjoyed or deplored the effects of his mission; his reign continued above ten years, while two popes, Innocent the Second and Anastasius the Fourth, either trembled in the Vatican or wandered as exiles in the adjacent cities. They were succeeded by a more vigorous and fortunate pontiff, Adrian the Fourth,³⁷ the only Englishman who has ascended the throne of St. Peter; and whose merit emerged from the mean condition of a monk, and almost a beggar, in the monastery of St. Albans. On the first provocation, of a cardinal killed or wounded in the streets, he cast an interdict on the guilty people; and, from Christmas to Easter, Rome was deprived of the real or imaginary comforts of religious worship. The Romans had despised their temporal prince: they submitted with grief and terror to the censures of their spiritual father; their guilt was expiated by penance, and the banishment of the seditious preacher was the price of their absolution. But the revenge of Adrian was yet unsatisfied, and the approaching coronation of Frederic Barbarossa was fatal to

³⁵ He advised the Romans,

Consiliis armisque sua moderamina summa
Arbitrio tractare suo: nil juris in hac re
Pontifici summo, modicum concedere regi
Suadebat populo. Sic lapsa stultus utraque
Majestate, reum geminae se fecerat aulae.

Nor is the poetry of Gunther different from the prose of Otho.

³⁶ See Baronius (A.D. 1148, No. 38, 39) from the Vatican Mss. He loudly condemns Arnold (A.D. 1141, No. 3) as the father of the political heretics whose influence then hurt him in France.

³⁷ The English reader may consult the Biographia Britannica, ADRIAN IV., but our own writers have added nothing to the fame or merits of their countryman.

[Innocent II.
A.D. 1130-43]

[Anastasius
IV. A.D. 1153-
6]

[Nicholas
Breakspeare,
A.D. 1154-7]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

magistrates revived the name and office of the tribunes of the commons.⁴⁰ But this venerable structure disappears in the light of criticism. In the darkness of the middle ages, the appellations of senators, of consuls, of the sons of consuls, may sometimes be discovered.⁴¹ They were bestowed by the emperors, or assumed by the most powerful citizens, to denote their rank, their honours,⁴² and perhaps the claim of a pure and patrician descent; but they float on the surface, without a basis or a substance, the titles of men, not the orders of government,⁴³ and it is only from the year of Christ one thousand one hundred

⁴⁰ Ducange (Gloss. Latinitatis mediæ et infimæ Ætatis, DE CARCINONA, loc. ii. p. 726) gives me a quotation from Blondus (decad. ii. l. ii.): Duo consules in nobilitate quotannis fiebant, qui ad vetustum consulum exemplar summa forma præessent. And in Sigonius (de Regno Italiæ, l. vi. Opp. tom. ii. p. 400) I find of the consuls and tribunes of the xth century. Both Blondus, and even Sigonius, too freely copied the classic method of supplying from reason or fancy the deficiency of records.

⁴¹ In the panegyric of Berengarius (Muratori, Script. Rer. Ital. tom. ii. p. i. p. 400) a Roman is mentioned as consulis natus in the beginning of the xth century. Muratori (dissert. v.) discovers, in the years 952 and 956, Gratianus in Dei nomine consul et dux, Georgius consul et dux; and in 1015, Romanus, brother of Gregory VIII., proudly, but vaguely, styles himself consul et dux et omnium Romanorum senator. [No such body as a Senate existed at Rome from the 8th to the 12th century; and the word *Senatus* frequently occurring not only in chronicles but even in Acts of Councils signifies merely the Roman nobility. For example Boso describes a meeting of the adherents of the Imperial party in A.D. 1012 as an "assembly of the Senate". Thus *senator* meant a noble. But it was sometimes assumed as a title in a more pregnant sense, implying municipal authority, as when Alberic styled himself *omnium Romanorum Senator*; and his father-in-law Theophylactus had already borne the title Consul or Senator of the Romans, and the son of Theophylactus was called Son of the Consul, and his wife Theodora the Senatrix. Compare Gregorovius *op. cit.* iii. p. 293-5. Though there is no reason to suppose that the Romans elected consuls annually in this age (10th century), it seems that "a Consul of the Romans was elected as Princeps of the nobility from its midst; confirmed by the Pope; and placed as a Patricius at the head of the jurisdiction and administration of the city". Gregorovius, *ib.* p. 253. The Counts of Tusculum used to style themselves Consuls and Senators of the Romans. Gregorovius, iv. p. 138.]

⁴² As late as the xth century, the Greek emperors conferred on the dukes of Venice, Naples, Amalfi, &c. the title of *βραβευς*, or consuls (see Chron. Sagorini, *passim*); and the successors of Charlemagne would not abdicate any of their prerogatives. But, in general, the names of *consul* and *senator*, which may be found among the French and Germans, signify no more than count or lord (Sigonius, Ducange, Glossar.). The monkish writers are often ambitious of fine classic words. [The title consul was borne in the 12th century, denoting the judiciary and ruling magistracy. Cp. Gregorovius, *op. cit.* iv. 459.]

⁴³ The most constitutional form is a diploma of Otho III. (A.D. 998), *Consulatus senatus populique Romani*; but the act is probably spurious. At the coronation of Henry I. A.D. 1014, the historian Dithmar (apud Muratori, Dissert. xxvii.) describes him, a senatoribus duodecim vallatum, quorum sex rasi barbâ alii pectus mystice incedebant cum baculis. The senate is mentioned in the panegyric of Berengarius (p. 406).

and forty-four, that the establishment of the senate is dated as a glorious sera, in the acts of the city.⁴⁴ A new constitution was hastily framed by private ambition or popular enthusiasm; nor could Rome, in the twelfth century, produce an antiquary to explain, or a legislator to restore, the harmony and proportions of the ancient model. The assembly of a free, of an armed people will ever speak in loud and weighty acclamations. But the regular distribution of the thirty-five tribes, the nice balance of the wealth and numbers of the centuries, the debates of the adverse orators, and the slow operation of votes and ballots could not easily be adapted by a blind multitude, ignorant of the arts, and insensible of the benefits, of legal government. It was proposed by Arnold to revive and discriminate the equestrian order; but what could be the motive or measure of such distinction?⁴⁵ The pecuniary qualification of the knights must have been reduced to the poverty of the times: those times no longer required their civil functions of judges and farmers of the revenue; and their primitive duty, their military service on horseback, was more nobly supplied by feudal tenures and the spirit of chivalry. The jurisprudence of the republic was useless and unknown; the nations and families of Italy, who lived under the Roman and barbaric laws, were insensibly mingled in a common mass; and some faint tradition, some imperfect fragments, preserved the memory of the Code and Pandects of Justinian. With their liberty, the Romans might doubtless have restored the appellation and office of consuls, had they not disdained a title so promiscuously adopted in the Italian cities that it has finally settled on the humble station of the agents of commerce in a foreign land. But the rights of the tribunes, the formidable word that arrested the public counsels, suppose, or must pro-

⁴⁴[Just before this revolution the Romans had been involved in a war for the possession of Tivoli. The place had surrendered to the Pope, and they had demanded it from him. The revolution followed. "In 1143," says Gregorovius, "Rome made an attempt to form such an association of the different classes as had been formed in Milan, Pisa, Genoa, and other cities" (iv. p. 449). The lesser nobility joined the burghers, seized the Capitoline, declared themselves the Senate. Thus a free burgher class was established, and the despotism of the nobility who were the supporters of the Pope was overthrown: this is the significance of the revolution of 1143. The first civic constitution (1144) was framed under the influence of Jordan Pierleone.—Pope Lucius II. turned to Conrad III., but got no help. Then the Senate invited Conrad to come and rule in Rome (1149 or 1150). See Otto of Freisingen, i. 28.]

⁴⁵In ancient Rome, the equestrian order was not ranked with the senate and people as a third branch of the republic till the consulship of Cicero, who assumes the merit of the establishment (Plin. Hist. Natur. xxxiii. 3; Beaufort, République Romaine, tom. i. p. 144-155).

dures, a legitimate democracy. The old patricians were the lords, the modern barons the tyrants, of the state; nor would the enemies of peace and order, who insulted the view of Liberty, have long respected the unarmed sanctity of a plebeian magistracy.

in Roman

In the revolution of the twelfth century, which gave a new existence and era to Rome, we may observe the real and important events that marked or confirmed her political independence. 1. The Capitoline hill, one of her seven eminences, is about four hundred yards in length and two hundred in breadth. A flight of an hundred steps led to the summit of the Tarpeian rock; and far steeper was the ascent before the declivities had been smoothed and the precipices filled by the ruins of fallen edifices. From the earliest ages, the Capitol had been used as a temple in peace, a fortress in war: after the loss of the city, it maintained a siege against the victorious Goths; and the sanctuary of empire was occupied, assaulted, and burnt, in the civil wars of Vitellius and Vespasian.⁴⁶ The temples of Jupiter and his kindred deities had crumbled into dust; their place was supplied by monasteries and houses; and the solid walls, the long and shelving porticoes, were decayed or ruined by the lapse of time. It was the first act of the Romans, an act of freedom, to restore the strength, though not the beauty, of the Capitol; to fortify the seat of their arms and counsels; and, as often as

⁴⁶ The republican plan of Arnold of Brescia is thus stated by Guenther:—

Quin etiam titulos urbis renovare vetustos;
 Nomine plebeio secernere nomen equestre,
 Jura tribunorum, sanctum reparare senatum,
 Et senio fessas mutasque reponere leges.
 Lapsa ruinosis, et adhuc pendentia muris
 Reddere primævo Capitolia prisca mitori.

But of these reformatations, some were no more than ideas, others no more than words.

⁴⁷ After many disputes among the antiquaries of Rome, it seems determined that the summit of the Capitoline hill next the river is strictly the Mons Tarpeius, the Arx; and that, on the other summit, the church and convent of Araceli, the bare-foot friars of St. Francis occupy the temple of Jupiter (Nardini, *Roma Antica*, l. v. c. 11-16). [This conclusion is incorrect. Both the Tarpeian Rock and the Temple of Jupiter were on the western height; the Arx was on the eastern, which is now crowned by the Church of St. Maria in Araceli. For the determination of the site of the temple, a passage in the *Gregoria* (a collection of ceremonial formularies which was perhaps drawn up for Otto III., in imitation of the Byzantine ceremonials) was of great importance: "On the summit of the fortress over the *Porticus Crinorum* was the Temple of Jupiter and Moneta". This portico belonged to the Forum olitorium; as was shown by excavations in the Caffarelli gardens.

Pope Anaclete II. ratified to the Abbot of St. Maria the possession of the Capitoline hill.]

⁴⁸ Tacit. Hist. iii. 69, 70.

⁴⁹ [The old Tabularium, in the saddle between the two summits, between the Senate-house. Cp. Gregorovius, *op. cit.* iv. 477.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

A.D. 1193-1213

Number and
choice of the
senate

noble families of Rome; the choice of the people was ratified by the pope; but a triple oath of fidelity must have often embarrassed the præfect in the conflict of adverse duties.⁵³ A servant, in whom they possessed but a third share, was disdained by the independent Romans; in his place they elected a patrician; but this title, which Charlemagne had not disdained, was too lofty for a citizen or a subject; and, after the first fervour of rebellion, they consented without reluctance to the restoration of the præfect. About fifty years after this event, Innocent the Third, the most ambitious, or at least the most fortunate, of the pontiffs, delivered the Romans and himself from this badge of foreign dominion; he invested the præfect with a banner instead of a sword, and absolved him from all dependence of oaths or service to the German emperors.⁵⁴ In his place an ecclesiastic, a present or future cardinal, was named by the pope to the civil government of Rome; but his jurisdiction has been reduced to a narrow compass; and in the days of freedom the right or exercise was derived from the senate and people. IV. After the revival of the senate,⁵⁵ the conscript fathers (if I may use the expression) were invested with the legislative and executive power; but their views seldom reached beyond the present day; and that day was most frequently disturbed by violence and tumult. In its utmost plenitude, the order or assembly consisted of fifty-six senators,⁵⁶ the most eminent of whom were distinguished by the title of counsellors; they were nominated, perhaps annually, by the people; and a previous choice of their electors, ten persons in each region or parish, might afford a basis for a free and permanent constitution. The popes, who in this tempest submitted rather to bend than to break, confirmed by treaty the establishment and privileges of the senate, and expected from time, peace, and religion, the restoration of

⁵³ The words of a contemporary writer (Pandulph. Pisan. in Vit. Paschal. II. p. 357, 358) describe the election and oath of the præfect in 1118, *inconsultis patribus . . . loca præfectoria . . . laudes præfectoriae . . . comitorum applausum . . . juraturum populo in ambonem sublevant . . . confirmari eum in urbe præfectum petunt.*

⁵⁴ *Urbis præfectum ad ligiam fidelitatem recepit, et per mantum quod illi donavit de præfecturâ eum publice investivit, qui usque ad id tempus juramento fidelitatis imperatori fuit obligatus, et ab eo præfecturæ tenuit honorem* (Gesta Innocent. III. in Muratori, tom. iii. p. i. p. 487).

⁵⁵ See Otho Frising. Chron. vii. 31, de Gest. Frederic. l. i. c. 27.

⁵⁶ Our countryman, Roger Hoveden, speaks of the single senators, of the *Capussi* family, &c. quorum temporibus melius regebatur Roma quam nunc (A.D. 1194) est temporibus lvi. senatorum (Ducange, Gloss. tom. vi. p. 192. SENATORS).

their government. The motives of public and private interest might sometimes draw from the Romans an occasional and temporary sacrifice of their claims; and they renewed their oath of allegiance to the successor of St. Peter and Constantine, the lawful head of the church and the republic.⁵⁷

The union and vigour of a public council was dissolved in a lawless city; and the Romans soon adopted a more strong and simple mode of administration. They condensed the name and authority of the senate in a single magistrate or two colleagues; and, as they were changed at the end of a year or of six months, the greatness of the trust was compensated by the shortness of the term. But in this transient reign, the senators of Rome indulged their avarice and ambition; their justice was perverted by the interest of their family and faction; and, as they punished only their enemies, they were obeyed only by their adherents. Anarchy, no longer tempered by the pastoral care of their bishop, admonished the Romans that they were incapable of governing themselves; and they sought abroad those blessings which they were hopeless of finding at home. In the same age, and from the same motives, most of the Italian republics were prompted to embrace a measure, which, however strange it may seem, was adapted to their situation, and productive of the most salutary effects.⁵⁸ They chose, in some foreign but friendly city, an impartial magistrate, of noble birth and unblemished character, a soldier and a statesman, recommended by the voice of fame and

The office of senator

⁵⁷ Muratori (dissert. xlii. tom. iii. p. 785-788) has published an original treaty: *Concordia inter D. nostrum papam Clementem III. et senatores populi Romani super regalibus et aliis dignitatibus urbis, &c. 44^o senatus*. The senate speaks, and speaks with authority: *Reddimus ad præsens . . . habebimus . . . dabitur præbitoria . . . jurabimus pacem et fidelitatem, &c.* A chartula *De tenimentis Tusculani*, dated in the 47th year of the same æra, and confirmed decreto amplissimi ordinis senatus, acclamatione P. R. publice Capitolio consistentis. It is there we find the difference of *senatores consilarii* and simple senators (Muratori, dissert. xlii. tom. iii. p. 787-789). [The transactions here touched on belong to the revolution of A.D. 1188, which deserved a more particular notice. Pope Clement III. 1187-92) was forced to make a formal treaty, which implied a new constitution. The Pope was recognised as overlord; he had the right of investing the Senate; the Senators took an oath of loyalty to him; he had the right of coining, and enjoyed the old revenues of the see; he was bound to supply £100 a year for the walls of the city and to pay the militia; he abandoned Tusculum to the Romans to destroy, though it was under his protection. The Pope, by this agreement, gave up all legislative authority and rights of government; his power depended on his lands and estates. It is to be noted that this constitution completely ignored the Imperial authority. See Gregorovius, iv. p. 620.]

⁵⁸ Muratori (dissert. xlv. tom. iv. p. 64-92) has fully explained this mode of government; and the *Oculus Pastoralis*, which he has given at the end, is a treatise or sermon on the duties of these foreign magistrates.

his country, to whom they delegated for a time the supreme administration of peace and war. The compact between the governor and the governed was sealed with oaths and subscriptions; and the duration of his power, the measure of his stipend, the nature of their mutual obligations, were defined with scrupulous precision. They swore to obey him as their lawful superior; he pledged his faith to unite the indifference of a stranger with the zeal of a patriot. At his choice, four or six knights and civilians, his assessors in arms and justice, attended the *Podestà*,⁹ who maintained at his own expense a decent retinue of servants and horses; his wife, his son, his brother, who might bias the affections of the judge, were left behind; during the exercise of his office, he was not permitted to purchase land, to contract an alliance, or even to accept an invitation in the house of a citizen; nor could he honourably depart till he had satisfied the complaints that might be urged against his government.

It was thus, about the middle of the thirteenth century, that the Romans called from Bologna the senator Brancaione,¹⁰ whose fame and merit have been rescued from oblivion by the pen of an English historian. A just anxiety for his reputation, a clear foresight of the difficulties of the task, had engaged him to refuse the honour of their choice; the statutes of Rome were suspended, and his office prolonged to the term of three years. By the guilty and licentious he was accused as cruel; by the clergy he was suspected as partial; but the friends of peace and order applauded the firm and upright magistrate by whom those blessings were restored. No criminals were so powerful as to brave, so obscure as to elude, the justice of the senator. By his sentence, two nobles of the Annibaldi family were executed on a gibbet; and he inexorably demolished, in the city and neigh-

⁹ In the Latin writers, at least of the silver age, the title of *Potestas* was transferred from the office to the magistrate:—

Hujus qui trahitur prætextam sumere mavis;
An Fidenarum Gabiorumque esse *Potestas*.

(Juvenal. Satir. x. 99).

¹⁰ See the life and death of Brancaione, in the *Historia Major* of Matthew Paris, p. 741, 757, 792, 797, 799, 810, 823, 833, 836, 840. The multitude of pilgrims and suitors connected Rome and St. Albans; and the resentment of the English clergy prompted them to rejoice whenever the popes were humbled and oppressed. [There had been another revolution in A.D. 1191. Since 1143 the majority of the Senate had been plebeian; the nobles gained admission by degrees, and after the time of Clement III. and Celestine III. it numbered more patricians of ancient lineage than burghers or knights. Hence discontent and revolution. In 1191 the populace overthrew the Constitution and made Benedict Carus homo the *summus senator*. Under him the first municipal statute seems to have been issued. Epp. Innocentii iii. lib. ii. n. 239. See Gregorovius, *op. cit.* iv. 63a.]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

passage of his rival, the unfortunate Conradin; and a powerful avenger, who reigned in the Capitol, alarmed the fears and jealousy of the popes. The absolute term of his life was superseded by a renewal every third year; and the enmity of Nicholas the Third obliged the Sicilian king to abdicate the government of Rome. In his bull, a perpetual law, the imperious pontiff asserts the truth, validity, and use of the donation of Constantine, not less essential to the peace of the city than to the independence of the church; establishes the annual election of the senator; and formally disqualifies all emperors, kings, princes, and persons of an eminent and conspicuous rank.⁶³ This prohibitory clause was repealed in his own behalf by Martin the Fourth, who humbly solicited the suffrage of the Romans. In the presence, and by the authority, of the people, two electors conferred, not on the pope, but on the noble and faithful Martin, the dignity of senator and the supreme administration of the republic,⁶⁴ to hold during his natural life, and to exercise at pleasure by himself or his deputies. About fifty years afterwards, the same title was granted to the emperor Lewis of Bavaria; and the liberty of Rome was acknowledged by her two sovereigns, who accepted a municipal office in the government of their own metropolis.

In the first moments of rebellion, when Arnold of Brescia had inflamed their minds against the church, the Romans artfully laboured to conciliate the favour of the empire, and to recommend their merit and services in the cause of Cæsar. The style of their ambassadors to Conrad the Third and Frederic the First is a mixture of flattery and pride, the tradition and ignorance of their own history.⁶⁵ After some complaint of his silence and

⁶³ The high-sounding bull of Nicholas III. which sounds his temporal sovereignty on the donation of Constantine, is still extant; and, as it has been inserted by Boniface VIII. in the *Serie* of the Decretals, it must be received by the Catholics, or at least by the Papists, as a sacred and perpetual law.

⁶⁴ I am indebted to Fleury (*Hist. Ecclési.* tom. xviii. p. 306) for an extract of this Roman act which he has taken from the *Ecclesiastical Annals* of Odericus Raynaldus, A.D. 1281, No. 14, 15.

⁶⁵ These letters and speeches are preserved by Otho [Otto], Bishop of Frisingen (*Fabric. Bibliot. Lat. med. et infim.* tom. v. p. 186, 187), perhaps the noblest of historians; he was son of Leopold, marquis of Austria; his mother, Agnes, was daughter of the emperor Henry IV.; and he was half-brother and uncle to Conrad III. and Frederic I. He has left, in seven [eight] books, a *Chronicle of the Times*; in two, the *Gesta Frederici I.*, the last of which is inserted in the sixth volume of Muratori's historians. [The chronicle is edited by Wilmans in *Mon. Germ. Hist.* xx. p. 116 199., and separately in the *Script. rer. Germ.* 1867. (German translation by Kobl, 1887). The *Gesta* is also edited by Wilmans in the same volume of the *Monumenta*; and by Waitz (1884) in the series of the *Script. rer. Germ.* (German translation by Kobl, 1883). The name of the *Chronicle* was originally *De duabus*

Pope Martin
IV. A.D. 1281

The emperor
Lewis of
Bavaria, A.D.
1288

Addresses of
Rome to the
emperors

Conrad III.
A.D. 1156

neglect, they exhort the former of these princes to pass the Alps and assume from their hands the Imperial crown. "We beseech your Majesty not to disdain the humility of your sons and vassals, not to listen to the accusations of our common enemies; who calumniate the senate as hostile to your throne, who sow the seeds of discord, that they may reap the harvest of destruction. The pope and the Sicilians are united in an impious league to oppose *our* liberty and *your* coronation. With the blessing of God, our zeal and courage has hitherto defeated their attempts. Of their powerful and factious adherents, more especially the Frangipani, we have taken by assault the houses and turrets; some of these are occupied by our troops, and some are levelled with the ground. The Milvian bridge, which they had broken, is restored and fortified for your safe passage; and your army may enter the city without being annoyed from the castle of St. Angelo. All that we have done, and all that we design, is for your honour and service, in the loyal hope that you will speedily appear in person to vindicate those rights which have been invaded by the clergy, to revive the dignity of the empire, and to surpass the fame and glory of your predecessors. May you fix your residence in Rome, the capital of the world; give laws to Italy and the Teutonic kingdom; and imitate the example of Constantine and Justinian,⁶⁶ who, by the vigour of the senate and people, obtained the sceptre of the earth."⁶⁷ But these splendid and fallacious wishes were not cherished by Conrad the Franconian, whose eyes were fixed on the Holy Land, and who died without visiting Rome soon after his return from the Holy Land.

His nephew and successor, Frederic Barbarossa, was more ambitious of the Imperial crown; nor had any of the successors of Otho acquired such absolute sway over the kingdom of Italy. Surrounded by his ecclesiastical and secular princes, he gave audience in his camp at Sutri⁶⁸ to the ambassadors of Rome,

Frederic I.
A. D. 1166

(At Sutri,
June 7th 1166.)

civitatibus. It is a History of the World, and its object is to prove that, while the secular civitas or kingdom is ephemeral and transitory, the Church, or the kingdom of God, is eternal. Cp. the brief characteristic of Otto in Giesebrecht's *Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit*, p. 394 sqq.]

⁶⁶ We desire (said the ignorant Romans) to restore the empire in eum statum, quo fuit tempore Constantini et Justiniani, qui totum orbem vigore senatus et populi Romani suis tenuere manibus.

⁶⁷ Otho Frising. de Gestis Frederici I. l. i. c. 28, p. 662-664.

⁶⁸ [For the meeting with Pope Hadrian at Sutri, and the following events, see Giesebrecht's *Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit*, v. p. 60 sqq.]

who thus addressed him in a free and florid oration: “Incline your ear to the queen of cities; approach with a peaceful and friendly mind the precincts of Rome, which has cast away the yoke of the clergy and is impatient to crown her legitimate emperor. Under your auspicious influence, may the primitive times be restored. Assert the prerogatives of the eternal city, and reduce under her monarchy the insolence of the world. You are not ignorant that, in former ages, by the wisdom of the senate, by the valour and discipline of the equestrian order, she extended her victorious arms to the East and West, beyond the Alps, and over the islands of the ocean. By our sins, in the absence of our princes, the noble institution of the senate has sunk in oblivion; and, with our prudence, our strength has likewise decreased. We have revived the senate and the equestrian order; the counsels of the one, the arms of the other, will be devoted to your person and the service of the empire. Do you not hear the language of the Roman matron? You were a guest, I have adopted you as a citizen; a Transalpine stranger, I have elected you for my sovereign;⁶⁹ and given you myself, and all that is mine. Your first and most sacred duty is, to swear and subscribe that you will shed your blood for the republic; that you will maintain in peace and justice the laws of the city and the charters of your predecessors; and that you will reward with five thousand pounds of silver the faithful senators who shall proclaim your titles in the Capitol. With the name, assume the character, of Augustus.” The flowers of Latin rhetoric were not yet exhausted; but Frederic, impatient of their vanity, interrupted the orators in the high tone of royalty and conquest. “Famous, indeed, have been the fortitude and wisdom of the ancient Romans; but your speech is not seasoned with wisdom, and I could wish that fortitude were conspicuous in your actions. Like all sublunary things, Rome has felt the vicissitudes of time and fortune. Your noblest families were translated to the East, to the royal city of Constantine; and the remains of your strength and freedom have long since been exhausted by the Greeks and Franks. Are you desirous of beholding the ancient glory of Rome, the gravity of the senate, the spirit of the knights, the discipline of the camp, the valour of the legions? you will find them in the German republic. It is not empire, naked and alone, the ornaments and virtues of empire have likewise mi-

⁶⁹ Hospes eras, civem feci. Advena fuisti ex Transalpinis partibus; principem constitui.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

attempt. Their laborious reigns were exercised by the popes, the crusades, and the independence of Lombardy and Germany; they courted the alliance of the Romans; and Frederick the Second offered in the Capitol the great standard, the *Carroccio* of Milan.⁷⁴ After the extinction of the house of Swabia, they were banished beyond the Alps; and their last coronations betrayed the impotence and poverty of the Teutonic Cæsars.⁷⁵

Under the reign of Hadrian, when the empire extended from the Euphrates to the ocean, from Mount Atlas to the Grampian Hills, a fanciful historian⁷⁶ amused the Romans with the picture of their infant wars. "There was a time," says Florus, "when Tibur and Præneste, our summer-retreats, were the objects of hostile vows in the Capitol, when we dreaded the shades of the Arician groves, when we could triumph without a blush over the nameless villages of the Sabines and Latins, and even Corioli could afford a title not unworthy of a victorious general." The pride of his contemporaries was gratified by the contrast of the past and the present: they would have been humbled by the prospect of futurity; by the prediction that after a thousand years Rome, despoiled of empire and contracted to her primæval limits, would renew the same hostilities on the same ground which was then decorated with her villas and gardens. The adjacent territory on either side of the Tiber was always claimed, and sometimes possessed, as the patrimony of St. Peter; but the barons assumed a lawless independence, and the cities too faith-

⁷⁴ From the Chronicles of Ricobaldo and Francis Pipin, Muratori (dissert. xxvi. tom. ii. p. 492) has transcribed this curious fact, with the doggrel verses that accompanied the gift.

Ave decus orbis ave! victus tibi destinor, ave!
 Currus ab Augusto Frederico Cæsare justo.
 Væ Mediolanum! jam sentis spernere vanum
 Imperii vires, proprias tibi tollere vires.
 Ergo triumphorum urbs potes memor esse priorum
 Quos tibi mittebant reges qui bella gerebant.

Ne si dee tacere (I now use the Italian Dissertations, tom. i. p. 444) che nell' anno 1727. una copia desso Carroccio in marmo dianzi ignoto si scopri, nel Campidoglio, presso alle carcere di quel luogo, dove Sisto V. l'avea fatto rinchiudere. Stava esso posto sopra quatro colonne di marmo fina colla sequente iscrizione, &c. to the same purpose as the old inscription.

⁷⁵ The decline of the Imperial arms and authority in Italy is related with impartial learning in the Annals of Muratori (tom. x.-xii.); and the reader may compare his narrative with the *Histoire des Allemands* (tom. iii. iv.) by Schmidt, who has deserved the esteem of his countrymen.

⁷⁶ Tibur nunc suburbanum et æstivæ Præneste deliciae nuncupatis in Capitolio votis petebantur. The whole passage of Florus (l. i. c. 11) may be read with pleasure, and has deserved the praise of a man of genius (*Oeuvres de Montesquieu*, tom. iii. p. 634, 635. quarto edition).

fully copied the revolt and discord of the metropolis. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries the Romans incessantly laboured to reduce or destroy the contumacious vassals of the church and senate; and, if their headstrong and selfish ambition was moderated by the pope, he often encouraged their zeal by the alliance of his spiritual arms. Their warfare was that of the first consuls and dictators, who were taken from the plough. They assembled in arms at the foot of the Capitol; sallied from the gates, plundered or burnt the harvests of their neighbours, engaged in tumultuary conflict, and returned home after an expedition of fifteen or twenty days. Their sieges were tedious and unskilful: in the use of victory, they indulged the meaner passions of jealousy and revenge; and, instead of adopting the valour, they trampled on the misfortunes, of their adversaries. The captives, in their shirts, with a rope round their necks, solicited their pardon. The fortifications and even the buildings of the rival cities were demolished, and the inhabitants were scattered in the adjacent villages. It was thus that the seats of the cardinal bishops, Porto, Ostia, Albanum, Tusculum, Præneste, and Tibur, or Tivoli, were successively overthrown by the ferocious hostility of the Romans.⁷⁷ Of these,⁷⁸ Porto and Ostia, the two keys of the Tiber, are still vacant and desolate: the marshy and unwholesome banks are peopled with herds of buffaloes, and the river is lost to every purpose of navigation and trade. The hills, which afford a shady retirement from the autumnal heats, have again smiled with the blessings of peace; Frascati has arisen near the ruins of Tusculum; Tibur, or Tivoli, has resumed the honours of a city;⁷⁹ and the meaner towns of Albano and Palestrina are decorated with the villas of the cardinals and princes of Rome. In the work of destruction, the ambition of the Romans was often checked and repulsed by the neighbouring cities and their allies; in the first siege of Tibur, they were driven from their

⁷⁷ Ne a feritate Romanorum, sicut fuerant Hostienses, Portuenses, Tusculanenses, Albanenses, Labicenses, et nuper Tiburtini destruerentur (Matthew Paris, p. 297). These events are marked in the Annals and Index (the xviiiith volume) of Muratori.

⁷⁸ For the state or ruin of these suburban cities, the banks of the Tiber, &c. see the lively picture of the P. Labat (Voyage en Espagne et en Italie), who had long resided in the neighbourhood of Rome; and the more accurate description of which P. Eschinard (Roma, 1750, in octavo) has added to the topographical map of Cingolani.

⁷⁹ Muratori (tom. iii. p. 233) mentions a recent decree of the Roman government, which has severely mortified the pride and poverty of Tivoli: in civitate Tiburtina non vivitur civiliter.

camp; and the battles of Tusculum⁸⁰ and Viterbo⁸¹ might be compared, in their relative state, to the memorable fields of Thrasymene and Cannæ. In the first of these petty wars, thirty thousand Romans were overthrown by a thousand German horse, whom Frederic Barbarossa had detached to the relief of Tusculum; and, if we number the slain at three, the prisoners at two, thousand, we shall embrace the most authentic and moderate account. Sixty-eight years afterward, they marched against Viterbo, in the ecclesiastical state, with the whole force of the city; by a rare coalition, the Teutonic eagle was blended, in the adverse banners, with the keys of St. Peter; and the pope's auxiliaries were commanded by a count of Toulouse and a bishop of Winchester.⁸² The Romans were discomfited with shame and slaughter; but the English prelate must have indulged the vanity of a pilgrim, if he multiplied their numbers to one hundred, and their loss in the field to thirty, thousand men. Had the policy of the senate and the discipline of the legions been restored with the Capitol, the divided condition of Italy would have offered the fairest opportunity of a second conquest. But in arms the modern Romans were not *above*, and in arts they were far *below*, the common level of the neighbouring republics. Nor was their warlike spirit of any long continuance; after some irregular sallies, they subsided in the national apathy, in the neglect of military institutions, and in the disgraceful and dangerous use of foreign mercenaries.

Ambition is a weed of quick and early vegetation in the vineyard of Christ. Under the first Christian princes, the chair of St. Peter was disputed by the votes, the venality, the violence, of a popular election; the sanctuaries of Rome were polluted with blood; and, from the third to the twelfth century, the church was distracted by the mischief of frequent schisms. As long as the final appeal was determined by the civil magistrate,

⁸⁰ I depart from my usual method of quoting only by the date the Annals of Muratori, in consideration of the critical balance in which he has weighed nine contemporary writers who mention the battle of Tusculum (tom. x. p. 42-44).

⁸¹ Matthew Paris, p. 345. This bishop of Winchester was Peter de Rupibus, who occupied the see thirty-two years (A.D. 1206-1238), and is described, by the English historian, as a soldier and a statesman (p. 178, 399).

⁸² [Lucas Savelli, who became Senator in 1234, passed an edict claiming Tuscany and the Campagna as the property of the Roman people. Pope Gregory IX. fled from Rome, and Viterbo was his chief support. "What," asks Gregorovius, "would have been the fate of the Papacy, had the city succeeded in becoming a civic power such as Milan or Pisa?" (v. p. 172). Frederic II. saw himself unwillingly forced to assist the Pope.]

Battle of
Tusculum,
A.D. 1197

Battle of
Viterbo, A.D.
1234

The election
of the popes

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

exceeded twenty or twenty-five persons. By this wise regulation all doubt and scandal were removed, and the root of schism was so effectually destroyed that in a period of six hundred years a double choice has only once divided the unity of the sacred college. But, as the concurrence of two thirds of the votes had been made necessary, the election was often delayed by the private interest and passions of the cardinals; and, while they prolonged their independent reign, the Christian world was left destitute of an head. A vacancy of almost three years had preceded the elevation of Gregory the Tenth, who resolved to prevent the future abuse; and his bull, after some opposition, has been consecrated in the code of the canon law.⁸⁵ Nine days are allowed for the obsequies of the deceased pope and the arrival of the absent cardinals. On the tenth, they are imprisoned, each with one domestic, in a common apartment, or *conclave*, without any separation of walls or curtains; a small window is reserved for the introduction of necessaries; but the door is locked on both sides, and guarded by the magistrates of the city, to seclude them from all correspondence with the world. If the election be not consummated in three days, the luxury of their tables is contracted to a single dish at dinner and supper; and after the eighth day they were reduced to a scanty allowance of bread, water, and wine. During the vacancy of the holy see, the cardinals are prohibited from touching the revenues, or assuming, unless in some rare emergency, the government of the church; all agreements and promises among the electors are formally annulled; and their integrity is fortified by their solemn oaths and the prayers of the Catholics. Some articles of inconvenient or superfluous rigour have been gradually relaxed, but the principle of confinement is vigorous and entire: they are still urged by the personal motives of health and freedom to accelerate the moment of their deliverance; and the improvement of ballot, or secret votes, has wrapt the struggles of the conclave⁸⁶

⁸⁵ See the bull of Gregory X. [issued at Lyons, at the Great Council] *approbante sacro concilio*, in the *Sacrae* of the Canon Law (l. l. tit. 6, c. 3), a supplement to the *Decretals*, which Boniface VIII. promulgated at Rome in 1298, and addressed to all the universities of Europe.

⁸⁶ The genius of Cardinal de Rets had a right to paint a conclave (of 1665), in which he was a spectator and an actor (*Mémoires*, tom. iv. p. 15-57); but I am at a loss to appreciate the knowledge or authority of an anonymous Italian, whose history (*Conclavi de' Pontifici Romani*, in 4to, 1667) has been continued since the reign of Alexander VII. The accidental form of the work furnishes a lesson, though not an antidote, to ambition. From a labyrinth of intrigues, we emerge to the adoration of the successful candidate; but the next page opens with his funeral.

in the silky veil of charity and politeness⁸⁷ By these institutions the Romans were excluded from the election of their prince and bishop; and in the fever of wild and precarious liberty they seemed insensible of the loss of this inestimable privilege. The emperor Lewis of Bavaria revived the example of the great Otho. A.D. 1328 After some negotiation with the magistrates, the Roman people was assembled⁸⁸ in the square before St. Peter's; the pope of Avignon, John the Twenty-second, was deposed; the choice of his successor was ratified by their consent and applause. They freely voted for a new law, that their bishop should never be absent more than three months in the year and two days' journey from the city; and that, if he neglected to return on the third summons, the public servant should be degraded and dismissed.⁸⁹ [April 27] But Lewis forgot his own debility and the prejudices of the times: beyond the precincts of a German camp, his useless phantom was rejected; the Romans despised their own workmanship; the anti-pope implored the mercy of his lawful sovereign;⁹⁰ and the exclusive right of the cardinals was more firmly established [Peter of Corbara] by this unseasonable attack.

— Had the election been always held in the Vatican, the rights of the senate and people would not have been violated with Absence of the Popes from Rome

⁸⁷ The expressions of Cardinal de Retz are positive and picturesque: *On y vécut toujours ensemble avec le même respect et la même civilité que l'on observe dans le cabinet des rois, avec la même politesse qu'on avoit dans la cour de Henri III., avec la même familiarité que l'on voit dans les collèges; avec la même modestie qui se remarque dans les noviciats; et avec la même charité, du moins en apparence, qui pourroit être entre des frères parfaitement unis.*

⁸⁸ *Richiesti per bando* (says John Villani) *senatori di Roma, e 52 del popolo, et capitani de' 25, e consoli (consoli 9), et 13 buone huomini, uno per rione.* Our knowledge is too imperfect to pronounce how much of this constitution was temporary, and how much ordinary and permanent. Yet it is faintly illustrated by the ancient statutes of Rome.

⁸⁹ Villani (l. x. c. 68-71, in Muratori, *Script.* tom. xiii. p. 641-645) relates this law, and the whole transaction, with much less abhorrence than the prudent Muratori. Any one conversant with the darker ages must have observed how much the sense (I mean the nonsense) of superstition is fluctuating and inconsistent. [Gregorius observes (vi. 160): "This important revolution was the consequence of the sojourn of the Popes at Avignon, the effect of the quarrel which John XXII. so foolishly invoked with the empire, and of the reforming principles of the monarchy, with which was associated the Franciscan schism. The high-handed doings of John and Lewis, their tedious actions at law, the extensive researches into the imperial and papal authority, formed the close of this mediæval struggle, which now passed into more intellectual regions. The age of the reformation began; the ecclesiastical severance of Germany and Italy was perceptible in the distance and became inevitable as soon as the political severance was accomplished."]

⁹⁰ In the first volume of the Popes of Avignon, see the second original Life of John XXII. p. 142-145, the confession of the anti-pope, p. 145-152; and the laborious notes of Baluze, p. 714, 715.

impunity. But the Romans forgot, and were forgotten, in the absence of the successors of Gregory the Seventh, who did not keep, as a divine precept, their ordinary residence in the city and diocese. The care of that diocese was less important than the government of the universal church; nor could the pope delight in a city in which their authority was always opposed and their person was often endangered. From the persecution of the emperors and the wars of Italy, they escaped beyond the Alps into the hospitable bosom of France; from the tumults of Rome they prudently withdrew to live and die in the more tranquil stations of Anagni, Perugia, Viterbo, and the adjacent cities. When the flock was offended or impoverished by the absence of the shepherd, they were recalled by a stern admonition that St. Peter had fixed his chair, not in an obscure village, but in the capital of the world; by a ferocious menace that the Romans would march in arms to destroy the place and people that should dare to afford them a retreat. They returned with timorous obedience; and were saluted with the account of an heavy debt, of all the losses which their desertion had occasioned, the hire of lodgings, the sale of provisions, and the various expenses of servants and strangers who attended the court.⁹¹ After a short interval of peace, and perhaps of authority, they were again banished by new tumults, and again summoned by the imperious or respectful invitation of the senate. In these occasional retreats, the exiles and fugitives of the Vatican were seldom long or far distant from the metropolis; but in the beginning of the fourteenth century, the apostolic throne was transported, as it might seem, for ever, from the Tiber to the Rhône; and the cause of the transmigration may be deduced from the furious contest between Boniface the Eighth and the king of France.⁹² The spiritual arms of excommunication and

Boniface VIII
(Benedict
Gaetan)
A.D. 1268-1286

⁹¹ Romani autem non valentes nec volentes ultra suam celare cupiditatem gravissimam contra papam movere cœperunt questionem, exigentes ab eo urgentissime omnia quæ subierant per ejus absentiam damna et jacturas, videlicet in hospitibus locandis, in mercimoniis, in usuris, in redditibus, in provisionibus, et in aliis modis innumerabilibus. Quod cum audisset papa, præcordialiter ingemuit et se conperiens *muscipulatum*, &c., Matt. Paris, p. 757. For the ordinary history of the popes, their life and death, their residence and absence, it is enough to refer to the ecclesiastical annalists, Spondanus and Fleury.

⁹² Besides the general historians of the church of Italy and of France, we possess a valuable treatise, composed by a learned friend of Thuanus, which his last and best editors have published in the appendix (*Histoire particulière du grand Différend entre Boniface VIII. et Philippe le Bel*, par Pierre du Puis, tom. vii. p. xi. p. 61-8a. [Tozzi, Storia di Bonifacio VIII. The bulls of Boniface have been edited from the Vatican archives by Degon, Faucon and Thomas, 1884-90.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

clave applauded the elevation of Clement the Fifth.⁶⁴ The cardinals of both parties were soon astonished by a summons to attend him beyond the Alps; from whence, as they soon discovered, they must never hope to return. He was engaged, by promise and affection, to prefer the residence of France; and, after dragging his court through Poitou and Gascony, and devouring, by his expense, the cities and convents on the road, he finally reposed at Avignon,⁶⁵ which flourished above seventy years⁶⁶ the seat of the Roman pontiff and the metropolis of Christendom. By land, by sea, by the Rhône, the position of Avignon was on all sides accessible; the southern provinces of France do not yield to Italy itself; new palaces arose for the accommodation of the pope and cardinals; and the arts of luxury were soon attracted by the treasures of the church. They were already possessed of the adjacent territory, the Venaissin county,⁶⁷ a populous and fertile spot; and the sovereignty of Avignon was afterwards purchased from the youth and distress of Jane, the first queen of Naples, and countess of Provence, for the inadequate price of fourscore thousand florins.⁶⁸ Under the shadow

⁶⁴ See in the Chronicle of Giovanni Villani (l. viii. c. 63, 64, 80, in Muratori, tom. xiii.) the imprisonment of Boniface VIII. and the election of Clement V., the last of which, like most anecdotes, is embarrassed with some difficulties.

⁶⁵ The original lives of the eight popes of Avignon, Clement V., John XXII., Benedict XII., Clement VI., Innocent VI., Urban V., Gregory XI., and Clement VII., are published by Stephen Baluze (*Vite Paparum Avenionensium*; Paris, 1693, 2 vols. in 4to), with copious and elaborate notes, and a second volume of acts and documents. With the true zeal of an editor and a patriot, he devoutly justifies or excuses the characters of his countrymen.

⁶⁶ The exile of Avignon is compared by the Italians with Babylon and the Babylonish captivity. Such furious metaphors, more suitable to the ardour of Petrarch than to the judgment of Muratori, are gravely refuted in Baluze's preface. The Abbé de Sade is distracted between the love of Petrarch and of his country. Yet he modestly pleads that many of the local inconveniences of Avignon are now removed; and many of the views against which the poet declaims had been imported with the Roman court by the strangers of Italy (tom. i. p. 23-25).

⁶⁷ The countat Venaissin was ceded to the popes, in 1273, by Philip III., king of France, after he had inherited the dominions of the count of Toulouse. Forty years before the heresy of Count Raymond had given them a pretence of seizure, and they derived some obscure claim from the 11th century to some lands *citra Rhodanum* (Valesii Notitia Galliarum, p. 459, 630; Longuerue, Description de la France, tom. i. p. 376-381).

⁶⁸ If a possession of four centuries were not itself a title, such objections might annul the bargain; but the purchase-money must be refunded, for indeed it was paid. *Civitatem Avenionem emit . . . per ejusmodi venditionem pecunia redundantes, &c.* (eda Vita Clement. VI. in Baluz, tom. i. p. 272; Muratori, Script. tom. iii. p. ii. p. 565). [*Recherches historiques concernant les droits du Pape sur la ville et l'état d'Avignon, 1768.*] The only temptation for Jane and her second husband was ready money, and without it they could not have returned to the throne of Naples.

of the French monarchy, amidst an obedient people, the popes enjoyed an honourable and tranquil state, to which they long had been strangers; but Italy deplored their absence; and Rome, in solitude and poverty, might repent of the ungovernable freedom which had driven from the Vatican the successor of St. Peter. Her repentance was tardy and fruitless; after the death of the old members, the sacred college was filled with French cardinals,⁹⁹ who beheld Rome and Italy with abhorrence and contempt, and perpetuated a series of national and even provincial popes, attached by the most indissoluble ties to their native country.

The progress of industry had produced and enriched the Italian republics: the æra of their liberty is the most flourishing period of population and agriculture, of manufactures and commerce; and their mechanic labours were gradually refined into the arts of elegance and genius. But the position of Rome was less favourable, the territory less fruitful; the character of the inhabitants was debased by indolence, and elated by pride; and they fondly conceived that the tribute of subjects must for ever nourish the metropolis of the church and empire. This prejudice was encouraged in some degree by the resort of pilgrims to the shrines of the apostles; and the last legacy of the popes, the institution of the HOLY YEAR,¹⁰⁰ was not less beneficial to the people than to the clergy. Since the loss of Palestine, the gift of plenary indulgences, which had been applied to the crusades, remained without an object; and the most valuable treasure of the church was sequestered above eight years from public circulation. A new channel was opened by the diligence of Boniface the Eighth, who reconciled the vices of ambition and avarice; and the pope had sufficient learning to recollect and revive the secular games, which were celebrated in Rome at the conclusion of every century. To sound, without danger, the depth of popular credulity, a sermon was seasonably pronounced, a report was artfully scattered, some aged witnesses

Institution of
the Jubilee, or
holy year,
A. D. 1300

⁹⁹ Clement V. immediately promoted ten cardinals, nine French and one English [Vat. Lat. p. 63, et Baluz. p. 625, &c.]. In 1331, the pope refused two candidates recommended by the king of France, quod xx. Cardinales, de quibus xvii. de regno Francie originem traxisse noscuntur, in memorato collegio existant (Thomassin, Discipline de l'Eglise, tom. i. p. 1281). [In the year A. D. 1378 the college consisted of 23 cardinals, 16 of them were at Rome and included 7 Limousins, 4 French, 1 Spaniard, and 4 Italians. See Gregorovius, vi. 491.]

¹⁰⁰ Our primitive account is from Cardinal James Caietan [= Jacopo Stefaneschi, *Summa de Decretis ad Velum aureum*] (Maxima Bibliot. Patrum, tom. xxv.); and I have endeavoured to determine whether the nephew of Boniface VIII. be a fool or a knave; the whole is a much clearer character.

were produced ; and on the first of January of the year thirteen hundred the church of St. Peter was crowded with the faithful, who demanded the *customary* indulgence of the holy time. The pontiff, who watched and irritated their devout impatience, was soon persuaded, by ancient testimony, of the justice of their claim ; and he proclaimed a plenary absolution to all Catholics who, in the course of that year, and at every similar period, should respectfully visit the apostolic churches of St. Peter and St. Paul. The welcome sound was propagated through Christendom ; and at first from the nearest provinces of Italy, and at length from the remote kingdoms of Hungary and Britain, the highways were thronged with a swarm of pilgrims who sought to expiate their sins in a journey, however costly or laborious, which was exempt from the perils of military service. All exceptions of rank or sex, of age or infirmity, were forgotten in the common transport ; and in the streets and churches many persons were trampled to death by the eagerness of devotion.¹⁰¹ The calculation of their numbers could not be easy nor accurate ; and they have probably been magnified by a dexterous clergy, well apprised of the contagion of example ; yet we are assured by a judicious historian, who assisted at the ceremony, that Rome was never replenished with less than two hundred thousand strangers ; and another spectator has fixed at two millions the total concourse of the year. A trifling oblation from each individual would accumulate a royal treasure ; and two priests stood night and day, with rakes in their hands, to collect, without counting, the heaps of gold and silver that were poured on the altar of St. Paul.¹⁰² It was fortunately a season of peace

¹⁰¹ [“ The way that led from the city across the Bridge of St. Angelo to St. Peter’s was too narrow ; a new street was therefore opened in the walls along the river, not far from the ancient tomb known as the Meta Romuli. [Gregorovius reads *portem* for *portum* in the passage in Stefaneschi which describes this.] The bridge was covered with booths which divided it in two, and in order to prevent accidents it was enacted that those going to St. Peter’s should keep to one side of the bridge, those returning to the other.” This arrangement is referred to by Dante, *Inferno*, xviii. v. 28 sqq. :—

Come i Roman, per l’esercito molto,
L’anno del Giubbileo, su per lo ponte
Hanno a passar la gente modo tolto :
Che dall’ un lato tutti hanno la fronte
Verso ’l castello, e vanno a Santo Pietro ;
Dall’ altra sponda vanno verso ’l Monte.

See Gregorovius, v. p. 560-1.]

¹⁰² See John Villani (l. viii. c. 36) in the xiith, and the Chronicon Astense in the xith, volume (p. 291, 292) of Muratori’s Collection. *Papa innumerabilem pecuniam ab eisdem accepit, nam duo clerici, cum rastris, &c.*

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

numerous republics, who soon extended their liberty and dominion from the city to the adjacent country. The sword of the nobles was broken; their slaves were enfranchised; their castles were demolished; they assumed the habits of society and obedience; their ambition was confined to municipal honours, and in the proudest aristocracy of Venice or Genoa each patrician was subject to the laws.¹⁰⁸ But the feeble and disorderly government of Rome was unequal to the task of curbing her rebellious sons, who scorned the authority of the magistrate within and without the walls. It was no longer a civil contention between the nobles and the plebeians for the government of the state; the barons asserted in arms their personal independence; their palaces and castles were fortified against a siege; and their private quarrels were maintained by the numbers of their vassals and retainers. In origin and affection, they were aliens to their country;¹⁰⁹ and a genuine Roman, could such have been produced, might have renounced these haughty strangers, who disdained the appellation of citizens and proudly styled themselves the princes of Rome.¹¹⁰ After a dark series of revolutions, all records of pedigree were lost; the distinction of surnames was abolished; the blood of the nations was mingled in a thousand channels; and the Goths and Lombards, the Greeks and Franks, the Germans and Normans, had obtained the fairest possessions by royal bounty or the prerogative of valour. These examples might be readily presumed; but the elevation of an Hebrew race to the rank of senators and consuls is an event without a parallel in the long captivity of these miserable exiles.¹¹¹ In the time of Leo the Ninth, a wealthy and learned Jew was converted to Christianity, and

¹⁰⁸ Muratori (Dissert. xlvii.) alleges the Annals of Florence, Padua, Genoa, &c., the analogy of the rest, the evidence of Otho of Frisingen (*de Gest. Fred. I. l. ii. c. 13*), and the submission of the marquis of Este.

¹⁰⁹ As early as the year 824, the emperor Lothaire I. found it expedient to interrogate the Roman people, to learn from each individual by what national law he chose to be governed (Muratori, Dissert. xxii.).

¹¹⁰ Petrarch attacks these foreigners, the tyrants of Rome, in a declamation or epistle, full of bold truths and absurd pedantry, in which he applies the maxims, and even prejudices, of the old republic, to the state of the xivth century (*Mémoires*, tom. iii. p. 157-169).

¹¹¹ The origin and adventures of this Jewish family are noticed by Pagi (*Critica*, tom. iv. p. 435. A. D. 1124, No. 3, 4), who draws his information from the *Chronographus Maurigniacensis* (in Migne, *Patr. Lat.* 180, p. 131 seq.) and Arnulphus Sagiensis *de Schismate* (in Muratori *Script. Ital.* tom. iii. p. 1. p. 423-432). The fact must in some degree be true; yet I could wish that it had been coolly related, before it was turned into a reproach against the antipope.

honoured at his baptism with the name of his godfather, the reigning pope. The seal and courage of Peter, the son of Leo, were signalised in the cause of Gregory the Seventh, who entrusted his faithful adherent with the government of Hadrian's mole, the tower of Crescentius, or, as it is now called, the castle of St. Angelo. Both the father and the son were the parents of a numerous progeny; their riches, the fruits of usury, were shared with the noblest families of the city; and so extensive was their alliance that the grandson of the proselyte was exalted, by the weight of his kindred, to the throne of St. Peter. A majority of the clergy and people supported his cause; he reigned several years in the Vatican; and it is only the eloquence of St. Bernard, and the final triumph of Innocent the Second, that has branded Anacletus with the epithet of antipope. After his defeat and death, the posterity of Leo is no longer conspicuous; and none will be found of the modern nobles ambitious of descending from a Jewish stock. It is not my design to enumerate the Roman families which have failed at different periods, or those which are continued in different degrees of splendour to the present time.¹¹² The old consular line of the *Frangipani* discover their name in the generous act of *breaking or dividing bread* in a time of famine; and such benevolence is more truly glorious than to have inclosed, with their allies the *Corsi*, a spacious quarter of the city in the chains of their fortifications; the *Savelli*, as it should seem a Sabine race, have maintained their original dignity;¹¹³ the obsolete surname of the *Capitucchi* is inscribed on the coins of the first senators; the *Conti* preserve the honour, without the estate, of the counts of *Signia*; ¹¹⁴ and the *Annibaldi* must have been very ignorant, or very modest, if they had not descended from the Carthaginian hero.¹¹⁵

Family of Leo
the Jew
(The Flar-
leoni)

¹¹² Muratori has given two dissertations (xli. and xlii.) to the names, surnames, and families of Italy. Some nobles, who glory in their domestic fables, may be offended with his firm and temperate criticism; yet surely some ounces of pure gold are of more value than many pounds of base metal.

¹¹³ [“The foundation of the house of the Savelli, which was probably German, was due to the nepotism of their member Pope Honorius [III.], and they only rose to power after his time.” Gregorovius, v. p. 118.]

¹¹⁴ [See the references in Gregorovius, v. p. 6.]

¹¹⁵ The cardinal of St. George, in his poetical, or rather metrical, history of the election and coronation of Boniface VIII. (Muratori, Script. Ital. tom. iii. p. i. p. 62, 63.) describes the state and families of Rome at the coronation of Boniface VIII. (A.D. 1295):—

The Colonna

But among, perhaps above, the peers and princes of the city, I distinguish the rival houses of COLONNA and URSINI, whose private story is an essential part of the annals of modern Rome. I. The name and arms of Colonna¹¹⁶ have been the theme of much doubtful etymology; nor have the orators and antiquarians overlooked either Trajan's pillar, or the columns of Hercules, or the pillar of Christ's flagellation, or the luminous column that guided the Israelites in the desert. Their first historical appearance in the year eleven hundred and four attests the power and antiquity, while it explains the simple meaning, of the name. By the usurpation of Cavæ, the Colonna provoked the arms of Paschal the Second; but they lawfully held in the Campagna of Rome the hereditary fiefs of Zagarola and *Colonna*; and the latter of these towns was probably adorned with some lofty pillar, the relic of a villa or temple.¹¹⁷ They likewise possessed one moiety of the neighbouring city of Tusculum: a strong presumption of their descent from the counts of Tusculum, who in the tenth century were the tyrants of the apostolic see. According to their own and the public opinion, the primitive and remote source was derived from the banks of the Rhine;¹¹⁸ and the

Interea titulis redimiti sanguini et armis
 Illustresque viri Romanâ a stirpe trabentes
 Nomen in emeritos tantæ virtutis honores
 Intulerant sese medios festumque colebant
 Auratâ fulgentes togâ sociante catervâ.
 Ex ipsis devota domus præstantis ab Ursa
 Ecclesiæ, vultumque gerens demissius altum
 Festa *Columna* focis, necnon *Sabellia* mitis;
 Stephanides senior, *Comites*, *Annibalica* proles,
 Præfectusque urbis magnum sine viribus nomen.

(l. ii. c. 5, 100, p. 647, 648).

The ancient statutes of Rome (l. iii. c. 59, p. 174, 175) distinguish eleven families of barons, who are obliged to swear in concilio communi, before the senator, that they would not harbour or protect any malefactors, outlaws, &c.—a feeble security! [The Anibaldi family rose to prominence c. A.D. 1230. See Gregorovius, v. 158.]

¹¹⁶ It is pity that the Colonna themselves have not favoured the world with a complete and critical history of their illustrious house. I adhere to Muratori (Dissert. xlii. tom. iii. p. 647, 648).

¹¹⁷ Pandulph. Pisan. in Vit. Paschal. II. in Muratori, Script. Ital. tom. iii. p. l. p. 335. The family has still great possessions in the Campagna of Rome; but they have alienated to the Rospigliosi this original fief of *Colonna* (Eschinard, p. 258, 259).

¹¹⁸

Te longinqua dedit tellus et pascua Rheni,
 says Petrarch; and, in 1417, a duke of Guelders and Juliers acknowledges (Lefant, Hist. du Concile de Constance, tom. ii. p. 539) his descent from the ancestors of Martin V. (Otho Colonna): but the royal author of the Memoirs of Brandenburg observes that the sceptre in his arms has been confounded with the column. To maintain the Roman origin of the Colonna, it was ingeniously supposed (Diario di Monaldeschi, in the Script. Ital. tom. xii. p. 533) that a cousin of the emperor Nero escaped from the city and founded Mentz in Germany.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

the accomplices and heirs of the deceased pope. All the spiritual censures and disqualifications were abolished¹²² by his prudent successors; and the fortune of the house was more firmly established by this transient hurricane. The boldness of Sciarra Colonna was signalised in the captivity of Boniface, and long afterwards in the coronation of Lewis of Bavaria; and by the gratitude of the emperor the pillar in their arms was encircled with a royal crown. But the first of the family in fame and merit was the elder Stephen, whom Petrarch loved and esteemed as an hero superior to his own times and not unworthy of ancient Rome. Persecution and exile displayed to the nations his abilities in peace and war; in his distress he was an object, not of pity, but of reverence; the aspect of danger provoked him to avow his name and country; and when he was asked, "Where is now your fortress?" he laid his hand on his heart, and answered, "Here". He supported with the same virtue the return of prosperity; and, till the ruin of his declining age, the ancestors, the character, and the children of Stephen Colonna, exalted his dignity in the Roman republic, and at the court of Avignon. II. The Ursini migrated from Spoleto:¹²³ the sons of Ursus, as they are styled in the twelfth century, from some eminent person who is only known as the father of their race. But they were soon distinguished among the nobles of Rome, by the number and bravery of their kinsmen, the strength of their towers, the honours of the senate and sacred college, and the elevation of two popes, Celestin the Third and Nicholas the Third, of their name and lineage.¹²⁴ Their riches

and Ursini.

[Celestine III.
A.D. 1191-3.
Nicholas III.
1277-80.]

¹²² Alexander III. had declared the Colonna who adhered to the emperor Frederic I. incapable of holding any ecclesiastical benefice (Villani, l. v. c. 1); and the last stains of annual excommunication were purified by Sixtus V. (Vita di Sisto V. tom. iii. p. 416). Treason, sacrilege, and proscription are often the best titles of ancient nobility.

¹²³

— Vallis te proxima misit

Appenninigenæ quæ prata virentia sylvæ

Spoletana metunt armenta gregesque protervi.

Monaldeschi (tom. xii. Script. Ital. p. 533) gives the Ursini a French origin, which may be remotely true. [Cp. Gregorovius, v. p. 39 sqq.]

¹²⁴ In the metrical life of Celestine V. by the Cardinal of St. George (Muratori, tom. iii. p. i. p. 613, &c.), we find a luminous and not inelegant passage (l. i. c. iii. p. 203, &c.) :—

— genuit quem nobilis Ursæ (*Ursi* ?)

Progenies, Romana domus, veterataque magnis

Fascibus in clero, pompasque experta senatus,

Bellorumque manu grandi stipata parentum

Cardineos apices necnon fastigia dudum

Papatus iterata tenens.

Muratori (Dissert. xlii. tom. iii.) observes that the first Ursini pontificate of Celestin III. was unknown; he is inclined to read *Ursi* progenies.

may be accused as an early abuse of nepotism; the estates of St. Peter were alienated in their favour by the liberal Celestin;¹²⁶ and Nicholas was ambitious for their sake to solicit the alliance of monarchs; to found new kingdoms in Lombardy and Tuscany; and to invest them with the perpetual office of senators of Rome. All that has been observed of the greatness of the Colonna will likewise redound to the glory of the Ursini, their constant and equal antagonists in the long hereditary feud which distracted above two hundred and fifty years the ecclesiastical state. The jealousy of pre-eminence and power was the true ground of their quarrel; but, as a specious badge of distinction, the Colonna embraced the name of Ghibelines and the party of the empire; the Ursini espoused the title of Guelphs and the cause of the church. The eagle and the keys were displayed in their adverse banners; and the two factions of Italy most furiously raged when the origin and nature of the dispute were long since forgotten.¹²⁶ After the retreat of the popes to Avignon, they disputed in arms the vacant republic; and the mischiefs of discord were perpetuated by the wretched compromise of electing each year two rival senators. By their private hostilities, the city and country were desolated, and the fluctuating balance inclined with their alternate success. But none of either family had fallen by the sword, till the most renowned champion of the Ursini was surprised and slain by the younger Stephen Colonna.¹²⁷ His triumph is stained with the reproach of violating the truce; their defeat was basely avenged by the assassination, before the church-door, of an innocent boy and his two servants. Yet the victorious Colonna, with an annual colleague, was declared senator of Rome during the term of five years. And the muse of Petrarch inspired a wish, a hope, a prediction, that the generous youth, the son of his venerable hero, would restore Rome and

Their hereditary feud.

¹²⁶ Filii Ursi, quondam Cœlestini papæ nepotes, de bonis ecclesiæ Romanæ dñati (Vit. Innocent. III. in Muratori, Script. tom. iii. p. i.). The partial prodigality of Nicholas III. is more conspicuous in Villani and Muratori. Yet the Ursini would disdain the nephews of a *modern* Pope. [Fra Salimbene of Parma said of Nicholas III. that he built Sion in his kinsfolk (ædificavit Sion in sanguinibus). The expression is quoted by Gregorovius, v. 490. Compare Dante, *Inferno*, xix. v. 70-2, where he is alluded to as "figliuol dell' orsa".]

¹²⁷ In his fifty-first Dissertation on the Italian Antiquities, Muratori explains the factions of the Guelphs and Ghibelines.

¹²⁸ Petrarch (tom. i. p. 222-230) has celebrated this victory according to the Colonna; but two contemporaries, a Florentine (Giovanni Villani, l. x. c. 220) and a Roman (Ludovico Monaldeschi [S. R. I. xii.] p. 533, 534), are less favourable to their arms.



254 THE DECLINE AND FALL

Italy to their pristine glory ; that his justice would extirpate the wolves and lions, the serpents and *bears*, who laboured to subvert the eternal basis of the marble COLUMN.¹²⁸

¹²⁸ The Abbé de Sade (tom. i. notes, p. 61-66) has applied the vith Canzone of Petrarch, *Spirto Gentil*, &c., to Stephen Colonna the Younger.

Orsi, lupi, leoni, aquile e serpi
Ad una gran marmorea colonna
Fanno noja sovente e à se damno.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

livered of eleven legitimate children⁴ while her ~~anxious~~ sighs sighed and sung at the fountain of Vaucluse.⁵ But in the eyes of Petrarch, and those of his graver contemporaries, his love was a sin, and Italian verse a frivolous amusement. His Latin works of philosophy, poetry, and eloquence established his serious reputation, which was soon diffused from Avignon over France and Italy; his friends and disciples were multiplied in every city; and, if the ponderous volume of his writings⁶ be now abandoned to a long repose, our gratitude must applaud the man who by precept and example revived the spirit and study of the Augustan age. From his earliest youth, Petrarch aspired to the poetic crown. The academical honours of the three faculties had introduced a royal degree of master or doctor in the art of poetry;⁷ and the title of poet-laureat, which custom, rather than vanity, perpetuates in the English court,⁸ was first invented by the Caesars of Germany. In the musical games of antiquity, a prize was bestowed on the victor;⁹ the belief that Virgil and Horace had

⁴ *Corpus crebris partibus exhaustum*; from one of these is issued, in the tenth degree, the Abbé de Sade, the fond and grateful biographer of Petrarch; and this domestic motive most probably suggested the idea of his work, and urged him to inquire into every circumstance that could affect the history and character of his grandmother (see particularly tom. i. p. 122-133. notes, p. 7-58; tom. II. p. 451-465. notes, p. 76-82).

⁵ Vaucluse, so familiar to our English travellers, is described from the writings of Petrarch, and the local knowledge of his biographer (*Mémoires*, tom. i. p. 300-359). It was, in truth, the retreat of an hermit; and the moderns are much mistaken if they place Laura and an happy lover in the grotto.

⁶ Of 1250 pages, in a close print, at Basil, in the xvth century, but without the date of the year. The Abbé de Sade calls aloud for a new edition of Petrarch's Latin works; but I much doubt whether it would redound to the profit of the bookseller, or the amusement of the public. [Petrarch's *Epistolæ de rebus familiaribus et variæ* have been edited in 3 vols. 1859-63 by G. Fracassetti and translated (with commentary) into Italian by the same scholar (in 5 vols. 1863-7), who has also translated and annotated the *Epistolæ seniles* (*Lettere senili*, 2 vols. 1869). The *De viris illustribus vitæ* has been edited by A. Razzolini, 1874, who has added in a second vol. the Italian translation thereof by Donato degli Albanzani.]

⁷ Consult Selden's *Titles of Honour*, in his works (vol. iii. p. 457-466). An hundred years before Petrarch, St. Francis received the visit of a poet, qui ab imperatore fuerat coronatus et exinde rex versuum dictus.

⁸ From Augustus to Louis, the muse has too often been false and venal; but I much doubt whether any age or court can produce a similar establishment of a stipendiary poet, who in every reign, and at all events, is bound to furnish twice a year a measure of praise and verse, such as may be sung in the chapel, and, I believe, in the presence of the sovereign. I speak the more freely, as the best time for abolishing this ridiculous custom is while the prince is a man of virtue and the poet a man of genius.

⁹ Isocrates (in *Panegyrico*, tom. i. p. 116, 117. edit. Battie, Cantab. 1739) claims for his native Athens the glory of first instituting and recommending the *ἐπίγραμμα* and *τὰ δῶρα μίνις τε μὲν μέγιστον ἔχοντες καὶ βίαιον, ἀλλὰ καὶ λόγιον καὶ γούργον*. The example of

been crowned in the Capitol inflamed the emulation of a Latin bard ;¹⁰ and the laurel¹¹ was endeared to the lover by a verbal resemblance with the name of his mistress. The value of either object was enhanced by the difficulties of the pursuit ; and, if the virtue or prudence of Laura was inexorable,¹² he enjoyed, and might boast of enjoying, the nymph of poetry. His vanity was not of the most delicate kind, since he applauds the success of his own *labours* ; his name was popular ; his friends were active ; the open or secret opposition of envy and prejudice was surmounted by the dexterity of patient merit. In the thirty-sixth year of his age, he was solicited to accept the object of his wishes ; and on the same day, in the solitude of Vacluse, he received a similar and solemn invitation from the senate of Rome (Aug. 23, A.D. 1301) and the university of Paris. The learning of a theological school, and the ignorance of a lawless city, were alike unqualified to bestow the ideal, though immortal, wreath which genius may obtain from the free applause of the public and of posterity ; but the candidate dismissed this troublesome reflection, and after some moments of complacency and suspense, preferred the summons of the metropolis of the world.

The ceremony of his coronation¹³ was performed in the Capitol, by his friend and patron the supreme magistrate of the republic. Twelve patrician youths were arrayed in scarlet ; six representatives of the most illustrious families, in green robes, with garlands

His poetic coronation at Rome, A.D. 1301, April 8

the Panathenæa was imitated at Delphi ; but the Olympic games were ignorant of a musical crown, till it was extorted by the vain tyranny of Nero (Sueton. in Nerone, c. 23 ; Philostrat. apud Casaubon ad locum ; Dion Cassius or Xiphilin, l. lxxiii. p. 1032 [c. 9], 1041 [c. 20]. Potter's Greek Antiquities, vol. i. p. 445, 450).

¹⁰ The Capitoline games (certamen quinquennale, *musicum*, equestre, gymnium) were instituted by Domitian (Sueton. c. 4) in the year of Christ 86 (Censorin. de Die Natali, c. xviii. p. 100, edit. Havercamp), and were not abolished in the ivth century (Ausonius de Professoribus Burdegal. V.). If the crown were given to superior merit, the exclusion of Statius (Capitolia nostræ inficiata lyræ, Sylv. l. iii. v. 31) may do honour to the games of the Capitol ; but the Latin poets who lived before Domitian were crowned only in the public opinion.

¹¹ Petrarch and the senators of Rome were ignorant that the laurel was not the Capitoline, but the Delphic crown (Plin. Hist. Natur. xv. 39 ; Hist. Critique de la République des Lettres, tom i. p. 150-220). The victors in the Capitol were crowned with a garland of oak-leaves (Martial, l. iv. epigram 54).

¹² The pious grandson of Laura has laboured, and not without success, to establish her immaculate chastity against the censures of the grave and the attacks of the profane (tom. ii. notes, p. 76-82).

¹³ The whole process of Petrarch's coronation is accurately described by the Abbé de la Motte, tom. i. p. 425-435 ; tom. ii. p. 1-6, notes, p. 1-13), from his own writings [see the notes on p. 2] and the Roman Diary of Ludovico Monaldeschi, without mixing in the narrative the more recent fables of Sannuccio Delbene.

of flowers, accompanied the procession; in the midst of the princes and nobles, the senator, count of Anguillara, a kinsman of the Colonna, assumed his throne; and, at the voice of an herald, Petrarch arose. After discoursing on a text of Virgil,¹⁴ and thrice repeating his vows for the prosperity of Rome, he knelt before the throne, and received from the senator a laurel crown, with a more precious declaration, "This is the reward of merit". The people shouted, "Long life to the Capitol and the poet!" A sonnet in praise of Rome was accepted as the offering of genius and gratitude; and, after the whole procession had visited the Vatican, the profane wreath was suspended before the shrine of St. Peter. In the act or diploma¹⁵ which was presented to Petrarch, the title and prerogatives of post-laureat were revived in the Capitol, after the lapse of thirteen hundred years; and he receives the perpetual privilege of wearing, at his choice, a crown of laurel, ivy, or myrtle, of assuming the poetic habit, and of teaching, disputing, interpreting, and composing in all places whatsoever and on all subjects of literature. The grant was ratified by the authority of the senate and people; and the character of citizen was the recompense of his affection for the Roman name. They did him honour, but they did him justice. In the familiar society of Cicero and Livy, he had imbibed the ideas of an ancient patriot; and his ardent fancy kindled every idea to a sentiment and every sentiment to a passion. The aspect of the seven hills and their majestic ruins confirmed these lively impressions; and he loved a country by whose liberal spirit he had been crowned and adopted. The poverty and debasement of Rome excited the indignation and pity of her grateful son: he dissembled the faults of his fellow-citizens; applauded with partial fondness the last of their heroes and matrons; and in the remembrance of the past, in the hope of the future, was pleased to forget the miseries of the present time. Rome was still the lawful mistress of the world; the pope and the emperor, her bishop and general, had abdicated their station by an inglorious retreat to the Rhône and the Danube; but, if she could resume her virtue, the republic might again vindicate her

¹⁴ [Sed me Parnassi deserta per ardua dulcis
Raptat amor.

Georgics 3, 291.

This address has been published by Attilio Hortis in *Scritti inediti di Fr. Petrarca*, 1874, p. 311 sqq.]

¹⁵ The original act is printed among the *Pièces Justificatives* in the *Mémoires sur Pétrarque*, tom. iii. p. 50-53.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

history and eloquence, the writings of Cicero, Caesar, and Valerius Maximus, elevated above contemporaries the genius of the young plebe with indefatigable diligence the manuscripts antiquity; loved to dispense his knowledge in Sicily and was often provoked to exclaim, "Where are the Romans? their virtue, their justice, their power not born in those happy times?" When he was addressed to the throne of Avignon an embassador, the spirit and eloquence of Rienzi rose to a place among the thirteen deputies of the republic; the orator had the honour of haranguing Pope Clement VI and the satisfaction of conversing with Petrarch's mind; but his aspiring hopes were chilled by poverty; and the patriot was reduced to a state of the charity of the hospital. From this misery he was raised by the sense of merit or the smile of favour; a post of apostolic notary afforded him a daily gold florin, a more honourable and extensive situation; the right of contrasting, both in words and actions, integrity with the vices of the state. The eloquence was prompt and persuasive; the multitude listened with envy and amazement: he was stimulated by the crimes and the impunity of the assassins; nor was it possible for him to exaggerate the public calamities. The blind and justice, for which civil society has been established from Rome: the jealous citizens, who considered every personal or pecuniary injury, were wounded in the dishonour of their wives and children were equally oppressed by the arrogance of the corruption of the magistrates; and the abuse of

104

* The reader may be pleased with a specimen of the style of the author in the following extract from the first book of the history of the city of Rome, as written by the author in the year 1789. This is the original text of the author, and is not a translation. The style is very elegant and is a fine specimen of the author's power. The following is a translation of the original text, and is not a translation of the original text. The style is very elegant and is a fine specimen of the author's power. The following is a translation of the original text, and is not a translation of the original text. The style is very elegant and is a fine specimen of the author's power.

† The reader may be pleased with a specimen of the style of the author in the following extract from the first book of the history of the city of Rome, as written by the author in the year 1789. This is the original text of the author, and is not a translation. The style is very elegant and is a fine specimen of the author's power. The following is a translation of the original text, and is not a translation of the original text. The style is very elegant and is a fine specimen of the author's power.

was the only circumstance that distinguished the lions from the dogs and serpents of the Capitol. These allegorical emblems were variously repeated in the pictures which Rienzi exhibited in the streets and churches; and, while the spectators gazed with curious wonder, the bold and ready orator unfolded the meaning, applied the satire, inflamed their passions, and announced a distant hope of comfort and deliverance. The privileges of Rome, her eternal sovereignty over her princes and provinces, was the theme of his public and private discourse; and a monument of servitude became in his hands a title and incentive of liberty. The decree of the senate, which granted the most ample prerogatives to the emperor Vespasian, had been inscribed on a copper-plate still extant in the choir of the church of St. John Lateran.²⁶ A numerous assembly of nobles and plebeians was invited to this political lecture, and a convenient theatre was erected for their reception. The notary appeared in a magnificent and mysterious habit, explained the inscription by a version and commentary,²⁶ and descanted with eloquence and zeal on the ancient glories of the senate and people, from whom all legal authority was derived. The supine ignorance of the nobles was incapable of discerning the serious tendency of such representations: they might sometimes chastise with words and blows the plebeian reformer; but he was often suffered in the Colonna palace to amuse the company with his threats and predictions; and the modern Brutus²⁷ was concealed under the mask of folly and the character of a buffoon. While they

²⁶ The fragments of the *Lex Regia* may be found in the inscriptions of Gruter, tom. i. p. 242, and at the end of the Tacitus of Ernesti, with some learned notes of the editor, tom. ii. [See C. I. L. vi. 930. Cp. above vol. i. p. 66, n. 19. "Cola had discovered this bronze tablet in the Lateran, where it had been employed in the construction of an altar in the time of Boniface VIII. The inscription had then been turned inwards, but it was restored to light either by the fall of the church in consequence of the fire or in process of rebuilding. The use to which Cola turned this monument of imperial despotism was singular and ingenious. He caused the tablet to be built into the wall behind the choir of the Lateran, and round it had the Senate painted in the act of conferring the imperial authority on Vespasian."]

²⁷ I cannot overlook a stupendous and laughable blunder of Rienzi. The *Lex Regia* empowers Vespasian to enlarge the *Pomœrium*, a word familiar to every antiquary. It was not so to the tribune; he confounds it with *pomœrium*, an orchard, translates lo *Jardino de Roma cioene Italia*, and is copied by the less excusable ignorance of the Latin translator (p. 406) and the French historian (p. 33). Even the learning of Muratori has slumbered over the passage. [Gregorovius compares Dante's (*Purgatorio*, vi. 105) *chê il giardin dell' Imperio sia deserto.*]

²⁸ *Priori (Bruto) tamen similior, juvenis uterque, longe ingenio quam cujus simulationem induerat, ut sub hoc obtentu liberator ille P. R. aperiretur tempore suo . . . ille regibus, hic tyrannis contemptus* (Opp. p. 536).

indulged their contempt, the restoration of the *good estate*, his favourite expression, was entertained among the people as a desirable, a possible, and at length as an approaching, event; and, while all had the disposition to applaud, some had the courage to assist, their promised deliverer.

A prophecy, or rather a summons, affixed on the church-door of St. George, was the first public evidence of his designs; a nocturnal assembly of an hundred citizens on Mount Aventine, the first step to their execution. After an oath of secrecy and aid, he represented to the conspirators the importance and facility of their enterprise; that the nobles, without union or resources, were strong only in the fear of their imaginary strength; that all power, as well as right, was in the hands of the people; that the revenues of the apostolical chamber might relieve the public distress; and that the pope himself would approve their victory over the common enemies of government and freedom. After securing a faithful band to protect his first declaration, he proclaimed through the city, by sound of trumpet, that on the evening of the following day all persons should assemble without arms before the church of St. Angelo, to provide for the re-establishment of the good estate. The whole night was employed in the celebration of thirty masses of the Holy Ghost; and in the morning, Rienzi, bare-headed, but in complete armour, issued from the church, encompassed by the hundred conspirators. The pope's vicar, the simple bishop of Orvieto, who had been persuaded to sustain a part in this singular ceremony, marched on his right hand; and three great standards were borne aloft as the emblems of their design. In the first, the banner of *liberty*, Rome was seated on two lions, with a palm in one hand and a globe in the other; St. Paul, with a drawn sword, was delineated in the banner of *justice*; and in the third, St. Peter held the keys of *concord* and *peace*. Rienzi was encouraged by the presence and applause of an innumerable crowd, who understood little and hoped much; and the procession slowly rolled forwards from the castle of St. Angelo to the Capitol. His triumph was disturbed by some secret emotion, which he laboured to suppress: he ascended without opposition, and with seeming confidence, the citadel of the republic; harangued the people from the balcony; and received the most flattering confirmation of his acts and laws. The nobles, as if destitute of arms and counsels, beheld in silent consternation this strange revolution; and the moment had been prudently chosen, when the most formidable, Stephen Colonna, was absent

He assumes
the govern-
ment of Rome,
A.D. 1317,
May 20;

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

of provisions ; and that the protection of malefactors and robbers should be expiated by a fine of a thousand marks of silver. But these regulations would have been impotent and nugatory, had not the licentious nobles been awed by the sword of the civil power. A sudden alarm from the bell of the Capitol could still summon to the standard above twenty thousand volunteers ; the support of the tribune and the laws required a more regular and permanent force. In each harbour of the coast, a vessel was stationed for the assurance of commerce ; a standing militia of three hundred and sixty horse and thirteen hundred foot was levied, clothed, and paid in the thirteen quarters of the city ; and the spirit of a commonwealth may be traced in the grateful allowance of one hundred florins, or pounds, to the heirs of every soldier who lost his life in the service of his country. For the maintenance of the public defence, for the establishment of granaries, for the relief of widows, orphans, and indigent convents, Rienzi applied, without fear of sacrilege, the revenues of the apostolic chamber ; the three branches of hearth-money, the salt-duty, and the customs, were each of the annual produce of one hundred thousand florins ;²⁹ and scandalous were the abuses, if in four or five months the amount of the salt-duty could be trebled by his judicious economy. After thus restoring the forces and finances of the republic, the tribune recalled the nobles from their solitary independence ; required their personal appearance in the Capitol ; and imposed an oath of allegiance to the new government and of submission to the laws of the good estate. Apprehensive for their safety, but still more apprehensive of the danger of a refusal, the princes and barons returned to their houses at Rome, in the garb of simple and peaceful citizens ; the Colonna and Ursini, the Savelli and Frangipani, were confounded before the tribunal of a plebeian, of the vile buffoon whom they had so often derided, and their disgrace was aggravated by the indignation which they vainly struggled to disguise. The same oath was successively pronounced by the several orders of society, the clergy and gentlemen, the judges and notaries, the merchants and artisans, and the gradual descent was marked

²⁹ In one Ms. I read (l. ii. c. 4, p. 409) *perfumante quatro solli*, in another *quatro florini* : an important variety, since the florin was worth ten Roman *solidi* (Muratori, dissert. xxviii.). The former reading would give us a population of 25,000, the latter of 250,000 families ; and I much fear that the former is more consistent with the decay of Rome and her territory. [The population was probably not more than 50,000 in all, at this period. Cp. Gregorovius, vi. 152 note. The hearth tax (*facaticum*) is said to have been 26 denari (*ib.* 256).]

by the increase of sincerity and zeal. They swore to live and die with the republic and the church, whose interest was artfully united by the nominal association of the bishop of Orvieto, the pope's vicar, to the office of tribune. It was the boast of Rienzi that he had delivered the throne and patrimony of St. Peter from a rebellious aristocracy; and Clement the Sixth, who rejoiced in its fall, affected to believe the professions, to applaud the merits, and to confirm the title, of his trusty servant. The speech, perhaps the mind, of the tribune was inspired with a lively regard for the purity of the faith: he insinuated his claim to a supernatural mission from the Holy Ghost; enforced by an heavy forfeiture the annual duty of confession and communion; and strictly guarded the spiritual as well as temporal welfare of his faithful people.²⁰

Never, perhaps, has the energy and effect of a single mind been more remarkably felt than in the sudden, though transient, reformation of Rome by the tribune Rienzi. A den of robbers was converted to the discipline of a camp or convent: patient to hear, swift to redress, inexorable to punish, his tribunal was always accessible to the poor and stranger; nor could birth or dignity or the immunities of the church protect the offender or his accomplices. The privileged houses, the private sanctuaries in Rome, on which no officer of justice would presume to trespass, were abolished; and he applied the timber and iron of their barricades in the fortifications of the Capitol. The venerable father of the Colonna was exposed in his own palace to the double shame of being desirous, and of being unable, to protect a criminal. A mule, with a jar of oil, had been stolen near Capranica; and the lord of the Ursini family was condemned to restore the damage, and to discharge a fine of four hundred florins for his negligence in guarding the highways. Nor were the persons of the barons more inviolate than their lands or houses; and, either from accident or design, the same impartial rigour was exercised against the heads of the adverse factions. Peter Agapet Colonna, who had himself been senator of Rome, was arrested in the street for injury or debt; and justice was appeased by the tardy execution of Martin Ursini, who, among his various acts of violence and rapine, had pillaged a shipwrecked

Freedom and
prosperity of
the Roman re-
public

(Martin
Ursini)

²⁰ Hocsemius, p. 398, apud du Cerceau, Hist. de Rienzi, p. 194. The fifteen tribunician laws may be found in the Roman historian (whom for brevity I shall name) Fortifiocca, l. ii. c. 4.

vessel at the mouth of the Tiber.²¹ His name, the people of two cardinals his uncles, a recent marriage, and a mortal disease, were disregarded by the inflexible tribune, who had chosen his victim. The public officers dragged him from his palace and nuptial bed: his trial was short and satisfactory; the bell of the Capitol convened the people; stript of his mantle, on his knees, with his hands bound behind his back, he heard the sentence of death; and, after a brief confession, Ursini was led away to the gallows. After such an example, none who were conscious of guilt could hope for impunity, and the flight of the wicked, the licentious, and the idle soon purified the city and territory of Rome. In this time (says the historian) the woods began to rejoice that they were no longer infested with robbers; the oxen began to plough; the pilgrims visited the sanctuaries; the roads and inns were replenished with travellers; trade, plenty, and good faith were restored in the markets; and a purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway. As soon as the life and property of the subject are secure, the labours and rewards of industry spontaneously revive: Rome was still the metropolis of the Christian world; and the fame and fortunes of the tribune were diffused in every country, by the strangers who had enjoyed the blessings of his government.

The tribune is respected in Italy, &c.

[Idea of a confederation of Italy]

The deliverance of his country inspired Rienzi with a vast, and perhaps visionary, idea of uniting Italy in a great federative republic, of which Rome should be the ancient and lawful head, and the free cities and princes the members and associates. His pen was not less eloquent than his tongue; and his numerous epistles were delivered to swift and trusty messengers. On foot, with a white wand in their hand, they traversed the forests and mountains; enjoyed, in the most hostile states, the sacred security of ambassadors; and reported, in the style of flattery or truth, that the highways along their passage were lined with kneeling multitudes, who implored Heaven for the success of their undertaking. Could passion have listened to reason, could private

²¹ Fortibocca, l. ii. c. 11. From the account of this shipwreck we learn some circumstances of the trade and navigation of the age. 1. The ship was built and freighted at Naples for the ports of Marseilles and Avignon. 2. The sailors were of Naples and the Isle of Oenaria, less skillful than those of Sicily and Genoa. 3. The navigation from Marseilles was a coasting voyage to the mouth of the Tiber, where they took shelter in a storm, but, instead of finding the current, unfortunately ran on a shoal; the vessel was stranded, the mariners escaped. 4. The cargo, which was pillaged, consisted of the revenue of Provence for the royal treasury, many bags of pepper and cinnamon, and bales of French cloth, to the value of 20,000 florins: a rich prize.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

secret counsellor, of Rienzi: his writings breathe the most ardent spirit of patriotism and joy; and all respect for the pope, all gratitude for the Colonna, was lost in the superior duties of a Roman citizen. The poet-laureat of the Capitol mentions the act, applauds the hero, and mingles with some apprehension and advice the most lofty hopes of the permanent and rising greatness of the republic.²⁶

While Petrarch indulged these prophetic visions, the Roman hero was fast declining from the meridian of fame and power; and the people, who had gazed with astonishment on the ascending meteor, began to mark the irregularity of its course and the vicissitudes of light and obscurity. More eloquent than judicious, more enterprising than resolute, the faculties of Rienzi were not balanced by cool and commanding reason; he magnified in a tenfold proportion the objects of hope and fear; and prudence, which could not have erected, did not presume to fortify, his throne. In the blaze of prosperity, his virtues were insensibly tinged with the adjacent vices: justice with cruelty, liberality with profusion, and the desire of fame with puerile and ostentatious vanity. He might have learned that the ancient tribunes, so strong and sacred in the public opinion, were not distinguished in style, habit, or appearance, from an ordinary plebeian;²⁷ and that, as often as they visited the city on foot, a single vestor, or beadle, attended the exercise of their office. The Gracchi would have frowned or smiled, could they have read the sonorous titles and epithets of their successor, "NICHOLAS, SEVERE AND MERCIFUL; DELIVERER OF ROME; DEFENDER OF ITALY;²⁸ FRIEND OF MANKIND, AND OF LIBERTY, PEACE, AND JUSTICE; TAISUNE AUGUST": his theatrical pageants had prepared the revolution; but Rienzi abused, in luxury and pride, the political maxim of speaking to the eyes as well as the understanding of the multitude. From

²⁶ See the *Epistola Hortatoria de Capessenda Republica*, from Petrarch to Nicholas Rienzi (Opp. p. 535-540), and the fifth eclogue or pastoral, a perpetual and obscure allegory.

²⁷ In his Roman questions, Plutarch (*Opuscul. tom. i. p. 505, 506, edit. Græc. Hen. Steph.*) states, on the most constitutional principles, the simple greatness of the tribunes, who were not properly magistrates, but a check on magistracy. It was their duty and interest *ὁμοιοῦσθαι σχήματι, καὶ στολῇ καὶ βίαιῃ τοῖς βουλευτάδοις τῶν πολιτῶν . . . καταπατεῖσθαι δεῖ* (a saying of C. Curio) *καὶ μὴ σεμνὸν εἶναι τῆ δουλείᾳ ὄφει . . . ὅσῳ δὲ μᾶλλον ἐκταπεινούνται τῷ σώματι, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον εὐφραίνεται τῆ δουλείᾳ, &c.* Rienzi, and Petrarch himself, were incapable perhaps of reading a Greek philosopher; but they might have imbibed the same modest doctrines from their favourite Latins, Livy and Valerius Maximus.

²⁸ I could not express in English the forcible though barbarous title of *Zelator Italie*, which Rienzi assumed.

nature he had received the gift of an handsome person,³⁹ till it was swelled and disfigured by intemperance ; and his propensity to laughter was corrected in the magistrature by the affectation of gravity and sternness. He was clothed, at least on public occasions, in a parti-coloured robe of velvet or satin, lined with fur and embroidered with gold ; the rod of justice which he carried in his hand was a sceptre of polished steel, crowned with a globe and cross of gold, and enclosing a small fragment of the true and holy wood. In his civil and religious processions through the city, he rode on a white steed, the symbol of royalty ; the great banner of the republic, a sun with a circle of stars, a dove with an olive-branch, was displayed over his head ; a shower of gold and silver was scattered among the populace ; fifty guards with halberds encompassed his person ; a troop of horse preceded his march ; and their tymbals and trumpets were of massy silver.

The ambition of the honours of chivalry⁴⁰ betrayed the meanness of his birth and degraded the importance of his office ; and the equestrian tribune was not less odious to the nobles whom he adopted than to the plebeians whom he deserted. All that yet remained of treasure or luxury or art was exhausted on that solemn day. Rienzi led the procession from the Capitol to the Lateran ; the tediousness of the way was relieved with decorations and games ; the ecclesiastical, civil, and military orders marched under their various banners ; the Roman ladies attended his wife ; and the ambassadors of Italy might loudly applaud, or secretly deride, the novelty of the pomp. In the evening, when they had reached the church and palace of Constantine, he thanked and dismissed the numerous assembly, with an invitation to the festival of the ensuing day. From the hands of a

The pomp of his knight-hood, A.D. 1347 August 1

³⁹ *Era bell' homo* (l. ii. c. 1, p. 399). It is remarkable, that the *riso sarcastico* of the Bracciano edition is wanting in the Roman Ms. from which Muratori has given the text. In his second reign, when he is painted almost as a monster, Rienzi *travea una ventresca tonna trionfale, a modo de uno Abbate Asiano, or Asinino* (L. iii. c. 18, p. 523).

⁴⁰ Strange as it may seem, this festival was not without a precedent. In the year 1327, two barons, a Colonna and an Ursini, the usual balance, were created knights by the Roman people : their bath was of rose-water, their beds were decked with royal magnificence, and they were served at St. Maria of Araceli in the Capitol by the twenty-eight *buoni uomini*. They afterwards received from Robert, king of Naples, the sword of chivalry (Hist. Rom. l. i. c. 2, p. 259). [On 26th July of this year, 1347, Rienzi issued an edict, declaring the majesty and supremacy of the Roman people, and abolishing all the privileges assumed by the Popes. This edict was submitted to a council of jurists, and was issued in the name of the Italian nation. See Gregorovius, vi. p. 267.]

venerable knight he received the order of the Holy Ghost; the purification of the bath was a previous ceremony; but in no step of his life did Rienzi excite such scandal and censure as by the profane use of the porphyry vase in which Constantine (a foolish legend) had been healed of his leprosy by Pope Sylvester.⁴¹ With equal presumption the tribune watched or reposed within the consecrated precincts of the baptistery; and the failure of his state bed was interpreted as an omen of his approaching downfall. At the hour of worship he shewed himself to the returning crowds in a majestic attitude, with a robe of purple, his sword, and gilt spurs; but the holy rites were soon interrupted by his levity and insolence. Rising from his throne, and advancing towards the congregation, he proclaimed in a loud voice, "We summon to our tribunal Pope Clement, and command him to reside in his diocese of Rome; we also summon the sacred college of Cardinals."⁴² We again summon the two pretenders, Charles of Bohemia and Lewis of Bavaria, who style themselves emperors; we likewise summon all the electors of Germany, to inform us on what pretence they have usurped the unalienable right of the Roman people, the ancient and lawful sovereigns of the empire."⁴³ Unsheathing his maiden sword, he thrice brandished it to the three parts of the world, and thrice repeated the extravagant declaration, "And this too is mine!" The pope's vicar, the bishop of Orvieto, attempted to check this career of folly; but his feeble protest was silenced by martial music; and, instead of withdrawing from the assembly, he consented to dine with his brother tribune, at a table which had hitherto been reserved for the supreme pontiff. A banquet, such

⁴¹ All parties believed in the leprosy and bath of Constantine (Petrarch, Epist. Famil. vi. 2), and Rienzi justified his own conduct by observing to the court of Avignon that a vase which had been used by a pagan could not be profaned by a pious Christian. Yet this crime is specified in the bull of excommunication (Hocsemius, apud du Cerceau, p. 189, 190).

⁴² This verbal summons of Pope Clement VI., which rests on the authority of the Roman historian and a Vatican Ms., is disputed by the biographer of Petrarch (tom. ii. not. p. 70-76), with arguments rather of decency than of weight. The court of Avignon might not choose to agitate this delicate question.

⁴³ The summons of the two rival emperors, a monument of freedom and folly, is extant in Hocsemius (Cerceau, p. 163-166). [Gregorovius (vi. p. 276) well observes: "The Romans, accustomed to all the spectacles of history, blunted to the distinctions between the sublime and the ridiculous . . . neither laughed at this edict nor at the figure of the crazy tribune. . . . They loudly shouted their approval. The absurd proclamation appeared as the ultimate consequence of the claims of the city to the Imperial majesty, with which she had formally confronted Conrad the first of the Hohenstaufens. . . . The errors and theories of Dante and Petrarch in their logical age explain or excuse the insane dreams of the Tribune."]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

was no longer so deeply rooted in the public confidence. The old animosity of the Colonna and Ursini was suspended for a moment by their common disgrace: they associated their victims, and perhaps their designs; an assassin was seized and tortured: he accused the nobles; and, as soon as Rienzi deserved the fate, he adopted the suspicious and maxims, of a tyrant. On the same day, under various pretences, he invited to the Capitol his principal enemies, among whom were five members of the Ursini, and three of the Colonna, name. But, instead of a council or a banquet, they found themselves prisoners under the sword of despotism or justice; and the consciousness of innocence or guilt might inspire them with equal apprehensions of danger. At the sound of the great bell the people assembled: they were arraigned for a conspiracy against the tribune's life; and, though some might sympathise in their distress, not a hand nor a voice was raised to rescue the first of the nobility from their impending doom. Their apparent boldness was prompted by despair; they passed in separate chambers a sleepless and painful night; and the venerable hero, Stephen Colonna, striking against the door of his prison, repeatedly urged his guards to deliver him by a speedy death from such ignominious servitude. In the morning they understood their sentence from the visit of a confessor and the tolling of the bell. The great hall of the Capitol had been decorated for the bloody scene with red and white hangings; the countenance of the tribune was dark and severe; the swords of the executioners were unsheathed; and the barons were interrupted in their dying speeches by the sound of trumpets. But in this decisive moment Rienzi was not less anxious or apprehensive than his captives: he dreaded the splendour of their names, their surviving kinmen, the inconstancy of the people, the reproaches of the world; and, after rashly offering a mortal injury, he vainly presumed that, if he could forgive, he might himself be forgiven. His elaborate oration was that of a Christian and a suppliant; and, as the humble minister of the commons, he entreated his masters to pardon these noble criminals, for whose repentance and future service he pledged his faith and authority. "If you are spared," said the tribune, "by the mercy of the Romans, will you not promise to support the good estate with your lives and fortunes?" Astonished by this marvellous clemency, the barons bowed their heads; and, while they devoutly repeated the oath of allegiance, might whisper a secret, and more sincere, assurance of revenge. A priest, in the name of the people, pronounced their absolution. They received the

communion with the tribune, assisted at the banquet, followed the procession ; and, after every spiritual and temporal sign of reconciliation, were dismissed in safety to their respective homes, with the new honours and titles of generals, consuls, and patri-
cians.⁴⁸

During some weeks they were checked by the memory of their danger rather than of their deliverance, till the more powerful of the Ursini, escaping with the Colonna from the city, erected at Marino the standard of rebellion. The fortifications of the castle were instantly restored ; the vassals attended their lord ; the outlaws armed against the magistrate ; the flocks and herds, the harvests and vineyards, from Marino to the gates of Rome, were swept away or destroyed ; and the people arraigned Rienzi as the author of the calamities which his government had taught them to forget. In the camp Rienzi appeared to less advantage than in the rostrum ; and he neglected the progress of the rebel barons till their numbers were strong and their castles impregnable. From the pages of Livy he had not imbibed the art, or even the courage, of a general. An army of twenty thousand Romans returned, without honour or effect, from the attack of Marino ; and his vengeance was amused by painting his enemies, their heads downwards, and drowning two dogs (at least they should have been bears) as the representatives of the Ursini. The belief of his incapacity encouraged their operations : they were invited by their secret adherents ; and the barons attempted, with four thousand foot and sixteen hundred horse, to enter Rome by force or surprise. The city was prepared for their reception ; the alarm bell rung all night ; the gates were strictly guarded, or insolently open ; and after some hesitation they sounded a retreat. The two first divisions had passed along the walls, but the prospect of a free entrance tempted the head-
strong valour of the nobles in the rear ; and, after a successful skirmish, they were overthrown and massacred without quarter by the crowds of the Roman people. Stephen Colonna the younger, the noble spirit to whom Petrarch ascribed the restoration of Italy, was preceded or accompanied in death by his son John, a gallant youth, by his brother Peter, who might regret the ease and honours of the church, by a nephew of legitimate birth, and by two bastards of the Colonna race ; and the number

They oppose
Rienzi in arms

Defeat and
death of the
Colonna, Nov.
20

⁴⁸The original letter, in which Rienzi justifies his treatment of the Colonna (Hocsemius, apud Du Cerceau, p. 222-229), displays, in genuine colours, the mixture of the knave and the madman.

of seven, the seven crowns, as Rienzi styled them, of the Holy Ghost, was completed by the agony of the deplorable parent, of the veteran chief, who had survived the hope and fortune of his house. The vision and prophecies of St. Martin and Pope Boniface had been used by the tribune to animate his troops; ⁴⁹ he displayed, at least in the pursuit, the spirit of an hero; but he forgot the maxims of the ancient Romans, who abhorred the triumphs of civil war. The conqueror ascended the Capitol; deposited his crown and sceptre on the altar; and boasted with some truth that he had cut off an ear which neither pope nor emperor had been able to amputate.⁵⁰ His base and implacable revenge denied the honours of burial; and the bodies of the Colonna, which he threatened to expose with those of the vilest malefactors, were secretly interred by the holy virgins of their name and family.⁵¹ The people sympathized in their grief, repented of their own fury, and detested the indecent joy of Rienzi, who visited the spot where these illustrious victims had fallen. It was on that fatal spot that he conferred on his son the honour of knighthood; and the ceremony was accomplished by a slight blow from each of the horsemen of the guard, and by a ridiculous and inhuman ablution from a pool of water, which was yet polluted with patrician blood.⁵²

A short delay would have saved the Colonna, the delay of a single month, which elapsed between the triumph and the exile of

Full and Sight
of the tribune
Rienzi, A.D.
1367, Dec. 18

⁴⁹ Rienzi, in the above-mentioned letter, ascribes to St. Martin the tribune, Boniface VIII. the enemy of Colonna, himself, and the Roman people, the glory of the day, which Villani likewise (l. xii. c. 104) describes as a regular battle. The disorderly skirmish, the flight of the Romans, and the cowardice of Rienzi are painted in the simple and minute narrative of Fortibocca, or the anonymous citizen (l. ii. c. 34-37).

⁵⁰ In describing the fall of the Colonna, I speak only of the family of Stephen the Elder, who is often confounded by the P. du Cerceau with his son. That family was extinguished, but the house has been perpetuated in the collateral branches, of which I have not a very accurate knowledge. *Circumspice (says Petrarch) families tue statum, Columnniensium domus: solito pauciores habeat columnas. Quid ad rem? modo fundamentum stabile solidumque permaneat.*

⁵¹ The convent of St. Silvester was founded, endowed, and protected by the Colonna cardinals, for the daughters of the family who embraced a monastic life, and who, in the year 1318, were twelve in number. The others were allowed to marry with their kinsmen in the fourth degree, and the dispensation was justified by the small number and close alliances of the noble families of Rome (*Mémoires sur Petrarque, tom. i. p. 110, tom. ii. p. 401*).

⁵² Petrarch wrote a stiff and pedantic letter of consolation (*Fam. l. vii. epist. 19, p. 682, 683*). The friend was lost in the patriot. *Nulla toto orbe principum familia carior; carior tamen respublica, carior Roma, carior Italia.*

Je rends grâces aux Dieux de n'être pas Romain.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

THE UNITED STATES

1945
1946
1947
1948

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY OF DEFENSE
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20301
MEMORANDUM FOR THE SECRETARY OF DEFENSE
SUBJECT: [Illegible]

[The following text is extremely faint and largely illegible due to the quality of the scan. It appears to be a memorandum or report, possibly discussing military or defense-related matters.]

1949
1950
1951
1952

1953

1954
1955

1956

1957
1958
1959

After an exile of seven years, the first deliverer was again restored to his country. In the disguise of a monk or a pilgrim, he escaped from the castle of St. Angelo, implored the friendship of the king of Hungary at Naples, tempted the ambition of every bold adventurer, mingled at Rome with the pilgrims of the jubilee, lay concealed among the hermits of the Apennine,⁶⁸ and wandered through the cities of Italy, Germany, and Bohemia. His person was invisible, his name was yet formidable; and the anxiety of the court of Avignon supposes, and even magnifies, his personal merit. The emperor Charles the Fourth gave audience to a stranger, who frankly revealed himself as the tribune of the republic and astonished an assembly of ambassadors and princes by the eloquence of a patriot and the visions of a prophet, the downfall of tyranny and the kingdom of the Holy Ghost.⁶⁹ Whatever had been his hopes, Riensi found himself a captive; but he supported a character of independence and dignity, and obeyed, as his own choice, the irresistible summons of the supreme pontiff. The zeal of Petrarch, which had been cooled by the unworthy conduct, was rekindled by the sufferings and the presence, of his friend; and he boldly complains of the times in which the saviour of Rome was delivered by her emperor into the hands of her bishop. Rienzi was transported slowly, but in safe custody, from Prague to Avignon; his entrance into the city was that of a malefactor; in his prison he was chained by the leg; and four cardinals were named to inquire into the crimes of heresy and rebellion. But his trial and condemnation would have involved some questions which it was more prudent to leave under the veil of mystery: the temporal supremacy of the popes; the duty of residence; the civil and ecclesiastical privileges of the clergy and people of

Adventures of
Rienzi

(At Prague,
July, A.D.
1391)

(Prisoner at
Ravenna,
A.D. 1391-2)

A prisoner at
Avignon, A.D.
1391 (1392)

⁶⁸ [The Fraticelli of Monte Majella in the Abruzzi. Rienzi stayed there above two years, doing penance for his sins.]

⁶⁹ These visions, of which the friends and enemies of Rienzi seem alike ignorant, are surely magnified by the zeal of Pollistore, a Dominican inquisitor (*Rer. Ital. tom. xxv. c. 36, p. 819*). Had the tribune taught that Christ was succeeded by the Holy Ghost, that the tyranny of the pope would be abolished, he might have been convicted of heresy and treason without offending the Roman people. [The *Letters of Rienzi* at this time (given in Papencordt's work cited above, p. 259, note 20) are very important. They portray the state of Rome; indict the Pope; and are thoroughly Ghibelline in spirit, expressing the need of keeping the secular and ecclesiastical powers apart. Gregorovius says (vi. 346): "The tribune in chains at Prague was more dangerous to the Papacy than he had been when at the height of his power in the Capitol. He now expressed, like the Monarchists, the necessity for mankind of a reformation; and this constitutes the serious importance of this extraordinary Roman, and secures him a place in history."]

Rome. The reigning pontiff well deserved the appellation of *Clement*; the strange vicissitudes and magnanimous spirit of the captive excited his pity and esteem; and Petrarch believes that he respected in the hero the name and sacred character of a poet.⁶⁰ Rienzi was indulged with an easy confinement and the use of books; and in the assiduous study of Livy and the Bible he sought the cause and the consolation of his misfortunes.

The succeeding pontificate of Innocent the Sixth opened a new prospect of his deliverance and restoration; and the court of Avignon was persuaded that the successful rebel could alone appease and reform the anarchy of the metropolis. After a solemn profession of fidelity, the Roman tribune was sent into Italy with the title of senator; but the death of Baroncelli appeared to supersede the use of his mission; and the legate, Cardinal Albornoz,⁶¹ a consummate statesman, allowed him, with reluctance, and without aid, to undertake the perilous experiment. His first reception was equal to his wishes: the day of his entrance was a public festival, and his eloquence and authority revived the laws of the good estate. But this momentary sunshine was soon clouded by his own vices and those of the people: in the Capitol, he might often regret the prison of Avignon; and, after a second administration of four months, Rienzi was massacred in a tumult which had been fomented by the Roman barons. In the society of the Germans and Bohemians, he is said to have contracted the habits of intemperance and cruelty; adversity had chilled his enthusiasm, without fortifying his reason or virtue; and that youthful hope, that lively assurance, which is the pledge of success, was now succeeded by the cold impotence of distrust and despair. The tribune had reigned with absolute dominion, by the choice and in the hearts of the Romans; the senator was the servile minister of a foreign court; and, while he was suspected by the people, he was abandoned by the prince. The legate Albornoz, who seemed desirous of his ruin, inflexibly refused all supplies of men and money; a faithful subject could

⁶⁰ The astonishment, the envy almost, of Petrarch is a proof, if not of the truth of this incredible fact, at least of his own veracity. The Abbé de Sade (*Mémoires*, tom. iii. p. 242) quotes the sixth epistle of the thirteenth book of Petrarch, but it is of the royal Ms. which he consulted, and not of the ordinary Basil edition (p. 920).

⁶¹ Egidius or Giles Albornoz, a noble Spaniard, archbishop of Toledo, and cardinal legate in Italy (A.D. 1353-1367), restored, by his arms and counsels, the temporal dominion of the popes. His life has been separately written by Sepulveda; but Dryden could not reasonably suppose that his name, or that of Wolsey, had had the ears of the Mufti in Don Sebastian.

(Death of
Clement VI.
Dec. 6, A.D.
1393)

Rienzi,
senator of
Rome, A.D.
1394

(August 1)

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

of Rienzi has often been celebrated as the deliverer of his country and the last of the Roman patriots.⁶³

Petrarch invites and upbraids the emperor Charles IV. A. D. 1355, January—May

(Coronation, April 5, Easter Day)

The first and most generous wish of Petrarch was the restoration of a free republic; but, after the exile and death of his plebeian hero, he turned his eyes from the tribune to the king of the Romans. The Capitol was yet stained with the blood of Rienzi, when Charles the Fourth descended from the Alps to obtain the Italian and Imperial crowns. In his passage through Milan he received the visit, and repaid the flattery, of the poet-laureat; accepted a medal of Augustus; and promised, without a smile, to imitate the founder of the Roman monarchy. A false application of the names and maxims of antiquity was the source of the hopes and disappointments of Petrarch; yet he could not overlook the difference of times and characters: the immeasurable distance between the first Cæsars and a Bohemian prince, who by the favour of the clergy had been elected the titular head of the German aristocracy. Instead of restoring to Rome her glory and her provinces, he had bound himself, by a secret treaty with the pope, to evacuate the city on the day of his coronation; and his shameful retreat was pursued by the reproaches of the patriot bard.⁶⁴

He solicits the popes of Avignon to fix their residence at Rome

After the loss of liberty and empire, his third and more humble wish was to reconcile the shepherd with his flock; to recall the Roman bishop to his ancient and peculiar diocese. In the fervour of youth, with the authority of age, Petrarch addressed his exhortations to five successive popes, and his eloquence was always inspired by the enthusiasm of sentiment and the freedom of language.⁶⁵ The son of a citizen of Florence invariably preferred the country of his birth to that of his education; and Italy, in his eyes, was the queen and garden of the world. Amidst her domestic factions, she was doubtless superior to France both in art and science, in wealth and politeness; but the difference could scarcely support the epithet of barbarous,

⁶³ The exile, second government, and death of Rienzi are minutely related by the anonymous Roman who appears neither his friend nor his enemy (l. iii. c. 12-25). Petrarch, who loved the *tribune*, was indifferent to the fate of the *senator*.

⁶⁴ The hopes and the disappointment of Petrarch are agreeably described in his own words by the French biographer (*Mémoires*, tom. iii. p. 575-413); but the deep though secret wound was the coronation of Zanubi, the poet-laureat, by Charles IV.

⁶⁵ See, in his accurate and amusing biographer, the application of Petrarch and Rome to Benedict XII. in the year 1334 (*Mémoires*, tom. i. p. 261-265), to Clement VI. in 1342 (tom. ii. p. 45-47), and to Urban V. in 1366 (tom. iii. p. 677-698); his praise (p. 711-715) and excuse (p. 771) of the last of these pontiffs. His angry controversy on the respective merits of France and Italy may be found (*Opp.* p. 266-268).

which he promiscuously bestows on the countries beyond the Alps. Avignon, the mystic Babylon, the sink of vice and corruption, was the object of his hatred and contempt; but he forgets that her scandalous vices were not the growth of the soil, and that in every residence they would adhere to the power and luxury of the papal court. He confesses that the successor of St. Peter is the bishop of the universal church; yet it was not on the banks of the Rhône, but of the Tiber, that the apostle had fixed his everlasting throne; and, while every city in the Christian world was blessed with a bishop, the metropolis alone was desolate and forlorn. Since the removal of the Holy See, the sacred buildings of the Lateran and the Vatican, their altars and their saints, were left in a state of poverty and decay; and Rome was often painted under the image of a disconsolate matron, as if the wandering husband could be reclaimed by the homely portrait of the age and infirmities of his weeping spouse.⁶⁶ But the cloud which hung over the seven hills would be dispelled by the presence of their lawful sovereign: eternal fame, the prosperity of Rome, and the peace of Italy would be the recompense of the pope who should dare to embrace this generous resolution. Of the five whom Petrarch exhorted, the three first, John the Twenty-second, Benedict the Twelfth, and Clement the Sixth, were importuned or amused by the boldness of the orator; but the memorable change which had been attempted by Urban the Fifth was finally accomplished by Gregory the Eleventh. The execution of their design was opposed by weighty and almost insuperable obstacles. A king of France, who has deserved the epithet of Wise, was unwilling to release them from a local dependence: the cardinals, for the most part his subjects, were attached to the language, manners, and climate of Avignon; to their stately palaces; above all, to the wines of Burgundy.⁶⁷ In their eyes, Italy was foreign or hostile; and they reluctantly embarked at Marseilles, as if they had been sold or banished into the land of the Saracens. Urban the Fifth resided three years in the Vatican with safety and honour;

Return of
Urban V. A.D.
1367, October
16-A.D. 1370,
April 17

66

Squalida sed quoniam facies, neglectaque cultu
Cæsaries; multisque malis lassata senectus
Eripuit solitam effigiem: vetus accipe nomen;
Roma vocor.

(Carm. l. ii. p. 77).

He spins this allegory beyond all measure or patience. The epistles to Urban V. in prose are more simple and persuasive (Senilium, l. vii. p. 811-827; l. ix. epist. i. p. 844-854).

⁶⁷ [*Vinum Bennense*, "Beaune".]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

THE DECLINE AND FALL

measure of such apparent reason and propriety. The Eleventh did not survive above fourteen months at the Vatican; and his decease was followed by the election of the West, which distracted the Latin church for many years. The sacred college was then composed of twelve cardinals: six of these had remained at Avignon; five Spaniards, one Spaniard, and four Italians entered the college in the usual form. Their choice was not yet limited to the usual form, and their unanimous votes acquiesced in the archbishop of Naples, a subject of Naples, conspicuous for his zeal and talents, who ascended the throne of St. Peter under the name of Clement the Sixth. The epistle of the sacred college affirms a regular election, which had been inspired, as usual, by the Holy Ghost; he was adored, invested, and crowned with the pontifical rights; his temporal authority was obeyed at Rome and his ecclesiastical supremacy was acknowledged throughout the world. During several weeks, the cardinals were now master with the fairest professions of attachment and loyalty. Till the summer-heats permitted a decent residence in the city. But, as soon as they were united at Anagni in a place of security, they cast aside the mask, and their own falsehood and hypocrisy, excommunicated the pope, the patriarch of Rome, and proceeded to a new election of Gregory of Unova, Clement the Seventh, whom they announced to the nations as the true and rightful vicar of Christ. This choice, an involuntary and illegal act, was annulled by the sword of death and the menaces of the Romans; and their choice justified by the strong evidence of probability and the votes of twelve French cardinals, above two-thirds of the members of the election; and, whatever might be the national jealousies, it cannot fairly be presumed that they would ever restore them to their native country. The accounts and often inconsistent narratives,⁷⁵ the shades of darkness are more darkly or faintly coloured; but the passions of the seditious Romans was inflamed by a sense of their privileges, and the danger of a second emigration. The pope was intimidated by the shouts, and encompassed by the

⁷⁵ The book of the Histoire du Conclé de Pise, M. Lenfant has abridged the original narratives of the adherents of Urban and Clement, of the Spaniards, the French and Spaniards. The latter appear to be the most impartial, and every fact and word in the original Lives of Urban and Clement VII are supported in the notes of their editor Bazar.

arms, of thirty thousand rebels; the bells of the Capitol and St. Peter's rang an alarm: "Death, or an Italian pope!" was the universal cry; the same threat was repeated by the twelve bannerets or chiefs of the quarters, in the form of charitable advice; some preparations were made for burning the obstinate cardinals; and, had they chosen a Transalpine subject, it is probable that they would never have departed alive from the Vatican. The same constraint imposed the necessity of dissembling in the eyes of Rome and of the world; the pride and cruelty of Urban presented a more inevitable danger; and they soon discovered the features of the tyrant, who could walk in his garden and recite his breviary, while he heard from an adjacent chamber six cardinals groaning on the rack. His inflexible seal, which loudly censured their luxury and vice, would have attached them to the stations and duties of their parishes at Rome; and, had he not fatally delayed a new promotion, the French cardinals would have been reduced to an helpless minority in the sacred college. For these reasons, and in the hope of repassing the Alps, they rashly violated the peace and unity of the church; and the merits of their double choice are yet agitated in the Catholic schools.⁷⁶ The vanity, rather than the interest, of the nation determined the court and clergy of France.⁷⁷ The states of Savoy, Sicily, Cyprus, Arragon, Castille, Navarre, and Scotland were inclined by their example and authority to the obedience of Clement the Seventh, and, after his decease, of Benedict the Thirteenth. Rome and the principal states of Italy, Germany, Portugal, England,⁷⁸ the Low Countries, and the kingdoms of the North, adhered to the prior election of Urban the Sixth, who was succeeded by Boniface the Ninth, Innocent the Seventh, and Gregory the Twelfth.

From the banks of the Tiber and the Rhône, the hostile pontiffs encountered each other with the pen and the sword; Great schism of the West, A.D. 1378-1418

⁷⁶ The ordinal numbers of the popes seem to decide the question against Clement VII. and Benedict XIII. who are boldly stigmatized as anti-popes by the Italians, while the French are content with authorities and reasons to plead the cause of doubt and toleration (Baluz. in Præfat.). It is singular, or rather it is not singular, that saints, visions, and miracles should be common to both parties.

⁷⁷ Baluze strenuously labours (Not. p. 1271-1280) to justify the pure and pious motives of Charles V., king of France: he refused to hear the arguments of Urban; but were not the Urbanists equally deaf to the reasons of Clement, &c.?

⁷⁸ An epistle, or declamation, in the name of Edward III. (Baluz. Vit. Pap. Avenion. tom. i. p. 553) displays the seal of the English nation against the Clementines. Nor was their seal confined to words; the bishop of Norwich led a crusade of 60,000 bigots beyond sea (Hume's History, vol. iii. p. 57, 58).

the civil and ecclesiastical order of society was disturbed; and the Romans had their full share of the mischiefs, of which they may be arraigned as the primary authors.⁷⁹ They had vainly flattered themselves with the hope of restoring the seat of the ecclesiastical monarchy, and of relieving their poverty with the tributes and offerings of the nations; but the separation of France and Spain diverted the stream of lucrative devotion; nor could the loss be compensated by the two jubilees which were crowded into the space of ten years. By the avocations of the schism, by foreign arms and popular tumults, Urban the Sixth and his three successors were often compelled to interrupt their residence in the Vatican. The Colonna and Ursini still exercised their deadly feuds; the bannerets of Rome asserted and abused the privileges of a republic; the vicars of Christ, who had levied a military force, chastised their rebellion with the gibbet, the sword, and the dagger; and, in a friendly conference, eleven deputies of the people were perfidiously murdered and cast into the street. Since the invasion of Robert the Norman, the Romans had pursued their domestic quarrels without the dangerous interposition of a stranger. But, in the disorders of the schism, an aspiring neighbour, Ladislaus king of Naples, alternately supported and betrayed the pope and the people; by the former he was declared *gonfalonier*, or general of the church, while the latter submitted to his choice the nomination of their magistrates. Besieging Rome by land and water, he thrice entered the gates as a barbarian conqueror; profaned the altars, violated the virgins, pillaged the merchants, performed his devotions at St. Peter's, and left a garrison in the castle of St. Angelo. His arms were sometimes unfortunate, and to a delay of three days he was indebted for his life and crown; but Ladislaus triumphed in his turn, and it was only his premature death that could save the metropolis and the ecclesiastical state from the ambitious conqueror, who had assumed the title, or at least the powers, of king of Rome.⁸⁰

I have not undertaken the ecclesiastical history of the schism; but Rome, the object of these last chapters, is deeply interested

⁷⁹ Besides the general historians, the Diaries of Delphinus Gentili, Peter Antonius, and Stephen Infessura, in the great Collection of Muratori, represent the state and misfortunes of Rome.

⁸⁰ It is supposed by Giannone (tom. iii. p. 292) that he styled himself *Rex Romæ*, a title unknown to the world since the expulsion of Tarquin. But a nearer inspection has justified the reading of *Rex Ramæ*, of Rama, an obscure kingdom annexed to the crown of Hungary.

Calamities of
Rome

Negotiations
for peace and
union, A.D.
1268-1267

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the genuine and proper seat of the successor of St. Peter. In the name of the senate and people, an eloquent Roman asserted their desire to co-operate in the union of the church, deplored the temporal and spiritual calamities of the long schism, and requested the protection of France against the arms of the king of Naples. The answers of Benedict and Gregory were alike edifying and alike deceitful; and, in evading the demand of their abdication, the two rivals were animated by a common spirit. They agreed on the necessity of a previous interview, but the time, the place, and the manner could never be ascertained by mutual consent. "If the one advances," says a servant of Gregory, "the other retreats; the one appears an animal fearful of the land, the other a creature apprehensive of the water. And thus, for a short remnant of life and power, will these aged priests endanger the peace and salvation of the Christian world."⁸³

Council of
Pisa, A.D.
1409

[June 5]

[Greek Pope]

[Baldassarre
Cossa]
[A.D. 1410]

Council of
Constance,
A.D. 1414-1418

The Christian world was at length provoked by their obstinacy and fraud: they were deserted by their cardinals, who embraced each other as friends and colleagues; and their revolt was supported by a numerous assembly of prelates and ambassadors. With equal justice, the council of Pisa deposed the popes of Rome and Avignon; the conclave was unanimous in the choice of Alexander the Fifth,⁸⁴ and his vacant seat was soon filled by a similar election of John the Twenty-third, the most profligate of mankind.⁸⁵ But, instead of extinguishing the schism, the rashness of the French and Italians had given a third pretender to the chair of St. Peter. Such new claims of the synod and conclave were disputed; three kings, of Germany, Hungary, and Naples, adhered to the cause of Gregory the Twelfth; and Benedict the Thirteenth, himself a Spaniard, was acknowledged by the devotion and patriotism of that powerful nation. The rash proceedings of Pisa were corrected by the council of Constance; the emperor Sigismund acted a conspicuous part as the advocate or protector of the Catholic church; and the number and weight

⁸³ Leonardus Brunus Aretinus, one of the revivers of classic learning in Italy, who, after serving many years as secretary in the Roman court, retired to the honourable office of chancellor of the republic of Florence (*Fabric. Bibliot. mediæ ævi*, tom. i. p. 290). Lenfant has given the version of this curious epistle (*Concile de Pise*, tom. i. p. 192-195). [The Letters of Leonardus were edited in eight books by L. Mehns, 1741.]

⁸⁴ [Pietro Filargo was a native of Candia. The last Greek Pope was John VII. (elected A.D. 705).]

⁸⁵ [Theodoric of Niem, *Historia de vita Johannis XXIII.*, in *Melioribus; Ser. rer. Germ.* i. p. 5 sqq. C. Hunger, *Zur Geschichte Papst Johannis, xxiii. 1876.*]

of civil and ecclesiastical members might seem to constitute the states-general of Europe. Of the three popes, John the Twenty-third was the first victim: he fled, and was brought back a prisoner; the most scandalous charges were suppressed; the vicar of Christ was only accused of piracy, murder, rape, sodomy, and incest; and, after subscribing his own condemnation, he expiated in prison the imprudence of trusting his person to a free city beyond the Alps. Gregory the Twelfth, whose obedience was reduced to the narrow precincts of Bimini, descended with more honour from the throne, and his ambassador convened the session in which he renounced the title and authority of lawful pope. To vanquish the obstinacy of Benedict the Thirteenth, or his adherents, the emperor in person undertook a journey from Constance to Perpignan. The kings of Castille, Arragon, Navarre, and Scotland obtained an equal and honourable treaty; with the concurrence of the Spaniards, Benedict was deposed by the council; but the harmless old man was left in a solitary castle to excommunicate twice each day the rebel kingdoms which had deserted his cause. After thus eradicating the remains of the schism, the synod of Constance proceeded, with slow and cautious steps, to elect the sovereign of Rome and the head of the church. On this momentous occasion, the college of twenty-three cardinals was fortified with thirty deputies; six of whom were chosen in each of the five great nations of Christendom, the Italian, the German, the French, the Spanish, and the *English*:⁸⁵ the interference of strangers was softened by their generous preference

[July 4, A.D. 1455]

[Benedict at Peniscola: 1455 A.D. 1455]

⁸⁵ I cannot overlook this great national cause, which was vigorously maintained by the English ambassadors against those of France. The latter contended that Christendom was essentially distributed into the four great nations and votes of Italy, Germany, France, and Spain; and that the lesser kingdoms (such as England, Denmark, Portugal, &c.) were comprehended under one or other of these great divisions. The English asserted that the British islands, of which they were the head, should be considered as a fifth and co-ordinate nation with an equal vote; and every argument of truth or fable was introduced to exalt the dignity of their country. Including England, Scotland, Wales, the four kingdoms of Ireland, and the Orkneys, the British islands are decorated with eight royal crowns, and discriminated by four or five languages, English, Welsh, Cornish, Scotch, Irish, &c. The greater island, from north to south, measures 800 miles, or 40 days' journey; and England alone contains 32 counties, and 52,000 parish churches (a bold account!), besides cathedrals, colleges, priories, and hospitals. They celebrate the mission of St. Joseph of Arimathea, the birth of Constantine, and the legate powers of the two primates, without forgetting the testimony of Bartholomy de Glanville (A.D. 1360), who reckons only four Christian kingdoms, 1. of Rome, 2. of Constantinople, 3. of Ireland, which had been transferred to the English monarchs, and 4. of Spain. Our countrymen prevailed in the council, but the victories of Henry V. added much weight to their arguments. The adverse pleadings were found at Constance by Sir Robert Wingfield, ambassador from

Election of
Martin V.

of an Italian and a Roman ; and the hereditary as well as personal merit of Otho Colonna recommended him to the conclave. Borne accepted with joy and obedience the noblest of her sons, the ecclesiastical state was defended by his powerful family, and the elevation of Martin the Fifth is the æra of the restoration and establishment of the popes in the Vatican.⁸⁷

Martin V.
A.D. 1417,
Eugenius IV.
A.D. 1431,
Nicholas V.
A.D. 1447

Last revolt of
Rome, A.D.
1494, May 29-
Oct. 28

The royal prerogative of coining money, which had been exercised near three hundred years by the senate, was *first* resumed by Martin the Fifth,⁸⁸ and his image and superscription introduced the series of the papal medals. Of his two immediate successors, Eugenius the Fourth was the *last* pope expelled by the tumults of the Roman people,⁸⁹ and Nicholas the Fifth, the *last* who was importuned by the presence of a Roman emperor.⁹⁰ I. The conflict of Eugenius with the fathers of Basil, and the weight or apprehension of a new excise, emboldened and provoked the Romans to usurp the temporal government of the city. They rose in arms, selected seven governors of the republic and a constable of the Capitol ; imprisoned the pope's nephew ; besieged his person in the palace ; and shot volleys of arrows into his bark as he escaped down the Tiber in the habit of a monk. But he still possessed in the castle of St. Angelo a faithful garrison and a train of artillery : their batteries incessantly thundered on the city, and a bullet more dexterously pointed broke down the barricade of the bridge and scattered, with a single shot, the heroes of the republic. Their constancy was exhausted

Henry VIII. to the emperor Maximilian I. and by him printed in 1517, at Louvain. From a Leipsic Ms. they are more correctly published in the Collection of Von der Hardt, tom. v. ; but I have only seen Lenfant's abstract of these acts (Concile de Constance, tom. ii. p. 447, 453, &c.).

⁸⁷ The histories of the three successive councils, Pisa, Constance, and Basil, have been written with a tolerable degree of candour, industry, and elegance, by a Protestant minister, M. Lenfant, who retired from France to Berlin. They form six volumes in quarto ; and, as Basil is the worst, so Constance is the best, part of the Collection. [See above p. 100, note 40.]

⁸⁸ See the xxviiith Dissertation of the Antiquities of Muratori, and the 1st Instruction of the Science des Médailles of the Père Joubert and the Baron de la Bastie. The Metallic History of Martin V. and his successors has been composed by two monks, Moulinet a Frenchman, and Bonanni an Italian ; but I understand that the first part of the series is restored from more recent coins.

⁸⁹ Besides the Lives of Eugenius IV. (Rerum Italic. tom. iii. p. i. p. 869, and [the Life by Vespasianus Florentinus] tom. xxv. p. 256), the Diaries of Paul Petroni and Stephen Infessura are the best original evidence for the revolt of the Romans against Eugenius IV. The former, who lived at the time and on the spot, speaks the language of a citizen equally afraid of priestly and popular tyranny.

⁹⁰ The coronation of Frederic III. is described by Lenfant (Concile de Basle, tom. ii. p. 276-288) from Æneas Sylvius, a spectator and actor in that splendid scene.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

first magistrate was required to be a doctor of laws, an alien, of a place at least forty miles from the city; with whose inhabitants he must not be connected in the third canonical degree of blood or alliance. The election was annual; a severe scrutiny was instituted into the conduct of the departing senator; nor could he be recalled to the same office till after the expiration of two years. A liberal salary of three thousand florins was assigned for his expense and reward; and his public appearance represented the majesty of the republic. His robes were of gold brocade or crimson velvet, or in the summer season of a lighter silk; he bore in his hand an ivory sceptre; the sound of trumpets announced his approach; and his solemn steps were preceded at least by four lictors or attendants, whose red wands were enveloped with bands or streamers of the golden colour or livery of the city. His oath in the Capitol proclaims his right and duty to observe and assert the laws, to control the proud, to protect the poor, and to exercise justice and mercy within the extent of his jurisdiction. In these useful functions he was assisted by three learned strangers, the two *collaterals* and the judge of criminal appeals: their frequent trials of robberies, rapes, and murders are attested by the laws; and the weakness of these laws connives at the licentiousness of private fends and armed associations for mutual defence. But the senator was confined to the administration of justice; the Capitol, the treasury, and the government of the city and its territory were entrusted to the three *conservators*,⁹⁴ who were changed four times in each year; the militia of the thirteen regions assembled under the banners of their respective chiefs, or *caporioni*; and the first of these was distinguished by the name and dignity of the *prior*. The popular legislature consisted of the secret and the common councils of the Romans. The former was composed of the magistrates and their immediate predecessors, with some fiscal and legal officers, and three classes of thirteen, twenty-six, and forty counsellors, amounting in the whole to about one hundred and twenty persons. In the common council, all male citizens had a right to vote; and the value of their privilege

[*Collateralis*
= assessor]

[*Consilium
Speciale,
Consilium
Generale*]

⁹⁴ [Urban V. introduced the three Conservators of the Civic Camera—"a civic council with judicial and administrative power whose office endures to the present day." Gregorovius, v. p. 439. At the same time, Urban abolished the Council of Seven Reformatores, who had been elected in 1358 to advise the Senators, and suppressed the "Banderesi," the heads of military companies which had been organized in 1356. These Banderesi executed justice (like the Gonfalonieri in Florence), and their power had become very tyrannical. See Gregorovius, *ib.* p. 403.]

was enhanced by the care with which any foreigners were prevented from usurping the title and character of Romans. The tumult of a democracy was checked by wise and jealous precautions: except the magistrates, none could propose a question; none were permitted to speak, except from an open pulpit or tribunal; all disorderly acclamations were suppressed; the sense of the majority was decided by a secret ballot; and their decrees were promulgated in the venerable name of the Roman senate and people. It would not be easy to assign a period in which this theory of government has been reduced to accurate and constant practice, since the establishment of order has been gradually connected with the decay of liberty. But in the year one thousand five hundred and eighty the ancient statutes were collected, methodized in three books, and adapted to present use, under the pontificate, and with the approbation, of Gregory the Thirteenth:⁹⁵ this civil and criminal code is the modern law of the city; and, if the popular assemblies have been abolished, a foreign senator, with the three conservators, still resides in the palace of the Capitol.⁹⁶ The policy of the Cæsars has been repeated by the popes; and the bishop of Rome affected to maintain the form of a republic, while he reigned with the absolute powers of a temporal as well as spiritual monarch.

It is an obvious truth that the times must be suited to extraordinary characters, and that the genius of Cromwell or Rets might now expire in obscurity. The political enthusiasm of Rienzi had exalted him to a throne; the same enthusiasm, in the next century, conducted his imitator to the gallows. The birth of Stephen Porcaro was noble, his reputation spotless; his tongue was armed with eloquence, his mind was enlightened with learning; and he aspired, beyond the aim of vulgar ambition, to free his country and immortalise his name. The dominion of priests is most odious to a liberal spirit: every scruple was removed by the recent knowledge of the fable and forgery of Constantine's donation; Petrarch was now the oracle of the Italians; and, as often as Porcaro revolved the ode which de-

Conspiracy of
Porcaro, A.D.
1587, Jan. 9

⁹⁵ *Statuta almae Urbis Romae Auctoritate S. D. N. Gregorij XIII. Pont. Max. a Senatu Populoque Rom. reformata et edita. Romae, 1580, in folio.* The obsolete, repugnant statutes of antiquity were confounded in five books, and Lucas Pætus, a lawyer and antiquarian, was appointed to act as the modern Tribonian. Yet I regret the old code, with the rugged crust of freedom and barbarism.

⁹⁶ In my time (1765), and in M. Grosley's (*Observations sur l'Italie*, tom. ii. p. 617), the senator of Rome was M. Bielke, a noble Swede, and a proselyte to the Catholic faith. The pope's right to appoint the senator and the conservator is implied rather than affirmed in the statutes.

scribes the patriot and hero of Rome, he applied to himself the visions of the prophetic bard. His first trial of the popular feelings was at the funeral of Eugenius the Fourth: in an elaborate speech, he called the Romans to liberty and arms; and they listened with apparent pleasure, till Forcaro was interrupted and answered by a grave advocate, who pleaded for the church and state. By every law the seditious orator was guilty of treason; but the benevolence of the new pontiff, who viewed his character with pity and esteem, attempted, by an honourable office, to convert the patriot into a friend. The inflexible Roman returned from Anagni with an increase of reputation and zeal; and on the first opportunity, the games of the place Navona, he tried to inflame the casual dispute of some boys and mechanics into a general rising of the people. Yet the humane Nicholas was still averse to accept the forfeit of his life; and the traitor was removed from the scene of temptation to Bologna, with a liberal allowance for his support, and the easy obligation of presenting himself each day before the governor of the city. But Porcaro had learned from the younger Brutus that with tyrants no faith or gratitude should be observed: the exile declaimed against the arbitrary sentence; a party and a conspiracy were gradually formed; his nephew, a daring youth, assembled a band of volunteers; and on the appointed evening a feast was prepared at his house for the friends of the republic. Their leader, who had escaped from Bologna, appeared among them in a robe of purple and gold: his voice, his countenance, his gestures, bespoke the man who had devoted his life or death to the glorious cause. In a studied oration, he expatiated on the motives and the means of their enterprise; the name and liberties of Rome; the sloth and pride of their ecclesiastical tyrants; the active or passive consent of their fellow-citizens; three hundred soldiers and four hundred exiles, long exercised in arms or in wrongs; the licence of revenge to edge their swords, and a million of ducats to reward their victory. It would be easy (he said) on the next day, the festival of the Epiphany, to seize the pope and his cardinals before the doors, or at the altar, of St. Peter's; to lead them in chains under the walls of St. Angelo; to extort by the threat of their instant death a surrender of the castle; to ascend the vacant Capitol; to ring the alarm-bell; and to restore in a popular assembly the ancient republic of Rome. While he triumphed, he was already betrayed. The senator, with a strong party, invested the house; the nephew of Porcaro cut his way through the crowd; but the unfortunate Stephen was drawn from

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

of strength, and concealed, in their aspiring views and the barbarians beyond the Alps. The often subverted by the soldiers were united under the standard of and fluctuating policy of Clement and dominions to the conqueror; in months to a lawless army, more Goths and Vandals.¹⁰² After this tracted their ambition, which was character of a common parent, and hostilities, except in an hasty quarrel, the Turkish sultan were armed at kingdom of Naples.¹⁰³ The French new from the field of battle: Milan, the sea-coast of Tuscany were firmly and it became their interest to main- of Italy, which continued almost the middle of the sixteenth to the century. The Vatican was swayed his policy of the Catholic king; his sed him in every dispute to support; and, instead of the encouragement, which they obtained from the adjacent ty or the enemies of law were in- the iron circle of despotism. The long uation subdued the turbulent spirit us of Rome. The barons forgot the ancestors, and insensibly became the government. Instead of maintaining a vers, the produce of their estates was ed in the pri- expens^{es}, which multiply the pleasures,

the history of the Gothic siege, I have compared the barbarians with the of Charles V. (vol. iii. p. 328-329): an anticipation which, like that of the requests, I indulged with the less scruple, as I could scarcely hope to reach portion of my work.

ambitious and feeble hostilities of the Caraffa pope, Paul IV., may be Guanus (l. xvi.-xviii.) and Giannone (tom. iv. p. 149-163). Those Catholic Philip II. and the duke of Alva, presumed to separate the Roman prince year of Christ; yet the holy character, which would have sanctified his was decently applied to protect his defeat. [For the Popes of the 16th see Ranke, History of the Popes, their Church and State (Eng. tr. by

The popes acquire the absolute dominion of Rome, A. D. 1500, &c.

The spiritual thunders of the Vatican depend on the force of opinion; and, if that opinion be supplanted by reason or passion, the sound may idly waste itself in the air; and the helpless priest is exposed to the brutal violence of a noble or a plebeian adversary. But after their return from Avignon the keys of St. Peter were guarded by the sword of St. Paul. Rome was commanded by an impregnable citadel; the use of cannon is a powerful engine against popular seditions; a regular force of cavalry and infantry was enlisted under the banners of the pope; his ample revenues supplied the resources of war; and, from the extent of his domain, he could bring down on a rebellious city an army of hostile neighbours and loyal subjects.¹⁰⁰ Since the union of the duchies of Ferrara and Urbino, the ecclesiastical state extends from the Mediterranean to the Adriatic, and from the confines of Naples to the banks of the Po; and, as early as the sixteenth century, the greater part of that spacious and fruitful country acknowledged the lawful claims and temporal sovereignty of the Roman pontiffs. Their claims were readily deduced from the genuine or fabulous donations of the darker ages; the successive steps of their final settlement would engage us too far in the transactions of Italy, and even of Europe: the crimes of Alexander the Sixth, the martial operations of Julius the Second and the liberal policy of Leo the Tenth, a theme which has been adorned by the pens of the noblest historians of the times.¹⁰¹ In the first period of their conquests, till the expedition of Charles the Eighth, the popes might successfully wrestle with the adjacent princes and states, whose military force was equal, or inferior, to their own. But, as soon as a studied opposition of France, Germany, and Spain, the monarchs of France, Germany, and Spain, contended with gigantic arms for the dominion of Italy, they

et quand ce ne seroit ce différend la terre de l'église seroit la plus heureuse habitation pour les sujets, qui soit dans tout le monde (car ils ne payent ni tailles ni guerres autres choses), et seroient toujours bien conduits (car toujours les papes sont sages et bien conseillés); mais très souvent en advient de grands et cruels meurtres et pilleries.

¹⁰⁰ By the economy of Sixtus V. the revenue of the ecclesiastical state was raised to two millions and a half of Roman crowns (Vita, tom. ii. p. 291-296); and so regular was the military establishment that in one month Clement VIII. could invade the duchy of Ferrara with three thousand horse and twenty thousand foot (tom. iii. p. 64). Since that time (A. D. 1597), the papal arms are happily rusted; but the revenue must have gained some nominal increase.

¹⁰¹ More especially by Guicciardini and Machiavel: in the general history of the former, in the Florentine history, the Prince, and the political discourses of the latter. These, with their worthy successors, Fra Paolo and Davila, were justly esteemed the first historians of modern languages, till, in the present age, Scotland arose to dispute the prize with Italy herself.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

and diminish the power, of the lord.¹⁰⁴ The Colonna and Ursini vied with each other in the decoration of their palaces and chapels; and their antique splendour was rivalled or surpassed by the sudden opulence of the papal families. In Rome the voice of freedom and discord is no longer heard; and, instead of the foaming torrent, a smooth and stagnant lake reflects the image of idleness and servitude.

The ecclesiastical government
 A Christian, a philosopher,¹⁰⁵ and a patriot will be equally scandalized by the temporal kingdom of the clergy; and the local majesty of Rome, the remembrance of her consuls and triumphs, may seem to embitter the sense, and aggravate the shame, of her slavery. If we calmly weigh the merits and defects of the ecclesiastical government, it may be praised in its present state as a mild, decent, and tranquil system, exempt from the dangers of a minority, the sallies of youth, the expenses of luxury, and the calamities of war. But these advantages are overbalanced by a frequent, perhaps a septennial, election of a sovereign, who is seldom a native of the country; the reign of a young statesman of threescore, in the decline of his life and abilities, without hope to accomplish, and without children to inherit, the labours of his transitory reign. The successful candidate is drawn from the church, and even the convent; from the mode of education and life the most adverse to reason, humanity, and freedom. In the trammels of servile faith, he has learned to believe because it is absurd, to revere all that is contemptible, and to despise whatever might deserve the esteem of a rational being; to punish error as a crime, to reward mortification and celibacy as the first of virtues; to place the saints of the calendar¹⁰⁶ above the heroes of Rome and the sages of Athens; and to consider the missal or the crucifix as more useful instruments than the plough or the loom. In the office of nuncio, or the rank of cardinal, he may acquire some knowledge of the world, but the primitive stain will adhere to his mind

¹⁰⁴ This gradual change of manners and expense is admirably explained by Dr. Adam Smith (*Wealth of Nations*, vol. i. p. 495-504), who roves, perhaps too severely, that the most salutary effects have flowed from the meanest and most selfish causes.

¹⁰⁵ Mr. Hume (*Hist. of England*, vol. i. p. 389) too hastily concludes that, if the civil and ecclesiastical powers be united in the same person, it is of little moment whether he be styled prince or prelate, since the temporal character will always predominate.

¹⁰⁶ A Protestant may disdain the unworthy preference of St. Francis or St. Dominic, but he will not rashly condemn the zeal or judgment of Sixtus V. who placed the statues of the apostles St. Peter and St. Paul on the vacant columns of Trajan and Antonine.

and manners: from study and experience he may suspect the mystery of his profession; but the sacerdotal artist will imbibe some portion of the bigotry which he inculcates. The genius of Sixtus the Fifth ^{Sixtus V. A.D. 1585-1590} ¹⁰⁷ burst from the gloom of a Franciscan cloister. In a reign of five years, he exterminated the outlaws and banditti, abolished the *profane* sanctuaries of Rome, ¹⁰⁸ formed a naval and military force, restored and emulated the monuments of antiquity, and, after a liberal use and large increase of the revenue, left five millions of crowns in the castle of St. Angelo. But his justice was sullied with cruelty, his activity was prompted by the ambition of conquest: after his decease, the abuses revived; the treasure was dissipated; he entailed on posterity thirty-five new taxes, and the venality of offices; and, after his death, his statue was demolished by an ungrateful or an injured people. ¹⁰⁹ The wild and original character of Sixtus the Fifth stands alone in the series of the pontiffs: the maxims and effects of their temporal government may be collected from the positive and comparative view of the arts and philosophy, the agriculture and trade, the wealth and population, of the ecclesiastical state. For myself, it is my wish to depart in charity with all mankind; nor am I willing, in these last moments, to offend even the pope and clergy of Rome. ¹¹⁰

¹⁰⁷ A wandering Italian, Gregorio Leti, has given the *Vita di Sisto-Quinto* (Amstel. 1721, 3 vols. in 12mo), a copious and amusing work, but which does not command our absolute confidence. Yet the character of the man, and the principal facts, are supported by the annals of Spondanus and Muratori (A.D. 1585-1590), and the contemporary history of the great Thuanus (l. lxxxii. c. 1, 2; l. lxxxiv. c. 10; l. c. c. 8). [The source of Leti was a collection of anecdotes, of apocryphal character, entitled *Detti e fatti di papa Sisto V.*, of which the Ms. is in the Corsini library at Rome. This discovery was made by Ranke. See his *Sammtliche Werke*, vol. 39, pp. 59-65 (in Appendix to his *Lives of the Popes*).]

¹⁰⁸ These privileged places, the *quartieri* or *franchises*, were adopted from the Roman nobles by the foreign ministers. Julius II. had once abolished the abominandum et detestandum franchitiarum hujusmodi nomen; and after Sixtus V. they again revived. I cannot discern either the justice or magnanimity of Louis XIV. who, in 1687, sent his ambassador, the marquis de Lavardin, to Rome, with an armed force of a thousand officers, guards, and domestics, to maintain this iniquitous claim, and insult Pope Innocent XI. in the heart of his capital (*Vita di Sisto V.* tom. iii. p. 200-278; Muratori, *Annali d'Italia*, tom. xv. p. 494-496; and Voltaire, *Siècle de Louis XIV.* tom. ii. c. 14, p. 58, 59).

¹⁰⁹ This outrage produced a decree, which was inscribed on marble and placed in the Capitol. It is expressed in a style of manly simplicity and freedom: *Si quis, sive privatus, sive magistratum gerens de collocandâ vivo pontifici statuâ mentionem facere ausit, legitimo S. P. Q. R. decreto in perpetuum infamis et publicorum munerum expers esto. MDXC. mense Augusto* (*Vita di Sisto V.* tom. iii. p. 409). I believe that this decree is still observed, and I know that every monarch who deserves a statue should himself impose the prohibition.

¹¹⁰ The histories of the church, Italy, and Christendom have contributed to the chapter which I now conclude. In the original *Lives of the Popes*, we often discover the city and republic of Rome; and the events of the xivth and xvth centuries

are preserved in the rude and domestic chronicles which I have carefully inspected, and shall recapitulate in the order of time.

1. Monaldeschi (Ludovici Boncomitis) *Fragmenta Annalium Roman.* A.D. 1308, in the *Scriptores Rerum Italicarum* of Muratori, tom. xii. p. 505. *N. B.* The credit of this fragment is somewhat hurt by a singular interpolation, in which the author relates *his own death* at the age of 115 years. [The work seems to be a forgery; and Labruszi (*Arch. della Società Romana di storia patria*, ii. p. 281 199. 1879) ascribes it to Alfonso Ceccarelli (who was executed in 1583).]
2. *Fragmenta Historiæ Romanæ* (vulgo *Thomas Fortificoræ*), in *Romano Dialecto vulgari* (A.D. 1327-1354), in Muratori, *Antiquitat. mediæ Ævi Italiæ*, tom. iii. p. 247-548; the authentic ground-work of the history of Rienzi. [See above, p. 259, note 20.]
3. Delphini (Gentilis) *Diarium Romanum* (A.D. 1370-1410), in the *Rerum Italicarum*, tom. iii. p. ii. p. 846.
4. Antonii (Petri) *Diarium Rom.* (A.D. 1404-1417), tom. xxiv. p. 969. [See Savignoni, *Giornale d'Antonio di Pietro dello Schiavo*, in the *Arch. della Società Rom. di stor. patr.* xiii. p. 295 199.]
5. Petroni (Pauli) *Miscellanea Historica Romana* (A.D. 1433-1446), tom. xxiv. p. 1101.
6. Volaterrani (Jacob.) *Diarium Rom.* (A.D. 1472-1484), tom. xxiii. p. 81.
7. Anonymi *Diarium Urbis Romæ* (A.D. 1481-1492), tom. iii. p. ii. p. 1069.
8. Infessuræ (Stephani) *Diarium Romanum* (A.D. 1294, or 1378-1494), tom. iii. p. ii. p. 1109. [New edition by O. Tommasini, 1890.]
9. *Historia Arcana Alexandri VI. sive Excerpta ex Diario Joh. Burcardi* (A.D. 1492-1503), edita a Godefr. Guilelm. Leibnizio, Hanover, 1697, in 4to. The large and valuable Journal of Burcard might be completed from the Ms. in different libraries of Italy and France (M. de Foncemagne, in the *Mémoires de l'Acad. des Inscip.* tom. xvii. p. 597-606). [Best, and only complete, edition by L. Thuasne, 3 vols. 1883-5.]

Except the last, all these fragments and diaries are inserted in the Collections of Muratori, my guide and master in the history of Italy. His country and the public are indebted to him for the following works on that subject: 1. *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores* (A.D. 500-1500), *quorum potissima pars nunc primum in lucem prodit*, &c. xxviii. vols. in folio, Milan, 1723-1738, 1751. A volume of chronological and alphabetical tables is still wanting as a key to this great work, which is yet in a disorderly and defective state. [After the lapse of nearly a century and a half this great Collection has been supplied with Chronological Indices by J. Calligaris and others: *Indices Chronologici ad Script. Rer. Ital.* 1885.] 2. *Antiquitates Italiæ mediæ Ævi*, vi. vols. in folio, Milan, 1738-1743, in lxxv. curious dissertations on the manners, government, religion, &c. of the Italians of the darker ages, with a large supplement of charters, chronicles, &c. [Also published in 17 quarto volumes at Arezzo 1777-80. Chronological Indexes have been prepared to this work too by Battaglini and Calligaris, 1889, &c.] 3. *Dissertationi sopra le Antiquità Italiane*, iii. vols. in 4to, Milano, 1751, a free version by the author, which may be quoted with the same confidence as the Latin text of the Antiquities. 4. *Annali d'Italia*, xviii. vols. in octavo, Milan, 1753-1756, a dry, though accurate and useful, abridgment of the history of Italy, from the birth of Christ to the middle of the xviiith century. 5. *Dell' Antichità Estense ed Italiane*, ii. vols. in folio, Modena, 1717, 1740. In the history of this illustrious race, the parent of our Brunswick kings, the critic is not seduced by the loyalty or gratitude of the subject. In all his works, Muratori proves himself a diligent and laborious writer, who aspires above the prejudices of a Catholic priest. He was born in the year 1672, and died in the year 1750, after passing near sixty years in the libraries of Milan and Modena (*Vita del Proposto Ludovico Antonio Muratori*, by his nephew and successor, Gian. Francesco Soli Muratori, Venezia, 1756, in 4to). [Several biographies of Muratori have appeared since: e.g. by Reina in 1819; by Brigidi in 1871. In 1872, the centenary of his birth, were published: Belyglieri, *La vita, le opere, i tempi di L. A. Muratori*; and Roncaglia, *Vita di L. A. Mur.*]

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



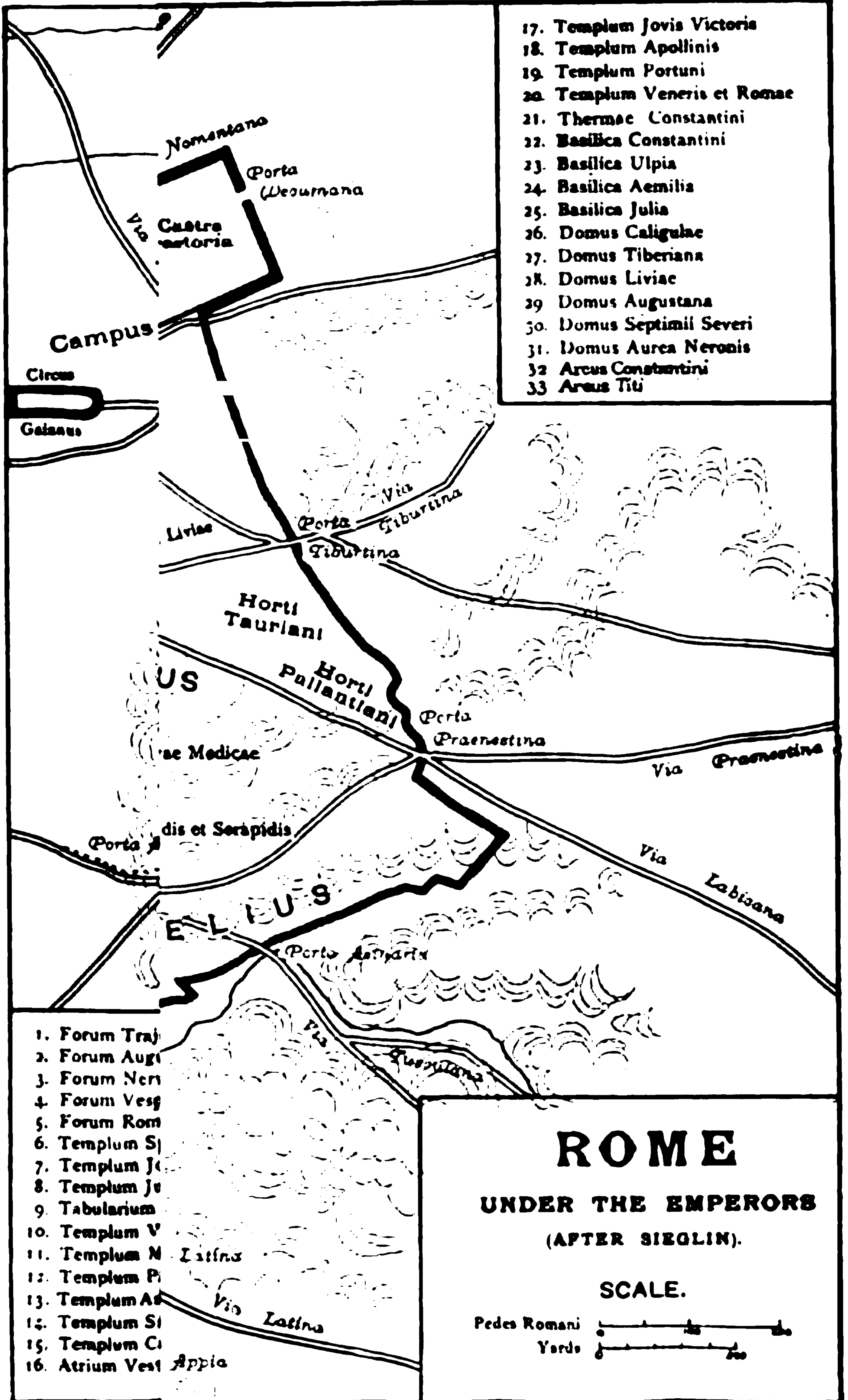
Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies



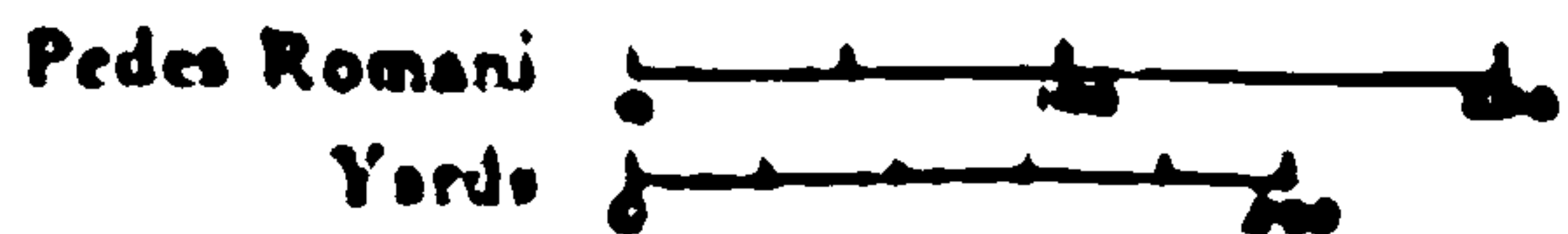
17. Templum Jovis Victoria
18. Templum Apollinis
19. Templum Portuni
20. Templum Veneris et Romae
21. Thermae Constantini
22. Basilica Constantini
23. Basilica Ulpia
24. Basilica Aemilia
25. Basilica Julia
26. Domus Caligulae
27. Domus Tiberiana
28. Domus Liviae
29. Domus Augustana
30. Domus Septimii Severi
31. Domus Aurea Neronis
32. Arcus Constantini
33. Arcus Titi

1. Forum Traj
2. Forum Augu
3. Forum Neri
4. Forum Vesp
5. Forum Rom
6. Templum S
7. Templum J
8. Templum J
9. Tabularium
10. Templum V
11. Templum N - Latina
12. Templum P
13. Templum A
14. Templum S
15. Templum C
16. Atrium Vest Appia

ROME

UNDER THE EMPERORS
(AFTER SIEGLIN).

SCALE.



CHAPTER LXXI

Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century—Four Causes of Decay and Destruction—Example of the Coliseum—Renovation of the City—Conclusion of the whole Work.

IN the last days of Pope Eugenius the Fourth, two of his servants, the learned Poggius¹ and a friend, ascended the Capitoline Hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed, from that commanding spot, the wide and various prospect of desolation.² The place and the object gave ample scope for moralising on the vicissitudes of fortune, which spares neither man nor the proudest of his works, which buries empires and cities in a common grave; and it was agreed that in proportion to her former greatness the fall of Rome was the more awful and deplorable. "Her primæval state, such as she might appear in a remote age, when Evander entertained the stranger of Troy,³ has been delineated by the fancy of Virgil. This Tarpeian rock was then a savage and solitary thicket: in the time of the poet, it was crowned with the golden roofs of a temple: the temple is overthrown, the gold has been pillaged, the wheel of fortune has accomplished her revolution, and the sacred ground is again disfigured with thorns and brambles.

View and
discourse of
Poggius from
the Capitoline
Hill, A.D. 14

¹ I have already (not. 58, 59, on chap. lxxv.) mentioned the age, character, and writings of Poggius; and particularly noticed the date of this elegant moral lecture on the varieties of fortune. [On the subject of this chapter the following works may be consulted: Gregorovius, *Rome in the Middle Ages* (notices of the fortunes of the ancient monuments are scattered throughout the work; consult Index); Jordan's *Topographie der Stadt Rom im Alterthum*, 1871; O. Richter's article on the *Topography of Rome* in *Baumeister's Denkmäler*, iii. p. 1436 seq.; J. H. Middleton, *The Remains of Ancient Rome*, 2 vols., 1892; above all, the works of R. Lanciani: *Pagan and Christian Rome*, 1892; *The Ruins and Excavation of Ancient Rome*, 1897.]

² *Concedimus in ipsis Tarpeis arcis ruinis, pone ingens portæ cujusdam, ut puto, templi, marmoreum limen, plurimasque passim contractas columnas, unde magnæ ex parte prospectus urbis patet* (p. 5).

³ *Æneid*, viii. 97-369. This ancient picture, so artfully introduced and so exquisitely finished, must have been highly interesting to an inhabitant of Rome; and our early studies allow us to sympathise in the feelings of a Roman.

The hill of the Capitol, on which we sit, was formerly the head of the Roman empire, the citadel of the earth, the terror of kings; illustrated by the footsteps of so many triumphs, enriched with the spoils and tributes of so many nations. This spectacle of the world, how is it fallen! how changed! how defaced! The path of victory is obliterated by vines, and the benches of the senators are concealed by a dunghill. Cast your eyes on the Palatine hill, and seek, among the shapeless and enormous fragments, the marble theatre, the obelisks, the colossal statues, the porticoes of Nero's palace: survey the other hills of the city, the vacant space is interrupted only by ruins and gardens. The forum of the Roman people, where they assembled to enact their laws and elect their magistrates, is now inclosed for the cultivation of pot-herbs or thrown open for the reception of swine and buffaloes. The public and private edifices, that were founded for eternity, lie prostrate, naked, and broken, like the limbs of a mighty giant; and the ruin is the more visible, from the stupendous relics that have survived the injuries of time and fortune."⁴

His description of the ruins

These relics are minutely described by Poggius, one of the first who raised his eyes from the monuments of legendary, to those of classic, superstition.⁵ 1. Besides a bridge, an arch, a sepulchre, and the pyramid of Cestius, he could discern, of the age of the republic, a double row of vaults in the salt-office of the Capitol, which were inscribed with the name and munificence of Catulos. 2. Eleven temples were visible in some degree, from the perfect form of the Pantheon, to the three arches and a marble column⁶ of the temple of Peace, which Vespasian erected after the civil wars and the Jewish triumph. 3. Of the number, which he rashly defines, of seven *thermæ*, or public baths, none were sufficiently entire to represent the use and distribution of the several parts; but those of Diocletian and Antoninus Caracalla still retained the titles of the founders, and astonished the curious spectator, who, in observing their solidity and extent, the variety of marbles, the size and multitude of the columns, compared the labour and expense with the use and

⁴ Capitolium adeo . . . immutatum ut vineæ in senatorum subcellia successerint, stercorum ac purgamentorum receptaculum factum. Respice ad Palatinum montem . . . vasta rudera . . . cæteros colles perlustra omnia vacua ædificia, ruinis vineisque oppleta conspicias (Poggius de Varietat. Fortunæ, p. 21).⁷

⁵ See Poggius, p. 8-22.

⁶ [The column was moved by Paul V. to the church of S. Maria Maggiore.]

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

leums or sepulchres of Augustus¹⁴ and Hadrian could not totally be lost; but the former was only visible as a mound of earth; and the latter, the castle of St. Angelo, had acquired the name and appearance of a modern fortress. With the addition of some separate and nameless columns, such were the remains of the ancient city; for the marks of a more recent structure might be detected in the walls, which formed a circumference of ten miles, included three hundred and seventy-nine turrets, and opened into the country by thirteen gates.

This melancholy picture was drawn above nine hundred years after the fall of the Western empire, and even of the Gothic kingdom of Italy. A long period of distress and anarchy, in which empire, and arts, and riches had migrated from the banks of the Tiber, was incapable of restoring or adorning the city; and, as all that is human must retrograde if it do not advance, every successive age must have hastened the ruin of the works of antiquity. To measure the progress of decay, and to ascertain, at each æra, the state of each edifice, would be an endless and a useless labour; and I shall content myself with two observations, which will introduce a short inquiry into the general causes and effects. 1. Two hundred years before the eloquent complaint of Poggius, an anonymous writer composed a description of Rome.¹⁵ His ignorance may repeat the same objects under strange and fabulous names. Yet this barbarous topographer had eyes and ears: he could observe the visible remains;

¹⁴ [The Mausoleum of Augustus was taken as a stronghold by the Colonnas and destroyed in 1167 when they were banished. It was refortified in 1241, and it was used as a pyre for the body of Rienzi. See Lanciani, Pagan and Christian Rome, p. 177-80. The Soderini family converted it into a hanging garden in 1550. The ancient *ustrinum* or cremation enclosure, and a number of monuments, were found in excavations in 1777.]

¹⁵ *Liber de Mirabilibus Romæ, ex Registro Nicolai Cardinalis de Arragoniâ, in Bibliotheca St. Isidori Armario IV. No. 69.* This treatise, with some short but pertinent notes, has been published by Montfaucon (*Diarium Italicum*, p. 283-301), who thus delivers his own critical opinion: *Scriptor xiiiimi circiter sæculi, ut ibidem notatur; antiquariæ rei imperitus, et, ut ab illo ævo, nugis et anilibus fabellis refertus: sed quia monumenta quæ iis temporibus Romæ supererant pro modulo recenset, non parum inde lucis mutuabitur qui Romanis antiquitatibus indagandis operam navabit* (p. 283). [*Mirabilia Romæ*, ed. Parthey, 1867; *The Marvels of Rome or picture of the Golden City*, Eng. tr. by F. M. Nicholls, 1889. The *Mirabilia* is a 12th century recension of an older guide-book, probably of the 10th century, of which the *Graphia aureæ urbis Romæ* (publ. in Ozanam's *Documents inédits*, p. 155 *sqq.*) is another recension. We have a still older description, of about A.D. 900, in the Collection of inscriptions by the Anonymous of Einsiedeln. It is published in Jordan's *Topographie der Stadt Rom im Alterthum*, vol. ii. Cp. the accounts of this topographical literature in Jordan, *op. cit.*, and Gregorovius, iii. p. 516 *sqq.*]

he could listen to the tradition of the people ; and he distinctly enumerates seven theatres, eleven baths, twelve arches, and eighteen palaces, of which many had disappeared before the time of Poggius. It is apparent that many stately monuments of antiquity survived till a late period,¹⁶ and that the principles of destruction acted with vigorous and increasing energy in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. 2. The same reflection must be applied to the three last ages ; and we should vainly seek the Septizonium of Severus,¹⁷ which is celebrated by Petrarch and the antiquarians of the sixteenth century. While the Roman edifices were still entire, the first blows, however weighty and impetuous, were resisted by the solidity of the mass and the harmony of the parts ; but the slightest touch would precipitate the fragments of arches and columns that already nodded to their fall.

After a diligent inquiry, I can discern four principal causes of the ruin of Rome, which continued to operate in a period of more than a thousand years. I. The injuries of time and nature. II. The hostile attacks of the barbarians and Christians. III. The use and abuse of the materials. And, IV. The domestic quarrels of the Romans.

I. The art of man is able to construct monuments far more permanent than the narrow span of his own existence ; yet these monuments, like himself, are perishable and frail ; and, in the boundless annals of time, his life and his labours must equally be measured as a fleeting moment. Of a simple and solid edifice, it is not easy, however, to circumscribe the duration. As the wonders of ancient days, the pyramids¹⁸ attracted the

¹⁶ The Père Mabillon (*Analecta*, tom. iv. p. 502) has published an anonymous pilgrim of the ixth century, who, in his visit round the churches and holy places of Rome, touches on several buildings, especially porticoes, which had disappeared before the xiiith century. [The Anonymous of Einsiedeln, see last note.]

¹⁷ On the Septizonium, see the *Mémoires sur Pétrarque* (tom. i. p. 325), Donatus (p. 338), and Nardini (p. 117, 414). [The existing remains of the Palace of Severus on the Palatine are about sixty yards high. In the eighth century, two-fifths of the building in the centre collapsed. The siege of Henry IV. in 1084 (see below p. 315) destroyed many pillars, and in 1257 Brancalione destroyed the larger extremity. For its use by Sixtus V. see below p. 312.]

¹⁸ The age of the pyramids is remote and unknown, since Diodorus Siculus (tom. i. l. i. c. 44, p. 72) is unable to decide whether they were constructed 1000 or 3400 years before the clxxxth Olympiad. Sir John Marshman's contracted scale of the Egyptian dynasties would fix them about 2000 years before Christ (*Canon. Chronicus*, p. 47). [Most of the pyramids belong to the 4th millennium B.C. The Great Pyramid of Gizeh was the tomb of Khufu (Cheops), the second king of the 4th dynasty said to have flourished in B.C. 3069-3008. See Petrie, *History of Egypt*, l. p. 38 199. For the earlier pyramid of Sneferu, *ib.* p. 32-3 ; and for the pyramids of the successors of Khufu, and the following dynasties, the same volume *passim*.]

curiosity of the ancients: an hundred generations, the leaves of autumn,¹⁹ have dropped into the grave; and, after the fall of the Pharaohs and Ptolemies, the Cæsars and Caliphs, the same pyramids stand erect and unshaken above the floods of the Nile. A complex figure of various and minute parts is more accessible to injury and decay; and the silent lapse of time is often accelerated by hurricanes and earthquakes, by fires and inundations. The air and earth have doubtless been shaken; and the lofty turrets of Rome have tottered from their foundations; but the seven hills do not appear to be placed on the great cavities of the globe; nor has the city, in any age, been exposed to the convulsions of nature which, in the climate of Antioch, Lisbon, or Lima, have crumbled in a few moments the works of ages into dust. Fire is the most powerful agent of life and death: the rapid mischief may be kindled and propagated by the industry or negligence of mankind; and every period of the Roman annals is marked by the repetition of similar calamities. A memorable conflagration, the guilt or misfortune of Nero's reign, continued, though with unequal fury, either six or nine days.²⁰ Innumerable buildings, crowded in close and crooked streets, supplied perpetual fuel for the flames; and, when they ceased, four only of the fourteen regions were left entire; three were totally destroyed, and seven were deformed by the relics of smoking and lacerated edifices.²¹ In the full meridian of empire, the metropolis arose with fresh beauty from her ashes; yet the memory of the old deplored their irreparable losses, the arts of Greece, the trophies of victory, the monuments of primitive or fabulous antiquity. In the days of distress and anarchy, every wound is mortal, every fall irretrievable; nor can the damage be restored either by the public care of govern-

hurricanes
and earth-
quakes;

fire

¹⁹ See the speech of Glaucus in the *Iliad* (2, 146). This natural but melancholy image is familiar to Homer.

²⁰ The learning and criticism of M. des Vignoles (*Histoire Critique de la République des Lettres*, tom. viii. p. 74-118; ix. p. 172-187) dates the fire of Rome from A.D. 64, 19th July, and the subsequent persecution of the Christians from 15th November of the same year.

²¹ Quippe in regiones quatuordecim Roma dividitur, quarum quatuor integræ manebant, tres solo tenuis dejectæ; septem reliquis pauca tectorum vestigia supererant, lacera et semiusta. Among the old relics that were irreparably lost, Tacitus enumerates the temple of the Moon of Servius Tullius; the fane and altar consecrated by Evander præsentî Herculi; the temple of Jupiter Stator, a vow of Romulus; the palace of Numa; the temple of Vesta, cum Penatibus populi Romani. He then deplores the opes tot victoriis quesitæ et Græcarum artium decora . . . multa quæ seniores meminèrant, quæ reparari nequibant (*Annal.* xv. 40, 41).

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

of mankind ; that they wished to burn the records of classic literature and to found their national architecture on the broken members of the Tuscan and Corinthian orders. But, in simple truth, the northern conquerors were neither sufficiently savage nor sufficiently refined to entertain such aspiring ideas of destruction and revenge. The shepherds of Scythia and Germany had been educated in the armies of the empire, whose discipline they acquired, and whose weakness they invaded ; with the familiar use of the Latin tongue, they had learned to reverence the name and titles of Rome ; and, though incapable of emulating, they were more inclined to admire than to abolish, the arts and studies of a brighter period. In the transient possession of a rich and unresisting capital, the soldiers of Alaric and Genseric were stimulated by the passions of a victorious army ; amidst the wanton indulgence of lust or cruelty, portable wealth was the object of their search ; nor could they derive either pride or pleasure from the unprofitable reflection that they had battered to the ground the works of the consuls and Cæsars. Their moments were indeed precious : the Goths evacuated Rome on the sixth,³⁰ the Vandals on the fifteenth, day ;³¹ and, though it be far more difficult to build than to destroy, their hasty assault would have made a slight impression on the solid piles of antiquity. We may remember that both Alaric and Genseric affected to spare the buildings of the city ; that they subsisted in strength and beauty under the auspicious government of Theodoric ;³² and that the momentary resentment of Totila³³ was disarmed by his own temper and the advice of his friends and enemies. From these innocent barbarians the reproach may be transferred to the Catholics of Rome. The statues, altars, and houses of the dæmons were an abomination in their eyes ; and in the absolute command of the city they might labour with zeal and perseverance to erase the idolatry of their ancestors. The demolition of the temples in the East³⁴ affords to *them* an example of conduct, and to *us* an argument of belief ; and it is probable that a portion of guilt or merit may be imputed with justice to the Roman proselytes. Yet their abhorrence was confined to the monuments of heathen superstition ; and the civil structures that were dedicated to the business or pleasure of society might be preserved without injury or scandal.

³⁰ History of the Decline, &c., vol. iii. p. 330.

³¹ *Ibid.* vol. iii. p. 257.

³² *Ibid.* vol. v. p. 190-191.

³³ *Ibid.* vol. v. p. 404.

³⁴ *Ibid.* vol. iii. c. xxviii. p. 195-198.

The change of religion was accomplished, not by a popular tumult, but by the decrees of the emperor, of the senate, and of time. Of the Christian hierarchy, the bishops of Rome were commonly the most prudent and least fanatic; nor can any positive charge be opposed to the meritorious act of saving and converting the majestic structure of the Pantheon.³⁵

III. The value of any object that supplies the wants or pleasures of mankind is compounded of its substance and its form, of the materials and the manufacture. Its price must depend on the number of persons by whom it may be acquired and used; on the extent of the market; and consequently on the ease or difficulty of remote exportation, according to the nature of the commodity, its local situation, and the temporary circumstances of the world. The barbarian conquerors of Rome usurped in a moment the toil and treasure of successive ages; but, except the luxuries of immediate consumption, they must view without desire all that could not be removed from the city in the Gothic waggons or the fleet of the Vandals.³⁶ Gold and silver were the first objects of their avarice; as in every country, and in the smallest compass, they represent the most ample command of the industry and possessions of mankind. A vase or a statue of those precious metals might tempt the vanity of some barbarian chief; but the grosser multitude, regardless of the form, was tenacious only of the substance; and the melted ingots might be readily divided and stamped into the current coin of the empire. The less active or less fortunate robbers were reduced to the baser plunder of brass, lead, iron, and copper; whatever had escaped the Goths and Vandals was pillaged by the Greek

³⁵ Eodem tempore petiit a Phocate principe templum, quod appellant *Pantheon*, in quo fecit ecclesiam Sanctæ Mariæ semper Virginis, et omnium martyrum; in qua ecclesiæ princeps multa bona obtulit (Anastasius vel potius Liber Pontificalis in Bonifacio IV. in Muratori, Script. Rerum Italicarum, tom. iii. p. i. p. 135). According to the anonymous writer in Montfaucon, the Pantheon had been vowed by Agrippa to Cybele and Neptune, and was dedicated by Boniface IV. on the kalends of November to the Virgin, quæ est mater omnium sanctorum (p. 297, 298). [It is now established that the existing Pantheon was not the work of Agrippa but of Hadrian (A.D. 120-5). The original building of Agrippa was rectangular. See Lanciani, Ancient Rome, p. 476-88. Urban VIII. removed the bronze roof from the portico of the Pantheon. Raphael's coffin and bones were discovered here in 1833.]

³⁶ Flaminius Vacca (apud Montfaucon, p. 155, 156; his Memoir is likewise printed, p. 21, at the end of the *Roma Antica* of Nardini), and several Romans, doctrinâ graves, were persuaded that the Goths buried their treasures at Rome, and bequeathed the secret marks filiis nepotibusque. He relates some anecdotes to prove that, in his own time, these places were visited and rifled by the Transalpine pilgrims, the heirs of the Gothic conquerors.

tyrants; and the emperor Constans, in his rapacious visit, stripped the bronze tiles from the roof of the Pantheon.³⁷ The edifices of Rome might be considered as a vast and various mine: the first labour of extracting the materials was already performed; the metals were purified and cast; the marbles were hewn and polished; and, after foreign and domestic rapine had been satiated, the remains of the city, could a purchaser have been found, were still venal. The monuments of antiquity had been left naked of their precious ornaments, but the Romans would demolish with their own hands the arches and walls, if the hope of profit could surpass the cost of the labour and exportation. If Charlemagne had fixed in Italy the seat of the Western empire, his genius would have aspired to restore, rather than to violate, the works of the Cæsars; but policy confined the French monarch to the forests of Germany; his taste could be gratified only by destruction; and the new palace of Aix la Chapelle was decorated with the marbles of Ravenna³⁸ and Rome.³⁹ Five hundred years after Charlemagne, a king of Sicily, Robert, the wisest and most liberal sovereign of the age, was supplied with the same materials by the easy navigation of the Tiber and the sea; and Petrarch sighs an indignant complaint that the ancient capital of the world should adorn, from her own bowels, the slothful luxury of Naples.⁴⁰ But these examples of plunder or purchase were

³⁷ Omnia quæ erant in ære ad ornatum civitatis deposuit: sed et ecclesiam B. Marise ad martyres quæ de tegulis æreis cooperta discooperuit (Anast. in Vitalian. p. 141). The base and sacrilegious Greek had not even the poor pretence of plundering an heathen temple; the Pantheon was already a Catholic church.

³⁸ For the spoils of Ravenna (musiva atque marmora) see the original grant of Pope Hadrian I. to Charlemagne (Codex Carolin. epist. lxxvii. in Muratori, Script. Ital. tom. iii. p. ii. p. 223).

³⁹ I shall quote the authentic testimony of the Saxon poet (A.D. 887-899), de Rebus gestis Caroli Magni, l. v. 437-440, in the Historians of France, tom. v. p. 180:—

Ad quæ marmoreas præstabat ROMA columnas,
Quasdam præcipuas pulchra Ravenna dedit.
De tam longinquâ poterit regione vetustas
Illius ornatum Francia ferre tibi.

And I shall add, from the Chronicle of Sigebert (Historians of France, tom. v. p. 378), extruxit etiam Aquigrani basilicam plurimæ pulchritudinis, ad cuius structuram a ROMA et Ravennâ columnas et marmora devehi fecit. [See above, vol. v. p. 273.]

⁴⁰ I cannot refuse to transcribe a long passage of Petrarch (Opp. p. 536, 537. in Epistolâ hortatoriâ ad Nicolaum Laurentium), it is so strong and full to the point: Nec pudor aut pietas continuit quominus impii spoliata Dei templa, occupatas arces, opes publicas, regiones urbis, atque honores magistratuum inter se divisos; (*habent* ?) quam unâ in re, turbulenti ac seditiosi homines et totius reliquæ vitæ consiliis et rationibus discordes, inhumani foederis stupendâ societate convenirent, in pontes et moenia atque innumeros lapides descivirent. Denique post vi vel annis

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

a ruin, howsoever mangled or profaned, may be viewed with pleasure and regret; but the greater part of the marble was deprived of substance, as well as of place and proportion; it was burnt to lime for the purpose of cement. Since the arrival of Poggius, the temple of Concord⁴⁴ and many capital structures had vanished from his eyes; and an epigram of the same age expresses a just and pious fear that the continuance of this practice would finally annihilate all the monuments of antiquity.⁴⁵ The smallness of their numbers was the sole check on the demands and depredations of the Romans. The imagination of Petrarch might create the presence of a mighty people; ⁴⁶ and I hesitate to believe that even in the fourteenth century they could be reduced to a contemptible list of thirty-three thousand inhabitants. From that period to the reign of Leo the Tenth, if they multiplied to the amount of eighty-five thousand,⁴⁷ the increase of citizens was in some degree pernicious to the ancient city.

IV. I have reserved for the last the most potent and forcible cause of destruction, the domestic hostilities of the Romans themselves. Under the dominion of the Greek and French emperors, the peace of the city was disturbed by accidental though frequent seditions: it is from the decline of the latter, from the beginning of the tenth century, that we may date the licentiousness of private war, which violated with impunity the laws of the Code and the Gospel, without respecting the majesty of the ab-

IV. The domestic quarrels of the Romans

⁴⁴ Porticus ædis Concordiæ, quam cum primum ad urbem accessi vidi fere integram opere marmoreo admodum specioso: Romani post modum ad calcem sedem totam et porticus partem disjectis columnis sunt demoliti (p. 12). The temple of Concord was therefore *not* destroyed by a sedition in the thirteenth century, as I have read in a Ms. treatise del' Governo civile de Rome, lent me formerly at Rome, and ascribed (I believe falsely) to the celebrated Gravina. Poggius likewise affirms that the sepulchre of Cæcilia Metella was burnt for lime (p. 19, 20).

⁴⁵ Composed by Æneas Sylvius, afterwards Pope Pius II. and published by Mabillon from a Ms. of the Queen of Sweden (Musæum Italicum, tom. i. p. 97):—

Oblectat me, Roma, tuas spectare ruinas:
 Ex cujus lapsu gloria prisca patet.
 Sed tuus hic populus muris defossa vetustis
Calcis in obsequium marmora dura coquit.
 Impia tercentum si sic gens egerit annos,
 Nullum hinc indicium nobilitatis erit.

⁴⁶ Vagabamur pariter in illa urbe tam magna; quæ, cum propter spatium vacua videretur, populum habet immensum (Opp. p. 605; Epist. Familiares, ii. 14).

⁴⁷ These states of the population of Rome, at different periods, are derived from an ingenious treatise of the physician Lancisi, de Romani Coeli Qualitatibus (p. 122). [Cp. above p. 264, note 29. The population at beginning of the 16th century was 85,000; in 1663, it was 105,433. Gregorovius, *op. cit.* vi. p. 721.]

sent sovereign or the presence and person of the vicar of Christ. In a dark period of five hundred years, Rome was perpetually afflicted by the sanguinary quarrels of the nobles and the people, the Guelphs and Ghibelines, the Colonna and Ursini; and, if much has escaped the knowledge, and much is unworthy of the notice, of history, I have exposed in the two preceding chapters the causes and effects of the public disorders. At such a time, when every quarrel was decided by the sword and none could trust their lives or properties to the impotence of law, the powerful citizens were armed for safety or offence against the domestic enemies whom they feared or hated. Except Venice alone, the same dangers and designs were common to all the free republics of Italy; and the nobles usurped the prerogative of fortifying their houses, and erecting strong towers⁴⁸ that were capable of resisting a sudden attack. The cities were filled with these hostile edifices; and the example of Lucca, which contained three hundred towers, her law, which confined their height to the measure of fourscore feet, may be extended, with suitable latitude, to the more opulent and populous states. The first step of the senator Brancalione in the establishment of peace and justice was to demolish (as we have already seen) one hundred and forty of the towers of Rome; and in the last days of anarchy and discord, as late as the reign of Martin the Fifth, forty-four still stood in one of the thirteen or fourteen regions of the city.⁴⁹ To this mischievous purpose, the remains of antiquity were most readily adapted: the temples and arches afforded a broad and solid basis for the new structures of brick and stone; and we can name the modern turrets that were raised on the triumphal monuments of Julius Cæsar, Titus, and the Antonines.⁵⁰ With some slight alterations, a theatre, an amphitheatre, a mausoleum, was transformed into a strong and spacious citadel. I need not repeat that the mole of Hadrian has assumed the title and form of the

⁴⁸ All the facts that relate to the towers at Rome, and in other free cities of Italy, may be found in the laborious and entertaining compilation of Muratori, *Antiquitates Italiae mediæ ævi*, dissertat. xxvi. (tom. ii. p. 493-496, of the Latin, tom. i. p. 446, of the Italian, work).

⁴⁹ [Thirteen regions in the 14th century. Their names and armorial bearings in Gregorovius, vi. p. 727-8.]

⁵⁰ As for instance, *Templum Jani nunc dicitur, turris Centii Frangapanis; et sane Jano impositæ turris lateritiæ conspicua hodieque vestigia supersunt* (Montfaucon, *Diarium Italicum*, p. 186). The anonymous writer (p. 285) enumerates, *arcus Titi, turris Cartularia; arcus Julii Cæsaris et Senatorum, turres de Brado; arcus Antonini, turris de Cosectis, &c.* [There is an account of these towers and fortresses in Gregorovius, v. p. 657-99.]

castle of St. Angelo ;⁶¹ the Septisomium of Severus was capable of standing against a royal army ;⁶² the sepulchre of Metella has sunk under its outworks ;⁶³ the theatres of Pompey and Marcellus were occupied by the Savelli⁶⁴ and Ursini families ; and the rough fortress has been gradually softened to the splendour and elegance of an Italian palace. Even the churches were encompassed with arms and bulwarks, and the military engines on the roof of St. Peter's were the terror of the Vatican and the scandal of the Christian world. Whatever is fortified will be attacked ; and whatever is attacked may be destroyed. Could the Romans have wrested from the popes the castle of St. Angelo, they had resolved, by a public decree, to annihilate that monument of servitude. Every building of defence was exposed to a siege ; and in every siege the arts and engines of destruction were laboriously employed. After the death of Nicholas the Fourth, Rome, without a sovereign or a senate, was abandoned six months to the fury of civil war. "The houses," says a cardinal and poet of the times,⁶⁵ "were crushed by the weight and velocity of enormous

⁶¹ Hadriani molem . . . magna ex parte Romanorum injuria . . . disturbavit : quod certe funditus evertissent, si eorum manibus pervia, absumptis grandibus saxis, reliqua moles extitisset (Poggius de Varietate Fortunæ, p. 12). [In A.D. 1379, the mausoleum of Hadrian, which held out for Pope Clement, was destroyed by the Romans. It was "pulled down to the central part which encloses the vault" (Gregorovius, vi. 516). The ruins lay for about twenty years till it was restored by Boniface IX. A.D. 1398, with a tower. In the 14th century there was a covered passage connecting St. Angelo with the Vatican.]

⁶² Against the emperor Henry IV. (Muratori, Annali d'Italia, tom. ix. p. 147). [See above, p. 305, note 17.]

⁶³ I must copy an important passage of Montfaucon : *Turris ingens rotunda . . . Cæcilie Metellæ . . . sepulchrum erat, cujus muri tam solidi, ut spatium per quam minimum intus vacuum supersit : et Torre di Bove [or Capo di Bove] dicitur, a bovis capitibus muro inscriptis. Huic sequiori ævo, tempore intestinorum bellorum, ceu urbecula adjuncta fuit, cujus moenia et turres etiamnum visuntur ; ita ut sepulchrum Metellæ quasi arx oppiduli fuerit. Ferventibus in urbe partibus, cum Ursini atque Columbenses mutuis cladibus perniciem inferrent civitati, in utriusque partis dititionem cederet magni momenti erat (p. 142). [The sepulchre of Cæcilia Metella still stands, a conspicuous object on the Appian Way.]*

⁶⁴ See the testimonies of Donatus, Nardini, and Montfaucon. In the Savelli palace, the remains of the theatre of Marcellus are still great and conspicuous. [The theatre of Marcellus, towards end of 11th century, was converted into a fortress by the Pierleoni. In 1719 it passed into the hands of the Orsini. "The section of the outside shell visible at present, a magnificent ruin in outline and colour, is buried 15 feet in modern soil and supports the Orsini palace erected upon its stage and ranges of seats. What stands above ground of the lower or Doric arcades is rented by the Prince for the most squalid and ignoble class of shops." Lanciani, Ancient Rome, p. 401. The Theatre of Balbus became the fortress of the Cenci.]

⁶⁵ James, cardinal of St. George, ad velum aureum, in his metrical life of Pope Celestin V. (Muratori, Script Ital. tom. i. p. iii. p. 621 ; l. l. c. r. ver. 132, &c.).

Hoc dixisse sat est, Romanam caruisse Senatu
Mensibus exactis hæc sex ; belloque vocatum (vexerat)
In scelus, in socios fraternaque vulnera patres ;

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

statue : an edifice, had it been left to time and nature, which might, perhaps, have claimed an eternal duration. The curious antiquaries, who have computed the numbers and seats, are disposed to believe that, above the upper row of stone steps, the amphitheatre was encircled and elevated with several stages of wooden galleries, which were repeatedly consumed by fire and restored by the emperors. Whatever was precious, or portable, or profane, the statues of gods and heroes, and the costly ornaments of sculpture, which were cast in brass, or overspread with leaves of silver and gold, became the first prey of conquest or fanaticism, of the avarice of the barbarians or the Christians. In the massy stones of the Coliseum many holes are discerned ; and the two most probable conjectures represent the various accidents of its decay. These stones were connected by solid links of brass or iron, nor had the eye of rapine overlooked the value of the baser metals :⁶⁰ the vacant space was converted into a fair or market ; the artisans of the Coliseum are mentioned in an ancient survey ; and the chasms were perforated or enlarged, to receive the poles that supported the shops or tents of the mechanic trades.⁶¹ Reduced to its naked majesty, the Flavian amphitheatre was contemplated with awe and admiration by the pilgrims of the North ; and their rude enthusiasm broke forth in a sublime proverbial expression, which is recorded in the eighth century, in the fragments of the venerable Bede : " As long as the Coliseum stands, Rome shall stand ; when the Coliseum falls, Rome will fall ; when Rome falls, the world will fall ".⁶² In the modern system of war, a situation commanded by three hills would not be chosen for a fortress ; but the strength of the walls and arches could resist the engines of

or *Coliseum* : since the same appellation was applied to the amphitheatre of Capua, without the aid of a colossal statue ; since that of Nero was erected in the court (*in atrio*) of his palace, and not in the Coliseum (p. iv. p. 15-19 ; l. i. c. 4).

⁶⁰ Joseph Maria Suarés, a learned bishop, and the author of an history of Præneste, has composed a separate dissertation on the seven or eight probable causes of these holes, which has been since reprinted in the Roman Thesaurus of Sallengre. Montfaucon (*Diarium*, p. 233) pronounces the rapine of the barbarians to be the unam germanamque causam foraminum. [The travertine blocks were connected by iron clamps, run with lead ; and the holes, as the author says, are due to the removal of these clamps in the Middle Ages. Cp. Middleton, *Remains of Ancient Rome*, ii., 87 *note*.]

⁶¹ Donatus, *Roma Vetus et Nova*, p. 285.

⁶² *Quamdiu stabit Colyseus, stabit et Roma ; quando cadet Colyseus, cadet Roma ; quando cadet Roma, cadet et mundus* (Beda in *Excerptis seu Collectaneis* apud Ducange *Glossar. med. et infimæ Latinitatis*, tom. ii. p. 407, edit. Basll). This saying must be ascribed to the Anglo-Saxon pilgrims who visited Rome before the year 735, the sera of Bede's death ; for I do not believe that our venerable monk ever passed the sea.

assault; a numerous garrison might be lodged in the inclosure; and, while one faction occupied the Vatican and the Capitol, the other was intrenched in the Lateran and the Coliseum.⁶³

Games of
Rome

The abolition at Rome of the ancient games must be understood with some latitude; and the carnival sports of the Testacean Mount and the Circus Agonalis⁶⁴ were regulated by the law⁶⁵ or custom of the city. The senator presided with dignity and pomp to adjudge and distribute the prizes, the gold ring, or the *pallium*,⁶⁶ as it was styled, of cloth or silk. A tribute on the Jews supplied the annual expense;⁶⁷ and the races, on foot, on horseback, or in chariots, were ennobled by a tilt and tournament of seventy-two of the Roman youth. In the year one thousand three hundred and thirty-two, a bull-feast, after the fashion of the Moors and Spaniards, was celebrated in the Coliseum itself; and the living manners are painted in a diary of the times.⁶⁸ A convenient order of benches was restored; and a general proclamation, as far as Rimini and Ravenna, invited the nobles to exercise their skill and courage in this perilous adventure. The Roman ladies were marshalled in three squadrons, and seated in three balconies, which on this day, the third of September, were lined with scarlet cloth. The fair Jacova di Rovere led the matrons from beyond the Tiber, a pure and native race, who

A bull-feast in
the Coliseum,
A.D. 1332,
Sept 3

⁶³ I cannot recover, in Muratori's *Original Lives of the Popes* (*Script. Rerum Italicarum*, tom. iii. p. i.), the passage that attests this hostile partition, which must be applied to the end of the xith or the beginning of the xiiith century.

⁶⁴ Although the structure of the Circus Agonalis be destroyed, it still retains its form and name (Agona, [in Agona], Nagona, Navona): and the interior space affords a sufficient level for the purpose of racing. But the Monte Testaceo, that strange pile of broken pottery, seems only adapted for the annual practice of hurling from top to bottom some waggon-loads of live hogs for the diversion of the populace (*Statuta Urbis Romæ*, p. 186).

⁶⁵ See the *Statuta Urbis Romæ*, l. iii. c. 87, 88, 89, p. 185, 186. I have already given an idea of this municipal code. The races of Nagona and Monte Testaceo are likewise mentioned in the *Diary of Peter Antonius*, from 1404 to 1417 (*Muratori, Script. Rerum Italicarum*, tom. xxiv. p. 1124).

⁶⁶ The *Pallium*, which Menage so foolishly derives from *Palmarium*, is an extension of the idea and the words from the robe or cloak to the materials, and from thence to their application as a prize (*Muratori, dissert. xxxiii.*).

⁶⁷ For these expenses, the Jews of Rome paid each year 1130 florins, of which the odd thirty represented the pieces of silver for which Judas had betrayed his master to their ancestors. There was a foot-race of Jewish as well as of Christian youths (*Statuta Urbis, ibidem*).

⁶⁸ This extraordinary bull-feast in the Coliseum is described, from tradition rather than memory, by Ludovico Buonconte Monaldesco, in the most ancient fragments of Roman annals (*Muratori, Script. Rerum Italicarum*, tom. xii. p. 535, 536); and, however fanciful they may seem, they are deeply marked with the colours of truth and nature.

still represent the features and character of antiquity. The remainder of the city was divided, as usual, between the Colonna and Ursini; the two factions were proud of the number and beauty of their female bands: the charms of Savella Ursini are mentioned with praise; and the Colonna regretted the absence of the youngest of their house, who had sprained her ankle in the garden of Nero's tower. The lots of the champions were drawn by an old and respectable citizen; and they descended into the *arena*, or pit, to encounter the wild bulls on foot, as it should seem, with a single spear. Amidst the crowd, our annalist has selected the names, colours, and devices, of twenty of the most conspicuous knights. Several of the names are the most illustrious of Rome and the ecclesiastical state; Malatesta, Polenta, della Valle, Cafarello, Savelli, Capoccio, Conti, Annibaldi, Altieri, Corsi; the colours were adapted to their taste and situation; the devices are expressive of hope or despair, and breathe the spirit of gallantry and arms. "I am alone like the youngest of the Horatii," the confidence of an intrepid stranger; "I live disconsolate," a weeping widower; "I burn under the ashes," a discreet lover; "I adore Lavinia, or Lucretia," the ambiguous declaration of a modern passion; "My faith is as pure," the motto of a white livery; "Who is stronger than myself?" of a lion's hide; "If I am drowned in blood, what a pleasant death!" the wish of ferocious courage. The pride or prudence of the Ursini restrained them from the field, which was occupied by three of their hereditary rivals, whose inscriptions denoted the lofty greatness of the Colonna name: "Though sad, I am strong;" "Strong as I am great;" "If I fall," addressing himself to the spectators, "you fall with me";—intimating (says the contemporary writer) that, while the other families were the subjects of the Vatican, they alone were the supporters of the Capitol. The combats of the amphitheatre were dangerous and bloody. Every champion successively encountered a wild bull; and the victory may be ascribed to the quadrupeds, since no more than eleven were left on the field, with the loss of nine wounded, and eighteen killed, on the side of their adversaries. Some of the noblest families might mourn, but the pomp of the funerals, in the churches of St. John Lateran and Sta. Maria Maggiore, afforded a second holiday to the people. Doubtless it was not in such conflicts that the blood of the Romans should have been shed; yet, in blaming their rashness, we are compelled to applaud their gallantry; and the noble volunteers, who display their magnificence and risk their lives under the

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Barberini; and the repetition of injury might be dreaded from every reign, till the Coliseum was placed under the safeguard of religion by the most liberal of the pontiffs, Benedict the Fourteenth, who consecrated a spot which persecution and fable had stained with the blood of so many Christian martyrs.⁷⁴ and consecration of the Coliseum

When Petrarch first gratified his eyes with a view of these monuments whose scattered fragments so far surpass the most eloquent descriptions, he was astonished at the supine indifference⁷⁵ of the Romans themselves; ⁷⁶ he was humbled rather than elated by the discovery that, except his friend Rienzi and one of the Colonna, a stranger of the Rhône was more conversant with these antiquities than the nobles and natives of the metropolis.⁷⁷ The ignorance and credulity of the Romans are elaborately displayed in the old survey of the city, which was composed about the beginning of the thirteenth century; and, without dwelling on the manifold errors of name and place, the legend of the Capitol⁷⁸ may provoke a smile of contempt and indignation. "The Capitol," says the anonymous writer, "is so named as being the head of the world; where the consuls and senators formerly resided for the government of the city and the globe.

tom. xiv. p. 371) more freely reports the guilt of the Farnese Pope and the indignation of the Roman people. Against the nephews of Urban VIII. I have no other evidence than the vulgar saying, "Quod non fecerunt Barbari, fecere Barbarini," which was perhaps suggested by the resemblance of the words. [The spelling Barbarini here is intentional and should not be changed.]

⁷⁴As an antiquarian and a priest, Montfaucon thus deprecates the ruin of the Coliseum; Quod si non suo pte merito atque pulchritudine dignum fuisset quod improbas arceret manus, indigna res utique in locum tot martyrum oratore sacrum tantopere sævitum esse.

⁷⁵Yet the Statutes of Rome (L. iii. c. 81, p. 182) impose a fine of 500 *aurei* on whosoever shall demolish any ancient edifice, ne ruinis civitas deformetur, et ut antiqua sedificia decorem urbis perpetuo representent.

⁷⁶In his first visit to Rome (A.D. 1337; see Mémoires sur Pétrarque, tom. i. p. 322, &c.), Petrarch is struck mute miraculo rerum tantarum, et stuporis mole obrutus. . . . Præsentia vero, miram dictu, nihil imminuit: vere major fuit Roma majoresque sunt reliquæ quam rebar. Jam non orbem ab hæc urbe domitum, sed tam sero domitum, miror (Opp. p. 605; Familiares, ii. 14; Joanni Colonna).

⁷⁷He excepts and praises the *rare* knowledge of John Colonna. Qui enim hodie magis ignari rerum Romanarum, quam Romani cives? Invitus dico, nusquam minus Roma cognoscitur quam Romæ.

⁷⁸After the description of the Capitol, he adds, statuse erant quot sunt mundi provinciæ; et habebat qualibet tintinnabulum ad collum. Et erant ita per magicam artem dispositæ, ut quando aliqua regio Romano Imperio rebellis erat, statim imago illius provinciæ vertebat se contra illam; unde tintinnabulum resonabat quod pendebat ad collum; tumque vates Capitolii qui erant custodes senatus, &c. He mentions an example of the Saxons and Suevi, who, after they had been subdued by Agrippa, again rebelled; tintinnabulum sonuit; sacerdos qui erat in speculo in hebdomada senatoribus nuntiavit; Agrippa marchèd back and reduced the — Persians (Anonym. in Montfaucon, p. 297, 298).

The strong and lofty walls were covered with glass and gold, and crowned with a roof of the richest and most curious carving. Below the citadel stood a palace, of gold for the greatest part, decorated with precious stones, and whose value might be estimated at one third of the world itself. The statues of all the provinces were arranged in order, each with a small bell suspended from its neck; and such was the contrivance of art-magic⁷⁹ that, if the province rebelled against Rome, the statue turned round to that quarter of the heavens, the bell rang, the prophet of the Capitol reported the prodigy, and the senate was admonished of the impending danger." A second example of less importance, though of equal absurdity, may be drawn from the two marble horses, led by two naked youths, which have since been transported from the baths of Constantine to the Quirinal Hill. The groundless application of the names of Phidias and Praxiteles may perhaps be excused; but these Grecian sculptors should not have been removed above four hundred years from the age of Pericles to that of Tiberius; they should not have been transformed into two philosophers or magicians, whose nakedness was the symbol of truth and knowledge, who revealed to the emperor his most secret actions, and, after refusing all pecuniary recompense, solicited the honour of leaving this eternal monument of themselves.⁸⁰ Thus awake to the power of magic, the Romans were insensible to the beauties of art: no more than five statues were visible to the eyes of Poggius; and, of the multitudes which chance or design had buried under the ruins, the resurrection was fortunately delayed till a safer and more enlightened age.⁸¹ The Nile, which now adorns the Vatican, had been explored by some labourers in digging a

⁷⁹ The same writer affirms that Virgil captus a Romanis invisibiliter exiit ivitque Neapolim. A Roman magician, in the xith century, is introduced by William of Malmesbury (*de Gestis Regum Anglorum*, l. ii. p. 86); and in the time of Flaminus Vacca (No. 81, 103) it was the vulgar belief that the strangers (the *Golds*) invoked the dæmons for the discovery of hidden treasures.

⁸⁰ Anonym. p. 289. Montfaucon (p. 191) justly observes that, if Alexander be represented, these statues cannot be the work of Phidias (Olympiad lxxxiii.), or Praxiteles (Olympiad civ.), who lived before that conqueror (*Plin. Hist. Natur.* xxxiv. 19).

⁸¹ William of Malmesbury (l. ii. p. 86, 87) relates a marvellous discovery (A.D. 1046) of Pallas, the son of Evander, who had been slain by Turnus: the perpetual light in his sepulchre, a Latin epitaph, the corpse, yet entire, of a young giant, the enormous wound in his breast (*pectus perforat ingens*), &c. If this fable rests on the slightest foundation, we may pity the bodies, as well as the statues, that were exposed to the air in a barbarous age.

vineyard near the temple, or convent, of the Minerva; but the impatient proprietor, who was tormented by some visits of curiosity, restored the unprofitable marble to its former grave.⁸² The discovery of a statue of Pompey, ten feet in length, was the occasion of a law-suit. It had been found under a partition-wall: the equitable judge had pronounced that the head should be separated from the body, to satisfy the claims of the contiguous owners; and the sentence would have been executed, if the intercession of a cardinal and the liberality of a pope had not rescued the Roman hero from the hands of his barbarous countrymen.⁸³

But the clouds of barbarism were gradually dispelled; and the peaceful authority of Martin the Fifth and his successors restored the ornaments of the city as well as the order of the ecclesiastical state. The improvements of Rome, since the fifteenth century, have not been the spontaneous produce of freedom and industry. The first and most natural root of a great city is the labour and populousness of the adjacent country, which supplies the materials of subsistence, of manufactures, and of foreign trade. But the greater part of the Campagna of Rome is reduced to a dreary and desolate wilderness; the overgrown estates of the princes and the clergy are cultivated by the lazy hands of indigent and hopeless vassals; and the scanty harvests are confined or exported for the benefit of a monopoly. A second and more artificial cause of the growth of a metropolis is the residence of a monarch, the expense of a luxurious court, and the tributes of dependent provinces. Those provinces and tributes had been lost in the fall of the empire; and, if some streams of the silver of Peru and the gold of Brazil have been attracted by the Vatican, the revenues of the cardinals, the fees of office, the oblations of pilgrims and clients, and the remnant of ecclesiastical taxes afford a poor and precarious supply, which maintains, however, the idleness of the court and city. The population of Rome, far below the measure of the great capitals of Europe, does not exceed one hundred and seventy thousand

Restoration
and orna-
ments of the
city, A. D.
1620, &c.

⁸² Prope porticum Minervæ, statua est recubantis, cujus caput integrâ effigie tantæ magnitudinis, ut signa omnia excedat. Quidam ad plantandas arbores scrobes faciens detexit. Ad hoc visendum cum plures in dies magis concurrerent, strepitum adeuntium fastidiumque pertæsus, horti patronus congestâ humo texit (Poggius de Varietate Fortunæ, p. 12).

⁸³ See the Memorials of Flaminius Vacca, No. 57, p. 11, 12, at the end of the Roma Antica of Nardini (1704, in 4to).

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

stition, but of empire, are devoutly visited by a new race of pilgrims from the remote, and once savage, countries of the North.

Of these pilgrims, and of every reader, the attention will be excited by an History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire: the greatest, perhaps, and most awful scene in the history of mankind. The various causes and progressive effects are connected with many of the events most interesting in human annals: the artful policy of the Cæsars, who long maintained the name and image of a free republic; the disorder of military despotism; the rise, establishment, and sects of Christianity; the foundation of Constantinople; the division of the monarchy; the invasion and settlements of the Barbarians of Germany and Scythia; the institutions of the civil law; the character and religion of Mahomet; the temporal sovereignty of the popes; the restoration and decay of the Western empire of Charlemagne; the crusades of the Latins in the East; the conquests of the Saracens and Turks; the ruin of the Greek empire; the state and revolutions of Rome in the middle age. The historian may applaud the importance and variety of his subject; but, while he is conscious of his own imperfections, he must often accuse the deficiency of his materials. It was among the ruins of the Capitol that I first conceived the idea of a work which has amused and exercised near twenty years of my life, and which, however inadequate to my own wishes, I finally deliver to the curiosity and candour of the public.

LAUSANNE,
June 27. 1787.

topographers of ancient Rome; the first efforts of Blondus, Fulvius, Martianus, and Faunus, the superior labours of Pyrrhus Ligorius, had his learning been equal to his labours; the writings of Onuphrius Panvinius, qui omnes obscuravit, and the recent but imperfect books of Donatus and Nardini. Yet Montfaucon still sighs for a more complete plan and description of the old city, which must be attained by the three following methods: 1. The measurement of the space and intervals of the ruins. 2. The study of inscriptions and the places where they were found. 3. The investigation of all the acts, charters, diaries of the middle ages, which name any spot or building of Rome. The laborious work, such as Montfaucon desired, must be promoted by princely or public munificence; but the great modern plan of Nolli (A.D. 1748) would furnish a solid and accurate basis for the ancient topography of Rome. [We have now Lanciani's great plan in forty-six sheets: *Forma Urbis Romæ* (published by the Academy of the Lincei). For excavations in recent times see especially the series of the *Bullettino della Commissione archeologica comunale di Roma*, 1872 *et seq.*; *Notizie degli Scavi*, 1876 *et seq.*; *Mittheilungen* of the German archaeol. Institute, *Römische Abtheilung*, 1886 *et seq.*]



APPENDIX

ADDITIONAL NOTES BY THE EDITOR.

L. AUTHORITIES

LAONICUS CHALCONDYLES¹ belonged to a good Athenian family. He went twice as an ambassador to the Sultan Murad, and was on both occasions imprisoned. His History in 10 books covers the period 1298-1463, and thus includes the fall of the Empire of Trebizond. He was a man of great ability, and, though we may wish that he had not set it before himself to imitate Herodotus and Thucydides, we must recognise the talent which he displayed in handling a most intractable period of history. It is very interesting to pass from his predecessors in the series of the Byzantine historians to this writer. We no longer watch events from the single and simple standpoint of Constantinople. The true theme of Chalcondyles is not the decline of the diminished empire, but the growth and development of the Ottoman State.² The centre of events shifts with the movements of the sultan. The weakest point of Chalcondyles is his chronology. (Ed. Baumbach Geneva, 1615; ed. Bekker (Bonn), 1843.)

DUCAS was a grandson of Michael Ducas (a scion of the imperial family of that name), who is mentioned as having taken part in the struggle between Cantacuzenus and John Palaeologus in the 14th century. He was secretary of the Genoese podestà at Phocæa, before the siege of Constantinople, and afterwards he was employed by the Gattilusi of Lesbos as an ambassador to the sultan. His connexion with the Genoese helped, probably, to determine his ecclesiastical views; he was a hearty supporter of union with the Latin Church, as the great safeguard against the Turks. His History covers the period 1341-1462; he is more accurate than Chalcondyles. In language he is not a purist; his work is full of foreign words. (Ed. Bullialdus (Paris) 1649; ed. Bekker (Bonn) 1834, with a 15th cent. Italian translation, which fills up some gaps in the Greek.)

George PHRANZES (op. above p. 97 note), born 1401, was secretary of the Emperor Manuel, whose son Constantine he rescued at Palias in 1429. In 1432 Protovestiarios, he was made Prefect of Sparta in 1448, and then elevated to the post of Great Logothete. See further, above p. 97 and p. 155 sqq. Taken prisoner on the capture of Constantinople (op. above p. 196), he fled to the Peloponnese, visited Italy, and ended his life as Brother Gregory in a monastery of Corfu, where he composed his Chronicle. This work, when Gibbon wrote, was accessible only in the Latin translation of Pontanus (1604). The Greek original was first published by F. K. Alter (Vienna, 1796), from an inferior Ms. An improved text was issued by Bekker in the Bonn series, 1838.³ The history

¹ Chalcondyles, for Chalc<oc>ondyles, is explained by Krumbacher as meaning the man with the bronze handle (Gesch. der byz. Litt., p. 305).

² This has been excellently brought out by Krumbacher, *op. cit.*, p. 302.

³ There is also extant an abbreviated version of the Chronicle in colloquial Greek, and it seems to have been prepared by Phrantzes himself. Cp. Krumbacher, *op. cit.*, p. 306. It has been edited in Mai's *Class. Auct.* ix. p. 594 sqq., 1837, and reprinted in Migne, P.G. 156.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Chingis and his successors, to A.D. 1260. The author writes in a clear straightforward style, and supports his narrative by references to sources. The work was translated by Major Raverty in the *Bibliotheca Indica* (1848, etc.), and there are large extracts in Elliot and Dowson, *History of India as told by its own historians*, ii., 266 sqq.

The second and third Books of the *Memoirs of Tīmūr* are the Institutions and Designs which were translated by Major Davy (1783) and used by Gibbon. Book iv. coming down to 1375 A.D. has since been translated by Major Charles Stewart, 1830 (*The Mulfuzāt Tīmūry, or autobiographical Memoirs of the Moghul Emperor Tīmūr*). The original memoirs were written in Turkish (in the "Jaghtay Turkey language") and were rendered into Persian by Abū Tālib Husaini. The English translations are made from the Persian version.

Mirza Haidar lived in the 16th century and was a cousin of the famous Bābar. His *Tarikh-i-Rashidi* (transl. by Elias and Ross, see above p. 5, note 12, with learned apparatus of introduction and notes) is "the history of that branch of the Moghul Khans who separated themselves, about the year 1381, from the main stem of the Chaghatai, which was then the ruling dynasty in Transoxiana; and it is the only history known to exist of this branch of the Moghuls" (Elias, *ib.* p. 7). There are two parts of the work; the second contains memoirs of the author's life, etc., which do not concern any events touched upon by Gibbon. In the first part, written in 1544-6 in Cashmir, the author follows the history of two dynasties: the Khans of Moghulistan, beginning with Tughluk Tīmūr; and their vassals the Dughlāt amirs of Eastern Turkestan, from one of whom Haidar was descended. This part of the work is based largely on oral traditions, but the author also made use of the work of Sharaf ad-Din. Mr. Elias criticizes "the weakness of the chronology and the looseness with which numbers and measurements are made".

Of Chinese authorities for the history of the Mongols, the most important is the annals entitled *YUAN SHI*, of which Bretschneider (*Medieval Researches for Eastern Asiatic Sources*, 1888) gives the following account (vol. i. p. 180 sqq.). In 1369 "the detailed records of the reigns of the thirteen Yuan emperors were procured, and the emperor (Hungwu) gave orders to compile the history of the Yuan [Mongols], under the direction of *Sung Lien* and *Wang Wei*. The work, which occupied sixteen scholars, was begun in the second month of 1369 and finished in the eighth month of the same year. But as at that time the record of the reign of Shun ti (the last Mongol emperor in China) was not yet received, the scholar *Ou yang Yu* and others were sent to *Pei ping* to obtain the required information. In the sixth month of 1370 the *Yuan Shi* was complete." There were various subsequent editions. "The *Yuan Shi* has been compiled from official documents. Perhaps we must except the biographies, for which the information was probably often derived from private sources. It seems that the greater part of the documents on which the Chinese history of the Mongols is based had been drawn up in the Chinese language; but in some cases they appear to have been translated from the Mongol. I conclude this from the fact that in the *Yuan Shi* places are often mentioned, not, as usually, by their Chinese names, but by their Mongol names represented in Chinese characters" (p. 183). The *Yuan Shi* (p. 186 sqq.) is divided into four sections: (1) consists of the lives of the 13 Mongol Khans in Mongolia and China, and the annals of their reigns from Chingis to Shun ti (1368); (2) memoirs (geographical, astronomical, politico-economical notices; regulations on dress, rites, public appointments, etc.; military ordinances, etc.); (3) genealogical tables and lists; (4) about a thousand biographies of eminent men of the period [Bretschneider observes that these biographies "bear evidence to the liberal views of the Mongol emperors as to the acknowledgment of merit. They seem never to have been influenced by national considerations"]; and notices of foreign lands and nations south and east of China (e.g., Korea, Japan, Burma, Sumatra).

An abstract of the annals of the *Yuan Shi* is contained in the first ten chapters of the *YUAN SHI LI SHIH* (an abbreviated History of the Mongols) which were translated by Gaubil in his *Histoire de Gentchiscan* (see above p. 5, note 11).

From this abstract, and the *Yüan shi* and another work entitled *the Woof of History* (Woof of History), Mr. R. K. Douglas compiled his *Life of Jinghis Khan*, 1877.

†The *YÜAN CH'AO PI SHI*, Secret History of the Mongol dynasty, is a Chinese translation of a Mongol work, which was completed before 1240. It contains the early history of the Mongols, the reign of Chingis, and part of the reign of Haisai; and it was translated into Chinese in the early period of the Ming dynasty. An abridgment of this work was translated into Russian by Palladius, and published in 1866 in the Records of the Russian Ecclesiastical Mission at Peking, vol. 4. It was only six years later that Palladius found that the work was existing in a fuller form. Bretschneider says: This document "corroborates generally Rashid-eddin's records, and occasionally we find passages in it which seem to be a literal translation of the statements of the Persian historiographer. This proves that Rashid had made use of the same source of information as the unknown author of the *Yüan ch'ao pi shi*. As to the dates in the latter work, they are generally in accordance with the dates given by the Mohammedan authors; but in a few cases the *Yüan ch'ao pi shi* commits great chronological blunders and misplacements of events, as, for instance, with respect to the war in the west."

1. In his work cited above Bretschneider has rendered accessible other Chinese documents bearing on Mongol history, especially some relations of Chinese travellers and envoys; for example, an extract (l. p. 9 seq.) from the *Si Yu Lu* (Description of Journey to the West) of Ye-lü Ch'u te'ai, a minister of Chingis who attended him to Persia, 1219-24. (There is a biography of this Ye-lü in the *Yüan Shi*.) Bretschneider makes valuable contributions to the difficult subject of geographical identifications, and discusses among other documents the account of the Armenian prince Haithon's visit to Mongolia, written by Guiragos Gandaketsi. This Haithon I. must not be confounded with Haithon, the monk of Prémontré, mentioned by Gibbon (above p. 5, note 13). The account of Guiragos was translated into French by Klaproth (*Nouv. Journ. Asiat.*, p. 273 seq., 1822) from a Russian version by Argutinski; but the history of Guiragos has since been translated by Brosset.

2. SEANANG SERTSEN, a prince of the tribe of Ordus and a descendant of Chingis, born A.D. 1604, wrote in Turkish a history of the eastern Mongols which he finished in 1662. It was thus written after the Manchus had conquered China and overthrown the Mongols. The earlier part of the book is practically a history of Tibet. The account of the origin of the Mongols is translated from Chinese sources. The author is a zealous Buddhist and dwells at great length on all that concerned the interests of his religion; other matters are often dismissed far too briefly. The relation of the career of Chingis is marked by many anachronisms and inaccuracies. The work was made accessible by the German translation of I. J. Schmidt, under the title: *Geschichte der Ostmongolen und ihres Fürstenhauses*, 1820.

3. MODERN WORKS. Finlay, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. J. von Hammer, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches*, vol. i. 1834. J. W. Zinkeisen, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches in Europa*, vol. i., 1840. Sir H. H. Howorth, *History of the Mongols* (see above, p. 5, note 12). Gregorovius, *History of the City of Rome in the Middle Ages* (see above, p. 210, note 2).

For a sketch of the history of the Ottoman Turks: S. Lane-Poole, *Turkey* (*Story of the Nations*); La Jonquière, *Histoire de l'empire Ottoman*.

For the laws, constitution, etc., of the Ottoman empire, the chief work is Mouradja d'Obson's *Tableau général de l'empire Ottoman*, 7 vols. 1788-1824.

2. THE MONGOL INVASION OF EUROPE, A.D. 1241—(P. 15, 16)

It is only recently that European history has begun to understand that the successes of the Mongol army which overran Poland and occupied Hungary in the spring of A.D. 1241 were won by consummate strategy and were not due to a

mere overwhelming superiority of numbers. But this fact has not yet become a matter of common knowledge; the vulgar opinion which represents the Tartars as a wild herd carrying all before them solely by their multitude, and galloping through Eastern Europe without a strategic plan, rushing at all obstacles and overcoming them by mere weight, still prevails. It will therefore not be amiss to explain very briefly the plan and execution of the Mongol campaign. The nominal commander-in-chief was Batu, but there is no doubt that the management of the expedition was in the hands of Subutai.

The objective of Subutai was Hungary,—the occupation of Hungary and the capture of Gran (Strigonium), which was then not only the ecclesiastical capital but the most important town in the country. In advancing on Hungary, his right flank was exposed to an attack from the princes of Poland, behind whom were the forces of Bohemia and North Germany. To meet this danger, Subutai divided his host into two parts, which we may call the northern and the southern army. The duty of the northern army was to sweep over Poland, advance to Bohemia, and effectually prevent the princes of the north from interfering with the operations of the southern army in Hungary. Thus strategically the invasion of Poland was subsidiary to the invasion of Hungary, and the northern army, when its work was done, was to meet the southern or main army on the Danube.

The northern army advanced in three divisions. The main force under Baidar marched through the dominions of Boleslaw the Chaste, and took Cracow; then bearing north-westward it reached Oppeln on the Oder, where it defeated prince Miecyslaw; and descended the Oder to Breslau. At the same time Kaidu advanced by a more northerly route through the land of Conrad, prince of Mosovia and Cujavia; while on the extreme right a force under Orda terrified the Lithuanians and Prussians and crossed the Lower Vistula. The three divisions reunited punctually at Breslau, the capital of Henry II. of Lower Silesia; and all took part in the battle of Liegnitz (April 9), for which King Wenzel of Bohemia arrived too late. Just one day too late: the Mongol generals had skilfully managed to force Prince Henry to fight before his arrival. Wenzel discreetly withdrew beyond the mountains into Bohemia; all he could hope to do was to defend his own kingdom. Saxony now lived in dread that its turn had come. But it was no part of the plan of Subutai to launch his troops into Northern Germany. They had annihilated the forces of Poland; it was now time for them to approach the main army in Hungary. The Mongols therefore turned their back upon the north, and marched through Upper Silesia and Moravia, capturing town after town as they went. Upon Wenzel who watched them with a large army, expecting them to invade Bohemia, they played a trick. He was posted near the defile of Glatz and the Mongols were at Ottmachau. They were too wary to attack him in such a position; it was necessary to remove him. Accordingly they marched back as if they purposed to invade Bohemia by the pass of the Königstein in the north. Wenzel marched to the threatened point; and when the Mongols saw him safely there, they rapidly retraced their steps and reached Moravia (end of April, beginning of May).

Meanwhile the main army advanced into Hungary in three columns converging on the Upper Theiss. The right wing was led by Shaiban, a younger brother of Batu, and seems to have advanced on the *Porta Hungaricæ*—the north-western entrance to Hungary, in the Little Carpathians. The central column under Subutai himself, with Batu, marched on the *Porta Rusicæ*, the defile which leads from Galicia into the valley of the Theiss. The left column, under Kadan and Buri, moved through Transylvania towards the Körös.

The *Porta Rusicæ* was carried, its defenders annihilated, on March 15; and a flying column of Tartars shot across Hungary, in advance of the main army. On March 15 they were half a day's journey from Pest, having ridden about 180 miles in less than three days. On the 17th they fought and defeated an Hungarian force, and on the same day Shaiban's right column captured Waitzen, a fort near the angle where the Danube bends southward. The object of Subutai in sending the advance squadron Pestward was doubtless to multiply difficulties for the Hungarians in organising their preparations. These preparations were

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

capture of Constantinople. Edited in Martene and Durand, *Theaurus*, i. p. 1819 *sqq.* (1717) and in Chartier's *Chroniques de Charles VII.*, iii. p. 20 *sqq.*, 1852. Tédard was an eye-witness. He escaped by throwing himself into the water, and was rescued by a Venetian boat.

Ubertino Puscolo of Brescia, who was also fortunate enough to escape, has left an account of the last episode of the history of the Empire in four Books of Latin hexameters. It contributes little enough to our knowledge of facts. The description of the siege does not begin till the middle of the Third book. In the First book there is an account of the battle of Varna, and much about the ecclesiastical antagonism of the Greeks and Latins. The Second begins with the death of John Palaeologus and the accession of Constantine, and contains a virulent description of the moral degeneration of the people of Constantinople (v. 117 *sqq.*):—

obscuræ sanctæ pietatis in urbe
nec species nec forma fuit, nec gratia recti,
nec virtutis amor (v. 141).

The work is published in Ellissen's *Analekten*, vol. iii., as an appendix, 1857.

An anonymous Greek poem, in political verses, under the title of *Capture of Constantinople* (Ἀλωσις Κωνσταντινουπόλεως), is misnamed, for it touches only incidentally on the facts of the siege and is in this respect of little historical importance. It is really an appeal to the powers of the West—

αἰθίνταις εὐγενέστατοι, τῆς Δύσεως μεγιστάνες—

French and English, Spanish and Germans

Θραζέζοντες καὶ Ἀγκέλιδες, Σπανιόλους, Ἀλαμάνους—

to combine and recover Constantinople from the unbelievers. The Venetians are especially encouraged and urged to set the example—

Ὁ Βενετζίανος φρόνιμος, πρακταῖοι εἰ ἐπιθήξαι.

The Hungarians, Servians, and Walachians are incited to avenge the defeat of Varna:—

Ὁ Βλαχία πολέθλιθη, Σερβία πορευμένη,
θυμίσθε τὰς αἰχμαλωσίαις, Οὐγκρία λυπημένη.

The author, though orthodox, was not extreme in his ecclesiastical views. He probably lived within reach of Mohammad's arm, for he will not disclose his name:—

Τώρα σκεπάζω τόνομα καὶ κρύβω τόνομά μου,
εὐ μὴ τὸ ἔγερουν οἱ πολλοὶ τίς ὁ τοιαῦτα γράφας.

but gives his friends the means of knowing his identity by mentioning two bodily marks—a black mole on the little finger of his right hand, and another of the same size on his left hand (vv. 10, 20 *sqq.*). The work was first edited by Ellissen in vol. iii. of his *Analekten* (1857), with introduction, translation, and analysis, under the title *Dirge of Constantinople* (Θρήνος Κωνσταντινουπόλεως)—a misnomer, for it is not a dirge but a tearful appeal. Legrand published an improved text in 1880 in vol. i. of his *Bibl. greeque vulgaire*, p. 169 *sqq.*

A Slavonic account, written probably by a Slav of some of the Balkan countries, is also preserved, and has been published by Bremezaki under the title: *Skazaniia o vziatii Tsargrada bezbozhnym turetskym sultanom*, in the *Zapiski* of the 2nd Division of the St. Petersburg Academy of Science, vol. i. p. 99 *sqq.*, 1854.

We have another Slavonic account, written in a mixture of Polish and Servian, by a Janissary of Mohammad, named Michael, who took part in the siege. He was a Servian of Ostroviča, and in his later years he went to Poland and wrote his *Memoirs*, which were edited, as "*Pamiętniki Janiszara*," by Galesowsky in 1888, in vol. v. of his collection of Polish writers (*Zbior Pisarzy Polakich*). This relation is especially valuable as written from outside, by one who knew

what was going on in the camp of the besiegers. It has been mentioned by Mijatovich in his account of the siege (see below).

A report by the Father Superior of the Franciscans who was at the siege was printed by Muratori in vol. 18 (p. 701) of the *Scr. Hist. de' Frati porto del Superiore dei Franciscani presente all' assedio et alla presa di Costantinopoli*. It seems to have escaped the notice of Gibbon.

An account by Christoforo Riccherie (*La presa di Costantinopoli*) is found in Sansovino's *Dell' Historia Universale dell' origine et imperio de' Turchi*, p. 343 sqq.

Abraham, an Armenian monk, who was present at the siege, wrote a "Mémoire élogique," which was translated into French by Brosset and printed in St. Martin's ed. of Lebeau's *Histoire du Bas-Empire* (xvi. p. 307 sqq.) which Brosset completed.

Adam de Montaldo, of Genoa: *De Constantinopolitano excidio ad nobilissimum juvenem Melleducam Cicalam, amicum optimum*; edited by C. Desimont, in the *Atti della Società Ligure di storia patria*, x. p. 325 sqq., 1874.

Besides these relations of eye-witnesses we have some additional contemporary accounts which were not accessible to Gibbon. The most important of these sources, Critobulus, has been spoken of in Appendix 1.

Zorzi Dolphin wrote an account of the "siege and capture of Constantinople in 1453," which was published by G. M. Thomas in the *Sitzungsberichte of the Bavarian Academy*, 1868. His sources were the reports of Leonardo of Ochoa, Philip da Rimano, and anonymous eye-witnesses. He adds little to the story.

A letter of the Genoese "Podestà of Pera," written on June 23, 1453, giving a brief account of the capture, was published by Sylvestre de Sacy in *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la bibliothèque du Roi*, xi., 1, p. 74, 1827.

Documents throwing light on the policy of the Genoese in the fatal year will be found in Vigna's *Codice diplomatico delle Colonie Tauro-Liguri, durante la Signoria dell' ufficio de S. Georgio (1453-1475)*, 1868.

Of little importance for the siege is the *Amyris of Pilelfo*—on the life and deeds of Mohammad in 4 Books—published in Hopf's *Chroniques gréco-romaines*. The *Ἀνάκλημα τῆς Κωνσταντινόπολης* (the anonymous writer of these verses was possibly a Cretan) published by Legrand, *Collection de monuments. Nouv. sér.*, v. p. 85 sqq., and the *Ἐπιῆρος* on the capture, published by Lampros in *Ἐστία*, 1898, p. 821 sqq. tell us nothing. A Monody of Andronicus Callistus, in Migne's *Patr. Gr.*, 161, p. 1124, teaches us, as Paspates has pointed out, that there was water in the ditch outside the western wall.

The final scene of the siege is briefly described in Spandugino Cantacuzino's *Della origine de principi Turchi* (which is included in Bk. ii. of Sansovino's *Dell' Historia Universale*, p. 187 sqq.), p. 195-6.

There are a number of other documents extant which have not yet been printed. C. Hopf and A. Dethier had designed and prepared the publication of these in the *Monuments Hungar. Hist.*, along with many sources which had been already published. Four volumes lie in Ms.; a description of their contents is given by Krumbacher in his *Gesch. der byzantinischen Litteratur*², p. 311-12.

Brosset gathered some material from Armenian and Georgian sources; see the last vol. of St. Martin's edit. of Lebeau's *Histoire du Bas-Empire*.

The Turkish authorities are of very little value for the siege; they were utilised by Hammer. The earliest Ottoman historians belong to the end of the 16th century, viz., the History of the great-grandson of Ashik-Pasha (who lived under Murad I.); the anonymous chronicle, *Tarikhi Ali Osmân*; the *World-view* of Neshri. See Hammer's Introduction to his History. These earlier works were used by the most famous of Ottoman historians, Sad ad-Din, in his *Crown of Histories* (written under Murad III., end of 16th cent.).

The following is a list of the chief modern accounts of the siege that have appeared since Gibbon wrote.

Hammer, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches*, i. p. 308 sqq., 1834.

Zinkeisen, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches*, i. p. 811 sqq., 1840.

Stassulevich (J.), *Osada i Voziatie Vizantii Turkami*, 1854.

Sreznevski, *Poviest o Tsargradie*, 1855.

Mordtmann (A. D.), *Belagerung und Eroberung Constantinopels durch die Türken im Jahre 1453*; 1858. (This had two advantages over previous accounts. Mordtmann knew the ground; and he made use of the diary of Barbaro.)

Finlay, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 503 *sqq.*

Broadribb and Besant, *Constantinople, a sketch of its history from its foundation to its conquest by the Turks*, 1879.

Vlasto (E. H.), *Les derniers jours de Constantinople*, 1883.

Paspate's (A. G.), *Πολιορκία καὶ ἄλωσις τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως ὑπὸ τῶν Ὀθωμανῶν ἐν ἔτει, 1453*; 1890.

Mijatovich (Ch.) *Constantine, Last Emperor of the Greeks*, 1892.

The sources have been dealt with in an article by P. Pogodin in the *Zhurnal min. narod. prosv.*, vol. 283, August, 1889.

A. van Millingen's *Byzantine Constantinople* (1899), which appeared too late to be used in the preparation of this volume, contains much material for the study of the siege, and many difficulties in the episode are discussed. It may be observed that the author argues with considerable force from the view that the route of the Turkish ships across the hills was by the valley of Dolma Bagtchè, a distance of three miles. This is the view adopted above, p. 184, note 63.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

INDEX

BY MRS. J. B. BURY.

PART I. TO TEXT AND NOTES.

- AASI (Āsi)**, father of Amrou, v., 444.
Azas, castle of, v., 439.
Abactores, iv., 503 *note*.
Aban, Arabian soldier, death of, v., 423.
Abares, Scythian colony of, in Hungary, iii., 417 *note*; destroy the Illyrian frontier fortresses, 424 *note*.
Abbas Shah, iv., 377 and *note*.
Abbas, son of Motassem, at Amorium, vi., 45.
Abbas, uncle of Mahomet, at the battle of Honain, v., 369; posterity of, 392; rewarded by Omar, 400.
Abbasides, elevation of the, vi., 18; dynasty of, established, 21; expiration of family of, 47; fall of the, 55 *sq.*
Abd-al-Aziz, son of Musa, treaty of, with Theodemir, v., 459 *sq.*; valour of, 460; death, 483.
Abd-al-Balcidas, Abyssinian history of, v., 444 *note*.
Abdallah defeats the Caliph Mervan, vi., 20 *sq.*
Abdallah ibn Maimun al-Kaddah, founder of the Carmathian movement, vi., 49 *note*.
Abdallah, son of Abbas, v., 326.
Abdallah, son of Abd-al-Motalleb, v., 394; death of, at Muta, 371.
Abdallah, son of Jaafar, v., 428.
Abdallah, son of Musa, v., 483.
Abdallah, son of Said, invades Africa, v., 499; valour of, 460.
Abdallah, son of Zobeir, v., 467-8.
Abd-al-Malik, caliph, conquests of, in Africa, v., 468.
Abd-al-Motalleb, grandfather of Mahomet, v., 313.
Abd-al-Rahman, general of caliph Moawiyah vi., 2 *note*.
Abd-al-Rahman, governor of Africa, [A.D. 749] v., 499 *note*.
Abd-al-Rahman III., Caliph of Spain, vi., 21, 27.; magnificence of, 25.
Abd-al-Rahman, or **Abderame**, victories of, vi., 14; defeated by Charles Martel, 16 *sq.*; death, 17.
Abdas, bishop, destroys the fire temple at Susa, iii., 390 and *note*.
Abderame, *see* Abd-al-Rahman.
Abdication, Diocletian's, i., 389 *sq.*
Abdullah, *see* Abdallah.
Abélard, vii., 222 and *note*.
Abgarus, last King of Edessa, i., 207.
Abgarus V., King of Edessa, ii., 64 *note*; correspondence of with Christ, v., 247 and *note*.
Abibas, son of Gamaliel, body of exhumed, iii., 211.
Ablavius (Ablabius) ii., 212 *note*, 221; death of, 223; Prætorian Præfect, 366 *note*, 490.
Aboras or Araxes, i., 191, 374 and *note*.
Abraham, King of the Homerites, iv., 387; v., 49 and *note*; besieges Mecca, 333, 334 *note*.
Abraham, nephew of John Maron, v., 156.
Abraham, opposes idolatry, v., 339; place of, in the Koran, 340.
Abu-Ayub or **Job**, companion of Mahomet, death of, vi., 3; his grave (*urâ*), vii., 201 and *note*.
Abu-Bekr, publishes Koran, v., 343 and *note*; at battle of Bedr, 362; spreads religion of Mahomet, 352; flight of, from Mecca, 355; chosen by Mahomet, 374; elected Caliph, 382 *sq.*; death, 383; conquers the Arabs, 398; virtues of, 400; invades Syria, 415 *sq.*
Abu-Caab, emir of the Andalusian Arabs, vi., 38.
Abu-Hafs, leader of Sicilian rebels, vi., 177 *note*.

- Abu-Hafs, *see* Abu Caab.
- Abu-Horaira, on Mahomet, v., 335 *note*.
- Abulfeda, v., 385; *era* of, 334; Arabic text of, edited by Gagnier 352 *note*; on burial of Ali, 388 *note*; on the Fatimites, 393 *note*; his *Annales Moslemici*, 402 *note*; his account of Caliph Mervan, vi., 20; of Caliph Muktedir, 24; on the Bedoween, vi., 49; family of, 340 *note*, 341 *note*; spectator of the war in Syria, 364; on the crusaders, 442 *note*; fights against the Moguls, vii., 5 *note*.
- Abulghazi Bahadur, History of the Tartars, by, iii., 72 *note*, 79 *note*; on Zingis Khan, vii., 3 *note*, and 5 *notes*.
- Abulpharagius, or Gregory Bar Hebraeus, primate of the East, v., 70 *note*, 155 and *note*; on the Arabs, 314 *note*; compendious History of, 402 *note*; Dynasties of, 453; on Caliph Almamun, vi., 27; on the Mongols, vii., 22 *note*.
- Abu-l-Waleed, King of Grenada, v., 491 *note*.
- Abu-Moslem, rebellion of, vi., 19 *sq*.
- Abuna, head of the Abyssinian priesthood, v., 165 and *note*.
- Abundantius exiled to Pityus by Eutropius, iii., 363 and *note*.
- Abu-Obeidah, commands Arabian army in Syria, v., 417; at taking of Damascus, 425; at battle of Yermuk, 433; besieges Jerusalem, 435, Antioch and Aleppo, 437; death, 442.
- Abu-Rafe, servant of Mahomet, v., 365 *note*.
- Abū-Sa'id, sultan, death of, vii., 46, date of, *ib. note*.
- Abū-S'īd, the Carmathian, vi., 50.
- Abu Sophian [Abu-Sofyān ibn Harb], prince of Mecca, v., 355; defeated by Mahomet, 363; commands expedition of the nations, 364; besieges Medina, *ib.*; adopts religion of Mahomet, 367; rewarded by Mahomet, 370.
- Abu-Taber, the Carmathian, vi., 50, *sq*.
- Abu-Taleb, uncle of Mahomet, v., 334; his testimony to Mahomet, 335 *note*.
- Abu-Taleb, *read* Abu Lahab, uncle of Mahomet, v., 354 and *note*; death of, 355.
- Ahydus, ii., 145.
- Abyla, fair of, v., 428 *sq*.
- Abyssinia, Church of, ii., 11 *note*; v., 165 *sq*.; christianized, ii., 313; trade of, iv., 233 *note*; described by Comas, 385 *note*; Greek *apostol* in, v., 144; Portuguese in, 165 *sq*.
- Abyssinians, conquered, iv., 224, *sq*.; their alliance with Justinian, 226; an Arab race, v., 164.
- Acacius, Bishop of Antida, redeems the Persian captives, iii., 392.
- Acacius, leader of the Homocines, i., 354 *note*.
- Acacius, master of the bears, iv., 211.
- Acacius, Patriarch of Constantinople, iv., 173 *note*; draws up the *Hænoticon*, v., 128 *note*.
- Academics, i., 30.
- Academy of the Platonists at Athens, iv., 263.
- Acatzires, iii., 459; ruled over by Attila, son of Attila, iii., 475.
- Accaioli, Italian family of, in Greece, vi., 485.
- Accarias, on Roman law, iv., 442 *note*; 455 *note*.
- Accents, Greek, vii., 125.
- Acclamations, addressed to Greek Emperors, vi., 85.
- Acephali, Egyptian sect of, v., 129 and *note*.
- Accesius, Novatian bishop, ii., 332 and *note*.
- Achaia, province of, i., 29.
- Acheloum, taken by the Turks, vii., 171.
- Achelöus, battle of, vi., 135 and *note*.
- Achilles, the, of the Vandals, iv., 171 and *note*.
- Achilleus, tyrant, i., 363, 364 *note*.
- Achin, promontory of, iv., 232.
- Acholius, Bishop of Thessalonica, baptises Theodosius, iii., 141 and *note*.
- Achrida, *see* Lychnidus.
- Acolyth, office of, vi., 82.
- Acra, Mount, ii., 454.
- Acre or Ptolemais, i., 328; *Emir* of, treats with crusaders, vi., 308; Conrad III. at, 330 *note*; siege of (1189 A.D.), 348 *sq*.; Richard I. at, 352; Louis IX. at, 366; metropolis of Latin Christians, 363 (taken by Sultan Khalil, 364, 365 *note*).
- Acropolita George, vi., 433 *note*, 458 *note*; Minister of Vatsoos, 458 *note*; punished by Theodore Lascaris II., 458; collects letters of Theodore Lascaris, 459 *note*.
- Acta Diurna, iv., 450 *note*.
- Acta Sanctorum, iii., 414 *note*.
- Actiac games, restored by Julian, ii., 408 *note*.
- Actions, right of judicial, vi., 492 *sq*.

- Ad. tribe of, v., 354.
 Adam and Clériseau, work on Spalatro, l., 391 *note*.
 Adam, place of in the Koran, v., 340; apocryphal books of, *ib.* *note*.
 Adarman, general of Nushirvan, reduces Syria, v., 41.
 Adarne, passes of, ii., 239.
 Adanctus, martyr, ii., 130.
Adclamationes graves, i., 98 *note*.
Addus (Addai) Doctrine of, v., 247 *note*.
 Addison, Mr., bigotry of, v., 247 *note*, vii., 114 *note*, 308 *note*.
 Addua, river of Lombardy, crossed by Alaric, iii., 252; battle of the, iv., 178.
 Adel or Saphadin, brother of Sultan Saladin, vi., 353.
 Adela, wife of Raymond of Toulouse, vi., 280 *note*.
 Adenulf [*De Excidio urbis Acconis*], vi., 365 *note*.
 Aderbijan or Media, conquered by the Moslems, v., 409 *note*; conquered by Togrul, vi., 232.
 Adhad el Dowlat, tyrant of Persia, v., 388 *note*.
 Adharbijnā, *see* Aderbijan.
 Adhed [Adid], last Fatimite caliph of Egypt, vi., 339 and *note*.
 Adhémar, Bishop of Puy, vi., 265, 280, 305; death, 313.
 Adiabene, march of Julian through, ii., 490; name of Assyria, 495 *note*.
Adiabenicus, title of Diocletian, i., 377; *Maximus*, of Constantius, ii., 226 *note*.
Adjudicatio, iv., 486.
 Admiral, etymology of that name, vi., 83 and *note*.
 Adolius, iii., 413.
 Adolphus, reinforces Alaric, iii., 313 and *note*; count of domestics, 318; succeeds Alaric, 333 *note*; allies himself with Jovinus, 343; assassinated at Barcelona, 347; his death celebrated at Constantinople, 348 *note*.
 Adoption, ceremony of, vi., 289 *note*.
 Adoration of the emperor, i., 381; ceremony of, vi., 83.
 Adorno, Genoese governor, accompanies Amurath II. to Europe, vi., 75.
 Adrian, *see* Hadrian.
 Adrumetum, city of, surrenders to Belisarius, iv., 281; destroyed by Antalas, 392.
 Adulis, seaport, iv., 233 and *note*, 306.
- Adultery, German punishment of, i., 227 and *note*; Roman laws concerning, iv., 500 *note*; declared to be a capital offence, 505.
 Adventus, prætorian prefect, i., 137.
 Advocatus, ii., 174 *note*.
 Ædesius, the Platonist, ii., 437; at Pergamus, 440.
 Ædui, Gallic tribe, ii., 197 and *note*.
 Ægeæ, city in Cilicia, iii., 412.
 Ægidius, master-general of Gaul, revolt of, iv., 26; death, *ib.*; character, *ib.* *note*; defeats Ricimer at Orleans, 38; elected King by the Franks, 100 *note*.
 Ægilus, station of, v., 200 *note*.
 Ælia Capitolina, ii., 9, 454; v., 435 and *note*.
 Ælianus, leader of the Bagaudæ, i., 356 and *note*.
 Ælianus or Lælianus, *see* Lollianus.
 Ælius Gallus, invades Arabia, v., 319 *note*.
 Ælius Prætor, *tripartite* of, iv., 456.
 Æmilianus, emperor, i., 275.
 Æmilianus, governor of Pannonia, revolt of, i., 251, 252.
 Æmona, i., 430 and *note*; resists Maximus, iii., 162; siege of, by Theodosius, 164; Alaric at, 276 and *note*.
 Æneas, galley of, preserved at Rome, iv., 409 *note*.
 Æneas of Gaza, his description of the African confessors, iv., 91 and *note*.
 Æneas Sylvius (Pius II.), founds University of Basil, vii., 100 *note*; efforts against the Turks, 207; at coronation of Frederic III., 290 *note*, 291 *note*; epigram of, 313 and *note*.
 Æolus, tragedy of Euripides, iii., 341 *note*.
 Æon or Emanation of the Deity, Gnostic conception of, ii., 339 and *note*.
 Æras, Greek and Latin, iv., 269; Christian æra, *ib.* *note*; of the elephant, v., 333 and *note*.
 Ærial tribute, iv., 238.
 Æschines, iv., 262; on Alexander, v., 409 *note*.
 Æsculapius, i., 33; island of, iv., 41; temple of, at Lambesa, 298.
 Æstii, inhabitants of the Baltic coast, iii., 58 and *note*; bring amber to Theodoric, iv., 184 and *note*.
 Æteriarch, office of, vi., 82 and *note*.
 Æthiopia, i., 2; ii., 12 *note*; tribes of, join Gildo the Moor, iii., 235; saved by the Portuguese, v., 166.
 Æthiopians, iv., 428 *note*; three thousand at battle of Ascalon, vi., 313.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Akhal Emir, vi., 177 *note*.
 Akindynos, Gregory, vi., 507 *note*.
 Akshahr, death of Bajaset at, vii., 61.
 Ala, lieutenant of the Abbasides, vi., 22.
 Alā ad-Dīn Mohammad, Shah of Carizme, vii., 8 *note*.
 Alā-ad-Dīn, vizir of Orchan, reforms of, vii., 25 and *note*.
 Aladin (Iftikhar) defends Jerusalem, vi., 309.
 Aladin, Sultan of Iconium, vii., 23.
 Alamanni, *see* Alemanni.
 Al-Amin, Caliph of Bagdad, vi., 23 *note*.
 Alani, i., 244; invade Asia, 323; conquered by the Huns, iii., 89, 90; in the service of Gratian, 135; invade Spain, 346; join the Vandals, 349; colony of, at Orleans, 449 and *note*; allies of Ætius, *ib.*; invade Italy, iv., 27 *note*; allies of the Avars, iv., 353 and *note*.
 Alankavak, virgin mother, Seljukides, derived from, vi., 231.
 Alaon, monastery of, v., 287 *note*.
 Alaric, King of the Visigoths, iii., 468; slain by Clovis at Vouillé, iv., 116.
 Alaric, the Goth, family of, iii., 241 and *note*; revolt of, *ib.* 299.; in Greece, 242 299.; enters Athens, 243; destroys Eleusis, 244; retreats to Elis, 245; escapes to Epirus, 246; allies himself with the Emperor of the East, 246; master-general of Eastern Illyricum, *ib.*; King of the Visigoths, 248; in Italy, 249 299.; defeated by Stilicho at Pollentia, 254; demands a province, 276; demands hostages, 287; before Rome, 309; raises the siege, 311; negotiations for peace, 313; takes Ostia, 317; declares Attalus emperor, 318; degrades him, 320; sack of Rome, 321 299.; his moderation, 322; evacuates Rome, 330; his projects, 331 and 332; death and funeral, 333.
 Alatheus and Saphrax, chiefs of the Ostrogoths, iii., 92; send ambassadors to Antioch, 97; at the battle of Hadrianople, 112; cross the Danube, 128; death of Alatheus, *ib.*
 Alauda, Roman legion, i., 9 *note*.
 Alavivus and Fritigern, judges of the Visigoths, iii., 93 and *note*; lead the revolt of the Goths, 99; at the battle of Salices, 104.
 Alba, iv., 306 *note*; interview at, between ambassadors of Theodatus and Justinian, 306; taken by Belisarius, 323.
 Alba Pompeia in Piedmont, i., 97 *note*.
 Alba, river, i., 329 *note*.
 Al-Bakri, v., 459 *note*.
 Albania (Caucasian), i., 6; Heraclius in, v., 82 and *note*, 83.
 Albania (Illyrian), prince of, opposes Ottomans, vii., 33 *note*.
 Albanians (Caucasian), in the army of Sapor, ii., 269 and *note*.
 Albanians (Illyrian), their invasion of Greece, vi., 504 *note*; revolt of, vii., 152 29.; colony of, in Calabria, 154 and *note*; in the Peloponnesus, 203.
 Albano, Roman villas at, vii., 237.
 Albara, captured by crusaders, vi., 308 *note*.
 Al-Bethar, Arabian botanist, vi., 32 *note*.
 Albengue, i., 335 *note*.
 Alberic, revolt of, v., 300; his title *scelerator*, vii., 224 *note*.
 Albigeois, persecution of, vi., 124 29.; etymology of name, 124 *note*.
 Albinus Clodius, governor of Britain, i., 108, 109; war with Severus, 116 299.; death, 120.
 Albinus, Præfect of Rome, iii., 338.
 Albinus, senator, accused of treason, iv., 200.
 Albinus, the Pontiff, conversion of, iii., 194 *note*.
 Al-Bocchari, edits the Koran, v., 344 and *note*.
 Albofleda, sister of Clovis, marries Theodoric, iv., 105.
 Alboin, King of the Lombards, assists Justinian iv., 413; early prowess, v., 4; allies himself with the Avars, *ib.*; destroys the kingdom of the Gepidæ, 6, 29.; invades Italy, 7 299.; Arianism of, 8; subdues great part of Italy, 10, 299.; besieges Pavia, 11; murdered by his wife Rosamund, 12 29.
 Albornos, Cardinal, vii., 278 and *note*.
 Alcantara, bridge of, i., 44.
 Alchymy, i., 965; vi., 32 and *note*.
 Alciat, on the Pandecta, iv., 466 *note*.
 Aldus Manutius, prints Greek authors at Venice, vii., 129 *note*.
 Alemanni, Nicholas, quotes the Justiniani Vita, iv., 205 *note*; publishes the Secret History of Procopius, 220 *note*.

Alemanni, origin, i., 257; etymology of name, 258 *note*; in Gaul and Italy, *ib.*; alliance of the with Gallienus, 259; oppose Claudius, 288 *note*; invade Italy, 297; defeated by Aurelian, 298; destroy the wall of Probus, 332; defeated by Constantius, 362; in Alsace, ii., 273; defeated by Julian, 279; in Gaul iii., 32 *sq.*, 107 *sq.*; defeated by Majorian, iv., 16 and *note*; derivation of their name, 104; defeated by Clovis, *ib.* and 105; their institutions, 122; protected by Theodoric, 186 and *note*; invade Italy, 420; defeat of, by Narses, 421; invade Italy and are defeated by the Lombards, v., 22; their country under Charlemagne, 288; name of given by the Greeks to the Germans, 326 *note*.

Alembic, vi., 32 and *note*.

Aleppo, church of, ii., 10; Julian at, 487; besieged by Nushirvan, iv., 366; resists Baian; v. 56; siege of by the Saracens, 437 *sq.*; castle of, *ib.* and *note*; taken by Nicephorus, vi., 59; princes of, expelled by the Syrian dynasty of Seljuks, 247; under the Atabegs, 335; attacked by Saladin, 341; pillaged by the Moguls, vii., 14; sack of, by Timour, 55.

Alexander the Great, Indian conquests of, i., 28 and *note*; in Julian's *Cæsars*, ii., 480, 481 *note*; his fort near the Caspian Gates, iv., 260; compared to Belisarius, 313.

Alexander, Archbishop of Alexandria, ii., 344 and *note*.

Alexander, emperor, colleague of Constantine VII., v., 208.

Alexander, general of Justinian, iv., 395 *note*.

Alexander of Diospolis, disgrace of, iv., 505.

Alexander III., pope, assists the Lombards, v., 304; receives embassy from Constantinople, vi., 216; pronounces separation of Latin and Greek Churches, *ib.*; defines the right of Papal election, vii., 239 and *note*; disqualifies the Colonna, 252 and *note*.

Alexander Severus, *see* Severus.

Alexander, son of Basil I., emperor, v., 206.

Alexander the Scribe (Logothete) iv., 397 and *note*; called *Psalliction*, *ib.*

Alexander V., pope, vii., 288 and *note*.

Alexander VI. [Borgia], vii., 298.

Alexandria, i., 49; *monasteria* at, 298; described, 279; *tumulus* at, under Gallienus, *ib.* and 280; *seized* by Firmus, 310; taken by Diocletian, 363; corn at, 365; church at, *ib.*, 60; school of, 326; Jews at, *ib.*; Trinitarian controversy at, 240 *sq.*; siege of by Syrianus, 276; *tumulus* at, under Julian, 479; *earthquake* at, iii., 69; temple of Serapis at, 198 *sq.*; library of the Ptolemies, 199 *note*; library of Serapion, 201; museum of, iv., 263; taken by Chosroes, v., 71; patriarch of, lends money to Heraclius, 77 *note*; *siege* of by Amrou, 450 *sq.*; date of Serapion conquest of, 451 *note*; destruction of library at, 452 *sq.*; church of St. John at, 450; poverty of, relieved by Charlemagne, vi., 252; taken by Shiracoub, 238.

Alexandrians, character of the, i., 279, 280.

Alexiad of Anna Comnena, vi., 120 *note*.

Alexis de Menezes, Archbishop of Goa, v., 152.

Alexius I. son of John Comnenus, v., 225; character, 226; takes Constantinople, *ib.*; persecutes the Paulicians, vi., 122; requests help from the Latins, 197; defeated by Gubcard as Durazzo, 199; epistle of, to the Count of Flanders, 251 and *note*; ambassadors of, at Placentia, 262; diverts the crusaders into Asia, 276; policy of, towards crusaders, 287, 289; fails to assist them at Antioch, 293 and *note*; compared to the jackal, 322; successes against the Turks, *ib.* *sq.*

Alexius II. Comnenus, Emperor of Constantinople, reign, v., 232 *sq.*; *new* titles introduced by, vi., 79.

Alexius III., Angelus, vi., 377.

Alexius IV., son of Isaac Angelus, his alliance with the crusaders, vi., 387 *sq.*; flight of, 397; restored and crowned, 398; visits Europe with Montferrat, 399; accused of apostasy, 400; conduct toward the Latins, 401; death of, 402.

Alexius Mourzouflé, *see* Mourzouflé.

Alexius, son-in-law of Theophilus, purchases the palace of Anthenitis, iv., 32 *note*.

Alexius, son of Manuel Comnenus, vi., 372; governor of Trebizond, 420; founds state of Trapezus in, 1204, *ib.* *note*; succeeded by his nephew, 421 *note*.

- Alexius Strategopoulos, general of Michael Palaeologus, vi., 440; made Caesar, 464.
- Alfred the Great, translates the writings of Boethius, iv., 202 and *note*; sends ambassadors to Madras, v., 151.
- Algardi, relief by, representing the appearance of SS. Peter and Paul to Attila, iii., 473 and *note*.
- Algebra, discovery of, vi., 30 and *note*.
- Algezire in Spain, town of Julian, v., 475 and *note*.
- Algiers, aristocracy of, i., 192 and *note*; Christianity revives at, v., 491.
- Al-Hurr invades Gaul, A.D. 718; vi., 13 and *note*.
- Ali, son of Abu Taleb, sixty-nine sentences, of, v., 325, 352, 353; aids Mahomet to escape, 355; valour of, 365; marries Fatima, 381; character, *ib. sq.*; renounces caliphate, 383; reign, 386 *sq.*; defeat and death, 388; tomb of, at Cufa, *ib. note*; one of the twelve Imams, 392; posterity of, *ib.*
- Ali Pasha, vizir of Bajazet, vii., 34 *note*.
- Alicant surrendered by Theodemir to the Saracens, v., 481.
- Alice or Agnes, wife of Andronicus I., v., 240.
- Aligern, brother of Teias, iv., 418; defends Cumæ, 419.
- Aliquaca, Gothic chief, i., 440 *note*.
- Aliturus, a Jewish actor, ii., 88.
- Al-Jannabi, Arabian physician, v., 352 *note*.
- Al-Kaim, *see* Cayem.
- Al-Lata [Al-Lat] worship of, v., 354 and *note*.
- Allectus, i., 359.
- Allier, river, iv., 134.
- Allis, battle of, v., 403.
- Allobich, barbarian commander of the guards of Honorius, iii., 316.
- Allodial lands in Gaul, iv., 131.
- Alma, Mount, i., 336.
- Al-Makkari, v., 474 *note*.
- Almamon, caliph, besieges Bagdad, vi., 23 *note*; wealth of, 24; encourages learning, 27, 33, 34 *note*; subdues Crete, 37 *sq.*; revolt of the provinces under, 51 *sq.*
- Al-Mamûn, *see* Almamon.
- Al-Mansor, caliph, encourages learning, vi., 20, 27; founds Bagdad, 23 and *note*.
- Almeria, learning at, under the caliphs, vi., 26; manufacture of silk at, 72.
- Al-Modain (the cities) winter residence of the Persian kings, ii., 303.
- Al-Mohades or Princes of Morocco, v., 393; fanaticism of, 491; vi., 221.
- Almondar, Saracen Prince, iv., 364 and *note*; 365.
- Almus, King of the Hungarians, vi., 137 *note*; 139.
- Al-Nagjar, meaning of, v., 358 *note*.
- Al-Nâsir Nâsir-al-Din Faraj, Circassian Mameluke, vii., 55 *note*.
- Alodes, tribe of, conversion of the, v., 164 *note*.
- Alogians, ii., 58 *note*.
- Alor, town of, taken by the Moslems, v., 413 *note*.
- Alp Aralan, sultan of the Turkmans, vi., 235; conquests of, 236; defeated by Diogenes, 237; wins the battle of Mannikert, 239; treaty of, with the emperor, 242; death, *ib.*; tomb of, 243.
- Alphabet, Phoenician, i., 24 *note*; Mycenaean syllabary, *ib.*
- Alphonso III., King of Leon, v., 472 *note*.
- Alphonso Mendez, Catholic Patriarch of Ethiopia, v., 167 and *note*.
- Alphonso of Castile, v., 307 *note*.
- Alphonso the Chaste, Kingdom of, v., 290.
- Alps, passages of the, i., 417 and *note*; Maritime Alps, one of the seven provinces, iii., 356 *note*; passage of by Majorian, iv., 21 and *note*.
- Al-Sama, invades Gaul, vi., 13 *note*.
- Altai Mountains, *see* Caf.
- Altieri, Italian family of, vii., 319.
- Altinum, city of, pillaged by Alaric, iii., 287; destroyed by Attila, 468.
- Alum, mines of, in Melos, vii., 75 *note*.
- Al-Uzzah (Uzzâ) worship of, v., 354 and *note*.
- Alva, Duke of, vii., 297.
- Alvarez, Portuguese traveller, iv., 386 *note*.
- Alypius, minister of Julian, ii., 458, 459.
- Al-Zâhir Sayf-al-Din Barkûk, founds Burji dynasty (Circassian Mamelukes), vii., 55 *note*.
- Amala, King of the Goths, i., 243.
- Amalafrika, sister of Theodoric, marries Thrasimond, iv., 299 and *note*.
- Amalaric, grandson of Theodoric, restored to the throne of Spain, ii., 203.
- Amalasontha, daughter of Theodoric, iv., 182 *note*; erects monument of Theodoric, 204, 205; character, 202.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Amrou, brother of Jacob the Saborite, vi., 53.
- Amselfeld, battle of the, vii., 33 *note*.
- Amurath I., Sultan [Murad], reign and conquests of, vii., 31 *sq.*; institutes the Janizaries, 32; death, 33; punishes Saures, 39.
- Amurath II., Sultan, marries Servian princess, vii., 63 *note*; reign of, 74; takes Hadrianople, 75; besieges Constantinople, 77; embassy of, to John Paleologus, 103 and *note*; character and reign, 138 *sq.*; pardons Scanderbeg, 199; abdication, 199 *sq.*; in battle of Warna, 145 *sq.*; enters Albania, 152; retires from Croya, 153; receives Phranza, 155; death, 156.
- Amycus, ii., 142 and *note*.
- Anachorets, iv., 58; 72 *sq.*
- Anacletus, pope, consecrates Roger, first King of Sicily, vi., 210; vii., 226 *note*; "antipope," 249.
- Anagni, vii., 242; Boniface VIII. at, 243; the curse of, *id.* *note*; college of cardinals at, 284; Porcaro at, 294.
- Anaitis, golden statue of, iii., 202 *note*.
- Anas, river, iii., 401.
- Anastasia, daughter of Heraclius, v., 174 *note*.
- Anastasia, daughter of the Emperor Maurice, v., 65 *note*.
- Anastasia, Empress, wife of Tiberius, v., 17 and *note*.
- Anastasia, Gregory's conventicle, iii., 144, 145 and *note*.
- Anastasia, sister of Constantine, i., 401 *note*, 429; ii., 206.
- Anastasia, sister of the Empress Theodora, iv., 212.
- Anastasius, author of the Liber Pontificalis, iv., 403 *note*.
- Anastasius, grandson of the Empress Theodora, iv., 408 and *note*.
- Anastasius I., Emperor, heresy of, iv., 108; makes Theodoric consul, 118; marries Ariadne, 173; war with Theodoric, 185 *sq.*; religious troubles in the circus, 220; economy of, 235 and *note*; remits taxation, *id.* and *note*; exempted various cities from taxation, 237; long wall of, 253; suppressed the pensions of the Isaurians, 254; Persian war, 258 *sq.*; in the circus as a suppliant, v., 131; signs treaty of orthodoxy, 232.
- Anastasius II., Emperor, v., 184; preparations against Saracens, vi., 6 and *note*.
- Anastasius I., Pope, epistle of, to Clovis, iv., 108 *note*.
- Anastasius IV., Pope, vii., 222.
- Anastasius, librarian of the Roman Church, vi., 17 *note*, 44 *note*.
- Anastasius, Patriarch, supports Artavasdus, v., 186 *note*.
- Anastasius, St., acts of, v., 72 *note*.
- Anatho, ii., 494 and *note*.
- Anatolia, invaded by Monguls, vii., 14; divided among the Emirs, 26; invaded by Timour, 58; given to Mousa, 62.
- Anatolius, heretic, iv., 240 *note*.
- Anatolius, master-general of the armies of the East, ambassador to Attila, iii., 443.
- Anatolius, master of the offices, ii., 514, 516.
- Anatomy, study of, among the Saracens, vi., 32 and *note*.
- Anazarbus, valley of, v., 229.
- Anbar, city of, reduced by Calad, v., 403.
- Anbasa, invades Gaul, vi., 13 *note*.
- Anchialus, i., 267; warm baths at, iv., 251; Emperor Maurice at, v., 57; Andronicus at, 234; battle of, vi., 135 *note*.
- Ancilia, or sacred shields, i., 145; ii., 436 *note*; iii., 310 *note*.
- Anoona, taken by Belisarius, iv., 325; resists Totila, 411; siege of, by Frederic Barbarossa, vi., 215; traders of, at Constantinople, vii., 197; Pius II. at, 207.
- Ancyra, Moaumentum Ancyranum, i., 2 *note*, 305; council of, ii., 52; Jovian at, iii., 5; taken by Chosroes, v., 71; pillaged by the Paulicians, vi., 118; taken by Murad V., vii., 26 *note*.
- Andages the Ostrogoth, kills Theodoric at Châlons, iii., 464.
- Andalusia, v., 472 *note*.
- Andalusian Arabs in Egypt and Crete, vi., 37.
- Anderida (Andredes Ceaster), iv., 152 and *note*.
- Andernach, fortified by Julian, ii., 284, *note*.
- Anderson's History of Commerce on the Hanseatic league, vi., 152 *note*.
- Andragathius, general to Maximus, iii., 166 *note*.
- Andreas de Rebusis de Quera, his description of the sack of Acre, vii., 50 *note*; Chancellor of Tring, 43 *note*.

- Andrew, eunuch, protects the Christians, ii., 117.
- Andrew, King of Hungary, refuses the empire, vi., 429.
- Andrew of Naples, strangled, vii., 267 and *note*.
- Andrew, St., body of, removed to Constantinople, iii., 209; spiritual founder of Constantinople, *ib.* *note*; head of, removed to Vatican, vii., 205; family portrait of Gregory I. at monastery of, v., 34; shrine of, at Patras, vi., 70.
- Andronicus Angelus, v., 242.
- Andronicus Ducas, brother of Constantine X., vi., 242.
- Andronicus I., surnamed Gidos, second Emperor of Trebizond, vi., 491 *note*.
- Andronicus I., v., 222; character and adventures of, 232 *sqq.*; reign, 239 *sqq.*; death, vi., 217; massacre of with Latins, 373.
- Andronicus II., or Elder, Palæologus, restores Justinian's statue, iv., 432; - crowned, vi., 469; pays the Catalans, 481; defeated by them, 483; reign, 487 *sqq.*; associates Michael, 489; abdicates 492; death, 493; preserves colossus of Justinian and St. Sophia, vii., 134.
- Andronicus III., or Younger, vi., 490; coronation, 491; character, 492; reign, 494 *sqq.*; death, 496; defeated by Orchan, vii., 25; embassy to Benedict XII., 84 and *note*.
- Andronicus, President of Libya, excommunicated, ii., 325 and *note*.
- Andros, island of, taken by Venice, vi., 416 *note*.
- Anecdoton Holderi, iv., 198 *note*.
- Anemas, tower of, vii., 39, 174 *note*.
- Angamela or Cranganor, Jesuits invade the see of, v., 152; Bishop of, 151-2.
- Angelo, St., fortress of, v., 301.
- Angels, bishops so called, ii., 42 *note*.
- Angles, in Britain, iv., 146.
- Anglo-Saxons, conversion of, by Gregory, v., 36.
- Angora, battle of, vii., 58 *sq.*
- Angora, *see* Ancyra.
- Angoulême, siege of, iv., 117 and *note*.
- Anguillara, the Count of, at Petrarch's coronation, vii., 258.
- Ani, captured by Alp Arslan, 1064 A.D., vi., 236 *note*.
- Anianus, Bishop of Orleans, iii., 459; Life of, 458 *note*.
- Anician family, conversion of, *ib.*, 290 and *note*; consulships of, 291 *note*.
- Anicinus Gallus, *see* Gallus.
- Anicius, Julian, senator, 291 and *note*.
- Anicius, Q. (Prænestinus), tribune, iii., 291 *note*.
- Aninsh, Castle of, in Susiana, iii., 29 *note*.
- Anna Comnena, Life of her father, v., 226, 227; conspires against her brother, 228; her property confiscated, *ib.*; on Greek fire, vi., 20 *note*; learning of, 106; on Malik Shah, 247, 287 and *note*; on crusaders, 293; on the Latin Church, 390 *note*.
- Annah, city of, *see* Anatho.
- Annales Barennes*, vi., 180 *note*.
- Anne, daughter of the Emperor Romanus II., v., 211; vi., 88; marries Woladimir, 89, 197; her account of battle of Durazzo, vi., 200.
- Anne of Savoy, Empress, vi., 495 and *note*; opposes John Cantacuzene, 497 *sqq.*; makes a treaty with Cantacuzene, 503; her mediation at Thessalonica, 504; treaty with Orchan, vii., 30.
- Anne, or Constance, daughter of Frederic II., vi., 457.
- Annibaldi, Italian, family of, vii., 249, 250 *note*, 319.
- Annibalianus, brother of Constantine, i., 401 *note*.
- Annibalianus, general of Probus, i., 329.
- Anni, family of the, consulships of, iii., 291 *note*.
- Annona*, tax under Justinian, iv., 237 *sq.*
- Anomœans, sect of, ii., 351.
- Ansars, or auxiliaries of Medina, v., 357; [al-Ansâr], vi., 3.
- Anseau de Cayeux, corresponded with Michael Palæologus, vi., 44 and *note*.
- Anses, Gothic demigods, i., 243.
- Antala, Gothic prince, iii., 466.
- Antalus the Moor, iv., 271 *note*; assists Artaban against Goncharia, 291 *note*; defeats Solomon at Tabate, 392 *sq.*
- Ante portam Cyperon, name for Sopron or Poson, vi., 275 *note*.
- Antes, Slavonian tribe, i., 244; iv., 347 and *note*.
- Anthemius, Emperor of the West, 29, 300; men levied for his service in Britain, iii., 353 *note*; family of, *ib.*, 293; marries the daughter of Marcellus, 91;

- religious toleration of, 38; quarrels with Ricimer, 43 *sq.*; born in Galatia, *ib.* *note*; death, 45.
- Anthemius**, grandfather of the emperor, consul and prætorian præfect, governs the eastern empire, iii., 383 and *note*.
- Anthemius**, the architect, iii., 242, 243, 244.
- Anthimus**, Bishop of Nicomedia, ii., 125 *note*.
- Anthimus**, son of Constantine Copronymus, v., 188.
- Anthropomorphism** v., 102, and *note*.
- Anticus**, title adopted by Justinian and his successors, iv., 347 *note*.
- Antigonus**, ii., 302 *note*.
- Antinomies**, iv., 466 *note*.
- Antinopolis**, in Upper Egypt, iv., 242.
- Antinobus**, i., 75.
- Antioch**, i., 49; captured by Sapor, 270, 271; battle of, 305; arsenals at, 360; Diocletian at, 369; Church of, ii., 59; Christian Church erected by Constantine at, 321; Council of, 367 and *note*; Olympic games at, 466; cathedral of, shut by Julian, 469; Julian at, 481 *sqq.*; Church of, 483; Jovian at, iii., 4; persecution at, for magic, 16 *sq.*; sedition at, 169 *sqq.*; date of, 171 *note*; restored by Justinian, iv., 249 and *note*; burnt by Nushirvan, 367; earthquake at, 435; taken by Chosroes, v., 69; by the Saracens, 437 *sq.*; date of, 439 *note*; recovered by Nicephoras Phocas, vi., 59; loyalty of, to the empire, 250; taken by Sultan Soliman, *ib.*; by the crusaders, 299 *sqq.*; history of, 314 *note*; principality of, 318; princes of, 324; taken by Sultan Boudocdar, 363.
- Antioch-Chosrou**, iv., 368 *note*.
- Antioch (Pisidia)**, crusaders at, vi., 297.
- Antiochus**, King, sera of, i., 195 *note*.
- Antiochus**, monk, homilies of v., 70 *note*.
- Antiochus**, officer of the household, ii., 226.
- Antiochus**, proconsul of Greece, iii., 242.
- Antiochus Sidetes**, iii., 393 *note*.
- Anti-Tribonians**, iv., 442 *note*.
- Antivari**, anonymous writer of, vii., 150 *note*.
- Antonina**, wife of Belisarius, iv., 241; character, 275 *sq.*; accompanies Belisarius to Africa, 279; death of Constantine attributed to, 326 and *note*; secret history and adventures of, 334 *sqq.*; accused of exile of Silverius, 397 *note*; solicits return of Belisarius, 406; founds a convent, 429 *note*.
- Antonines**, the, found a school at Athens, i., 57 *note*; reign, 76; endow the schools of philosophy, iv., 264;
- Antoninus Arrius**, i., 90.
- Antoninus**, fugitive at the court of Sapor, ii., 267 and *note*.
- Antoninus, M. Aur.**, wars, i., 8, 9; levies troops from the Quadi and Marcomanni, i., 15 *note*, 34 *note*, 71 *note*; character and reign, 76 and *note*, 77; campaigns on the Danube, 78; indulgence of, 83, 84, 105 *note*; Marcomannic wars of, 234, 235, 327 *note*; in Julian's *Cæsars*, ii., 479.
- Antoninus**, name of Geta and Caracalla, i., 127 *note*, 128.
- Antoninus**, name of Heliogabalus, i., 142.
- Antoninus Pius**, wall of, i., 4, 5; compared with Hadrian, 7, 8; wars with the Moors, and Brigantes of Britain, 8 *note*; character and reign, 76; edict of, in favour of the Jews, ii., 73.
- Antoninus**, Proconsul of Asia, ii., 105 and *note*.
- Antonio de Ferrariis**, vii., 208 *note*.
- Antonius, L.**, i., 73 *note*.
- Antonius Petrus**, vii., 300; Diary of, 318 *note*.
- Antony, Mark**, iii., 199 *note*.
- Antony, St.**, monastery of, at Kauleas, ii., 149 *note*; on Mount Colzim, iv., 59; founds colonies of monks in Egypt, *ib.* *sq.*
- Antrustion**, rank of, among the Franks, iv., 125 and *note*.
- Anulinus**, master of Diocletian, i., 350.
- Anulinus**, prætorian præfect, i., 403.
- Anushtigin**, Governor of Carizme, vii., 8 *note*.
- Apamea or Corna**, i., 264; ii., 495 *note*; besieged by Nushirvan, iv., 366; destroyed by Adarman, v., 41; massacre of monks at, 153 and *note*; taken by the Saracens, 442; recovered by Nicephorus, vi., 60.
- Aper, Arrius**, prætorian præfect, i., 347 and *note*; death, 348 and *note*.
- Apharban**, i., 572.
- Aphdal**, Sultan, restores Fatimite rule in Palestine, vi., 307.
- Apocalypse**, the, rejected by Council of Laodicea, ii., 25 *note*, 26 *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Arcadia, daughter of Arcadius, iii., 384.
 Arcadius Charisius, ii., 190 *note*.
 Arcadius, son of Theodosius, Augustus, iii., 142; Emperor of the East, iii., 185, 216; marries Eudoxia, 223; reign, 358 *seq.*; his cruel law of treason, 365; signs condemnation of Eutropius, 369; death and testament, 278, 382, 383; column of, vi., 419 *note*.
 Arcaph, ii., 364 *note*.
 Arch of Constantine, i., 423.
 Archæopolis, siege of, iv., 380.
 Archelais, Asia Minor, crusaders at, vi., 298.
 Archers, in Homer, iv., 276 and *note*; Roman, defended by Procopius, *ib.*
 Archimagus, i., 202.
 Archimedes, iv., 242.
 Archipelago, etymology of name, vi., 68 *note*.
 Architecture, Roman, i., 43 *seq.*; oldest model of Gothic, iv., 192 and *note*; Saracen, vi., 25.
 Ardaburius, opposes the usurper John, iii., 396.
 Ardalion, battle of, between Gildo and Macesel, iii., 236.
 Ardatic, King of the Gepidæ, councillor of Attila, iii., 236; at the battle of Châlons, 463; victory on the Netad, 475; established a new kingdom, 476.
 Ardeshir I. and II., *see* Artaxerxes I. and II.
 Arduin, Greek interpreter, vi., 177, 178 *note*.
 Arelate, i., 258 *note*; marriage of Constantine at, 405; Maximinian at, 409; council of, ii., 328, 333, 372; assembly of the seven provinces at, iii., 356; besieged by the Visigoths, 450; taken by Euric, iv., 100; belonged to Burgundy in year 499 A.D., 110 *note*; Clovis raises siege of, 118; resigned to the Franks, 119; conquered by Theodoric, 186; siege of by Abderame, vi., 14.
 Arenula, battle of, vi., 175 *note*.
 Areobindus, the Goth, iii., 391; marries niece of Justinian, iv., 46 *note*; Mag. Mil. in Africa, 390 *note*, 391 and *note*.
 Arethas, Arabian chief, iv., 364, 369.
 Arethas St., Prince of Nebra, martyrdom of, iv., 386.
 Arethusa or Restan, ii., 464 *note*.
 Aretius, Leonardus Brunus, states the Gothic history of Procopius, iv., 210 *note*; life of, vii., 122 and *note*, 288 *note*.
 Argæus Mount, v., 200 *note*.
 Argæus, church of the Paulicians, vi., 112 *note*; 118 *note*.
 Argentaria (Colmar) battle of, iii., 108 and *note*.
 Argos, ii., 428; destroyed by Alaric, iii., 243.
 Argyropulus John, vii., 124.
 Argyrus, officer of Constantine Monomachus, vi., 180; cruelty of, 181; his flight to Bari, 182.
 Ariadne, daughter of Leo and Verina, iv., 172; character of, 173; marries Anastasius, *ib.*
 Arianism, ii., 345; creeds of, 349, 377.; under Valens, iii., 24 *seq.*; in Constantinople, 142 *seq.*; ruin of, at Constantinople, 146 *seq.*; ruin of, among the Barbarians, iv., 92; complete ruin of, 97.
 Arians, cruelty of the, ii., 386 *seq.*; persecution of, by Theodosius, iii., 147 *seq.*; edicts against, 151 *seq.*; toleration of, iv., 82; cruelty of the Arian clergy, 87; law against, under Justin, iv., 197; Arian clergy expelled from Rome, 402 and *note*; of Italy and Spain, reconciled under Gregory I. to the Catholic Church, v., 96; wealth of the Arian Church at Constantinople, 134.
 Aricia, i., 70.
 Arti, tribe of, i., 329.
 Ariminum, *see* Rimini.
 Arntbaeus, Julian's general of horse, ii., 492, 517; his embassy to Sapor, 521; general of Valens, iii., 15 and *note*; defends the Euphrates, 54.
 Ariolica, iii., 473 *note*.
 Ariovistus, crosses the Rhine, iv., 129.
 Aristides, philosopher and Christian, apology of, ii., 66 and *note*.
 Aristo of Pella, iii., 473 *note*.
 Aristobulus, prætorian præfect, i., 351 *note*.
 Aristotle, iv., 262; philosophy of, vi., 29, 30; study of, revived by the Caliphs, 30; in western universities, 444; study of, by Theodore Gaza, vii., 126.
 Arius, character of, ii., 344 and *note*; heresy of, 345; his Thalia, 345 *note*; banishment, 356; recall of, 357; death, 357 and *note*.
 Arka, besieged by Crusaders, vi., 308 *note*.
 Arles, *see* Arelate.
 Armatius, widow of, marries Attila's secretary, iii., 433.

- Armenia, Roman province, i., 6, 7; under Persia, 269; state of, 367 and *note*; revolt of, from Persia, *ib.*; again Roman, 375; Christianized, ii., 64 and *note*, 226; recovered by Persia, *ib.*; Christians of, 312; relinquished by the Romans, 522; invaded by Sapor, iii., 52 *sq.*; divided between Aspacurus and Pap, 54; independent, 55 *sq.*; divided between Persia and Rome, 391 *sq.*; further revolutions, 392 *sq.* and *notes*; language of, 392 *note*; Count of Armenian frontier, *ib.*; towns of, fortified by Justinian, iv., 257; Greek speech in, v., 144; Fourth Armenia lost to the Saracens, 182 *note*; incorporated in the empire, 219 *note*; Paulicians of, vi., 118; conquered by Ays Arslan, 236; Moguls in, vii., 14.
- Armenians, schism of the, v., 157 *sq.*; patriarch of the, 159; commerce of, *ib.*; settlement of Armenians in Thrace, 202 *note*; attitude of, to images, 251 and *note*.
- Armentarius, surname of Galerius, i., 353.
- Arminians, iii., 407 *note*.
- Armorica, independence of, iii., 352 and *note*; revolt of, 353 and *note*; disturbed by the Bagaudæ, 480; federation of, iv., 102 *note*; description of the Armorican republic, 109; subdued by Clovis, *ib.*; British settlement in, 149 and *note*; Britons of, 150 and *note*; cavalry of, 156; struggle against Clovis, 409 and *note*.
- Armoricans, Gallic tribe, iii., 461 and *note*; iv., 103 *note*, 109 *note*.
- Armour, use of, iii., 187.
- Arms, of the Roman soldiers, i., 12, 13.
- Army, Roman, under Hadrian, i., 17; stations of, *ib.*; under Augustus, 72, *sq.*, 122; pay of, 136 and *note*; attempted reformation of, by Maerinus, 140; recruited from the barbarians by Probus, 332; under Constantine, ii., 179 *sq.*; state of, under Maurice, v., 59 *sq.*; discontent of, 60.
- Arnold, Matthew, on Persian Passion Play, v., 392 *note*.
- Arnold of Brescia, his theories, vii., 220; at Zürich, 221; at Rome, *ib.* *sq.*; his death, 223 and *note*, 225; plan of, 226 *note*.
- Arnulph, Duke of Moravia, vi., 142.
- Arnulph, Patriarch of Jerusalem, vi., 313 *note*.
- Aromatics, use of, i., 55 and *note*.
- Arpad, King of the Hungarians, vi., 137 *note*, 139; reign of, 143 *note*.
- Arragon, etymology of the name, i., 19 *note*; house of, acknowledged in Greece, vi., 485; kings of, buy title of Emperor of Constantinople, vii., 205.
- Arras taken by the Germans, iii., 270.
- Arrechis, Duke of Beneventum, subdued by Charlemagne, v., 288.
- Arrian, i., 24 *note*; Periplus of, iv., 371 *note*; visit of, to Colchos, 376.
- Arrius Antoninus, i., 90.
- Arsaces, reigns in Western Armenia, under Arcadius, iii., 392; royal house of, 393 *note*.
- Arsaces, satrap, ii., 490 *note*.
- Arsaces Tiranus, King of Armenia, character, ii., 490; treachery of, 506; death, iii., 53.
- Arsacides, of Armenia, i., 197, 203; ii., 490.
- Arsacius, Archbishop of Constantinople, iii., 379; crowns Michael Paleologus, 464; excommunicates Michael, 467; banishment of, 468.
- Arsenites, schism of, vi., 468 *sq.*
- Arsenius, bishop, ii., 364 and *note*; accompanied Athanasius, 365.
- Arsenius, Patriarch of Nice, vi., 459, 464; Patriarch of Constantinople, excommunicates Michael VIII., 467 *sq.*
- Arsenius, tutor of Arcadius, iii., 222 and *note*.
- Arshak, King of Armenia, iii., 53 and *note*.
- Arsuf, battle of, vi., 351.
- Art, attitude of the Christians towards, ii., 17.
- Artaban, Armenian prince, in Africa, iv., 391 and *note*; conspires against Justinian, 407 and *note*; replaces Liberius in command, 410; reduces Sicily, 411.
- Artaban, King of Parthia, i., 196.
- Artabanus, Armenian prince, at court of Leo I., v., 202.
- Artabazus, Persian in service of Justinian, iv., 395 and *note*.
- Artasires, one of the assassins of Genetharis, iv., 391 *note*.
- Artasires, successor of Chosroes, iii., 392; deposed, 393.
- Artavasdes, commander of Armenian army, i., 367.
- Artavasdes, King of Armenia, i., 269 *note*, 273 *note*.

- Artavasdus, Count of the Opalkian theme, v., 186 *note*; supports images, 254.
- Artaxata, Archbishop of, ii., 299; palace at, iii., 392.
- Artaxerxes I. (Ardesbir) restores Persian monarchy, i., 196; reign, 197 *sq.*; declares war with Rome, 208; character, 211; laws of, revived by Nushirvan, iv., 360.
- Artaxerxes II., succeeds Sapor in Persia, iii., 55 *note*.
- Artemita, residence of Chosroes II., v., 73 and *note*; palace of, 90 and *note*.
- Artemius, Duke of Egypt, death, ii., 424 and *note*.
- Artemius, martyr, Acts of, ii., 305 *note*.
- Artemius, *see* Anastasius II.
- Artemon, followers of, ii., 66.
- Arthur, King, iv., 150 and *note*, 151.
- Artillery, Roman, i., 15.
- Artogerassa, siege of, iii., 53 and *note*.
- Artois, Count of, storms Massoura, vi., 360.
- Aruspices, edict of Constantine concerning, ii., 290 and *note*.
- Arvandus, prætorian præfect, trial of, iv., 39 *sq.*; exile, 41.
- Arzanene, province of, ceded to the empire, i., 375 and *note*.
- Arzan Su, tributary of the Tigris, ii., 522 *note*.
- Arzema (Azarmidocht), Queen of Persia, v., 404 and *note*.
- Arzingan, city of, taken by Timour, vii., 53.
- As, Roman, value of, iv., 447 *note*.
- Asan, Bulgarian chief, revolt of, vi., 375 *sq.* and *note*.
- Asbad the Gepid, iv., 416.
- Asburg, *see* Asgard.
- Ascalon, v., 440 *note*; taken by the Saracens, 441; battle of (A. D. 1009), vi., 312; conquest of, 314 and *note*; dismantled by Saladin, 351; destroyed, 353.
- Ascanar (Aksunkur), governor of Aleppo, vi., 335.
- Ascellinus, traveller, his journey among the Mongols, vii., 6 *note*.
- Ascetics, Christian, ii., 37, 38; iv., 57 *sq.*
- Asclepiades, philosopher, ii., 467 *note*.
- Asclepiodatus, general of Probus, i., 329, 359, 360.
- Ascoll, conquered by the Normans, vi., 178 *note*.
- Asconius Pedianus, iv., 508 *note*.
- Asena, *see* Bartenena.
- Asfendiar, Persian hero, iii., 80.
- Asfoeld, plain of, v., 5.
- As-gard, residence of Odin, i., 241 and *note*.
- Ashik-pasha-eadi, Ottoman historian, vii., 61 *note*.
- Asia Minor, description of, i., 23, 24; given to Theodosius, iii., 119; settlement of the Goths in, 129; desolated by Tribigild, 367; security of, iv., 253 *sq.*; campaign of Chosroes in, v., 71, *sq.*; conquered by the Turks, vii., 26 *sq.*
- Asia, tribute, i., 159; ancient revolutions of, 195; seven churches of, ii., 58; vii., 26.
- Asiarch, ii., 54 *note*.
- Asinius Quadratus, i., 258 *note*.
- As-of, city of, *see* As-gard.
- Asomaton, fortress at, vii., 164 and *note*; description and dimensions of fortress, 165 and *note sq.*
- Aspacuras, King of the Iberians, iii., 53.
- Aspalathus, i., 391.
- Aspar, Prince of Lesser Scythia, iv., 207 *note*.
- Aspar, son of Ardaburius, iii., 396; opposes the Vandals in Africa, 408; Marcian in the service of, 445; heresy of, iv., 29 and *note*; death of, 172.
- Asper, Turkish coin, vii., 76 and *note*.
- Asprudus, river, i., 373.
- Assassins or Ismaelians, Sheik of, vi., 351 and *note*; extirpation of, vii., 12 *sq.* and *notes*.
- Assemannus, Joseph Simon, account of, v., 145 *note*; vii., 113 *note*.
- Assemblies of the people, i., 67 and *note*; legislative of the Visigoths in Spain, iv., 142 *sq.*
- Assessors, iv., 508.
- Assise of Jerusalem, vi., 317 *sq.*; introduced into the Peloponnesus, 415 *note*.
- Assyria, Roman province of, i., 6, 7; described, ii., 495 and *notes*; revenue, 496 and *note*; invasion of Julian, 497 *sq.*; Persian province, iv., 360; conquered by Omar, v., 408.
- Asta, in Liguria, retreat of Honorius, iii., 252 and *note*.
- Astarte, image of, brought to Rome, i., 145.
- Asterius, St., of Amasea, on execution of Tatian, iii., 219 *note*; on exile of Abundantius, 363 *note*; Count Asterius marches against the Vandals, iii., 400.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Chersonese, 425; ravages Europe, *ib.*, 49; peace with Theodosius, 430 *sq.*; his embassies to Constantinople, 433 *sq.*; his village and negotiations with the Romans described, 437 *sqq.*; receives Maximian, 439; royal feast of, 440 *sq.*; conspiracy of the Romans against, 442; sends ambassadors to Theodosius, 443; threatens both empires, 446; alliance with the son of Clodion, 455; invades Gaul, 457; crosses the Rhine, 458; besieges Orleans, 459; defeated on the Catalaunian fields, 462 *sqq.*; invades Italy, 467; destroys Aquileia, 468; makes peace with Valentinian, 471 *sq.*; marriage and death, 474; funeral, 475; empire of, dismembered, *ib.*, 47.
- Attitianus, i., 300 *note*.
- Attok, on the Indus, vii., 51.
- Attuarii, tribe of Franks, ii., 405.
- Atyras, river, iv., 426; fortress of, *ib.*, *note*.
- Atys and Cybele, story of, ii., 437.
- Auchenii, family of, iii., 290 *note*.
- Auctions, tax on, i., 162.
- Audax, friend of Sidonius, iv., 46 *note*.
- Audefloda, sister of Clovis, iv., 301 *note*.
- Audians, sect of the, iii., 152; v., 111.
- Audoin, King of the Lombards, iv., 413 and *note*; v., 5.
- Augsburg, battle of, vi., 142.
- Augurs, iii., 189 and *note*.
- Augustal Præfect of Egypt, ii., 170.
- Augustin, St., a Manichean, ii., 15 *note*; teacher of rhetoric in Milan, iii., 161; De Civitate Dei of, 211 *note*; 323 and *note*; on the defeat of Radagaisus, 265 *sq.*; approves the persecution of the Donatists, 403 and *note*, 404 *notes*; letter to Count Boniface, *ib.* *note*; death, 406; writings, 407 and *note*; his ignorance of Greek, *ib.* *note*; canonization, *ib.* *note*; relics of, carried to Sardinia, iv., 288 *note*.
- Augustina, daughter of Heraclius, v., 174 *note*.
- Augustulus (Romulus), emperor of the West, iv., 48; banished to the Lucullan villa, 51.
- Augustus, moderation of, i., 1; testament of, 2; policy, 8; buildings of, 43 and *note*; after the battle of Actium, 59; reforms the senate, 60; made emperor, 61; administration and policy, 61 *sqq.*; 72 and *note*; breviarium or register, 158 and *note*; taxes, 160; at Jerusalem, ii., 3; in Julian's *Cæstra*, 479; temperance, iii., 304 and *note*; makes the harbour at Classis, iii., 299; undermines the power of the popular assemblies, iv., 448; modesty of, v., 310.
- Augustus, title, i., 70 and *note*; three Augusti, 423 and *note*.
- Auranitis, iv., 365 *note*.
- Aurasius, Mount, citadel of, iv., 297 *sq.* and *note*; 389.
- Aurelian, consul, sentences Eutropius, iii., 370.
- Aurelian, Emperor, succeeds, i., 291; origin and reign, 292 *sqq.*; cedes Dacia to the Goths, defeats the Alemanni, 297; superstition of, 298; fortifies Rome, 299; defeats Tetricus, 301; captures Palmyra and Zobeiba, 307; defeats Firmus, 309; triumph of, 310; magnificence and superstition, 312; cruelty, 314; death, 315; wore the diadem, 322 *note*; conduct to the Christians, ii., 116.
- Aurelius Litua, i., 363 *note*.
- Aurelius, *see* Antoninus, Marcus.
- Aureolus, emperor, i., 275; invades Italy, 283, 284; death, 286 and *note*.
- Aureus (coin), ii., 195 *note*.
- Auri Oblatio, ii., 200 *note*.
- Aurangzebe, Great Mogul, camp of, iii., 437 *note*; vii., 71.
- Auruss (Urus) Khan, vii., 48.
- Ausonius, ii., 161 *note*, 162 *note*; iii., 35 *note*; tutor of Gratian, 194 *note*; consul, *ib.* *note*; letters to Paulinus, 330 *note*.
- Auspices, i., 63 *note*.
- Autenti, battle of, iv., 390 *note*.
- Autharis, son of Clepho, v., 14.
- Autonomus, St., church of, Emperor Maurice at, v., 62 and *note*.
- Autun, vineyards of, i., 92 *note*; siege of, 302 and *note*; rebuilt by Constantine, 362 *note*; college of rhetoric at, 392; visit of Constantine to, 412 and *note*; capital of the *Ædui*, ii., 197 and *note*; school of, iv., 99.
- Auvergne, province of, opposes Euric, iv., 38; ceded to the Visigoths, 46; oppressed by Euric, 100; conquered by Theodoric, son of Clovis, 134; description of, *ib.* *sq.*; counts of, vi., 264 and *note*.
- Auxentius, Mount, v., 200 *note*.
- Auxiliaries, i., 14, 15; Barbarian auxiliaries under Constantine, ii., 122; Nervian, iii., 234; Barbarian auxili-

- aries employed by Majorian, iv., 21; British, levied by Anthemius to defend Gaul, 39.
- Auximum**, *see* Osimo.
- Avars**, subdued by the Turks, iv., 352 sq.; embassy to Justinian, 353; conquests of, 354; embassy to Justin II., v., 3; alliance with the Lombards, 4, 6; defeat the Gepidæ, 6 sq.; dominions of, v., 53 sqq.; wars of, with Maurice, 57 sqq.; attack Heraclius, 75; Heraclius treats with, 78; attack Constantinople, 85 sqq.; defeat, 86; subdued by Charlemagne, 289.
- Avernus**, lake, iii., 297 *note*.
- Averroes**, Arabian philosopher, vi., 33 *note*.
- Aversa**, town of, foundation of, vi., 175; county of, 176 *note*.
- Avicenna**, Arabian physician, vi., 31.
- Avienus**, Rufus, translator of Dionysius, v., 430 *note*.
- Avienus**, senator, his embassy to Attila, iii., 472; portrait of, *ib. note*.
- Avignon**, flight of Gundobald to, iv., 111; translation of Holy See to, vii., 243 sqq.; Petrarch at, 246; the "Mystic Babylon," Petrarch on, 281; Urban V. returns from, *ib.*
- Avitus**, Bishop of Vienna, epistles of, iv., 82 *note*; letter to Clovis, 107 *note*; at conference of Lyons, 111 and *note*.
- Avitus**, senator, minister of Aetius, iii., 452 *note*; preceptor of Theodoric II., *ib. note*; ambassador to Theodoric, 460; commands in Gaul, iv., 7; character and reign, *ib. sqq.*; estate of, in Gaul, 8; visits Theodoric, *ib.*; made emperor, 9; consent of Marcian doubtful, *ib. note*; panegyric of, by Sidonius, 13; deposed by Ricimer, 14; Bishop of Placentia, *ib.*; flight and death, *ib.* and *note*; burial at Brivas, *ib.*
- Awsites**, Arabian tribe of, adopt religion of Mahomet, v., 356.
- Axuch**, a Turkish slave, v., 228, 229.
- Axum**, inscription of a king of, iv., 233 *note*; village of, 386 and *note*; deserted, v., 166.
- Azymites**, *see* Abyssinians.
- Ayesha**, wife of Mahomet, v., 374; daughter of Abubekr, 379; enemy of Ali, 382; flight of, with Talha and Zobeir, 386; present at the battle of Bassora, 387.
- Ayoubites** (Kurds), vi., 339 *note*.
- Ayub**, father of Saladin, vi., 339.
- Azan**, King of Bulgaria, vi., 432 and *note*; peace with Eastern empire, 434 *note*.
- Asimus**, or Aximuntium, city of, opposes the Huns, iii., 431 and 432; its position in Thrace, *ib. note*; privileges of, v., 58.
- Asoph**, *see* Tana.
- Azymites**, sect of, vii., 133.
- Azys**, debate concerning the, vi., 352.
- Azzadin** (Isz-ad-Din), Sultan of Fez, flies to Constantinople, vii., 14; taken by the Tartars, 21.
- Azzo**, Marquis of Lombardy, vi., 193 *note*.
- BAALBEC**, *see* Heliopolis.
- Raanes**, Paulician teacher, vi., 122 *note*.
- Bābag**, Prince of Persia, i., 196 *note*.
- Babain**, battle of, vi., 338.
- Bābar**, introduces guns in Upper India, vi., 226 *note*; descent of, vii., 71 *note*.
- Babec**, father of Artaxerxes, i., 196 *note*.
- Babegan**, surname of Artaxerxes, i., 196 *note*.
- Babolinus**, life of St., i., 356 *note*.
- Babylas**, St., Bishop of Antioch, ii., 467 and *note*, 468.
- Babylon**, name applied to Rome, ii., 225; circumference of, 195 *note*; made into a royal park, 495; hosti-ousness at, 500 *note*.
- Bacchanals**, ii., 61 and *note*.
- Bacchus**, St., account of, v., 52 *note*.
- Bacon**, Friar, on Greek fire, vi., 12 *note*.
- Bacon**, public distribution of, at Rome, iii., 303.
- Bactriana**, Greek kings of, iii., 28 *note*; Greeks of, iv., 355 *note*; viceroy of, appointed by Chosroes, 360.
- Bacurius**, Iberian prince, ii., 322 *note*; at the battle of Hadrianople, iii., 112; fights for Theodosius, 123.
- Badaverd**, chamber of Chosroes, v., 73.
- Bader**, village of, iv., 251 *note*.
- Badoeri**, Dukes of Venice, v., 15 *note*.
- Baduarius**, superintendent of the palace, v., 15; family of, *ib. note*.
- Baduila**, name of Totila, 79.
- Bætica**, province of Spain, i., 19; St. lingi in, iii., 346; sea coast of, subdued by the Saracens, v., 277.
- Bagai**, battle of, ii., 389.
- Bagaudæ**, i., 355 and *note*; iii., 122 *note*; in Spain and Gaul, ii., 422 *note*; allies of Majorian, iv., 22.

- Bagavan, Mount, i., 967.**
Bagdad, founded, vi., 23; etymology of the name, *ib. note*; college at, 28; disorders of Turkish guards at, 47; Greeks retreat from, 60; Togrul Beg at, 234; Malek Shah at, 246; taken by Mongols, vii., 13; Holagou at, 22; pyramid of Timour at, 57.
Baghisian, commander of Antioch, vi., 299.
Bagris, tower of, near Antioch, vi., 300 *note*.
Baharites, Mamaluke dynasty, vi., 362 *note*; 338.
Bahram, *see* Vabranes.
Bahrain, district of, v., 314; Carmathians in, vi., 50.
Baise, springs of, iv., 192.
Baian, chagan of the Avars, account of, v., 53; wars of, 54 *sqq.*; empire of, 56; war with Maurice, 57 *sqq.*; threatens Constantinople, 59.
Baikal, Lake, iii., 83.
Bailly, M., system of, iv., 184 *note*.
Bain, Mr. R. N., on siege of Belgrade, vii., 149 *note*.
Bajazet I., Sultan (Ilderim), vii., 33 *sqq.*; surname, *ib. note*; conquests, 34 *sqq.*; morals and manners at court of, *ib. note*; wins the battle of Nicopolis, 35; takes the French princes prisoner, 38; threatens Constantinople, 40; receives tribute, *ib.*; builds mosque at Constantinople, *ib.*; sends embassy to Timour; 52; letters of, to Timour, 53; their genuineness questioned, *ib. note*; defeated at Angora, 58 *sq.*; his captivity, 60 *sqq.*; death, 64.
Bajazet II., Sultan, vii., 128 *note*.
Bajazet, vizir of Mahomet I., Sultan, vii., 74.
Balash, iv., 258 *note*.
Balbatus, *see* Valebathus.
Balbinus [D. Caelius Calvius], i., 180 and *note*; reigns with Maximus, *ib. sqq.*; death, *ib.* 188.
Balbus, Cornelius, i., 180 *note*.
Balch, in Khorasan, i., 197; missionaries of, v., 149; subdued by the Moslems, 410; taken by Zingis Khan, vii., 9.
Baldus on treason, iii., 365 *note*.
Baldwin [I.], Count of Flanders, vi., 371 *note*; in fourth crusade, 379; character of, 414; Emperor of the East, 415; capture, 424; death, 425 and *note*.
Baldwin II., Emperor of Constantinople, vi., 430-2; marriage, 433; sells holy relics of Constantinople, 437, 442.
Baldwin, hermit, pretender to the empire of Constantinople, vi., 426.
Baldwin I., brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, vi., 279; reproves Robert of Paris, 291; founds principality of Edessa, 298 and *note*; King of Jerusalem, 343.
Baldwin II., King of Jerusalem, vi., 343.
Baldwin III., King of Jerusalem, vi., 343.
Baldwin IV., King of Jerusalem, vi., 343.
Baldwin V., King of Jerusalem, vi., 343.
Balearic Islands, i., 26.
Baliols, origin of the, vi., 238 *note*.
Balista, Emperor, i., 275.
Balista or crossbow, iv., 315.
Ballot, secret, at Rome, iv., 448.
Baltha Ogli, admiral of Mahomet II., vii., 128 *sq.*
Balti or Baltha, family of Alaric, iii., 241 and *note*.
Baltic Sea, i., 214 *note*; how known to the Romans, iii., 38 *note*.
Baluse, Stephen, his edition of Lives of the Avignon Popes, vii., 244 *note*; defends Charles V. of France, 285 *note*.
Bancho, Monastery of, iv., 62.
Bandalaris or standard-bearer, iv., 319 *note*.
Banderesi, heads of military companies, vii., 292 *note*.
Baptism, ancient practice and theory of, ii., 309 and *note*; opinion of Fathers concerning deathbed baptism, *ib.*
Baradeus, James, monk, founder of the Jacobites, v., 154; history of, *ib. note*.
Baratier, his translation of the Itinerary of Benjamin of Tudela, vi., 74 *note*.
Barbalissus, Persian host cross the Euphrates at, iv., 568.
Barbarians, conversion of, iv., 75 *sqq.*; motives for their faith, 78 *sq.*; effects of conversion, 79 *sqq.*; involved in Arian heresy, 80 *sq.*; laws of the, 122 *sqq.*; division of lands by, 229 *sq.* and *note*.
Barbero, Nicolò, vii., 177 *note*.
Barbary, suppression of Christianity in, v., 491.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Basilike Therma, battle of, v., 216 *note*.
 Basilina, mother of Julian, ii., 247 *note*; iii., 11 *note*.
 Basiliscus, brother of the Empress Verena, commands expedition against Vandals, iv., 35, 272; defeated by Genseric, 37; flight to Constantinople, *ib.*; Emperor, 173.
 Basilus, consul, iv., 54 *note*, 268 *note*.
 Basilus, delator of Boethius, iv., 201 *note*.
 Basilus, a senator, ambassador to Alaric, iii., 311, 472; portrait of, *ib.* *note*; friend of Sidonius, iv., 54 and *note*; condemned by Pope Symmachus, 55 *note*.
 Basina, Queen of the Thuringians, marries Childeric, iv., 100 and *note*.
 Basnage, his Ecclesiastical History, v., 112 *note*, 113 *note*; on images, v., 246 *note*.
 Basra, ii., 495 and *note*; see Bassora and Bussorah.
 Bassi, family of the, iii., 194.
 Bassianus (Cæsar), i., 401 *note*, 429.
 Bassianus, name of Caracalla, i., 187 *note*.
 Bassianus, name of Elagabalus, i., 143.
 Bassora, Christians of St. John at, v., 331; Arabian insurgents at, 385; rebels defeated by Ah at, 387; battle called Day of the Camel, *ib.*; foundation of, 406 and *note*; pillaged by the Carmathians, vi., 50; see Basra and Bussorah.
 Bastarnæ, i., 243, 244 and *note*; in Thrace, 333; colonies of, in Gaul, 362; massacred by Stilicho, iii., 226.
 Batavian horseguards, i., 102 *note*.
 Batavians, i., 233; defeated by Probus, 309; island of the, ii., 273; iv., 101.
 Batavians, legion, ii., 398 and *note*; mutiny of, iii., 5; degradation of, 33; in Britain, 45.
 Bath (Aque Sulis), Roman colony, i., 36 *note*.
 Baths, public, at Rome, iii., 304 *sq.*
 Batnæ, near Hierapolis, Julian at, ii., 488 and *note*.
 Bator, fortress of, taken by Timour, vii., 51.
 Battle, trial by, vi., 463 *note*.
 Bâkî, Khan of Kipchak, vii., 10 *note*; expedition and victories of, 14 *sq.*; retreats from the Danube to Serai, 17 and *note*; death of, 21; conquers tribes of the Western Kipchak, 48 *note*.
 Bau or Pabau, monastery of, iv., 60 *note*.
 Bauto, general of the Franks, father of the Empress Eudoxia, iii., 222 and *note*.
 Baux, de, James, titular Emperor of Constantinople in 1373-1383, vi., 442 *note*.
 Baux (near Arles), lords of, iii., 241 *note*.
 Bavares, i., 363 *note*.
 Bavaria, dukes of, v., 288.
 Bavarians, revolt of, from the Huns, iii., 417; institutions of, adopted by the Merovingians, iv., 122; under Charlemagne, v., 288.
 Bayer, Theophilus Siegfried, on the Russians, vi., 147 *note*.
 Bayle, ii., 295 *note*; on comets, iv., 434 and *note*; on Gregory I., v., 32 *note*; his "wicked wit," vii., 220 *note*; on Abelard, *ib.*
 Beacons, extinguished by Michael III., v., 200 and *note*; vi., 93 and *note*; stations of the, *ib.*
 Bears of Valentinian, iii., 20.
 Beatrice, daughter of Charles of Anjou, vi., 475.
 Beaufort, on Roman law, iv., 506 *note*.
 Beaune, wine of, vii., 281 *note*.
 Beauplan de, French engineer, vi., 153 *note*.
 Beausobre, ii., 14 *note*; on Christian idolatry, iii., 214 *note*; v., 97 *note*; on images, 248 *note*.
 Beauvais, i., 362.
 Becket, Thomas, ii., 103.
 Bede, the Venerable, iii., 42; iv., 144, 147 *note*; date of his death, vii., 317 *note*.
 Beder [Bedr], battle of, v., 362 and *note*.
 Bedefiana, district of, iv., 205.
 Bedowcens, description of, vi., 314 *sq.*; incorrect form of name, *ib.* *note*.
 Beehives, construction of, vi., 27 and *note*.
 Beg, Turkish word meaning lord or prince, vii., 43 *note*.
 Beglerbegs, name of Ottoman generals, vii., 145.
 Bela (Alexius), Hungarian prince, v., 232.
 Bela IV., King of Hungary, notary of, writes Chronicle, vi., 137 *note*; defeated by the Mongols, vii., 16.
 Belenus, tutelary deity, i., 184 and *note*.
 Belus (Balis) on the Euphrates, v., 312 and *note*.
 Belfry (Bellifus), war engine, vi., 295 and *note*.
 Belge, i., 20.

- Belgic Gaul, i., 20.
- Belgrade or Singidunum, iv., 187 and *note*; destroyed by the Avars, v., 56 and *note*; besieged by Charles of Anjou, vi., 476; withstands Amurath, vii., 138; besieged by Mahomet II., 149.
- Belisarius, quells Nika riot, iv., 226; birth, education, campaigns in Africa, 274; Persian campaigns, *ib.* and *note*; in Africa, 280 *sq.*; takes Carthage, 283; fortifies it, 285; at Hippo Regius, 288; invades Italy, 307 *sq.*; enters Rome, 311; valour of, 313; defends Rome, 314 *sq.*; epistles to emperor, 321; receives embassy of Vitiges, 322; besieges Ravenna, 330; enters Ravenna, 332; return and glory of, *ib.* *sq.*; expedition against the Persians, 338; disgrace and submission of, *ib.* *sq.*; recall of, 369; return to Syria, *ib.*; repulses the Persians, 370; tranquillizes Africa, 390; second command of, in Italy, 398 *sq.*; epistle to Totila, 399; last victory of, 427; disgrace and death, 428; fable concerning, 430 and *note*.
- Belius, Matthew, Prodomus and Notitia of, iii., 417 *note*.
- Bell of Antermony, Travels of, in Persia, vi., 25 *note*.
- Bellarvaine, Cardinal, on the excommunication of, Leo III., v., 256.
- Bellini, Gentile, visits court of Mahomet II., vii., 161 *note*.
- Bellona, temple of, vi., 116 and *note*.
- Bellonoti, tribe of, iii., 457 *note*.
- Bells, among the Moslems, v., 418 and *note*.
- Belus, tower of, at Babylon, v., 408 and *note*.
- Benacus, lake, iii., 472 and *note*, 422.
- Bender, i., 6.
- Benedict Anianinus, Codex Regularum of, iv., 65 *note*.
- Benedict XI., Pope, resumes right of coining, vii., 227 *note*; his bull *Flagitiosum*, 243.
- Benedict XII., Pope, receives ambassadors of Andronicus, vii., 84; character, 85 and *note*; addressed by Petrarch, 280 and *note*, 281; said to have introduced triple crown, 283 *note*.
- Benedict XIII., Pope (Peter de Luna),
- Benevento, of the Merovingi *Beneficium*, meaning of, v.
- Benefits, iv., 494.
- Beneventum, tusks of the bear at, iv., 310 and *note*; of, v., 24; dukes of, 2 v., 288; princes of, vi., of, *ib.* *note*; subject to emperor, 169 and *note*; nicle of, 170 *note*; bes Saracens, 171; under I tiff, 188; battle of, 475.
- Benfey, Theodore, his trans Panchatantra, iv., 363 *vi*
- Bengal, kingdom of, conqu Mongols, vii., 12.
- Benjamin of Tudela, vi., 7 on the Jews, 274 *note*.
- Benjamin, Patriarch of the of, v., 163, 449; life of,
- Ben Schounah, Arabic hist 35 *note*; see Ebn Schoun
- Bentivoglio, nuncio, ii., 297
- Bentley, Dr., on Roman mo *note*; vii., 129.
- Beran-birig (Marlborough) *ib.* 149 and *note*.
- Berbers, Barbari or Barbari North Africa, v., 467 *vi* of the word *Barbari*, 469
- Berengarius, Panegyricon, v.
- Berenice, concubine of Titu and *note*.
- Berence, in Cyrene, march from, iv., 34 *note*; vi., 86
- Beretti, Father, professor at 11 *note*; on state of Italy
- Bergamo ad Pedem Montis, pulsed by Ricimer at, *ib.*
- Bergamo, city of, destroyed iii., 468.
- Berger de Xivrey, on Emper vii., 96 *note*.
- Bergier, Histoire des Grand i., 27 *note*.
- Beric, chieftain at Attila's feat
- Berimund, descendant of I iv., 204 *note*.
- Bernard, monk, Itinerary o 253 *note*.
- Bernard, St., opposes Roge vi., 210; preaches crusad on appeals to Rome, vii. on the character of the R *sq.*; on the temporal d the Popes, 221 and *note*

- Bernier, i., 206 *note*.
 Bernoulli, on comets, iv., 434 and *note*.
 Beroea, in Thrace, Liberius at, ii., 374 ;
 iv., 172 *note* ; besieged by the Avars,
 v., 56.
 Beroea, *see* Aleppo.
 Berry, city of, opposes Euric, iv. 38 ;
 given to Childebert, 134 *note*.
 Bertasena (Berte-scheno), leader of the
 Turks, iv., 350 and *note*.
 Bertha, mother of Hugo, King of Italy,
 vi., 88.
 Bertha, daughter of Hugo, vi., 87 *sq.*
 Bertha, wife of Manuel Comnenus, v.,
 231.
 Bertram, son of Raymond of Toulouse,
 vi., 314 *note*.
 Bertrandon de la Brocquière, describes
 Amurath, vii., 138 *note* ; on Con-
 stantinople, 158 *note*.
 Berytus, law-school at, ii., 172 and *note* ;
 manufactures of, iv., 230, 263, 266
note ; destroyed by an earthquake,
 iv., 435 *sq.* ; date of, *ib.* *note* ;
 Andronicus becomes lord of, v., 236 ;
 taken by the Saracens, 441 ; lost by
 the Franks, vi., 363.
 Berzem, governor of, opposes Alp Arslan,
 vi., 242.
 Besançon, Julian at, ii., 406 and *note* ;
 taken by the Saracens, vi., 15.
 Bessarion, Bishop of Nice, vii., 104 ; at
 the council of Florence, 109 ; made
 cardinal, 110 and *note* ; literary
 merit of, 124.
 Bessas, general of Justinian, iv., 380, 395
note ; defends Rome, 400 *sqq.* ;
 avarice of, 400 and *note*, 404.
 Bessi, or minor Goths, iii., 102 *note* ; iv.,
 207 *note*.
 Bêth Armâye, province of, v., 83 *note*.
 Bethlem, residence of St. Jerome, iii.,
 328 ; monk of, 355 *note* ; crusaders
 at, vi., 308.
 Besabde, taken by Sapor, ii., 271 ; be-
 sieged by Constantine, 272.
 Beza, Theodore, error in the Greek
 Testament, iv., 90 *note*.
 Bianca Lancia of Piedmont, vi., 457
note.
 Bibars, Sultan of Egypt, *see* Bondocdar.
 Bible, text of the Latin, iv., 90 and *note* ;
 translated into Arabic, v., 332.
 Bidpai, *see* Bilpay.
 Bielastica, battle of, vi., 136 *note*.
 Bielke, M., senator of Rome, vii., 293
note.
 Biemmi, Giammaria, on Scanderbeg, vii.,
 150 *note*.
 Biet, M., on the kingdom of Syagrius,
 iv., 102 *note*.
 Bigerra (Bejar), surrendered to the Sara-
 cens by Theodemir, v., 481.
 Bigleniza, name of mother of Justinian,
 iv., 205 *note* ; *see* Vigilantia.
 Bilâdhuri, v., 459 *note*.
 Bilbeys, *see* Pelusium.
 Bilimer, *see* Gilimer.
 Bindoes, a Sassanian Prince, destroyed
 Hormouz, v., 47 ; murders him, 49.
 Bineses, Persian ambassador, ii., 506.
 Bingen, fortified by Julian, ii., 284 *note*.
 Bir, passage of the Euphrates at, ii., 489
note.
 Biserta, Arabian squadron at, vi., 40.
 Bishops, origin and authority of, ii., 41,
 42 ; at court of Alexander Severus,
 112 ; under Christian emperors, ii.,
 315 *sqq.*, *see* clergy ; rural bishops,
see Chorepiscopi ; income of, 321 and
note ; thirteen, of Lydia and Phrygia
 deposed by Chrysostom, iii., 377 ;
 banishment of the African, iv., 85
 and *note*.
 Bisinus, Thuringian king, iv., 201 *note*.
 Bisseni, Turkish tribe, in Hungary, vi.,
 147 *note*.
 Bissextile, iii., 8, 9 *note*.
 Bithynia, i., 305 ; subdued by Procopius,
 iii., 14 ; Theodora in, iv., 218 ;
 conquered by Ochan, vii., 25 *sq.*
 Bizon, taken by the Turks, vii., 171.
 Blandina, martyr of Lyons, ii., 98 *note*.
 Bleda, brother of Attila, interview with
 ambassadors of Theodosius, iii.,
 418 ; put to death by Attila, 420 ;
 his widow entertains the Roman
 ambassadors, 436.
 Blemmyes, i., 309, 328 and *note*, 363, 364 ;
 religious privileges of, v., 164 *note*.
 Bléterie, Abbé de la, i., 234 *note*.
 Blinding, modes of, vi., 467 and *note*.
 Blois, Count of, receives Duchy of Nice,
 vi., 418.
 Blue Horde, tribes subject to Bâtû, vii.,
 48 *note*.
 Blues, or orthodox faction in Constanti-
 nople, iv., 220 *sq.*
 Blum, Richard, father of Roger de Flor,
 vi., 480 *note*.
 Boadicea, i., 4.
 Boccaccio, vii., 120 ; entertains Leo
 Pilatus, *ib.* *sq.* ; his "Homer," 121
 and *note*.
 Bochara (Bukhârâ), iv., 351 ; reduced by
 Malek Shah, 244 ; subjugated by the
 Saracens, v., 414 and *note* ; subdued
 by Zingis Khan, vii., 9.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

**HOLY
BIBLE**

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Bostra or Bosra**, Julian's epistle to people of, ii., 444; fairs of, v., 318 and *note*; siege of, by the Saracens, 417 *sq.*; fortifications of, *id.* *note*.
- Botanates**, *see* Nicephorus Botanates.
- Botany**, ancient knowledge of, vi., 32.
- Botheric**, commandant of Thessalonica, iii., 178 *sq.*
- Botrys**, iv., 435 and *note*.
- Boucher**, silversmith, at Caracorum, vii., 19 *note*.
- Boucicault**, Marshal, commands an army against Bajazet, vii., 36 and *note*; memoirs of, *id.* *note*; ransomed, 38; relieves Constantinople, 41; returns to France, *id.*; *Memoirs of*, 62 *note*.
- Bouillon in the Ardennes**, vi., 278.
- Boulainvilliers**, Count de, *Life of Mahomet*, v., 74 *note*, 352 *note*.
- Boulogne**, *see* Gessoriacum, iii., 43.
- Bursa (Brusa)**, residence of Bajazet, vii., 37; pillaged by Mehemmed Sultan, 60; royal schools at, 79; decline of, 200. *See* Prusa.
- Bova**, territory of, Greek dialect spoken in the, vii., 118 *note*.
- Bowden**, J. W., *Life of Gregory VII.*, vi., 204 *note*.
- Bowides**, Persian dynasty of, v., 489 *note*; vi., 54 and *note*; war with the Sultan of Gassa, 228.
- Boyardo**, Count, forgery of, vi., 282 *note*; *Orlando Inamorato* of, vii., 130.
- Brabant**, Franks in, ii., 273; duchy of, vi., 278 *note*.
- Bracara in fourth century**, iii., 345.
- Bracco**, i., 311 and *note*.
- Brachopagos**, battle of, between Greeks and Genoese, vi., 513.
- Braga**, metropolis of the Suevi in Spain, pillaged by Theodoric, iv., 12.
- Bradmanabad**, town of, taken by the Arabs, v., 413 *note*.
- Brahmapootra**, river, vii., 52 *note*.
- Bramante**, architect, vii., 324.
- Brancaleone**, podesta of Rome, vii., 230 and *note*; death, 231; destroys palace of Severus, 305 *note*; demolishes towers of Rome, 314.
- Brandenburg**, Vandals of, iv., 296 *note*.
- Braniseba**, duchy of, v., 233.
- Bread**, distribution of, iii., 303.
- Breakpear**, Nicholas (Hadrian IV.), vii., 222.
- Bregato**, on the Danube, Valentinian at, iii., 65.
- Bremen**, bishopric of, v., 288; town of, destroyed by Hungarians, vi., 143.
- Brenckmann**, his *Historia Pandectarum*, iv., 468 *note*.
- Brenta**, Hungarian camp on the, vi., 143.
- Breones**, Gallic tribe, iii., 461 and *note*.
- Brequigny**, M. de, his *life of Posthumus*, i., 256 *note*.
- Brescia**, i., 418; dukes of, v., 25; revolts against her bishop, vii., 220.
- Bretagne**, *see* Armorica.
- Bride-show**, at the marriage of the Czar, v., 198 *note*; held for Leo VI., *id.* *note*.
- Bridges**, Roman, i., 50 and *note*.
- Bridget**, St., of Sweden, vii., 282 and *note*.
- Brienne**, Walter de, Duke of Athens, *see* Walter de Brienne.
- Brigantes**, i., 20.
- Britain**, conquest of, i., 3; province of, described, 20; colonies of, 36 and *note*; Vandals in, 333; importance of, 357 *sq.*; revolt of Carausius, 358 *sq.*; Christianity in, ii., 63; invaded by Picts and Scots, 399; how peopled, iii., 40, 43 *sq.*; Theodosius in, 45 *sq.*; Maximus in, 136 *sq.*; Stilicho recalls legions from, 251; invaded by Scots from Ireland, 271 and *note*; various emperors, 272 *sq.* and *note*; revolt of, 352 *sq.* and *note*; independence of, confirmed, *id.*; state of, 353 *sq.*; cities of, 354 and *note*; Church and bishops, 355 and *note*; revolution of, iv., 144 *sq.*; Saxon invasion, 145 *sq.*; Lesser Britain, 150; desolation of, 152; fabulous accounts of, 156 *sq.*; Christianity introduced by Gregory, v., 36; mentioned by Anna Comnena [Thule], vi., 323 *note*; revenue of, in thirteenth century, 407 and *note*; herring fishery of, vii., 16 *note*; description of, by Chalcondyles, 95 *sq.*; feelings of English clergy towards the Pope, 290 *note*; eight kingdoms in British Islands, 289 *note*.
- Britons of France**, subdued by Charlemagne, v., 287.
- Britons**, state of, iv., 147 *sq.*; flight of, into Wales, 149; in Gaul, *id.* *note*; servitude of, 153; manners of, 155; in Cinnamon, 326 *note*.
- Brittia**, island of, mentioned by Procopius, iv., 157 and *note*.
- Britul**, mentioned by Cinnamon, vi., 326 *note*.
- Brivas or Brioude**, burial of Avitus at, iv., 14; taken by Theodoric, 135.

- Brosses, *Président de*, iv., 371 *note*; vii., 168 *note*.
- Brotomagus (Brumath), battle of, ii., 276.
- Bruchion in Alexandria, i., 280.
- Bructeri, i., 233.
- Brun, on Palace of Serai, vii., 17 *note*.
- Brundisium, port of, fleet of Guiscard at, vi., 206 and *note*.
- Brunechild, mother of Ingundis, iv., 92 and *note*.
- Bruno, St., brother of Otto the Great, v., 293 *note*.
- Brunswick, house of, origin of, vi., 194 *note*.
- Brusa, *see* Bourza and Prusa.
- Bruttium, gold mines at, iv., 192; name changed to Calabria, v., 24 *note*.
- Brutus, i., 71 *note*; founds consulship, iv., 267; judgment of, 501.
- Brutus, the Trojan romance, iii., 40 *note*.
- Bryce, Mr., on Charles IV., v., 309 *note*; on the *De Monarchia*, vii., 267 *note*.
- Bryennius, *see* Nicephoras.
- Buat, Comte de, on German invasion of Gaul, iii., 268 *note*; on destruction of Metz, 458 and *note*; on defeat of Attila, 465 *note*; on the Slavonians, iv., 345 *note*.
- Bubalia in Pannonia, birthplace of Decius, i., 238.
- Bucelin, Duke of the Alamanni, invades Italy, iv., 420 and *note*; defeated by Narses, 422; death of, 423.
- Bucentaur*, ship of John Palaeologus II., vii., 105.
- Buchanan, ii., 295 *note*; iii., 41 *note*.
- Bucharia, province of, iii., 72 *note*; Magian worship in, v., 412.
- Buda, city of, ii., 264; Ladislaus at, vii., 143.
- Budæus, vii., 129.
- Buffaloes introduced into Italy by the Lombards, v., 26 and *note*.
- Buffon, iv., 243 *note*; description of Guyana by, vii., 308 *note*.
- Bugia, city of, taken by the Saracens, v., 464.
- Bukulithos, battle of, v., 216 *note*.
- Bulgaria, kingdom of, position of, vi., 130 and *note*; first kingdom of, 133; Greek prefect of, in first crusade, 275; relations with Nicholas I., 369; joins the Greek Church, 370; foundation of second kingdom of, 375-6 and *note*; invaded by Theodore Lascaris, 458; wasted by the Mongols, vii., 17 and *note*.
- Bulgarians, first mention of, iv., 171 *note*; ethnology, 344 and *note*; threaten Constantinople, 347; invade Greece, 414; threaten Constantinople, 425 *sp.*; retire, 423; besiege Constantinople with Justinian II., v., 181; approach Constantinople in reign of Philippicus, 183 *note*; besiege Constantinople in reign of Leo V., 194 *note*; kingdom of, overthrown by Basil, ii., 216 *sp.*; assist the Emperor Leo against the Saracens, vi., 9; name of, 124 and *note*; emigration of, 190; war of, with Nicephorus, 133; defeated by Basil II., 136; colonies of, in Hungary, 147 *note*; war with the empire of Romania, 426 *sp.*.
- Bull fight in the Colosseum, vii., 318 and *note*.
- Bulla, near Carthage, iv., 286, 290.
- Bullets, stone, use of at Rome, vii., 316 and *note*.
- Bundicia, death of R. Guiscard, vi., 207 *note*.
- Buonaccorsi Philip (Callimachus), on Varna campaign, vi., 247 *note*.
- Burcard, J., his Diary, vii., 900.
- Burckhardt, on the Renaissance, vii., 290 *note*.
- Burdigala, i., 301 *note*; *see* Bordeaux.
- Burgesses, court of the, at Jerusalem, vi., 320.
- Burgundians, i., 242, 243 *note*; conquered by Probus, 329; on the Elbe, iii., 36 and *note*; feud with the Alamanni, 37; invade Italy, 269; invade Gaul and settle there, 329 and *note*; subdued by Attila on the Rhine, 421; invade Belgium, 450; invade Belgic provinces and settle in Savoy, 450; join Theodoric against the Huns, 462; bring Rome to Genseric, iv., 5 *note*; conversion of, 77; on Lake Lemano, 104; boundaries, 110; conquered by the Franks, 112 *sp.*; laws of, 123 and *note*; judicial combats among, 128; assist Odoacer, 272.
- Burgundy, Duke of, opposes Bajazet Sultan, vii., 36; pays ransom to Bajazet, 38.
- Burgundy, Duke of, uncle of Charles VI., vii., 92; at Council of Ferrara, 107.
- Burgundy, i., 52; two provinces of, 350; kingdom of, iv., 202 *note*; wars of Clovis in, 150 *sp.*; conquest of, by the Franks, 202 *sp.*

- three Romans command in, 139; Kingdom of Lower Burgundy, v., 293 *note*; of Upper Burgundy, *ib.*; vassals of, called "provincials," vi., 281; wines of, vii., 281 and *note*.
- Buri, i., 234 *note*.
- Būrji (Mamlūks), vi., 338 *note*, 362 *note*.
- Burnet's sacred theory of the earth, ii., 26 *note*.
- Burning glasses, iv., 242, 243 and *note*.
- Busbequius, ambassador at court of Soliman, vii., 63; on slavery and rights of war among Turks, 197 *note*.
- Busiris in Egypt, i., 364; camp of Caliph Merwan at, vi., 20; four places of same name in Egypt, 21 *note*.
- Bussorah, Nazarenes at, ii., 9 *note*; *see* Bassora.
- Bust, conquered by Subuktigin in 978 A.D.
- Busta Gallorum, iv., 414 and *note*.
- Butler, author of Lives of the Saints, v., 34 *note*.
- Buwayh, vi., 54 *note*.
- Buwayhids, *see* Bowides.
- Buzentinus (Bazentinus), river, course of, diverted for burial of Alaric, iii., 333.
- Buzes, colleague of Belisarius, iv., 338.
- Buzurg Mihur, Persian philosopher, v., 43; account of, *ib.* *note*.
- Bynkershoek, on Roman law, iv., 499 *note*.
- Byrrhus, senator, i., 90.
- Byssus, cloth made from *pinna squamosa*, iv., 230 and *note*.
- Byzacena, *see* Byzacium.
- Byzacium, i., 174 *note*; ceded to the Vandals, iii., 409 *note*; Moors in, iv., 296.
- Byzantine empire, *see* Roman empire.
- Byzantine writers, collections of, vii., 208 *note*.
- Byzantium, besieged by Severus, i., 119; fortifications demolished, 120 *note*; taken by Maximin, 426; by Constantine, 438; situation, ii., 141; fisheries, 147 and *note* (*see* Constantinople).
- Byzas, ii., 141 *note*.
- CAAB, Arab, v., 326 *note*.
- Caaba, temple of Mecca, v., 328; plan of, *ib.* *note*; 360 idols of, broken, 368.
- Cabades or Kobad, King of Persia, wars with the Romans, iv., 258; restoration and death, 357, 358; reign.
- Cabul, subdued by Nushirvan, iv., 384.
- Cadarigan, Persian officer, second in command, v., 88.
- Cadesia, battle of, v., 404, and *note*; situation of, *ib.* *note*; periods of the battle of, 405 and *note*.
- Cadhi, offices of, vii., 34 and *note*.
- Cadijah, wife of Mahomet, v., 294; accepts the religion of Mahomet, 352; affection of Mahomet for, 380.
- Cadix, *see* Gades.
- Cadmus, Mount, battle of (1147), A.D., vi., 330 *note*.
- Cæcilian, Bishop of Africa, ii., 339 and *note*.
- Cæcilius (or Lactantius), on the dream of Constantine, ii., 302 and *note*.
- Cælestian, senator of Carthage, iii., 412.
- Cælius, Mount, i., 299 *note*.
- Cærmarten, iv., 155.
- Cærwys, iv., 156 *note*.
- Cæsar and Augustus, i., 70; titles of, under Greek emperors, vi., 79, 80.
- Cæsar, Julius, i., 59 *note*; ii., 479; commentaries of, iii., 116 *note*; *see* *ib.*, v., 475 *note*.
- Cæsarea, capital of Cappadocia, siege of, i., 271; residence of Hannibalianus, ii., 214; temple of Fortune at, 476; Hospital at, iii., 27 and *note*; sacked by Chosroes, v., 70; Togrul at, vi., 236; occupied by Timour, vii., 58.
- Cæsarea in Mauretania, iii., 48; iv., 289; duke of, 290.
- Cæsarea, in Syria, surrenders to the Saracens, v., 440; date of, *ib.* *note*; crusaders at, vi., 308 and *note*; fief of Sidon, 318 *note*; recovered by crusaders, 351.
- Cæsarius, Bishop of Arles, iv., 194 and *note*.
- Cæsarius, consul, iii., 385 *note*.
- Cæsarius, imperial physician, ii., 451 and *note*.
- Cæsarius, master of the offices, iii., 170, 171.
- Cæsarius, Roman magistrate, i., 51 *note*.
- Cæsarius, son of Duke of Naples, his conquests over the Saracens, vi., 42.
- Cæsars of Julian, ii., 419, 479, 480 and *notes*.
- Caf, mountain, iv., 349 and *note*, 355 and *note*.
- Cafarello, Italian family, vii., 319.
- Caffa, Genoese colony of, vi., 510 and *note*; inhabitants of, transported to Constantinople, vii., 201 *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Camas**, a liquor distilled from barley, iii., 436.
- Canabus**, Nicholas, phantom emperor, vi., 402.
- Canada**, i., 215.
- Canals**, in Europe, begun by Charlemagne, v., 290 and *note*; between Nile and Red Sea, 456 and *note*.
- Cananus**, John, his account of siege of Constantinople, vii., 77.
- Canary Islands**, i., 26 *note*.
- Cancellarius**, i., 342 *note*.
- Candabar**, taken by Mongols, vii., 9.
- Candaules**, story of, v., 13 *note*.
- Candax**, camp of the Saracens in Crete, vi., 38.
- Candelaphi**, office of the, v., 81 *note*.
- Candia**, in Crete, besieged by Nicephorus Phocas, vi., 57.
- Candia**, or Crete, vi., 38, *see* Crete.
- Candidian**, minister of Theodosius, insulted by the Council of Ephesus, v., 115; received by John of Antioch, 116.
- Candidianus**, i., 427.
- Candioli**, Avar ambassador, iv., 353.
- Canidia** of Horace, iii., 17 *note*.
- Canighul**, gardens of, vii., 67.
- Caninian law**, i., 321 *note*.
- Cannæ**, battle of, vi., 168; Normans defeat the Saracens, 178; date of, *ib. note*.
- Canibalism** of the Crusaders, vi., 294 and *note*.
- Cannon** of Mahomet II., vii., 169 *et seq.*
- Canobia**, Monastery of, residence of the patriarch of the Maronites, v., 157.
- Canons** of the Goths, iii., 128 *note*; v., 80 *note*.
- Canon Names** of Soliman II., vii., 172 *note*.
- Canons** of the church, ii., 43; fifteenth, of Nicea, iii., 150.
- Cantabrians**, i., 19.
- Cantacuzino**, T. Spandugino, vii., 193 *note*.
- Cantacuzene**, Demetrius, defends Constantinople, vii., 192 *note*.
- Cantacuzene**, John, History of, vi., 489 and *note*; supports the younger Andronicus, 491; great domestic, 496; regency of, *ib.*; despatches letters to the provinces, 497; assumes the purple, 498; flies to Thessalonica, 499; alliance with the Servians, *ib.*; victory of, 500; reign of, 503 *et seq.*; continues his history, *ib. note*; Servian expedition of, 504; defeats
- John Paleologus, 505; abdication of, 506; death, *ib. note*; four discourses of, *ib. note*; his war with the Genoese, 510 *et seq.*; his treaty with the Venetians, 512; solicits help from the Turks, vii., 27; his friendship with Amir, 28 *note*; negotiations of, with Clement VI., 86.
- Cantacuzene**, Manuel, governor of Mithra, vi., 502 *note*.
- Cantacuzene**, Matthew, abdication of, vi., 503 *note*; associated in the empire, 505.
- Cantelorius**, Felix, ii., 169 *note*.
- Cantemir**, Demetrius, on Mahomet, v., 393 *note*; History of the Othman Empire, vii., 24 *note*; account of Moldavia, 34 *note*; of Bajazet, 64; on conversion of Church of St. Sophia, 199 *note*; on the treatment of the Greek Church by the Ottomans, 202 and *note*.
- Canterbury**, Emperor Manuel at, vii., 92.
- Capellianus**, i., 179.
- Capernaum**, Latin pilgrims besieged in, vi., 256.
- Caphargamala**, village near Jerusalem, iii., 211.
- Capiculi**, Turkish troops, vii., 172 and *note*.
- Capistran** (John Capistrano), vii., 149 *note*.
- Capitation tax** in Gaul, i., 412; levied on the Jews, ii., 89; under Constantine, 194 and *note*; levied by Leo III., v., 260 and *note*.
- Capito**, Ateius, iv., 456, 459 and *note*.
- Capitol** of Rome, ii., 89 and *notes*; *see* Rome.
- Capitoline games**, *see* Games.
- Capitoline Mount**, i., 299 *note*.
- Capitolinus**, i., 97 *note*; 101 *note*.
- Capisucchi**, the, family of, vii., 249.
- Capoccia**, Italian family of, vii., 329.
- Capoviani**, chiefs of militia, vii., 292.
- Cappadocia**, invaded by Alaris, i., 323; domains of, 186, 187 and *note*; proconsul of, iv., 255; Paulicians of, vi., 115.
- Capranica**, vii., 265.
- Caprara**, iv., 416.
- Capraria**, Island of, monks in the, iii., 294, 295.
- Capreolus**, Bishop of Carthage, on desolation of Africa, iii., 406 *note*.
- Capria**, taken by Roger of Sicily, vi., 212.
- Captain**, title of, in Rome, v., 399 *note*.

- Capua, i., 21; amphitheatre at, 44, 49; vil., 317 *note*; destroyed by Alaric, iii., 330 and *note*; Belisarius at, iv., 311; Lombard princes of, vi., 169; besieged by the Saracens, 172; taken by Roger, 209.
- Caput Vada, Belisarius at, iv., 280 and *note*.
- Capuzri, Roman family of, vii., 228 *note*.
- Caracalla, i., 122 *note*; names of, 127 *note*; reign, 130 *sq.*; titles of, 130 *note*; edict concerning freemen, 157 and *note*; taxation of Roman citizens by, 164; baths of, iii., 304 *sq.*; laws of, iv., 452 *note*; edict of, concerning the name of Romans, vi., 101.
- Caracorum or Holin, residence of Zingis Khan, vii., 18 and *note sq.*
- Caractacus, i., 4.
- Caracullus for Caracalla, i., 128 *note*; in the poems of Ossian, 129 *note*.
- Caramania, Emir of, military force of the, vii., 26; state of, rivals the Ottomans in Asia, *ib. note*; Sultan of, defeated by Murad, *ib.*; conquered by Bajazet, 34; war with the Ottoman Turks, 142, 143.
- Carausius, i., 357 *sq.*
- Carashar Nevian, ancestor of Timour, vii., 43.
- Caravans, Sogdian, iv., 231.
- Carbeas, the Paulician, vi., 118 *sq.*
- Carbonarian, forest, iii., 454 and *note*.
- Carcassonne, iv., 117 *note*; Church of St. Mary at, v., 480; taken by Anbasa, vi., 13 *note*.
- Carche, ii., 519 and *note*.
- Cardinals, titles of, v., 296 and *note*; their right to elect a Pope, vii., 239; sacred college of, *ib. note*; conclave of, 240 and *note*; predominance of French, 245 and *note*.
- Cardonne, De, his History of Africa, v., 459 *note*; on Aglabites and Edrisites, vi., 52.
- Carduchians, subdued by Trajan, i., 6, 375.
- Carduene (Corduene), i., 375 and *note*.
- Carette, M., on assembly of the Seven Provinces, iii., 357 *note*.
- Caribert, King of Paris, iv., 158 *note*.
- Carinus (M. Aurelius), i., 338; Caesar, 329, 340 *note*; emperor, 341; character, *ib.* and 342 *note*; celebrates the Roman games, 343; death, 349 and *note*.
- Carizme [Khwārizm], city of, the Saracens, v., 414 and duced by Malek Shah, vi., 22 province of, invaded by Mughl vii., 8; and city of, taken by the gols, 9; by Timour, 70.
- Carizmians, invade Syria, vi., 358
- Carloman, brother of Charlemagne, 284.
- Carlovingian dynasty, v., 268 *sq.*
- Carmath, an Arabian preacher, vi., 6 and *note*.
- Carmathians, Arabian sect, rise and progress of, vi., 49 *sq.*; 51 *note*
- Carmel, Mount, battles near, vi., 319
- Carmelites, iv., 58 *note*.
- Carnuntum, on the Danube, Sewer declared emperor at, i., 112 *note*. Congress of, 405 *note*.
- Carocium, standard of the v., 303 *note*; placed in Frederic II., vii., 236.
- Carpi, i., 244, 362 and *note*, 435 *note*.
- Carpilio, son of Aetius, educated in the camp of Attila, iii., 449 and *note*, 477 *note*.
- Carpini, John de Plano, friar, visits court of the great Khan, vii., 6 *note*.
- Carpocrates, v., 103.
- Carpocratians, ii., 80.
- Carrago, circle of waggons, iii., 101 *note*.
- Carrhæ, temple of the Moon at, i., 137, 191 *note*; ii., 489 and *note*; Roman colony at, i., 208 *note*; taken by Sapor, 269; Paganism at, 264 *note*.
- Carrier pigeons, introduced into Sicily by the Arabs, vi., 192 *note*.
- Carsamatus, meaning of the word, vi., 78.
- Carthage, i., 25, 49; taken by Capellanus, 179; buildings of Maximian at, 378 *note*; wasted by Maxentius, 413; Council at, iii., 43 *note*; taken by Genseric, 410 *sq.*; temple of Venus at, iii., 198; conference at, 403 and *note*; description of, 410 *sq.* and *notes*; conference of bishops at, iv., 85; cathedral at, restored by Hunneric, 88; buildings of Justinian at, 249; Belisarius at, 283 *sq.*; neighbourhood of, 284 *note*; fortifications of, 285; synod of, 289 *sq.*; saved by Belisarius, 305 and *note*; conspiracy against Solomon at, 389; patrician of, v., 464; taken by Hassan, 468; burnt, 469; bishop of, in eleventh century, 490; poverty of, relieved by Charlemagne, vi., 252.

- Carthagona**, silver mines at, i., 159; taken by the Vandals, iii., 400; fleet of Majorian destroyed by Genseric at, iv., 23.
Carthaginiensis, province of, Alani in, iii., 346.
Carua, i., 129.
Carus, general of Probus, i., 328; emperor, 337 and *note*; reign, *ib.* 377; eastern expedition, 339; death, 340.
Carushomo, Benedict, vii., 230 *note*.
Casaubon, i., 88 *note*, 91 *note*.
Casbin, city of, Heraclius at, v., 83 and *note*.
Cascellius, Roman lawyer, iv., 467 *note*.
Cashgar, under Malck Shah, vi., 244; Khedar Khan at, 245 *note*.
Casia, *see* Icasia.
Castellum, battle of, iv., 421 and *note*.
Casiri, v., 485 *note*, 486 *note*.
Caspian or Albanian gates of Mount Caucasus, iv., 260 and *note*.
Caspian Sea, explored, v., 42; two navies on, *ib.* *note*.
Cassano, battle of, i., 284 *note*.
Cassian, duke of Mesopotamia, ii., 265.
Cassian, on monastic institutions, iv., 64 *note*; on anthropomorphism, v., 102 *note*.
Cassians, legal sect, iv., 460.
Cassianus Bassus, *Geoponica* of, vi., 63 *note*.
Cassini on comets, iv., 434.
Cassiodorus, Gothic history of, i., 239; account of embassy to Attila, iii., 449 and *note*; of battle of Chalons, 464; history of, abridged by Jordanes, 458 and *note*; epistles of, iv., 180; minister of Theodoric, 189 and *note*; at Squillace, *ib.*; his account of the toleration of Theodoric, 194 *note*; announces to the senate the accession of Theodatus and Amalasontha, 303.
Cassius, Avidius, i., 73 *note*, 83, 206 *note*.
Cassius Dion, *see* Dion Cassius.
Cassius, Roman general, ii., 466 *note*.
Castalian fountain of Daphne, ii., 466.
Castamona, estate of the Comneni, v., 220.
Castelle, explanation of name, v., 485 *note*.
Castile, *see* Castelle.
Castinus, master-general, marches against the Vandals, iii., 400.
Castles in Africa, iv., 250 *note*; in Balkan Peninsula, 251 and *note*.
Castor and Pollux, apparitions of, ii., 304 *note*.
Castoria, duchy of, v., 293.
Castra Herculis (Heraclia), fortified by Julian, ii., 284 *note*.
Castricia, persecutes Chrysostom, iii., 376 *note*.
Castriotes, George, *see* Scanderbeg.
Castriotes, John, vii., 150.
Castruccio Casticani, Life of, vi., 73.
Catacalon, veteran, v., 221.
Catalauni in Sicily, vi., 38 *note*.
Catalans, service and war of, in the Greek empire, vi., 479 *seq.*, 480 and *note*; annual pension of, 481; conquests of, in Greece, 484 *seq.*; ally themselves with the Venetians against Genoa, 513.
Catalaunian Plains, iii., 34, 462 and *note*.
Catana in Sicily, Belisarius at, iv., 304; taken by the Saracens, vi., 39 *note*.
Cataneo, on Capistrano, vii., 149 *note*.
Catapan, governor of Theme of Lombardy, vi., 170 and *note*.
Catechumen, ii., 289 *note*.
Cathay, name of Northern China, vii., 11 and *note*.
Catherine, grand-daughter of Baldwin II., marries Charles of Valois, vi., 442 and *note*.
Catherine, St., of Sienna, vii., 282 and *note*.
Catholic, primate of the Persian Church, v., 146; applied to Seleucia, Ctesiphon and Bagdad, 150.
Catholics, Roman, criteria of martyrdom, ii., 98 *note*; Catholics, iii., 25.
Catibah (Kutaiba), lieutenant of Walid, v., 413 and *note*; conquests of, *ib.*; conquers Transoxiana, 414 *note*.
Cato, the censor, legal studies of, iv., 456; on the Oppian law, 478 *note*; maxims of, on family law, 489 and *note*.
Cato the Younger, march of, to Carthage, iv., 34 and *note*.
Catti, i., 255, 332 *note*.
Cattle, horned, in the Vosges, iv., 329 *note*.
Catullus, poem of, on Alys, ii., 438 *note*.
Catulus, gilds the roof of the capitol, iv., 5 *note*.
Catus, *see* Aelius Pactus.
Caucaland (Hansa-land), iii., 126 and *note*.
Caucasia in Sicily, iv., 279 and *note*.
Caucasus, Mount, iv., 260.
Canoba (or Coca), Theodosius at, iii., 121 and *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Chameleon, surname of Leo V., *q.v.*
 Champagne St. Hilaire, village of, iv., 117 *note*.
 Chancellor, *see* Cancellarius.
 Chang-Tsong, Emperor of China, death of, vii., 7 *note*.
 Chanse, province of, iii., 87.
 Chanson d'Antioche, vi., 260 *note*.
 Chao-wu, the great Khan, invades Persia, v., 44.
 Chapters, the Throe, controversy of, v., 137 *sq.*
 Chararich, dominions of, iv., 101 *note*.
 Chardin, Sir John, on Islam, v., 346 *note*; on Hosein, 392 *note*; on Persia, 489 *note*.
 Charegites, or Khârejites, revolt of, v., 385.
 Charigites or Khasrajites, Arabian tribe, adopt Islam, v., 356.
 Chariot races, ii., 419 and *note*; iv., 218, 279.
 Charito, wife of Jovian, iii., 6.
 Charlemagne, studied laws of the Franks, iv., 122; falconers of, v., 27 *note*; rustic code of, iv., 130 *note*; conquers the Lombards, v., 268; alliance with Hadrian I., 271; at Rome, *ib.*; donation of, 273 and *note*; holds synod at Frankfort, 279; assemblies of, *ib.* *note*; church of, at Aachen, *ib.* *note*; book of, 279 and *note*; pilgrimages to the Vatican, 280; coronation of, 281; reign, 279; character, 283; name of, *ib.* *note*; cruelty of, to the Saxons, 284; laws of, *ib.*; Spanish expedition of, 285; literary merits of, 286; extent of his empire in France, *ib.* *sq.*; instituted the *Spanish March*, 288; founded eight bishoprics, *ib.*; protects the Latin pilgrims, vi., 252.
 Charles Martel, receives embassy of Pope Gregory I., v., 266; made patrician of Rome, 270 and *note*; defeats the Saracens, vi., 15 *sq.*; on the *filioque* question, 367 and *note*; palace of, at Aix la Chapelle, vii., 311, 312 *note*.
 Charles of Anjou in Sicily, vi., 474 *sq.*; defeat and death, 479; senator of Rome, vii., 231 and *note*.
 Charles the Bald, grants charter to monastery of Alton, v., 287 *note*.
 Charles the Bold, gives right of coinage to Zürich, vii., 222 *note*.
 Charles the Fat, v., 292 *sq.*
 Charles IV. of Germany, weakness of, v., 307 *sq.*; founds University of Prague, 308; ostentation of, 309 *sq.*; contrast between Charles and Augustus, 310; receives Rhodé, vii., 277 and *note*; imperial coronation of, 280.
 Charles V., emperor, i., 385; sack of Rome by, iii., 329; in Northern Africa, v., 491; struggle of, with the popes, vii., 297.
 Charles V. of France, defended by Baluze, vii., 285 *note*.
 Charles VI., *Histoire de Charles VI.*, vii., 96 *note*; his gifts to Sultan Bajazet, 37; assists Emperor Manuel 41; receives Emperor Manuel, 92, 287.
 Charles VIII. of France, receives titles to empires of Constantinople and Trebizond, and assumes title Augustus, vii., 205 and *note*.
 Charles XII. of Sweden, i., 138.
 Charmoy, M., account of Timour's campaigns, vii., 49 *note*.
 Charon, name of a patrician, v., 222.
 Charondas, laws of, iv., 445 and *note*.
 Châteaubriand, on the assembly of the seven provinces, iii., 357 and *note*.
 Chauci, i., 255.
 Chazars, tribe of in Hungary, vi., 147 *note*; *see* Chozars.
 Chazrajites, *see* Charigites.
Chelebi, Turkish title, v., 232.
 Chemistry, science of, revived by the Arabs, vi., 32 and *note*.
 Chemnis, in Upper Egypt, Nestorius buried at, v., 120; description of, *ib.* *note*.
 Cherefeddin Ali, panegyrist of Tamerlane, iii., 427 *note*.
 Cherson, city of, ii., 218; Wolodomir at, vi., 163; capture of, *ib.* *note*.
 Chersonesus Taurica, i., 260; Justinian II., banished to, v., 180.
 Chersonesus, Thracian, defeat of the Romans by Attila in, iii., 425; fortifications a long wall of, iv., 252.
 Chersonites, allies of Constantine against the Goths, ii., 218; exemption of, from duties, 219.
 Cherusci, i., 255.
 Chesney, General, his survey of the Euphrates and Tigris, v., 408 *note*.
 Chess, iv., 364 and *note*; improved by Timour, vii., 69 and *note*.
 Chester, Roman colony, i., 36 *note*.
 Chians, offices of, vi., 82 and *note*.
 Childebert, laws of, iv., 126 *note*; attempt to conquer Auvergne, 194; invades Italy, v., 21 *sq.*

- Childeric, exile of, iv., 26 and *note*; marries Basina, 100 and *note*.
- Childeric, last Merovingian king, deposed, v., 268 and *note*.
- Chilarchs, of Vandal army, iii., 402.
- China, in the third century, A. D., i., 368 and *note*; iii., 81 *sqq.* and *notes*; invaded by the Topa, 261; silk in iv., 228; early Chinese chronicle, *ib. note*; trade in, 232; Turks in, 351 *sq.*; Christianity in, v., 149 *sq.*; friendship of with the Arabs, 414; paper manufacture in, 415; invaded by Zinghis Khan, vii., 6 *sqq.*; northern and southern empires of, 11 *sq.*
- Chingis, *see* Zingis.
- Chionites, in the army of Sapor, ii., 269 and *note*.
- Chiorli, town of, vi., 435.
- Chios, Island of, Turks driven from, vi., 322; Giustiniani in, vii., 191.
- Chiozza, Isle of, iii., 471.
- Chisbul, traveller, iii., 373 *note*.
- Chivalry, vi., 282.
- Chienes, Armenian prince, v., 202.
- Chlodwig, *see* Clovis.
- Chlorus, *see* Constantius.
- Chlum, prince of, vii., 33 *note*.
- Chnodomar, King of the Alamanni, ii., 278 and *note*; taken prisoner by Julian, 280.
- Chodai-nama or book of Lords, iv., 362 and *note*.
- Chorasan, *see* Khurāsān.
- Chorasmia, province of, iii., 88 *note*.
- Chorepiscopi, or rural bishops, ii., 316 *note*.
- Chosroes I. Nushirvan, King of Persia, i., 211 *note*; seven philosophers at his court, 267; accession of, *ib. note*; date of accession, iv., 358 *note*; proposed adoption by Justin, 358; meaning of "Nushirvan," 359 *note*; character of, 359 *sqq.*; appoints four viziers, 360; endless peace with Rome, 364; makes war against the Romans, *ib.*; invades Syria, 366 *sqq.*; ruins Antioch, 367; negotiations with Justinian, 382 *sqq.*; empire of, 384; palace of, v., 407 *sq.*
- Chosroes II., son of Hormous, accession of, v., 48; flies to the Romans, 49; restored by Narses, 51; letters of, 52 *note*; invades the Roman Empire, 68 *sqq.*; conquers Syria, 69; threatens Constantinople, 78; retreats before Heraclius, 82; flight, 91; murder of, 92 and *note*.
- Chosroes, King of Armenia, i., 219 *sq. note, 219.*
- Chosroes, son of Tiridates, ii., 225.
- Chosroes, vassal of Persia, ruler of Eastern Armenia, iii., 392.
- Chosroiduchta, sister of Otas, i., 271 *sq. note.*
- Chozars or Khazars, relations of, of Heraclius, v., 87 and *note*; Justinian II. seeks refuge with, 180.
- Chrabr, monk, vi., 134 *note*.
- Christ, date of birth and crucifixion of, ii., 85 *note*; miraculous image of, v., 44 and *note*, 67 *note*; sepulchre of, burnt, 70; opinions concerning the nature of, 97 *sqq.*; statue of, 247 and *note*; correspondence with Abgarus, 247; picture of, *ib. sq.*; how regarded by Mahomet, 341 *sq.*
- Christian, Archbishop of Mentz, vi., 21; *note*.
- Christianity, inquiry into its progress and establishment, ii., 1 *sqq.*; Jewish converts to, 7; causes of and historical view of its progress, 54 *sqq.*; in the East, 57; in Egypt, 59; in Rome, 60; in Africa, 62; beyond the empire, 64; attitude of Hadrian to, 94, 95; under Constantine, 292 *sqq.*, 321 *sqq.*; under Jovian, iii., 1 *sq.*; in Rome, 191 *sqq.*; Pagan ceremonies in, 214 *sq.*; a cause of the fall of the western empire, iv., 162 *sq.*; propagation of, in Asia, v., 148 *sqq.*; in the north of Europe, vi., 164 *sqq.*
- Christians, peculiar opinions of primitive, ii., 15 *sqq.*; their belief in miracles, 28 *sqq.*; virtues and customs of primitive, 32 *sqq.*; community of goods among, 47 *sqq.*; tithes, 48; under Nero, 62; proportion to Pagans, 65; poverty of, 67; confounded with the Jews, 82 and *note*; favourably regarded by Constantine, 292; description of, under Constantine, 293 *sqq.*; loyalty of, 297; yearly synods, 327; respect for Plato, 339 and *note*; doctrines of, 344 *sqq.*; Asian controversy, 347 *sqq.*; their sects, 349 *sqq.*; Julian's treatment of, 462 *sqq.*; influence of, on the Mahometans, v., 332; of the seventh century relapse into semblance of paganism, 338; manners of, at time of first crusade, vi., 268; their discipline of penance, *ib. sq.*
- Christians of St. John, in Bassora, v., 331.

- Christmas day, origin of, ii., 408 *note*.
 Christopher, son of Constantine Copronymus, v., 188.
 Christopher, son of Romanus I., made emperor, v., 209.
 Christopolis, pass of, vi., 500 *note*; on the Greek frontier, 502 *note*.
 Chrobatians, *see* Croats.
 Chronicon Farfense, v., 275 *note*.
 Chronique du religieux de Saint Denis, vii., 36 *note*.
 Chrysanthius the philosopher, ii., 440, 450; high priest of Lydia, 451 *note*.
 Chrysaphius, favourite of Theodosius the younger, iii., 442 and *note*; pardoned by Attila, 443; supports cause of Eutychius, v., 121; death, 123.
 Chrysocheir the Paulician, v., 205; victories of, vi., 119, 17.; death, 120.
 Chrysologus, St. Peter, commends piety of Placidia, iii., 477 *note*.
 Chrysoloras, Manuel, professor of Greek at Florence, vii., 122; death, 123; his pupils, *ib.* *note*; compares Rome and Constantinople, 132 *sq.*; epistle of, to John Palaeologus, 132 *note*; death, *ib.*
 Chrysopolis, battle of, i., 440; ii., 143; Harun al Rashid at, vi., 34; Sultan Soliman entertained at, 249.
 Chrysostom, John, on the church at Antioch, ii., 17.; eloquence of, 327; on earthquake at Jerusalem, 459; on the luxury of Constantinople, iii., 358 and *note*; protects Eutropius, 369; homilies in defence of Eutropius, 370 *note*; election and merit of, 374 *sq.*; administration, 375 *sq.*; extends the jurisdiction of Constantinople, 377; persecution of, by Eudoxia, *ib.* 199.; exile, 379; death, 380; epistles of, *ib.* *note*; his relics brought to Constantinople, 381 and *note*; on monastic life, iv., 62 *note*; opposes Apollinaris, v., 105.
 Chundo, chamberlain of Gontran, King of Burgundy, iv., 132 *note*.
 Church, Christian, government of primitive, ii., 39 *sqq.*; wealth of, 47; revenues of, 50; excommunication in, 51; property of, secured by edict of Milan, 320 and *note*; authority of, 342, 343; disendowed by Julian, 461; Eastern Church torn with discord, v., 126 *sqq.*; union of the Latin and Greek, 143; corruption of the Latin, vii., 99; union of the Latin and Greek, concluded at Ferrara and Florence, 108 *sqq.*; treaty between the Greek and Latin, 111 *sq.*
 Churches, Christian, under Constantine, ii., 321; privilege of sanctuary transferred to, 323 and *note*.
 Chu Yuen Chang, revolt of, vii., 20; founds Ming dynasty, *ib.* *note*.
 Cibalis, battle near, i., 430 and *note*.
 Cibossa, church of Paulicians at, vi., 112 *note*.
 Cicero, De natura Deorum, i., 30 and *note*; attitude to religion, 31 *note*, 82, 163; on the immortality of the soul, ii., 19 and *note*; on Plato's Timæus, 341 *note*; aspired to the Augurate, iii., 190 *note*; on the Twelve Tables, iv., 446, 454 *note*; account of De Legibus, 457 *sq.*
 Cilicia, province, war in, between Severus and Pescennius Niger, i., 118; Persian conquest of, 271; invaded by Alani, 323; Cilician gates, v., 79 and *note*; conquest of, by Nicephorus, vi., 58.
 Cillium, or Colonia Cillitana, iv., 393 *note*; subdued by the Saracens, v., 442; wars of Alexius in, 393.
 Cimbri, iii., 37 *note*.
 Cineas, councillor of Pyrrhus, iii., 288 *note*.
 Cingolani, his map of the Campagna, vii., 237 *note*.
 Cinnamus, historian, prejudice of, vi., 327 *note*.
 Circassians, dynasty of, vii., 54 and *note*.
 Circesium, site of, i., 191 *note*; fortified by Diocletian, 374; Julian at, ii., 491, 492; iv., 255; Chosroes at, v., 49.
 Circumcellions, sect of, ii., 387 *sqq.*; tunnels of, in Africa, iii., 404.
 Circumcision, ii., 6, 11 *note*; practised by Mahometans on the Euxine, iv., 373; condemned in Abyssinia by the Jesuits, v., 167 and *note*.
 Circus, Roman, iii., 305 and *note*; factions of the, at Rome and Constantinople, iv., 218 *sq.*; factions of, abandon the Emperor Maurice, v., 61.
 Cirencester, Richard of, i., 36 *note*; iii., 43 *note*; on cities of Britain, 355 *note*.
 Cirra, i., 413; ii., 216 *note*; opposes Gaiseric, iii., 409; duke of, iv., 290.
 Citadels of the Alps, i., 417 and *note*.
 Citeaux, monastery of, vi., 332.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- 110 *sqq.*; victory of, near Dijon, 111; war with the Goths, 114 *sqq.*; conference with Alaric, *ib.*; consulship of, 118, 119 *note*.
- Cluverius on the Lombards, iv., 343 *note*.
- Cniva, King of the Goths, i., 245.
- Coaches, Roman (*carrucæ*), iii., 296 *note*.
- Cocaba, village of, ii., 90.
- Coche on the Tigris, Julian at, ii., 508 *sqq.*
- Cochin China, conquered by the Mongols, vii., 12.
- Cochin, King of, grants privileges to the Christians of St. Thomas, v., 151.
- Codex Argenteus, Gothic, iv., 76 *note*.
- Codex Carolinus, v., 266 *note*.
- Codex, the Gregorian and the Hermogenian, iii., 453.
- Codex of Justinian, iii., 463 *sqq.*; second edition of, 469.
- Codex Nasiræus, *see* Nasiræus.
- Codex of Theodosius, iii., 151 *note*; laws against the Donatists in, 403.
- Codicils, Roman law on, iv., 491 *sq.*
- Codinus, ii., 157 *note*, 210 *note*; iv., 430 *note*; his account of honours and offices, vi., 83 *note*.
- Codrus, Roman poet, iii., 308.
- Coemptio, iv., 476, 477 *note*.
- Cœnobites, origin of, iv., 58 *note*; account of, 72 and *note*, 73.
- Coenon Gallicanum, ii., 252 *note*.
- Cogende (Khojend), city of, taken by the Mongols, vii., 9.
- Cognats, iv., 488.
- Cogni, *see* Iconium.
- Coborts, city, i., 17, 91 *note*.
- Coic, British king, i., 397 *note*.
- Coimbra, treaty with Saracens, v., 481 *note*.
- Coinage, depreciation of, under Gallienus, i., 281 *note*, 313; of Constantine the Great, ii., 195 and *note*; with head of Boniface, iii., 408 and *note*; under the Palæologi, vi., 481 and *note*; papal, vii., 212 and *note*; Roman republican, in twelfth and thirteenth centuries, 227 and *note*; of the Popes, 290 and *note*.
- Colchester, Roman colony, i., 96 *note*.
- Colchians, bravery of, iv., 374.
- Colchoa, conquered by Trajan, i., 6; also called *Laxica* or *Mingrelia*, iv., 371; description of, *ib.* *sqq.*; manners of the natives, 373; Christians of, 374; revolutions of, 375; revolts of, 377 *sqq.*
- Colias, Gothic leader, iii., 100.
- Coliseum, *see* Rome.
- Collatorale, or assessors, vii., 292.
- Collatio episcoporum proved a forgery by Havet, iv., 112 *note*.
- College, electoral of Germany, v., 307 and *note*.
- Collyridian heresy, v., 338 and *note*.
- Cologne (Colonia), i., 219 *note*; Posthumus at, 278 *note*; destroyed by Germans, ii., 273; pillaged by Clodion, 455; archbishops of, their relation to Rome, vii., 214.
- Colonatus, i., 234 *note*.
- Colonia, Sultanate of, v., 236.
- Colonies, Roman, i., 35, 36; in Britain and Spain, *ib.* *note*; honorary colonies, *ib.* *note*.
- Colonna, John, Marquis of Ancona, vii., 251; learning of, 321 *note*.
- Colonna, John, son of Stephen the Younger, vii., 273.
- Colonna, Marco Antonio, vii., 251 *note*.
- Colonna, Otho, *see* Martin V.
- Colonna, Peter, senator of Rome, vii., 251; arrested, 265; death, 273.
- Colonna, Protonotary, vii., 295.
- Colonna, Roman family, vii., 290 *sqq.*; splendour of, 298; quarrels of, with the Ursini, 319.
- Colonna, Sciarra, vii., 243, 252.
- Colonna, Stephen, the Elder, vii., 251 and *note*, 252, 262 *sq.*, 273.
- Colonna, Stephen, the Younger, vii., 253, 254; death of, 273.
- Colovium, tunic worn by the Greek emperors, vi., 80 *note*.
- Columba, St., Monastery of, iv., 62 and *note*.
- Columban, St., iv., 421 *note*.
- Columbanus, rule of, iv., 65 *note*, 67 *note*.
- Columella, iii., 294 *note*.
- Columna Regina, at Rhegium, v., 22 *note*.
- Colzim, Mount, Monastery of, at, iv., 59; Anthony at, *ib.* and *note*.
- Comana, temple of, ii., 186, 187 *note*; Chrysostom at, iii., 380.
- Comans, Turkish tribe of, serve under Bulgarian king, vi., 493 and *note*; under Alexis Strategopulus, 440 and *note*, 441; 40,000 families of the, adopted by King Bela IV., vii., 16.
- Comes, *see* Count.
- Comets, iv., 492 *sq.* and *note*.
- Comitia, *see* Assembly.
- Comito, sister of the Emperor Theodor, iv., 212 and *note*.
- Commachio, names of, v., 23 *note*.
- Commestriat, general of the Emperor Maurice, v., 58 and *note*.

- Comacerre**, despised by the plebeians of Rome, iii., 309.
- Commodus**, shared the imperial power, i., 84; reign, *ib.* 299.; **Porphyrogenitus**, 85 *note*; death, *ib.*; accuses Severus, 111 *note*; protected the Christians, ii., 109.
- Comneni**, family of, v., 220; genealogy of, *ib.* 299.; extinction of, vii., 205.
- Comnenus**, *see* Alexius, David, Isaac, John, Manuel (Emperors).
- Comnenus**, Hadrian, v., 225.
- Comnenus**, John, refuses the empire, v., 221; Caesar, 223; children of, 224.
- Comparetti**, on South Italian dialects, vii., 118 *note*.
- Compiègne**, Palace of the Merovingians at, vi., 13 and *note*.
- Compostella**, shrine of, ii., 63.
- Compurgators**, iv., 127.
- Comum**, town of Attila at, iii., 469; lake of, iv., 192.
- Conception**, doctrine of immaculate, v., 341 and *note*.
- Conclave**, institution of the, vii., 240.
- Concord**, altar of, in Elephantine, iv., 255 *note*.
- Concordia**, pillaged by Alaric, iii., 287; destroyed by Attila, 468.
- Concubines**, Roman laws respecting, iv., 482 *sq.*
- Confarreation**, marriage rite, iv., 476, 477 *note*.
- Confederates**, barbarian army of, subverted the Western Empire, i., 47 and *note*; new legion of Tiberius so called, v., 19 and *note*.
- Confessors**, ii., 104 *note*.
- CONOB**, Inscription of Byzantine coins, v., 264 *note*.
- Conon**, name of Leo the Isaurian, v., 185.
- Conon**, St., church and monastery of, iv., 223 and *note*.
- Coonrad**, Duke of Franconia, death of, vi., 146.
- Conrad**, Duke of the Franconians, vi., 146.
- Conrad I.**, v. 294 *note*.
- Conrad II.**, Emperor, annexed kingdom of Arles to empire, v., 293 *note*; in Southern Italy, vi., 176 *note*.
- Conrad III.**, Emperor, vi., 261; joins second crusade, 324; dealings with the Greek emperor, 328; his march in Asia Minor, 329; illness of, 330 *note*; invited to Rome by the senate, vii., 225 *note*, 232.
- Conrad of Montserrat**, *see* **Conrad**, second crusade, vi., 327; *see* **band of Theodora**; defends Tyre, *ib.*
- Conradin of Swabia**, *see* **Conrad**, vi., 475, 477; in Rome, *ib.*
- Consentia (Consenna)**, *see* **mark of Autharis**, vi., 205; by R. Guiscard, vi., 205.
- Conservators**, instituted, vii., 205.
- Consilium Spciale and Generalis**, vii., 292 *note*.
- Consistorium**, ii., 185 *note*; condemns Priscillian, *ib.*; secrets of, disclosed to Attila, *ib.*
- Constable**, office of, vi., 82 and *note*; French mercenaries at Constantinople, 460.
- Constance**, heiress of Antioch, vi., 345.
- Constance**, treaty of, v., 304; Council of, 309 *note*; synod of, 309; *see* **Act**, vi., 261 *note*; vii., 100; 289.
- Constans I.**, son of Constantine II., *see* **Constans**, governs Italy and Africa, 224; Augustus, 224; reigns, *ib.*; war with Constantine II., 231 *sq.*; slain at Helena, 233; protects Atheism, 368; tolerates paganism, 393; *see* **Britain**, iii., 43.
- Constans II.**, son of Constantine III., type of, v., 141; emperor, 176 *sq.*; name of, *ib.* *note*; puts his brother Theodosius to death, 177; in Greece and Italy, *ib.*; murder of, in Sicily, *ib.*; checked advance of the Saracens, *ib.* *note*; death of, 259; dream of, 443 and *note*; sends army to Africa, 464 *note*; visit to Rome, vi., 101; takes roof from the Pantheon, vii., 311.
- Constans**, son of the usurper Constantine, put to death at Vienna, iii., 340.
- Constantia**, sister of Constantine the Great, i., 401 *note*, 425, 440; ii., 206.
- Constantia**, daughter of Roger of Sicily, vi., 219, 222.
- Constantia**, Roman fortress on the Danube.
- Constantia**, wife of Gratian, iii., 14 and *note*; escapes to Sirmium, 63.
- Constantian**, general of Justinian, iv., 295 *note*.
- Constantina**, daughter of Constantine the Great, crowns Vetricio, ii., 234 and *notes*; marries Gallus, 248; character, 249; death, 252.

- Constantina, sister of Eusebia, ii., 407 *note*.
 Constantina, widow of the Emperor Maurice, v., 65; death, *ib.*
 Constantina, town, besieged by Cobad, iv., 258 *note*.
 Constantine I., the Great, i., 291; birth and family of, 397 and *note*; education, *ib.*; escape of, and journey to Britain, 399; elevation, 400 *sq.*; marries Fausta, 405; named Augustus, *ib.*; besieges Arles, 410; in Gaul, 412; war with Maxentius, 414 *sq.*; passes the Alps, 417; battles of Turin and Verona, *ib.* *sq.*; victory near Rome, 421; reception of, at Rome, 423; established senatorial tax, 424; alliance with Licinius, 425; civil war with Licinius, 430 *sq.*; treaty of Peace, 432; laws of, 433 *sq.*; clemency to the Christians, ii., 29; chooses Byzantium as site for Constantinople, 141; plans Constantinople, *ib.*; prodigality of, 156; character, 208 *sq.*; family of, 205; edict of, encouraging informers, 208; visits Rome, 209; puts Crispus to death, *ib.*; punishes Fausta, 211; elevates his sons and nephews, 212; Gothic war, 217; alliance with the Chersonites, 218; death, 220; conversion of, 288 *sq.*; conduct towards the Church and Christians, 289; pagan superstition of, 290 and *notes*; protects Christians of Gaul, 291; publishes Edict of Milan, 292; divine right of, 296; religious war against Licinius, 298 and *note*; dream of, 301; his conversion, 305 *sq.*; his devotion, 308; his baptism, 309; at Council of Nice, 328; opposes the Arians, 356; and the Orthodox, *ib.*, 357; his religious vacillation, 360; tolerates paganism, 391 *sq.*; in Julian's *Cæsars*, 430; donation of, v., 275 and *note*; imaginary law of, vi., 87 and *note*; cured of leprosy, vii., 270 and *note*.
 Constantine II., i., 432 and *note*; ii., 206; elevation of, 212, 214; Augustus, 224; war with Constans, 231; death, 232.
 Constantine III., general of Honorius, receives the fortune of Heraclian, iii., 339; character, 341 *sq.*; raised to the Empire of the West, 394; marries Placidia, *ib.*; death, *ib.*
 Constantine [III.], son of Heraclius, made Augustus, v., 174 and *note*; at Caesarea, 440.
 Constantine IV., Pogonatus, defeats the usurper, Mizizios, v., 178; revolt of his brothers, *ib.*, 179; reign, vi., 259.
 Constantine V. Copronymus, reign, v., 186 *sq.*; military prowess of, 287 *note*; abolishes the monks, *ib.*; pestilence in the empire, *ib.*; bones of, buried, 201; settled Armenian families in Thrace, 202 *note*; marries daughter of King of the Chozars, vi., 87; introduces the Paulicians into Thrace, 120 *sq.*
 Constantine VI. crowned, v., 188; marries Theodote, 190 *note*; blinded by order of Irene, 191 and *note*.
 Constantine VII., Porphyrogenitus, on the Chersonites, ii., 218 *note*; birth of, v., 207; title of, 208; deposes government to his wife Helena, 210; death, 311; on Greek fire, vi., 11; works of, 37 *note*, 62 *sq.* and *notes*; Ceremonies, Themes, Administration of Empire, Geoponics, Encyclopædia, Tactics, Hippiatrics, *ib.*; on the Franks, 99 *sq.*; on the Slavonians, 132 *note*; on Russia, 150 *note*; his account of baptism of Olga, 162.
 Constantine VIII., son of Romanus I., v., 209.
 Constantine IX. [VIII.], v., 217.
 Constantine X. [IX.], Monomachus, v., 219 and *note*.
 Constantine XI. [X.], Ducas, v., 222; policy of, *ib.* *note*; sons of, banish the mother of the Comneni, 225.
 Constantine XII., v., 223.
 Constantine XIII. [XI.], Palæologus, last Greek emperor, vii., 154; crowned at Sparta, 155; message to Mahomet II., 165; signs act of union of Greek and Latin Churches, 175; defends Constantinople, 177 *sq.*; last speech of, 188; death, 193.
 Constantine, African Christian, learning of, vi., 189; translates Hippocrates, 190 *note*.
 Constantine Angelus, v., 242.
 Constantine, brother of Michael, vi., 194 *note*; letters of, to R. Guiscard, *ib.*; commands in Greece, 470.
 Constantine Dragases, Prince of Servia, vii., 154 *note*.
 Constantine, governor of Spoleto, iv., 325; death, 326 and *note*.
 Constantine Paleokappa, author of the *Ionia*, vi., 107 *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- under Alaric, 241; by Bulgarians under Zabergan, iv., 426; besieged by Avars, v., 76; threatened by Persians, 78; besieged by Thomas the Slavonian, 196; by Arabs, vi., 2; date of siege, *ib. note*; second siege, 5 *sqq.*; threatened by Harun al-Rashid, 34; besieged by Krum, 134; threatened by Hungarians, 144; four times by Russians, 153 *sqq.*; by George of Sicily, 213; siege and conquest of, by the Latins, 395 *sq.*; siege of, by Asan and Vataces, 433 *sq.*; recovered by Michael Palaeologus, 440 *sqq.*; escape of, from the Mongols, vii., 20; threatened by Holagou, 22; by Bajaset, 40; relieved by Boucicault, 41; besieged by Amurath II., 77 *sq.*; by Mahomet II., 177 *sqq.*; capture of, 191 *sqq.*
- Sigma, semi-circular portico, vi., 77.
- Skyla, a vestibule, vi., 76 *note*.
- Triclinos: of Justinian II., vi., 76 *note*; Chrysotriklinos *ib.* 78 and *note*; Lausiaca, 76 *note*.
- Trikonchon, building of Theophilus, vi., 76 *note*, 77 *note*.
- Turbé (grave) of Abu Ayub, vii., 201 and *note*.
- Constantius I., Chlorus, general of Probus, i., 328; adopted by Carus, 343; made Cæsar, 354 and *note*; in Britain, 359, 360; in Gaul, 362; character and reign, 394 *sqq.*; death, 399; epitaph on, *ib. note*; averse to persecution, ii., 128.
- Constantius II., son of Constantine, ii., 206; Cæsar and ruler of Gaul, 207; in the East, 214; receives the testament of Constantine, 222; seizes Constantinople, *ib.*; Augustus, 224; Persian wars of, 227 *sqq.*; refuses to treat with Magnentius, 235; deposes Vetricianus, 236; makes war against Magnentius, 238; defeats him at Mursa, 240; elevates Julian, 257; visits Rome, 260 *sqq.*; war with the Quadi, 262 *sqq.*; Persian negotiations of, 265 *sqq.*; Eastern expedition of, 272; besieges Bezabde, *ib.*; apotheosis of, 291; adopts Arian heresy, 357, 358; reconciled with Athanasius, 369; edicts against the Catholics, 386; tolerates paganism, 393; visits temples of Rome *ib.*; his fear of Julian and war against him, 396 *sqq.*; receives Julian's embassy, 406; death, 415.
- Constantius III., general of Honorius, receives the fortune of Heraclian, iii., 339; character, 341 *sq.*; raised to the empire of the West, 394; marries Placidia, *ib.*; death, *ib.*
- Constantius, Julius, the Patrician, brother of Constantine, i., 401 *note*; ii., 206.
- Constantius, secretary of Attila, iii., 433 and *note*.
- Constitutions, of the emperors, iv., 450.
- Consularis, ii., 170.
- Consuls, i., 64, 66 *note*; under Constantine, ii., 161 *sqq.*; in the middle ages, vii., 223, 224 *note*.
- Consulship under the empire, i., 66 and *note*; assumed by emperors in fourth and fifth centuries, 384 *note*; Julian's reverence for the, ii., 426; restored by Odoacer, iv., 54 and *note*; suppressed by Justinian, 267 *sq.*; resumed by Justin II., v., 2.
- Conti, Roman family of, vii., 249, 319.
- Contracts, iv., 93 *sqq.*
- Convertissetur, ii., 451 *note*.
- Conybeare, Mr., defends Philo's treatise on the Therapeute, ii., 60 *note*.
- Copiate, or grave-diggers, ii., 319.
- Coptic dialect, v., 144.
- Coptos, i., 328, 364.
- Copts or Egyptians, heresy of, v., 147, 159; decline of, 163; submit to the Saracens, 448.
- Corbulo, i., 3 *note*.
- Corcyra, Totila at, iv., 410; Procopius at, *ib. note*; siege of, by Manuel I., v., 230; crusaders at, vi., 391; taken by Venice, 416 *note*.
- Cordova in fourth century, iii., 345; siege of, iv., 93; governor of, in the hands of the Saracens, v., 478; legion of Damascus at, 484; seat of the Caliphs, 485; Christians of, under Arabs, 491 and *note*; martyrs of, 493 and *note*; seat of learning, vi., 28.
- Corduene, ii., 511 *note*.
- Corea, kingdom of, conquered by the Mongols, vii., 12.
- Corfu, see Corcyra.
- Corinth, i., 49; church at, ii., 41; destroyed by Alaric, iii., 243; walls of, restored by Justinian, iv., 252; besieged by George of Sicily, vi., 213; taken by Turks, vii., 203.
- Corippus, *Johannis* of, iv., 388 *note*; on Justinian, v., 1.
- Corn, at Alexandria, i., 365 *note*; at Constantinople, ii., 155 *sq.* and *note*; export of, from Egypt, iv., 227.

- Cornelia, "Attila" of, iii., 422 *note* ;
"Heraclius" of, v., 63 *note*.
- Cornwall conquered by Athelstan, iv.,
149 *note*, 150.
- Coronary gold (Aurum Coronarium), ii.,
199, 200 *note*.
- Coronations, imperial, at Rome, account
of, vii., 211 and *note*.
- Corporations, municipal, laws of Majorian
concerning, iv., 18 *sq*.
- Correctors, ii., 170.
- Corruptibles and Incorruptibles, heresy
of, v., 159.
- Corsi, Roman family of, vii., 249, 319.
- Corsica, i., 26; bishops banished to, iv.,
85; state of, *ib.* and *note*.
- Cortes, ii., 509 *note*.
- Corvinus, Matthew, King of Hungary,
vii., 149 and *note*.
- Corvinus, surname of John Huniades,
9.v.
- Cos, Isle of, silk made in, iv., 228 and
note.
- Cosa (Kussai), ancestor of Mahomet,
usurps the Caaba, v., 328 *note*.
- Cosdar, town of, taken by the Moslems,
v., 413 *note*; see Kusdâr.
- Cosmas Indicopleustes, iv., 233 *note*, 234
note; account of the Axumites, 385
note; Christian topography of, v.,
148 *note*.
- Cosmo of Medicis, see Medicis.
- Cossova, battle of, vii., 32 *sq*.; John
Huniades defeated at, 149.
- Cotini, i., 216 *note*.
- Cotrigurs, see Bulgarians.
- Cotyæum, battle of, iv., 254; Turkish
camp at, vi., 248.
- Coucy, Sire de, joins in crusade against
the Turks, vii., 36 and *note*; death,
38.
- Council, general, authority of, vii., 100.
- Councils of: Ancyra, ii., 52.
Antioch, ii., 367 and *note*.
Ariminum, ii., 353.
Arles, ii., 371.
Basil, A.D. 1431-43, vii., 100 and *notes*,
and *sq*.
Chalcedon, acts of the Council of, v.,
115 and *note*; summoned Nestorius
to appear, 120; council held, 123;
faith of the, 125 *sq*.; ratified by
Justinian, 136.
Clermont, iv., 263 *sq*.
Constance, v., 309 *note*; vii., 100, 288
sq.
Constantinople, first of, iii., 148 *sq*.
and *note*; ratified by Justinian, v.,
136.
- Constantinople, see
council), v., 138.
Constantinople, the
council), v., 142.
Constantinople (ei
cil), vi., 370 and
Constantinople, ico
Ephesus, first of, v.
Nestorius, 122; ra
136.
Ephesus, second of,
Flavian, 228 *sq*.;
Ferrara, A.D. 1438,
Florence, A.D. 1438
acts of union of
note.
Frankfort, v., 279.
Illiberis, ii., 59.
Lateran (A.D. 649
1179), vii., 229.
Lyons, general Co
Greek clergy at, 4
Mantua (A.D. 1459),
Milan, ii., 372 *note*.
Nice, first of, ii., 32
ratified by Justinian
Nice, second of, v.,
Pisa, A.D. 1409, vi
288.
Placentia, vi., 264.
Rimini, see Ariminu
Rome, anti-Iconocl
Gregory II., v., 26
Sardica, ii., 367 *note*;
Seleucia, ii., 352.
Sophia, St. (fictitious
Toledo, iv., 143 and
Tyre, ii., 365.
- Councils, provincial, in
Count, Latin title, iv.,
Count: of the East, ii
military title of, i
hold (castrensis),
the Sacred Larg
note; of the priva
and *note*; of the d
- Coupele, rock of, vii.,
Couroutai, or Diet of
79 and *note*, 467 *n*
- Courtenay, lordship of,
digression on the
454, see Table of
- Courtesy, term of chiv
Cousin, President, h
Procopius, iv., 27
lation in, 440 *not*
of Cantacuzene vi
lation of a passag
168 *note*.

- Craoow, city of, destroyed by the Mongols, vii., 15.
- Craiova, Turkish forces defeated by the Prince of Wallachia at, vii., 35 *note*.
- Cral [Kral], or despot of Servia, derivation of name, vi., 499 *note*.
- Cranmer, vi., 197 and *note*.
- Crassus, i., 370.
- Cremera, i., 481 *note*.
- Cremona, pillaged by Alaric, iii., 287.
- Crescentius, Consul of Rome, v., 301.
- Crestona, city of, iv., 444 *note*.
- Crete, i., 26; archers of, at Thermopylae, 246; conquered by Nicephorus, v., 212; by the Arabs, vi., 37 *sq.*; Saracens of, put to death, 46 and *note*; recovered by Nicephorus Phocas, 57; taken by the Venetians, 416 *note*; bought by Venice, 417.
- Creyghton, Robert, his history of the union of the Greek and Latin Churches, vii., 104 *note*.
- Crim Tartary, i., 260.
- Crimea, fortifications of Justinian in, iv., 255; trade of, vi., 510.
- Crinitus Ulpianus, i., 292.
- Crispinus, i., 184.
- Crispius Vibius, i., 81.
- Crispus, son of Constantine, Cæsar, i., 432 and *note*; defeats the Franks and Alemanni, 435 and *note*; naval victory of, 439; character, ii., 206; Cæsar, 207; disgrace and death, 208.
- Crispus the Patrician, son-in-law of Phocas, v., 66 and *note*; betrays Phocas, 67; condemned to monastic life, 68.
- Critobulus, historian, vii., 158 *note*; 194 *note*.
- Croatia, i., 22; kingdom of, vi., 132; prince of, opposes the Ottoman Turks, vii., 33 *note*.
- Croats, of Dalmatia, vi., 132.
- Crocodiles, i., 344 *note*.
- Crocus, or Erocus, i., 399 and *note*.
- Cromwell, Oliver, vii., 267 *note*.
- Cross, symbol of, adopted by Constantine, ii., 299; invention of the, 455 and *note*; true cross removed to Persia, v., 70; recovered by Heraclius, 94; exaltation of the, *ib.*; sign adopted by the Crusaders, vi., 273; cross-bearers of St. Sophia, vii., 111.
- Cross-bow, used by Crusaders, vi., 297 and *note*.
- Crotona, Belisarius at, iv., 406; resists Totila, 411; battle of, vi., 170.
- Crown of thorns, sold by Baldwin II. to the King of France, vi., 437.
- Crowns, obsequial, given by Julian, ii., 501; of Greek Emperors, vi., 79 and *note*.
- Croya, taken by Scanderbeg, vii., 152; siege of, 153.
- Crucifixion, date of, ii., 58.
- Cruitnich, or wheat eaters, iii., 42.
- Crum, Bulgarian King, v., 7 *note*; death, 194 *note*.
- Crusades, first crusade, vi., 299 *sq.*; justice of, 266 *sq.*; motives for, 268 *sq.*; second and third, 324 *sq.*; fourth and fifth, 355 and *note*; sixth, 358 *sq.*; seventh, 361 *sq.*; account of fourth, 377 *sq.*; consequences of the, 442 *sq.*.
- Crusius, his Turco-Græcia, vii., 208 *note*.
- Ctesiphon or Madayn, i., 206; besieged by Severus, *ib.*, 303; taken by Carus, 340; Julian at, ii., 502 *sq.*; palace of, Nushirvan at, iv., 984; Heraclius near, v., 90; Chosroes enters, 91; sack of, by the Saracens, 406 and *note sq.*; palace of Chosroes at, 407; decay, 408; ruins of the hall of Chosroes at, *ib.* *note*.
- Cubit of the Arabians, vi., 31 *note*.
- Cublac, grandson of Zingis Khan, vii., 10 and *note*; conquests of, 11 *sq.*; prosperity under, 19; resides at Pekin, 20.
- Cucusus, in Lesser Armenia, ii., 384 *note*; retreat of Chrysostom, iii., 379.
- Cudworth, ii., 336 *note*, 337 *note*.
- Cufa, insurgent Arabs of, v., 385; tomb of Ali at, 388; foundation of, 408; pillaged by the Carmathians, vi., 50.
- Cufic letters, v., 325.
- Cumæ, reduced by Totila, iv., 396; defended by Aligern, 419; Sibyll's cave at, *ib.* and *note*.
- Cumans, Turkish tribe in Hungary, vi., 147 *note*; same as the Uzes, *ib.*, 238 *note*; glossary of the Cumanian language, *ib.*
- Cunimund, v., 5; slain by the Lombards, 7; skull of, used as drinking cup by Alboin, 12.
- Curator, office of, in Rome, iv., 484.
- Curds, i., 375; dynasty of Curds or Ayoubites, v., 318 *note*; vi., 339 *sq.* and *notes*.
- Curland, holy groves of, vi., 152 and *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Dalmatian legionaries, destroyed by the Goths, iii., 314.
- Dalmatinus, Juvencus Cælius Calanus, life of Attila, iii., 416 *note*.
- Dalmatius, nephew of Constantine, ii., 206; made Cæsar, 212; character of, 222 *note*; murder of, 223.
- Dalmatius the abbot, v., 118 and *note*.
- Dalmatius the censor. i., 401 *note*; ii., 206.
- Damascenus Studites, vii., 202 *note*.
- Damascius, his Life of Isidore, iv., 266 *note*.
- Damascus, Andronicus flies to, v., 236; fairs of, 318; caliphs at, 396; besieged by the Saracens, 419 *sqq.*; fall of, 424 and *note*; exiles of, pursued and slain, 426 *sq.*; Gate Keisan at, 426; capital of the Saracens, 456; taken by Zimisces, vi., 60; princes of, expelled by the Seljuks, 247; reduced by Atsiz, 256; siege of, by Conrad III., 330; joined to Aleppo, 335; attacked by Saladin, 341 and *note*; Saladin retreats to, 348; Timour at, vii., 56.
- Damasus, Bishop of Rome, iii., 28; account of, 29 *sqq.*; 141.
- Dames, a Saracen, v., 438.
- Damghan, battle of, vi., 231.
- Damianus, Peter, v., 296 *note*; vi., 183; friend and biographer of St. Dominic Loricatus, 269 *note*.
- Damietta, taken by the Crusaders, vi., 355.
- Damocles, story of, iv., 3 and *note*.
- Damophilus, Archbishop of Constantinople, exile of, iii., 146 and *note*.
- Dandolo, Andrew, vi., 390 *note*.
- Dandolo, Henry, Doge of Venice, chronicle of, vi., 133 *note*; account of, 383 and *note*; at siege of Constantinople, 396 *sqq.*; refuses the Latin Empire, 414; despot of Romania, 416; death, 426.
- Danes, iii., 37 *note*, 147.
- Daniel, first bishop of Winchester, epistle of, to St. Boniface, iv., 78 *note*.
- Daniel, Père, on Childeric, iv., 26 *note*.
- Daniel, prophecy of, iv., 161 *note*.
- Danielis, Matron of Patras, v., 203; gifts to the Emperor Basil, vi., 78; wealth of, 78 *sq.*
- Dante, his *De Monarchia*, vii., 267 *note*.
- Danube, victories of M. Antoninus on, i., 9; provinces on, 21; frozen, 214; bridge of boats on, iii., 60; conference of Valens and Albanaric on, 61; Goths transported over the, 95 *sq.*; frozen under Justinian, iv., 425; canal of Charlemagne, v., 290.
- D'Anville, M., plan of Rome by, iv., 314 *note*; eastern geography of, v., 403 *note*; description of Alexandria, 450 *note*; on the Ottoman dynasty, vii., 22 *note*.
- Daphne, grove and temple of, ii., 465 and *note*; temple of, burnt, 468 *sq.*
- Daphnusia, town of, vi., 441 and *note*.
- Dara, siege of, iv., 370; by Nushirvan, v., 41; Bahram at, 45; restored, 52; destroyed by Chosroes, 69.
- Dardania, province of, iv., 250 *note*; acquired by the Bulgarians, vi., 131 and *note*.
- Dardanians, i., 246 *note*, 354 and *note*.
- Dardanus of Troy, i., 285.
- Dardanus, prætorian præfect in Gaul, opposes Jovinus, iii., 343 and *note*; inscription erected by, 355 *note*.
- Dargham, Egyptian vizir, vi., 237 and *note*.
- Darius, constructs canal in Egypt, v., 456 *note*; compared to Vataces, vi., 458 *note*.
- Darius, officer of Valentinian III., interview with Count Boniface at Carthage, iii., 404 *sq.*
- Dastagerd, *see* Artemita.
- Datianus, governor of Spain, ii., 129 and *note*.
- Datianus the Patrician, iii., 7 and *note*.
- Datius, Bishop of Milan, iv., 323; retires to Constantinople, 328 and *note*.
- D'Aubigné, on early Christian faith, iii., 214 *note*.
- Daur, town of, taken by the Moslems, v., 413 *note*.
- Dausara, taken by Avidius Cassius, i., 206 *note*.
- David Comnenus, last Emperor of Trebizond, vii., 204 *sq.*
- David, grandson of Andronicus, seizes Paphlagonia, vi., 420 *note*; death, *ib.*
- David, Iberian prince, aids Phocas against Sclerus, v., 216 *note*.
- David, son of Heraclius, v., 174 *note*.
- David, son of Shishman, vi., 159 *note*.
- Davila, Fra. historian, vii., 296 *note*.
- Davy, Major, his Institutions of Timour, vii., 42 *note*.
- Dawkins and Wood, description of Palmyra and Baalbec, v., 431 *note*.

- Debt, law of, iv., 499 *sq.*
 Decapolis, plain of, v., 433.
 Decabalus, Dacian King, i., 5.
 Decempagi, Dieuze in Lothringen, ii., 276.
 Decemvirs, twelve Tables of, iv., 444 *sq.*, 447.
 Decennovium, iv., 310 and *note*.
 Decentius, brother of Magnentius, made Cæsar, ii., 243 and *note*, 244.
 Decimus, battle of (Ad Decimum), iv., 282.
 Decius, consul, iv., 415 *note*.
 Decius, emperor, defeats Philip, i., 238; reign, *ib.*; birth, *ib.* *note*; marches against the Goths, 239; Gothic war of, 246 *sq.*; death, 249; persecutes the Christians, ii., 113 and *note*; *ib.*, 413 and *note*.
 Decius, the Younger, death, i., 249.
 Decius, Roman patrician, iv., 403.
 Decoratus, delator of Boethius, iv., 201 *note*.
 Decretals, the Forged, v., 274.
 Decumates, i., 331 and *note*.
 Decurions, or Curiales, ii., 192.
 Defensores, iii., 22; office revived by Majorian, iv., 19.
 Deification of emperors, i., 68, 69.
 Dejal, or the Antichrist, v., 392.
 Dejoces, King of the Medes, iv., 103 *note*.
 De la Malle, Dureau, on population of the Roman empire, i., 42 *note*.
 Delators, i., 87, 100. *Cp.* ii., 208.
 Delbene, Sannuccio, vii., 257 *note*.
 Delhi, conquered by the Sultan of Garna, vi., 226; Timour at, vii., 51.
 Dellian, Peter, revolt of, in Macedonia, v., 218 *note*.
 Delphi, ii., 428.
 Delphicum, royal banqueting hall at Rome, Constantinople and Carthage, iv., 285 *note*.
 Delphidius, in Gaul, ii., 285; widow of, *ib.*, 154.
 Delphinus, Gentilis, vii., 300.
 Demaratus, iv., 340 *note*.
 Demetrias, granddaughter of Proba, iii., 327 *note*, 328.
 Demetrius, brother of John II., vi., 438 and *note*; voyage of, to Venice, vii., 105, 111.
 Demetrius, despot of Epirus, siege of Rhodes by, v., 443 and *note*.
 Demetrius, Egyptian prelate, ii., 60.
 Demetrius Poliorcetes, vi., 92 *note*.
 Demetrius, son of Marquis of Montferrat, vi., 431.
 Democedes of Crotona, iv., 362 *note*.
 Democritus, philosopher, vi., 467 *note*.
 Demosthenes, iv., 262.
 Demotica given to Count of St. Pol, v., 418 and *note*; massacre of the Latins at, 423; Cantacuzene assumes the purple at, 498; Empress Anna besieged in, by the Bulgarians, vi., 28.
 Denarius (coin), ii., 195 *note*.
 Dengisich, son of Attila, on the banks of the Danube, iii., 476; invades the Eastern Empire, *ib.*; death, *ib.*.
 Denmark, crusaders from, vi., 348; kingdom of, restored to the empire, vii., 235.
 Deogratias, Bishop of Carthage, assists the prisoners of Gaiseric, iv., 7 and *note*.
 Depopulation, in third century, i., 281.
 Derar [Dhirār], Arab warrior, iii., 115 *note*; at siege of Damascus, v., 419 *sq.*; valour of, 421 and *note*.
 Derbend, iv., 260 and *note*; gates of, penetrated by the Mongols, vii., 10.
 Dervishes, vii., 140 and *note*; in Turkish camp at Constantinople, 187.
 Desiderius, brother of Magnentius, made Cæsar, ii., 243 *note*; death, 244 *note*.
 Desiderius, daughter of, repudiated by Charlemagne, v., 267 *note*; conquered by Charlemagne, 268.
 Deslisle, William, geographer, vi., 62 *note*.
 Despina (?), queen, restored by Timour to Bajazet, vii., 61.
 Despot, title bestowed by the Greek emperors, vi., 80.
 Deuterius, chamberlain, iii., 281 *note*.
 Develtus, town of, captured by Krum, vi., 134 *note*.
 Devonshire, earls of, *see* Courtenay.
 Dexippus, i., 265, 266 *note*.
 D'Herbelot, his *Bibliothèque Orientale*, v., 403 and *note*.
 Dhoulacnaf, Arab title of Sapor, ii., 225.
 Diadem, imperial, introduced by Aurelian and Diocletian, i., 382 and *note*; vi., 79 and *note*.
 Diadumenianus, i., 139; death, 143.
 Diamonds, i., 55 and *note*.
 Diamper, synod of, v., 152.
 Diarbekir (or Amida), despoiled by Saladin, vi., 341.
 Diarium Parmense, vii., 208 *note*.
 Diarium Urbis Romæ, vii., 300.
 Dibra, two provinces of, vii., 153 *note*.
 Dicearchus, iii., 70 *note*.

- Dicranice*, Greek name for the imperial sceptre, vi., 465 *note*.
- Didot, A. F., on Aldus Manutius, vii., 129 *note*.
- Didymus, prince of the Theodosian house, opposes Constantine the Tyrant, iii., 274 and *note*.
- Diedo, Venetian sea captain, vii., 177 *note*.
- Diehl, C., on African forts, iv., 250 *note*.
- Diet of the Tartars, *see* Couroultai; of the Huns, iii., 79 *note*; German, v., 306, 309.
- Dietrich of Bern, iv., 191 *note*.
- Difurcatio*, iv., 479.
- Digest, *see* Pandects.
- Dijon, fortress of, iv., 111 and *note*.
- Dilemites, i., 369 *note*; allies of the Persians in the Lasic war, iv., 380.
- Dimitriu, article of, on Russia, vi., 153 *note*.
- Dinar, vi., 5.
- Dinarchus, iv., 277 *note*.
- Dioceses (civil), ii., 169 *sq.*
- Diocletian (C. Aurelius Valerius Diocletianus), i., 328; election, 348 and *note*; reign, 350 *sq.*; associates Maximian, 352; Galerius and Constantine, 353; defence of the frontiers, 360; policy, *ib.*; settlement of the Germans, Sarmatians, etc., 362 and *note*; wars in Egypt and Africa, 363 *sq.* and *note*; suppresses alchemy, 365; Persian wars of, 366 *sq.*; at Antioch, 369; receives Tiridates, 370; negotiates with Persia, 372; his moderation, 373; triumph, 376; titles of, 377 *note*; edict of maximum prices, *ib.*; at Nicomedia, 378; system of Imperial Government, 379 *sq.*; assumes the diadem, 382; administration, 383 *sq.*; increase of taxation under, 384; abdication, 385, 386; at Salona, 387 *sq.*; baths at Rome, 401 and *note*; treatment of the Christians, ii., 116 *sq.*; first edict, 122; second edict, 127; third and fourth edicts, 128.
- Diocletianopolis, besieged by the Avars, v., 56.
- Diodorus, Count, ii., 471.
- Diodorus, heretic, v., 205.
- Diodorus Siculus, on the priesthood, ii., 318 *note*; iv., 167 *note*; on the Caaba, v., 328 and *note*.
- Diogenes, leader of the Charonites, ii., 218.
- Diogenes, officer of Justinian in Rome, iv., 409.
- Dion Cassius, i., 34 *note*, 68 *note*; his father, 75 *note*; enemy of Didius Julianus, 107 *note*, 119, 125; consul under Alexander Severus, 154.
- Dionysius, Bishop of Milan, banishment of, ii., 373.
- Dionysius I. of Syracuse, v., 26 *note*; vii., 185 *note*.
- Dionysius of Alexandria, ii., 98.
- Dionysius of Byzantium, ii., 142 *note*.
- Dionysius of Corinth, ii., 50 *note*.
- Dionysius of Halicarnassus, on Roman constitutional history, iv., 442 *note*.
- Dionysius of Telmahré, Patriarch of Antioch, v., 443 *note*.
- Dionysius, poetical geographer, v., 430 *note*.
- Diophantus of Alexandria, vi., 30 *note*.
- Diocorus, Patriarch of Alexandria, supports Eutyches, v., 121; disgrace of, 123; deposed and banished, 125.
- Diocurias, town, i., 262 *note*; iv., 373; fortifications of, 376.
- Diospolis, image at, v., 249 and *note*.
- Diploklonion, or Beshik Tash, vii., 181 *note*.
- Dir, Slav king, vi., 149 *note*.
- Dirhem (drachma), vi., 5 *note*.
- Disabul, Khan of the Turks, iv., 355 and *note*; receives the Roman ambassadors, 356 *sq.*
- Dispargum, residence of Clodion, King of the Franks, iii., 454; site of, *ib.* *note*.
- Ditch, battle of the, v., 364.
- Dithmar, chronicle of, vi., 149 *note*.
- Dius, iv., 172 *note*.
- Diva, or Male, ii., 313 *note*.
- Divitesis*, long tunic worn by the Byzantine emperors, vi., 80 *note*.
- Divination, ii., 392.
- Divinity, titles of, assumed by Diocletian and Maximian, i., 381.
- Divorce, iv., 478 *sq.*; limitations of the liberty of, 480 *sq.*
- Drugosius, Johannes, his history of Poland, vii., 6 *note*.
- Dniester, Gothic fleet on, i., 288; Visigothic camp on, iii., 92.
- Docetes, gnostic sect, ii., 338, 339 and *note*; their opinion on the nature of Christ, v., 99 *sq.*
- Doctes, name of Diocletian, i., 359 *note*.
- Doclia, i., 290 *note*.
- Dodona, Goths at, iv., 410 and *note*.
- Doge of Venice, institution of, vi., 322.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Dunaan, Prince of the Homerites, iv., 385 and *note*, 386.
- Dura on the Tigris, ii., 520 and *note*; treaty of, 252 and *note*; taken by Nushirvan, iv., 366.
- Durazzo, siege of, vi., 195 *sq.*; battle of, 199; taken by Robert Guiscard, 201; name of, *ib. note*; Bohemond at, 323; Latins land at, 390; Michael Angelus at, 421.
- Durham, bishopric of, iv., 154.
- Durostolus, *see* Dristra.
- Dyeing industries, iv., 227 *sq.* and *note*.
- Dyrrachium, fortifications of, iii., 266; treasure of Amalasontha at, iv., 302; taken by the Lombards, 344; Belisarius at, 400; *see* Durazzo.
- EAGLE, Roman, i., 10 and *note*.
- Earthquakes, at Jerusalem, ii., 459; A. D. 365, iii., 69 *sq.*; under Justinian, iv., 434 *sq.*
- Easter, v., 135 and *note*.
- Eba, the elder, v., 484.
- Ebermor, deserts to the Roman camp, iv., 307.
- Ebionites, ii., 10 and *note*; opinions of, 338 and *note*; opinion on the incarnation, v., 97; their gospel, 98 *note*.
- Ebn [Ibn] Schounah, his account of Timour, vii., 55; *see* Ben Schounah.
- Ebredunum or Iverdun, Roman fleet at, iii., 451 *note*.
- Ecbatana, i., 207, 376; ii., 511 *note*; Tower of Oblivion at, iii., 53 and *note*; use of the name, vi., 60 and *note*.
- Ecclesiastes, Book of, authenticity of, iv., 294 *note*.
- Ecclesiastical order, ii., 316; government, discussion of its nature, vii., 298.
- Ecdicius, præfect of Egypt, ii., 475.
- Ecdicius, son of Avitus, defended Auvergne, iv., 14 *note*, 39; family of, *ib. note*.
- Ecebolus, iv., 213.
- Eclectus, conspiracy of, i., 96.
- Eclipses, ii., 70.
- Ecthis, of Heraclius, v., 141.
- Edda, i., 240.
- Edeco, lieutenant of Roderic the Goth, v., 475.
- Edecon, father of Odoacer, ambassador of Attila, iii., 434; his interviews with Chrysaphius, 442; his confession and repentance, *ib.*; defeats the Scyrri, iv., 49.
- Edessa, described, i., 207 and *note*; battle of, 269; Christianised, ii., 64 and *note*; Sabinian at, 172; church of, oppressed by Julian, 472; shrine of St. Thomas at, iii., 253 *note*; tribute paid by, iv., 235; strengthened by Justinian, 256; siege of, 258, 259 and *note*, 370; destroyed by Chosroes, v., 69; Heraclius at, 88 and *note*; school at, 146 and *note*; conversion of, 247 *note*; image of Christ at, 248 *sq.*; captured by Arabs, 443 and *note*; taken by Zimisce, vi., 60; principality of, 298 and *note*; retaken by Sultan Zenghi, 299 *note*, 335; county of, 318 *note*; Timour at, vii., 47.
- Edicts, of the prætors, iv., 449 and *note*; perpetual edict, 450 and *note*.
- Edifices of Justinian, iv., 242 *sq.*
- Edobic, general of Constantine, defeat and death, iii., 342.
- Edom, kingdom of, ii., 74.
- Edris (Idris), founder of the Edrisite caliphate, vi., 52 *note*.
- Edrisi, on the Christianity of the Nubians, v., 164 *note*; on geography of Arabia, 311 *note*.
- Edrisites of Mauritania, caliphs of the, vi., 22; founding of the, 22 and *note*.
- Edward, Count of Savoy, vi., 495 *note*.
- Edward I., of England, in the East, vi., 363.
- Edward III. of England, letter of, against Clement VII., vii., 285 *note*.
- Egbert, his intercourse with Charlemagne, v., 290 *note*.
- Egica, King of the Goths in Spain, iv., 143.
- Egilona, widow of Roderic, v., 483.
- Eginhard, marries daughter of Charlemagne, v., 284 *note*.
- Egregius, rank of, ii., 161 *note*.
- Egypt, province of, described, i., 25; language of, 38 and *note*; population, 50; revenue, 159; rebellion of Firmus in, 309; works of Probus, 336; revolts from Diocletian, 363 *sq.*; Christianity in, ii., 60; Augustal præfect of, 170; kings of, 315 *note*; monks in, 379; given to Theodosius, iii., 120; wheat exported from, iv., 227 and *note*; marriage laws in, 482; conquered by Chosroes, v., 71; date of, *ib. note*, 162; invaded by Saracens, 445 *sq.*; description of, 456 *sq.*;

- [illegible] 27. and notes; church of, [illegible] 492 27.; vineyard of, destroyed by Hakem, vi., 256; [illegible] by Seljaks, 256; conquered by Turks, 335 27.; invaded by the Mongols, vii., 14; Sultan of, [illegible] to Timour, 66.
- [illegible] language, i., 38 and note.
- [illegible] worship, prohibited i., 32.
- [illegible] disabilities of the, i., 39; [illegible] the election of Gregory, iii., 29.
- [illegible] A., on Simeon Metaphrastes, vi., 64 note.
- [illegible], Anonymous of, vii., 304 note, 305 note.
- [illegible], in Thuringia, iii., 467 note.
- [illegible] (Echmiazin) Monastery of, v., 199.
- [illegible] Mount, probably Mount Altai, iv., 355 note.
- [illegible], i., 141; bravery, 143; reign, 14 27.; death, 148; wears silk, iv., 229.
- [illegible] Mount, Magians at, v., 489.
- [illegible], wife of Edward I., vi., 363 note.
- [illegible], exempt from war, iii., 245 and note.
- Election of bishops, ii., 316 and note.
- Electors of Germany, v., 306.
- Electus, chamberlain of Commodus, i., 96.
- Elephant, sera of the, *see* *Aeras*.
- Elephantine, island, i., 365; altar of concord destroyed by Justinian at, iv., 255 note.
- Elephants at Rome, i., 344.
- Eleusinian mysteries, Julian initiated into the, ii., 440 and note; put an end to, iii., 244.
- Eleusis, destroyed by Alaric, iii., 244.
- Eleuthero- (or Free) Laconians, vi., 70 27.
- Eleutherus, river, ii., 227.
- Elias, Nestorian Bishop of Damascus, v., 106 note.
- Elijahs, patriarchs of Mosul, v., 150.
- Ella, cities of, ii., 428.
- Ellac, son of Attila, death of, in the battle of Netad, iii., 475; King of the Acatzires, *id.*
- Elmacin [Ibn al Amid al-Makim]. History of the Saracens, v., 70 note, 402 note; on victories of Caled, 403; on Egypt, 458 note; on Arabian coinage, vi., 5 note.
- Elpidius, physician of Theodoric, iv., 203.
- Elpidius, pontifical, ii., 407 note.
- Elusa, birthplace of [illegible] note.
- Emma, crusader, [illegible]
- Emblems, iv., 427.
- Emeralds, iv., 297 note.
- Emerald at Cairo, [illegible]
- Emerita or Merida, [illegible]
- Emesa, Magabala, [illegible] i., 142; worshipped defies Sapor, [illegible] Odenathus of [illegible] of, 305; assassinated at, v., 390; [illegible] 421; captured, [illegible] 430 27.; [illegible] knowledge of the [illegible]
- Emir al-Oura, vi., 26.
- Emir (Amir) or admiral Emirs, Arabian, in Spain
- Emma, mother of [illegible] 296 note.
- Emperor of the Roman 101.
- Emperors, Roman, election of the, i., 292; [illegible] over the Church of pontifex maximus public speeches of, [illegible] tive power of, iv., 44 of, 452 27.; of the 277.; jurisdiction of the West in Rome, of the German, 307 nople, vi., 75 27. and note; revival of 104.
- Empire, *see* Roman Empire
- Empire, Greek, vi., 66 27. Empire.
- Engaddi, town near the [illegible] tioned by Pliny, iv., [illegible]
- Engebert sends [illegible] drian I., v., 279 note
- Engines of war, vi., 298
- England, *see* Britain.
- Enguerrand VII., *see* [illegible]
- Ennodius, account of [illegible] phanius, iv., 43 note; 179 note; oration Bishop of Pavia, *id.* note.
- Enoch, book of, v., 922
- Epagathus, Prefect of [illegible]
- Ephemeris of Ausonius, [illegible]
- Ephesus, temple of [illegible] Church of St. [illegible] Michael VII., [illegible]

- 224; pillaged by the Paulicians, vi., 119; recovered by Alexius I., 322; Louis VII. at, 329 *note*; taken by the Turks, vii., 26.
- Ephrem, St., on monks, iv., 73 *note*.
- Epictetus, Arian bishop, ii., 407.
- Epicureans, i., 30.
- Epicurus, religious devotion of, 31 *note*; bequeaths his garden, iv., 264; birth of, 265 *note*.
- Epidaurus, iii., 70 *note*.
- Epigenes, quaestor, iii., 418.
- Epiphania, *see* Eudocia, daughter of Heraclius.
- Epiphania, taken by the Saracens, v., 437 *note*.
- Epiphanius, Bishop of Pavia, ambassador of Ricimer, to Anthemius, iv., 42 *note*, 43; intercedes for the people of Pavia, 54 *note*, 192, 194 and *note*.
- Epiphanius, Bishop of Salamis, iii., 377 *note*.
- Epiphany, Christian Festival of, ii., 408 and *note*.
- Epirus, subdued by Alaric, iii., 246; province of, ceded to Bulgaria, vi., 131 and *note*; islands and towns of, subdued by Robert Guiscard, 196; despots of, 421 *sqq.*
- Episcopal authority, *see* Bishops.
- Eponina, i., 79 *note*.
- Epulones, iii., 189 and *note*.
- Equestrian order, i., 14 and *note*; proposed revival of, vii., 225 and *note*.
- Equitius, Master-General of Illyricum, iii., 62.
- Eraric, the Rugian, iv., 395 *note*.
- Erasmus, on Hilary, ii., 350 *note*; account of Chrysostom, 374 *note*; life of St. Jerome, iv., 65 *note*; publishes the Greek Testament, 90 *note*; religious opinions of, vi., 127 *sq.*; system of Greek pronunciation, vii., 125 *note*, 129; Life of, *ib.* *note*.
- Erbe or Lambesa, metropolis of Numidia, v., 464.
- Erchempert, chronicler, vi., 171 *note*.
- Erdaviraph, one of the seven Magi, i., 198.
- Erdély, Hungarian name of Transylvania, vi., 147 *note*.
- Eregli, Heraclea, vi., 298 *note*.
- Erichtho, of Lucan, iii., 17 *note*.
- Erivan, caravan station, v., 159.
- Erixo, iv., 475 and *note*.
- Eros and Anteros of the Platonists, ii., 439 *note*.
- Erzeroum, Timour at, vii., 53.
- Escander Dulcarnein, Arabic legend of, vi., 296 *note*.
- Eschinard, P., description of the Campaigna, vii., 237 *note*.
- Esimonton, *see* Azimus.
- Eskisbehr, *see* Dorylaeum.
- Eslam, daughter of, iii., 499 and *note*.
- Eslaw, ambassador of Attila, iii., 417; pronounces before Theodosius the reproof of Attila, 443.
- Esquiline, Mount, i., 299 *note*.
- Essenians, ii., 47.
- Esserif Essachalli, Arabian philosopher, vi., 193 *note*.
- Estachar [Istakhr] or Persepolis, v., 409 *note*; valley of, Arabs in the, 410.
- Este, house of, origin of, vi., 194 *note*.
- Eathonia, province of, iii., 58.
- Estius, ii., 352 *note*.
- Etruscans, i., 21; vices of the, iv., 504 and *note*.
- Euboea, derivation of name *Negropontis*, vi., 390 *note*; inhabitants transported to Constantinople, vii., 201 *note*.
- Eucharist, divers opinions concerning, vi., 126.
- Eucherius, son of Stilicho, iii., 278; religion of, 282.
- Euchrocia, matron of Bordeaux, execution of, iii., 153.
- Eudæmon, of Carthage, iii., 412.
- Eudæmonis, a virgin, ii., 379 *note*.
- Eudamidas, of Corinth, iv., 239 *note*.
- Eudes, Duke of Aquitain, repels the Saracens, vi., 13; marries his daughter to Munuza, 14; seeks aid from Charles Martel, 16; letters of, to the Pope, 17 *note*.
- Eudocia, Athenais, consort of Theodosius II., character and adventures of, iii., 387 *sqq.*; account of, by John Malalas and by Socrates, *ib.* *note*; her paraphrase of the Old Testament, 388; pilgrimage to Jerusalem, 389; disgrace and exile, 390 and *notes*; death, *ib.*
- Eudocia, daughter of Valentinian III., marries Hunneric the Vandal, iv., 28.
- Eudocia, wife of Heraclius, v., 88 *note*.
- Eudocia or Epiphania, daughter of Heraclius, v., 88 and *note*; 174 *note*.
- Eudocia Ingerina, mother of Leo VI., v., 203 *note*.
- Eudocia Balant, wife of Leo VI., v., 207 *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- of Constantine's conversion, 304 and *note*; friendship with Constantine, 307; description of the Church at Jerusalem, 321 *note*; supports Arius, 344; accepts the Homoousion, 356; character of, *ib. note*; at the Council of Tyre, 365.
- Eusebius of Nicomedia, supports Arius, ii., 344; exile, 356; recall, 357; educates Julian, 433 and *note*; Bishop of Constantinople, iii., 142 *note*.
- Eusebius Scholasticus, poem on the Gothic war, iii., 373 *note*.
- Eusebius the eunuch, chamberlain of Constantius, ii., 246; questions Gallus, 253; fall of, 416; death, 423.
- Eustace, the elder brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, vi., 279.
- Eustathius, Archbishop of Thessalonica, vi., 105, 218 *note*.
- Eustathius, Bishop of Antioch, ii., 357; death, 382.
- Eustathius of Cappadocia, ii., 266 *note*.
- Eustathius of Epiphania, iv., 254 *note*.
- Eustochium, daughter of Paula, iv., 62.
- Euthalites, or Nephthalites (White Huns), iii., 87 and *note*, 88; conquests of, iv., 257; defeat Perozes, King of Persia, 258; conquered by the Turks, 351; by Nushirvan, 384; in Transoxiana, v., 414 *note*.
- Euthalius at Terracina, iv., 322.
- Eutharic, grandson of Herimund, iv., 204 *note*, 301.
- Eutherius, chamberlain of Julian, ii., 404.
- Euthymius, Patriarch of Constantinople, v., 207 *note*.
- Eutropia, sister of Constantine, i., 401 *note*; ii., 206; death, 242.
- Eutropius, father of Constantius, i., 354.
- Eutropius, the eunuch, iii., 181; opposes Rufinus, 222 *sq.*; magistrate and general, 360; power over Arcadius, *ib.*; consul, 361 and *note*; venality and injustice, 362 and *note*; degrades Abundantius, 363; exiles Timasius, 364; calls council of war, 368 and *note*; fall of, 369 *sq.*
- Eutropius, the historian, ii., 203 *note*; date of his History, 248 *note*, 520.
- Eutyches, heresiarch, iii., 442 *note*.
- Eutyches, abbot, v., 118 *note*; heresy of, 121 *sq.*
- Eutychian heresy, suppressed by Pulcheria, iii., 985; controversy in the East, iv., 97.
- Eutychius, exarch, forms a league with Liutprand, v., 264 *note*.
- Eutychius, historian, v., 70 *note*; Annals of, 402 *note*, 445 *note*; on taking of Alexandria by the Saracens, 450, 451 *note*.
- Euxine, Roman naval station on the, i., 18; circumnavigation of, iv., 371 and *note*.
- Evagrius, description of the Church of St. Euphemia at Chalcedon, iii., 371 *note*; on the Isaurian war, iv., 254 *note*; on Emperor Maurice, v., 20 *note*.
- Evander the Arcadian, iv., 33.
- Evans, A. J., Cretan discoveries of, i., 24 *note*; researches in Illyricum, iv., 251 *note*.
- Evodius, Bishop of Uvalis, iii., 212 *note*.
- Exarchate, given to the Popes, v., 272 and *note*.
- Exarchs, title of, in Africa, iv., 290; of Ravenna, 423 and *note*; extinction of, v., 265; governor of Septem received title of, 472 *note*.
- Excise, i., 162 and *note*.
- Excommunication, ii., 51, 324, 325.
- Exercitus, i., 11 and *note*.
- Exeter, colony planted at, by Athelstan, iv., 149 *note*.
- Exorcism of demons, ii., 28 *sq.*
- Expositio totius Mundi*, iii., 410 *note*, 411 *note*.
- Ezra, adored as the son of God by the Jews of Mecca, v., 338 and *note*.
- Eszerites, in Greece, v., 70.
- FABRICIUS, his *Bibliotheca Græca*, vi., 106 *note*.
- Facciolati, Duke of Constantinople, vi., 502.
- Factions, of the circus, iv., 219 *sq.*
- Fadella, daughter of the Emperor Marcus, i., 92; death of, 133.
- Fadl-allâh, vizir, his Persian history of the Mongols, vii., 4 *note*.
- Faenza, van-guard of Theodoric betrayed at, iv., 178; battle at, 395.
- Fæsulæ, iii., 266 and *note*; taken by Belisarius, iv., 327.
- Falcandus, Hugh, on Palermo, vi., 72 *note*; on Sicily, 219 *sq.*; his *Historia Sicula*, *ib. note*.
- Falcidian, portion, term in Roman law of inheritance, iv., 491.
- Falconry, introduced by the Lombards into Italy, v., 27 and *note*; price of falcons in Palestine, vi., 321; see Hawking.
- Falco, Sosius, i., 100 and *note*.

- Fallmerayer, on the reign of Andronicus I., v., 239 *note*; his history of Trebizond, vi., 421 *note*.
- Famine, rare under the empire, i., 53.
- Fano, i., 298.
- Farage (Faraj), Circassian ruler, vii., 55.
- Faras*, families or generations; term in Lombard law.
- Farghāna, territory of, i., 368 *note*; v., 411 and *note*; subdued by the Saracens, 414 *note*.
- Farmah, *see* Pelusium.
- Fars, subdued by the Arabs, v., 409 *note*; Bowides at, 489 *note*; dynasty of, vi., 55 *note*.
- Farsistan, mountains of (Yezdegerd flies to the), v., 408.
- Fasti, Consular, iv., 118 and *note*.
- Fathers of the Church, visions in the Apostolic, ii., 28 *note*; morality of, 34 *sqq.*; on marriage, 36 *sqq.*; on war and politics, 38 *sq.*; belief of, in pagan gods, 119 *note*; works illustrating their superstition, iii., 210 *note*; Greek translations of Latin, vi., 443.
- Fātima, daughter of Ali, v., 390.
- Fātima, daughter of Mahomet, iii., 395 *note*; married Ali, 381; death, 383.
- Fātimids, v., 38; in Egypt and Syria, 393 and *note*; caliphs of the, reign at Cairo, vi., 22; usurp the provinces of Africa, 40; succeed the Ikhshidids, 54 *note*, 56; in the Holy Land, 254; lose Egypt, 336 *sq.*
- Faun, the Barberini, discovery of, iv., 315 *note*.
- Faunus, i., 338.
- Fausta, daughter of Maximian, i., 405; receives Maximian, 409; children of, ii., 206; disgrace and death, 210, 211.
- Faustina, daughter of Antoninus Pius, i., 76, 83.
- Faustina, widow of Constantius II., supports Procopius, iii., 14.
- Faustinus, Roman noble, iii., 293 *note*.
- Faustus, account of Armenian war, iii., 52 *note*.
- Fava, or Feletheus, King of the Rugians, conquered by Odoacer, iv., 55.
- Faventia, *see* Faenza.
- Felicissimus, i., 313.
- Felix, an African bishop, execution of, ii., 126, 332 *note*.
- Felix, Archbishop of Ravenna, blinded by Justinian II., v., 183 *note*.
- Felix II., anti-Pope, election of (A.D. 356), ii., 381 *note*; expulsion, 383.
- Felix IV., Pope, *gr* the Great, v., 33.
- Felix V., vii., 108; 114 and *note*.
- Felix, St., tomb of, a
- Ferdusi, the Persian lines of, quoted vii., 199.
- Fergana, *see* Farghān
- Fergus, cousin of Oss
- Ferishta, Persian writ
- Ferranoute Samiata*.
- Ferrara, John Palæol council at, *ib.*; d Urbino, 296.
- Ferreolus, Bishop of of, iv., 65 *note*.
- Festivals, attitude of pagan, ii., 18 and iii., 203 and *note*; Latin Church, v.,
- Feu Grégois, *see* Gre
- Fez, Edrisite kingdo 52 and *note*.
- Fidei-commissa, iv., 4
- Fihl, (Pella), battle of, *Piliogue* controversy.
- Finances, of the Rom *sqq.*; administrati stantine, 185 *sqq.*; Majorian concern in ninth to twelfth *sq.*
- Fines, in the army, ii. iii., 403.
- Fingal, i., 129.
- Finlay, Mr., v., 19 *sq* Maurice 20 *note*; vi., 474 *note*; on vii., 27 *note*; on C *note*.
- Finns, language of, alli vi., 139 and *note*.
- Fioretto, G., on revi fifteenth century, v
- Firdusi, *see* Ferdusi.
- Fire, Greek, *see* Greek
- Fire signals, *see* Beacon
- Fire worship, i., 200 n
- Firmicus, Julius, i., 39
- Firmum (Fermo) Co between Belisarius a 325 *note*.
- Firmus, rebellion of, i.
- Firmus the Moor, revc death, 52.
- Flrūs, son of Yezdegerc
- Fiscus or public mo imperator, i., 99

- Fisberies, of the Propontis, ii., 147.
 Flaccilla, consort of Theodosius the Great, iii., 142.
 Flaccilla, daughter of Arcadius, iii., 384 note.
 Flaccus, Granus, iv., 443 note.
 Flagellation, practice of, by the monks, vi., 269 and note.
 Flamens, Roman, iii., 189 and note.
 Flaminian way, stations of, iv., 415 note.
 Flamininus, ii., 179 note.
 Flamsteed, on comets, iv., 434.
 Flavian family, i., 74 and note.
 Flavian, Bishop of Antioch, iii., 170.
 Flavian, ecclesiastic, iii., 149 note.
 Flavian, Patriarch of Constantinople, opposes Eutyches, v., 121; persecuted by the second Council of Ephesus, 122; death, 123.
 Flavianus and Diodorus, ii., 381.
 Flavianus, pagan senator, iii., 192 note.
 Flavius Asellus, count of the sacred largesses, iv., 39.
 Flax, ii., 53.
 Fléchier, Bishop of Nismes, his life of Theodosius, iii., 119 note.
 Fleury, Abbé de, Inst. of Canon Law, ii., 322 note; Ecclesiastical History of, vii., 84 note; continuator of, on schism of Constantinople, 114 note, 135 note; on appeals to Rome, 214 note.
 Flor, Roger de. *see* Roger de Flor.
 Florence, siege of, by Radagaisus, iii., 265; origin of, *ib.* note; Pandects at, iv., 468; council of, vii., 108; revival of Greek learning at, 123.
 Florentius, prætorian præfect of Gaul, ii., 285; character of, 399; flight, 405, 412; disgrace, 423.
 Florianus, i., 322, 324 note; usurpation and death, 325.
 Florin, vii., 102 note.
 Florus, Prince, vi., 451.
 Florus, Roman historian, vii., 236.
 Fo, Indian god, worshipped by Kuhlai Khan, vii., 20 and note.
Federati, or allies, iii., 130.
 Folard, Chev., on Roman military engines, i., 15 note, 119 note, 284 note; iv., 422 note.
Follis, or purse, tax, ii., 200 note.
 Foucemaque, M. de, on Merovingians, iii., 455 note; on the title of French kings to the Roman empire, vii., 205 note.
 Fontana, architect, vii., 324.
 Fontanini, v., 23 note.
 Fontenelle, comedy of, iv., 299 note; 463 note.
 Foot, Roman, i., 186 note; Greek, ii., 149 note.
 Fortiflocca, T., vii., 259 note, 274 note, 300.
 Fortunatus, poet, iv., 136 note.
 Forum Julii, capital of Venetia, iii., 468 note; Lombards at, v., 10; first duke of, 25.
 Forum Trebonii, i., 249 and note.
 Fostat, Saracen settlement of, v., 447; vi., 339.
 Fraknoi, W., on Matthias Corvinus, vii., 150 note.
Framene, i., 231.
 France, New, vi., 431.
 France, population compared with Gaul, ii., 196 *sq.*; name of, iv., 133; under Charlemagne, v., 287; invaded by the Arabs, vi., 12 *sq.*; Hungarians in, 143; position of kings of, in eleventh century, 263 *sq.*; description of, by Chalcondyles, vii., 94 *sq.*; title of kings of, to Empire of Constantinople, 205 and note.
 Francis II., Emperor, resigns the empire, vii., 209 note.
 Francis, St., visited by a "rex terrarum," vii., 256 note.
Francisca, or Frankish battle axe, iv., 114 and note.
 Francisco of Toledo, at siege of Constantinople, vii., 178 note.
 Franconia, v., 288; duchy of, 307 note.
 Frangipani (Frangipane), Cencio, vii., 217. *cp.* 218 note.
 Frangipani, name and family of, vii., 249.
 Frangipani, Odo, vi., 216.
 Frankfort, synod of, *see* Councils.
 Frankincense of Arabia, v., 313 and note.
 Franks, or Freemen, origin of, i., 254, 255 and notes; invade Gaul, Spain and Africa, *ib.*, 256; driven from Gaul by Probus, 329; in the Mediterranean, 332; power of, under sons of Constantine, ii., 181; invade Gaul, 273; in Batavia and Tuxandria, *ib.* and note, 274 and note; subdued by Julian, 281; ally themselves with Stilicho, iii., 268; subdue the Vandals, 269; in Second or Lower Germany, 350; in Gaul, under the Merovingians, 457; defeated by Astiza, 455; elect Astiza king, iv., 26; Christianity of, 70;

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Gagnier, M., Life of Mahomet, v., 352 *note*.
- Gaian, Patriarch of Alexandria, v., 159 *sq.*
- Gaillard, M., History of Charlemagne, v., 283 *note*.
- Gainas, the Goth, commands the troops against Rufinus, iii. 228; against Trebigild, 368; allies himself with Trebigild, *ib. note*; enters Constantinople, 371 and *note*; defeated by Fravitta, 372; by Uldin, 373; death, *ib. note*.
- Gaiseric, King of the Vandals, defeats Hermanric, iii., 401; his name, *ib. note*; befriends the Donatists, 404 and *note*; treaty with Valentinian III., 409 and *note*; surprises Carthage, 410; cruel treatment of Theodoric's daughter by, 452; title of, Kings of Vandals and Alani, iv., 1; builds a fleet, *ib.*; conquers Sicily, 2; casts anchor in the Tiber, *ib.*; destroys the navy of Majorian at Carthage, 23; ravages the coast of the Mediterranean, 27; destroys the fleet of Basiliscus, 37; allies himself with the Visigoths in Gaul, 37; persecutes the Catholics, 82 *sq.*; peace of, with the Catholic Church, 83 *note*.
- Gaita [Sigelgaita], wife of Robert Guiscard, vi., 193, 199.
- Gaius, commentaries of, iv., 467 *note*, 472 *note*.
- Gala, etymology of the word, vi., 84 *note*.
- Galanus, History of Galanus, v., 157 *note*.
- Galata, ii., 150 and *note*; tower of, stormed by the Latins, vi., 394 and *note*; suburb of, quarter of French and Venetians, 398; siege of, by Michael Paleologus, 440 *note*; given to the Genoese, 466, 508; destroyed, 509; Genoese of, make a treaty with Mahomet II., vii., 171; abandoned by Genoese after capture of Constantinople, 196; fortifications of, demolished, 201.
- Galatia, Alani in, i., 323.
- Galatians, paternal power of the, iv., 472 *note*.
- Galba, i., 74; capital punishment under, iv., 502.
- Galasso, John, first Duke of Milan, wars, 359 *sq.*; character and reign, 395 *sq.*; makes Constantine Caesar, 400; invades Italy, 405, 406; elevates Licinius, 407, 408 *note*; death, 410; persecution of the Christians, ii., 101; in the East, 132; edict of toleration, *ib.*
- Galfridus, Malaterra, history of, vi., 173 *note*.
- Galileans, sect of, under Nero, ii., 88 and *note*; use of name enjoined by Julian, 460 and *note*.
- Galilee, principality of, vi., 318 and *note*.
- Gall, St., iv., 421.
- Galla, mother of Gallus, ii., 247 *note*.
- Galla, sister of Valentinian II., marries Theodosius, i., 164; death, 180 *note*.
- Gallicanus, consular senator, i., 187.
- Gallicia, gold of, i., 160; divided between the Suevi and the Vandals, iii., 346; held by the Suevi, iv., 38.
- Galliena, i., 274 *note*.
- Gallienus, associated in the empire with Valerian, i., 254 *note*; reign of, 273 *sq.*; death, 284, 285 and *note*; conspiracy against, favoured the Christians, ii., 114.
- Gallipoli, fortifications of, iv., 252; taken by the Catalans, vi., 483; taken by the Ottomans, vii., 30 *note*; rebuilt by Soliman, 31.
- Gallo-Grecians of Galatia, iv., 42 *note*.
- Gallus, elected emperor, i., 250; peace with the Goths, *ib.*; death, 252.
- Gallus, M. Anicius, tribune, iii., 291 *note*.
- Gallus, nephew of Constantine, ii., 206; education of, 247, 434; governor of the East, 248; cruelty of, *ib. sq.*; disgrace and death, 252 *sq.*; removes body of St. Babylas, 468.
- Gamaliel appears to Lucian, the presbyter, iii., 211.
- Games, secular, i., 193 and *note*; Capitoline, vii., 257 *note*, *see* Ludi.
- Ganges, river, vii., 52.
- Gannys, eunuch, i., 143.
- Ganzaca, Temple of, destroyed by Heraclius, v., 81 *note*, 82 and *note*.
- Gapt, one of the Anses or Demi-gods, iv., 170 *note*.
- Garda, Lake, i., 268 *note*.

- Garibald, King of Bavaria**, allies himself with Antharis, v., 28.
Garixim, mountain of blessing, v., 136 and *note*.
Gascony, subdued by the Arabs, vi., 14.
Gassan, Arabian tribe, ii., 494 and *note*; iv., 365; in Syrian territory, v., 320; defeated by Calad, 432 *sq.*
Gass, W., on Gennadius and Plotho, vii., 126 *note*.
Gaubil, Père, his translation of Annals of the Mongols, vii., 11 *note*.
Gaudentius, Count, closes the pagan temple, iii., 196.
Gaudentius, father of Aëtius, iii., 398 *note*, 448; his betrothal to Eudoxia, 477.
Gaudentius, the notary, ii., 414; death, 424.
Gaul, provinces of, i., 19, 20; divided by Augustus, *ib.*; *Celtic, ib.* limited toleration in, 32; tribute, 159; usurpers in, 300; invaded by Lygians, 329; peasant revolt in, 355, 356; Christianity in, ii., 62 and *note*; capitation tax, 195 *sqq.* and *notes*; invaded by Germans, 273 *sqq.*; by the Alamanni, 278; Julian in, 397 *sqq.*; outlaws in, 405 and *note*; invaded by the Saxons, iii., 39 and *note*; by Suevi, Vandals and Burgundians, 269 *sqq.*; Alani in, 449; Visigoths in, 450; iv., 38 *sq.*; Barbarians in Gaul converted from Arianism, 92; revolution of, 98; allodial lands of, 131; Britons in, 149 *note*.
Gauls, in Lombardy, i., 20; in Germany, 216 *note*; religion of, ii., 21 *note*; relation of, to the Franks, iv., 121.
Gayangos, M., v., 486 *note*.
Gayeta, besieged by the Saracens, vi., 40; siege raised, 41; maritime state of, 42.
Gayuk (Kuyuk), Khan, vii., 10.
Gaza, temples at, ii., 457 *note*; taken by the Saracens, v., 441; battle of, vi., 358.
Gaza, Theodore, *see* Theodore.
Gasi, holy war of the Turks, vii., 23; carried on by Timour, 47.
Gasi (Ghāsi), title of Sultan Soliman, vi., 249.
Gazza, city and province of, vi., 225 and *note*.
Garnevides, dynasty of, vi., 225 *note*.
Geber, Arabian physician, vi., 31.
Geberic, King of the Goths, ii., 219.
Gedda, Arabian seaport, v., 317.
Getrosia, district of, i., 204 *note*.
Gegnesius, Paulician leader, vi., 111 *note*; date of, 117 *note*.
Geisa, Hungarian king, vi., 147.
Gelasean era of the Turks, vi., 12 and *note*.
Gelaleddin, defeated by Zingis Khan, vii., 9; activity of, 22; death, 23.
Gelasius I., Pope, ii., 322 *note*; abolishes the festival of the Lupercalia, iv., 31 and *note*; deplures the state of Italy, 55 *sq.*
Gelasius II., Pope, vii., 217.
Gelimer, King of the Vandals, in Africa, iv., 84; deposes Hilderic, 271 *sq.*; defeated by Belisarius, 283 *sqq.*; further adventures, 286 *sqq.*; flight of, 288; captivity of, 290 *sqq.*; interview with Belisarius, 292; at Constantinople, 294; retires to Galatia, *ib.*
Gelli, i., 369 *note*.
Geloni, iii., 90.
Gelzer, H., iv., 266 *note*; estimate of Theophilus, v., 196 *note*.
Gemonise, i., 81 *note*.
Generals, Roman (Imperatores), i., 62.
Genesisius, vi., 37 *note*.
Genesius, works of, vi., 62 *note*.
Geneviève, St., of Paris, iii., 458; life of, *ib. note*; iv., 104 *note*.
Gennadius, monk and Patriarch of Constantinople, vii., 175 *sq.*, [George Scholarius].
Gennadius, Patriarch of Constantinople, on the creed of Athanasius, iv., 89 *note*.
Gennerid, master-general of Dalmatia, strengthens the Illyrian frontier, iii., 315 and *note*.
Genoa, city of, destroyed by the Franks, iv., 399.
Genoese, engineers, vi., 310; assist the Greeks against the Latins, 440 and *note*; settle in suburb of Galata, 466, 508; attacked by the Venetians, 509; privileges conferred upon them, by Michael VIII. and Andronicus the Elder, *ib. note*; trade of, *ib.*; war of, with Cantacuzene, 510 *sqq.*; they destroy the Greek fleet, 511; defeat the Venetians and Greeks, 512 *sq.*; their treaty with the empire, 513; of Galata, give free passage to the Turks, vii., 184; policy of, suspected, 191 *note*.
Gow, Roman, iv., 488.

- Genseric, *see* Gabaeric.
 Genso, son of Genseric, iv., 37.
 Gentiles, term in Roman law, iv., 488.
 Gentoos, sovereign, acknowledged by the Christians of St. Thomas, v., 197.
 Gentoos of Hindostan, war with Mahmūd, vi., 225.
 Geoffrey, father of Henry II. of England, vii., 216 *note*.
 Geographer of Ravenna, i., 254 *note*.
 Geography, early Christian, iv., 234 and *note*.
 Geometry, studied at Alexandria, v., 109.
Geoponics of Constantine Porphyrogenitus, vi., 63 and *note*.
 George Brancović, Despot of Servia, sends troops to Mohammed, vii., 174 *note*.
 George Branković, vii., 142.
 George of Cappadocia, ii., 377, 470 and *note*, 497; worshipped as saint and martyr, 472 and *note*.
 George of Pisidia, v., 80; *de Bello Avarico*, 87 *note*; *Heracliad*, 92 *note*.
 George of Sienna, vii., 179 *note*.
 George of Trebisond, writings of, vii., 102 *note*, 124.
 George Phranza, ambassador to Amurath II., vii., 64; his account of Bajazet, *ib.* and *note*.
 George Scholarius, *see* Gennadius.
 George, Sicilian admiral, besieges Mahadia, vi., 211.
 Georgia, beauty of the inhabitants, iv., 374; Christians of, *ib.*; conquest of, by Alp Arslan, vi., 236; under Malek Shah, 245; visited by Phranza, vii., 156.
 Georgians, religion of the, vi., 236 *sq.*; name of the, *ib.* *note*; they submit to Timour, vii., 52.
 Georgillas, Rhodian poet, iv., 490 *note*.
 Geougen, Scythian tribe, iii., 261; subdued by Attila, 421 and *note*, 476; enslave the Turks, iv., 349; extirpated by the Turks, 350.
 Gepidae, i., 242 and *note*; subdued by Attila, iii., 421; seize Belgrade, iv., 342 and *note*; conquered by the Avars and Lombards, 344; v., 6 *sq.*
 Gerard of Reicherspeg, vii., 227 *note*.
 Gerasa, fortress, v., 417 and *note*.
 Gergovia, siege of, by Cæsar, iv., 194 and *note*.
 Germans, near Sardica, iv., 274 *note*.
 Germania, in Thrace, iv., 274 *note*.
 Germanicia, won back from the Saracens by Constantine V., v., 185 *note*; crusaders at, 298.
 Germanicus, i., 9 *note*; at Thebes, ii., 267 *note*; belief of, in magic, iii., 17 *note*.
 Germans, ancient, in Belgium, i., 20; origin of, 216; manners of, 218 *sqq.*; political institutions of, 224 *sqq.*; religion 229; invade Gaul, 229; ii., 273; defeated by Julian, 279 *sqq.*; driven from the Rhine, 284; religious indifference of, 298 and *note*; emigration of, into Italy, iii., 262 *sq.*; invade Gaul, 267; character of, in sixteenth century, 329, 330; cross the Rhine under Ariovistus, iv., 129; join fourth crusade, vi., 386.
 Germanus, elder and younger, iv., 333 *note*.
 Germanus, father-in-law of Theodosius, v., 61 *sqq.*
 Germanus, nephew of Justinian, in Africa, iv., 390 and *note*, 391 and *note*; commands the army, 410; family of, *ib.* *note*; marriage and death, 411.
 Germanus, son of a patrician, punished by Constantine IV., v., 176.
 Germany, Upper and Lower, Roman provinces, i., 20; description of 213 *sqq.*; its population, 222; iii., 90; Goths, Burgundians and Franks settle in First or Upper, iii., 350; Burgundians in Second or Lower, *ib.*; Slavonian colonists in, v., 57; united by Charlemagne, 288; princes of, independent, 304 *sq.*; Germanic confederation, 306 *sqq.*; counts of, 307; description of, by Chalcocondyles, vii., 93 *sq.*; armies of, in fifteenth century, 141 *note*.
 Gerontius, commander in Greece, iii., 242.
 Gerontius, general of the usurper Constantine, makes Maximus emperor, iii., 340; death, 341 and *note*.
 Gerra, or Katif, built by Chaldeans, v., 317.
 Gerson, John, doctor of the Sorbonne, vii., 287 *note*.
 Gervasius and Protasius, martyrs, iii., 160 and *note*.
 Gessoriacum (Boulogne), i., 357, 358.
Gesta Francorum, vi., 117 *note*, 118 *note*; vi., 266 *note*.
Gesta Frederici imperatoris vii., 223 *note*.
Gesta Ludovici VII., vi., 330 *note*.
 Geta and Caracalla, i., 127; reign of, 130 *sqq.*; titles of, *ib.* *note*; death of Geta, 130; apotheosis of, 131 and *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Gordian III., declared Cæsar, i., 181; emperor, 189 and *note*; Persian war, 190; death, 191.
- Gorgo, or Carisme, iii., 88.
- Gorgona, isle of, iii., 235 *note*.
- Gorgonius, eunuch, protects the Christians, ii., 117.
- Görres, on the miracle of Tipasa, iv., 91 *note*.
- Gorski, his History of the Council of Florence, vii., 114 *note*.
- Gospels, ii., 56 *sq.* and *note*.
- Goths, earliest mention of, i., 224 *note*; war of, with Decius, 239, 245; origin, religion and institutions of, 239 *sqq.*; emigrations of, 241 *sqq.*; invade Roman provinces, 245; obtain tribute from Gallus, 250; conquests of, in third century, 260 *sqq.*; attempt Thessalonica, 266 *note*, 288; invade Illyricum, 435; invade Moesia, ii., 217 *sqq.*; assist revolt of Procopius, iii., 59 *sq.*; war with Valens, 60 *sqq.*; driven by the Huns into Western provinces, 70; implore protection of Valens, 94; settled in Thrace, 95 *sqq.*; converted to Christianity, iv., 76 *sqq.*; settlement of, in Crimea, 255 and *note*; said to have invoked dæmons to find treasure, vii., 322 *note*.
- Ostrogoths* [Gruthungi], name of, i., 242 and *note*; war of, with Huns, iii., 91 *sq.*; defeat of, by Gratian, 127 *sqq.*; desolate Asia Minor under Tribigild, 366 *sqq.*; conquered by Attila, 421; revolt against Huns, 475; settle in Pannonia, 476; embrace Christianity, iv., 77 *sq.*; invade Illyricum and Thrace, 172 *sqq.*; state of, in first years of Theodoric, 172 *note*; march to Italy, 177 *sqq.*; condition of, in Italy, 181 *sq.*; threatened by Belisarius, 299; dissensions of, under Amalasontha, 301 *sqq.*; besiege Rome, 312 *sqq.*; raise the siege, 323; evacuate Pannonia, 342; revolt of, in Italy, 394 *sqq.*; besiege Rome, 400 *sqq.*; enter Rome, 403; lose Rome, 405; retake Rome, 408; kingdom of, destroyed by Narses, 423.
- Visigoths* [Thervingi], name of, i., 242 and *note*; conquered by Hermanric, iii., 57; war of, with Huns, 91; revolt of, in Moesia, 99; win battle of Hadrianople, 112; siege of Hadrianople by the, 114 *sq.*; at Constantinople, *ib.*; ravage the provinces, 116 *sqq.*; manners of, in Asia, 117 *sq.*; division, defeat and submission of, 124 *sqq.*; revolt of, after death of Theodosius I., 240 *sqq.*; ravage Greece, 242 *sqq.*; invade Italy, 248 *sqq.*; join Radagaisus, 263; besiege Rome, 309 *sqq.*; second siege of by, 317 *sq.*; third siege and sack by, 321 *sq.*; character of, 322; occupy Italy, 321; march into Gaul, 333 *sq.*; in Spain, 347 *sqq.*; win permanent dominion in Gaul, 350; moderation of, 351 *sq.*; besiege Narbonne, 450 *sq.*; conquered by Majorian, iv., 21 *note*, 22 *note*; conversion of, from Arianism, 92; Theodoric protects in Spain, 118; code of, 123 *note*, 143 *sq.*, 144 *note*; history of, in Spain, 142 *note*; of Gaul, assist Theodoric, 178; expedition to Africa under Theudes, 298; lose part of Spain to Justinian, 299; join John the Prefect against the Arabs, v., 468 and *note*.
- Gotones, *see* Goths.
- Governolo, iii., 473 *note*.
- Gozelo, Duke, vi., 278 *note*.
- Gozz, Oriental name for the Uzi, *q.v.*
- Gracchi, family of the, conversion of, iii., 194.
- Grado, Isle of, iii., 471; v., 11 and *note*.
- Grammar, teaching of, in the empire, iii., 22.
- Grampian Hills, i., 4 and *note*.
- Gran, German colony at, attacked by Tartars, vii., 16.
- Granaries, public, i., 121 *note*.
- Grand Signor, name of Turkish Sultans, vii., 201.
- Grant, *see* Johannes Grant.
- Graphia aurea urbis Romæ, vii., 226 *note*, 304 *note*.
- Grassé, palace of Vandal kings, iv., 281.
- Grasses, artificial, i., 53.
- Gratian, Count, father of Valentinian, iii., 7.
- Gratian, declared emperor by the British legions, iii., 272.
- Gratian, son of Valentinian I., Emperor, passes the Rhine, iii., 35; reign, 66 *sq.*; made Augustus, *ib.*; marries Constantia, 67; accepts Valentinian II. as colleague, 67; victory over the Alemanni, 107 *sq.*; associates Theodosius, 118; character, 133 *sqq.*; flight and death, 137 *sq.*, 138 *note*; friendship with Ambrose, 156; abolished pagan ceremonies, 190.

- Gratianopolis, in region of Chalkidike, vi., 302 *note*.
 Gratianus, magister militum, vi., 41 *note*.
 Gratus, Bishop of Carthage, ii., 388 *note*.
 Gray, poet, on the Nile, v., 457 *note*.
 Greaves, on Roman coinage, iv., 18 *note*.
 Greaves, traveller, on the Seraglio, vii., 80 *note*.
 Greece, Christianity in, ii., 58; cities of, restored by Julian, 427 *sq.*; invaded by Goths, iii., 125 *note*; plundered by Alaric, 242 *sqq.*; coast of, attacked by Totila, iv., 410; Albanian invasion of, vi., 504, *note*; conquests of Bajazet in, vii., 34. *See* Greeks.
 Greek Church, union with the Latin Church, v., 143; discord with the Latin, vi., 366 *sqq.*; reunion, 470; dissolution of, 474; Council of Florence, vii., 107 *sq.*; acts of union, 111 *sq.* and *note*; new schism, 134 *sq.*; under Turkish rule, 202 and *notes*.
 Greek Empire, *see* Roman Empire.
 Greek fire, vi., 9 and *note*, 10 and *note*, 94.
 Greek language, i., 38; scientific idiom, 39; modern pronunciation, vi., 293 *note*; vii., 125 and *note*; state of the, in fourteenth century, 114 *sq.*; loanwords in, *ib.* *note*.
 Greek learning, revival of, vi., 104 *sqq.*; in Italy, vii., 117 *sqq.*.
 Greeks, return of, from Troy, iv., 278 and *note*; flight of, from Egypt, v., 449; navy of, vi., 94 *sq.*; their hatred of the Latins, 366 *sq.*, 371 *sqq.*; massacre the Latins, 372, 423; quarrel of, with Latins in Constantinople, 399; revolt of, 1204 A.D., 419 *sqq.*; knowledge of the, vii., 93. *See* Greece.
 Green faction of the Hippodrome, iv., 219 *sqq.*.
 Gregorian chant, *see* Gregory the Great.
 Gregorian code, iv., 453 and *note*.
 Gregorius Catinensis, Chronicon Farsense of, iv., 275 *note*.
 Gregorovius, Athenais of, iii., 387 *note*; on schools of Athens, iv., 266 *note*; his History of Mediaeval Rome, vii., 210 *note*; and in the notes of chaps. lxxix.-lxxxi. *passim*.
 Gregory, of Agrigentum, Life of, v., 472 *note*.
 Gregory, 367.
 Gregory, Bar Hebraeus, *ragius*.
 Gregory, Bishop of 468.
 Gregory, Bishop of and *note*.
 Gregory I., the Great, Po of Tivasa, iv., 91 and *note*; sulted by Recared, nuncio, v., 21; his avocal monuments, 32 and *note*; and history, 33 *sqq.*; *note*; founds monast *note*; pontificate of, 3 gorian chant, *ib.* *note*; aries in Britain, 36 government of, *ib.* *sq.*; saves Rome, 98.
 Gregory II., Pope, v., 254 pion of image worship, of, 257 and *note*; conv Rome, 262.
 Gregory III., Pope, chan worship, v., 256.
 Gregory IV., Pope, d. episcopal city of Ostia.
 Gregory VII. [Hildebrand] papacy, v., 299; letter *note*; Lives of, vi., 2 sieged by the Emperor 204; his design for 2 *sq.*; virtues of, vii., 223 papal monarchy, 226.
 Gregory IX., Pope, exco Frederic II., vi., 357.
 Gregory X., Pope, argus uni and Latin Churches, vi mediation of, between Anjou and Michael VI stitutes the conclave, v *note*.
 Gregory XI., Pope, su Viterbo, vii., 238 *note*, from Avignon, 282 *note*, 284.
 Gregory XII., Pope, docu cerning, vii., 283 *note*; 285, 287 *sqq.*; abdicat
 Gregory XIII., Pope, vii.
 Gregory of Cyprus, vi., 479.
 Gregory, *Illuminator*, *ib.* apostle of Armenia, *ib.*,
 Gregory, lieutenant of Heraclius, v., 66.
 Gregory Nazianzen, i., 38 Athens with Julian, ii., eloquence of, 327, *supp*

- doctrine, 398; on religious sects, 399; on Julian's elevation, 408 *note*; calumniates Julian, 415 *note*; opposes Julian, 439 and *note*; account of earthquake at Jerusalem, 459; account of, iii., 143 *sq.*; birth, *ib.* *note*; his mission to Constantinople, 144 *sq.*; poem on his life, *ib.* *note*; Archbishop of Constantinople, 146 *sq.*; retreat of, 150; orations of, *ib.* *note*; death, 151; opposes Apollinaris, v., 105.
- Gregory, nephew of Heraclius, v., 463 *note*.
- Gregory of Nyssa, ii., 58 *note*.
- Gregory, Patriarch of Constantinople, A.D. 1452, vii., 175.
- Gregory, prefect of Africa, v., 460; revolts against Constans, *ib.* *note*; daughter of, 461; death, 462; fate of his daughter, 463 *note*.
- Gregory Thaumaturgus, i., 263 *note*; miracles of, vi., 116 and *note*.
- Gregory of Tours, translates the legend of the Seven Sleepers, iii., 414; his account of Julian the Martyr, iv., 14 *note*; on death of Apollinaris, 117; on siege of Angoulême, *ib.* *note*; family of, 137 *note*.
- Grenada, given to ten thousand Syrians, v., 484; suppression of Christians in, 491 and *note*.
- Grenoble (Gratianopolis); iii., 451 *note*.
- Grethungi, oppose Claudius, i., 288 *note*. See Gruthungi.
- Greiser, on images, v., 248 *note*.
- Grigor'ev, on the Palace at Serai, vii., 17 *note*.
- Grigori Presbyter, vi., 134 *note*.
- Grimoald, Duke of Beneventum, v., 288.
- Grocyn, vii., 129 *note*.
- Gronovius, James, ii., 272 *note*.
- Grotius, ii., 139; on political system of the Christians, 294 *note*; on royal succession, iii., 396 *note*; on kingdom of the Visigoths, iv., 99 *note*; De Jure Belli, 330 *note*; on origin of the Lombards, 343 *note*.
- Grubenhagen, principality of, vi., 494 *note*; silver mines of, 495 *note*.
- Grumbates, King of the Chionites, ii., 267.
- Gruter's Inscriptions, i., 66 *note*.
- Gruthungi, or Ostrogoths, defeat of, by Gratian, iii., 127 *sq.*; subject to Attila, 422. See under Goths and *sq.* Gruthungi.
- Guarterius Cancellarius, his history of Principality of Antioch, vi., 324 *note*.
- Guardians and wards, Roman law of, iv., 483 *sq.*.
- Gubases, King of Lazica, iv., 377; allied himself with Nushirvan, 378; his war against Persia, 379 *sq.*; religion of, 381; his death, 382.
- Gudmarson, UK, vii., 288 *note*.
- Guelfs and Ghibelines, factions of, v., 304; vii., 226, 253 and *note*.
- Guénde, Abbé, on Palestine, iii., 399 *note*.
- Guérard, on Capistrano, vii., 149 *note*.
- Guibert, historian of the crusades, vi., 266 *note*, 292 and *note*.
- Guicciardini, history of, iii., 329; vii., 296 *note*.
- Guido, Bernard, author of Lives of Popes, vii., 216 *note*.
- Guidobonus, Antonius, on Scanderbeg, vii., 153 *note*.
- Guignes, de, History of the Huns, iii., 75 *note*; on the Edrisites, vi., 52 *note*; on Zingis Khan, vii., 6 *note*; on the Ottoman dynasty, 22 *note*.
- Guiscard, Robert, defeats Leo IX., vi., 182; birth and character, 184 *sq.*; Duke of Apulia, 187; invades the Eastern Empire, 193 *sq.*; at Otranto, 195; victory at Durazzo, 199; delivers Pope Gregory VII., 204; second expedition into Greece, 205; death, 207.
- Guizot, on the Assembly of the Seven Provinces, iii., 357 *note*.
- Guadamund, King of the African Vandals, persecutes the Orthodox party, iv., 83.
- Gundelinda, wife of Theodatus, epistles of, iv.; 304 *note*.
- Gundobald, Burgundian prince and nephew of Ricimer, iv., 45; acquired kingdom of Burgundy, 46 *note*; convenes an assembly of bishops at Lyons, 110; defeated by Clovis, 111; murders Godegisil, 112; establishes judicial combat, 128 *note*.
- Gunpowder, used by the Chinese, iii., 467 *note*; vii., 11; invention of, 81 *sq.*.
- Guns, introduction of, into India, vi., 226 *note*.
- Gunther, prior, his history of the German crusade, vi., 386 *note*; his Ligurinus, vii., 220 *note*.
- Guastarins, King of the Burgundians, iii., 343.
- Gür Khana, vii., 8 *note*.
- Gustavsburg, or Lupatunum, fortress repaired by Julian, ii., 289 and *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Hart, ford of the, crossed by Clovis, iv., 116.
 Harun al-Rashid, his presents to Charlemagne, v., 290 and *note*; wars with the Romans, vi., 34 *sq.*; ally of Charlemagne, *ib.*, 252.
 Haruspices, Tuscan, iii., 24.
 Hasan, Governor of Egypt, v., 468; defeated by the Moors, 470.
 Hasan, Hamdānid, vi., 54.
 Hasan, son of Ali, v., 386; retires to ascetic life, 389; one of the twelve Imams, 392; marries daughter of Yazdegerd, 412 *note*.
 Hasan, the Janizary, at siege of Constantinople, vii., 192.
 Hasbem (Hishām), Caliph, v., 484; vi., 14.
 Hasbemites, family of Mahomet, v., 328; refuse to acknowledge Abubekr, 382.
 Hatem (Hātim), Arab, v., 396.
 Hatfield, synod of, held by Theodorc, Bishop of Britain, v., 143 *note*.
 Hatra or Atra (Al Hadr), i., 191 *note*; site of, ii., 524 *note*.
 Hauteville, Castle of, seat of Tancred, vi., 184.
 Hauteville, John de, monk of St. Albans, ii., 401 *note*.
 Haverfield, Mr. F., iii., 355 *note*.
 Havet, J., on the *Collatio Episcoporum*, iv., 111 *note*.
 Hawking among the Normans, vi., 179 and *note*.
 Hawks, in possession of Bajazet, Sultan, vii., 38 *note*.
 Hawkwood, John, English mercenary, vii., 89 *sq.*; his name, *ib.* *note*.
 Hayton, on the Mongols, vii., 22 *note*.
 Hebal, statue of, v., 329.
 Hebdomon or field of Mars, *see* Constantinople; palace of, *see* Constantinople.
 Hebron, principality of, vi., 318 *note*.
 Hebrus, I., 438.

Helena, daughter of Licinius, ii., 209 *note*.
 Helena, daughter of Robert Guiscard, vi., 194.
 Helena, mother of Constantine the Great, i., 397; ii., 211; her Christianity, 290 *note*; at Jerusalem, 455.
 Helena, sister of Constantius II., marries Julian, ii., 256; death, 406.
 Helenopolis, *see* Drepanum.
Helepolis, ii., 498; used by the Avars, v., 56 *note*.
 Heliodorus, Bishop of Altinum, iii., 241 *note*.
 Helion, Patrician, invests Valentinian III. with the purple, iii., 397.
 Heliopolis, captured by the Saracens, v., 430 *sq.*; ruins of, 431 and *note*; pillaged by the Carmathians, vi., 50.
 Hellebicus, general of Theodosius, iii., 170, 171.
 Hellespont, battle at, between Pescennius Niger and Severus, i., 118; description of, ii., 144; naval victory of Fravitta over Gainas, iii., 372; date of naval victory, 373 *note*.
 Helmichis, lover of Rosamund, v., 12, 14.
 Helvetii, I., 222 *note*.
 Helvidius Priscus, I., 79 *note*, 80, 134 and *note*.
 Helvius Pertinax, *see* Pertinax.
 Helyot, on Monasticism, iv., 57 *note*.
 Hems, *see* Emesa.
 Henda, wife of Abn Sofyan, v., 363.
 Hendinos, title of general or King of the Burgundians, iii., 36.
 Hengist and Horsa, iv., 145, 146.
 Henna, town of, taken by the Saracens, vi., 39 *note*.
 Henoticon, of Zeno, v., 128 and *note*.
 Henry, brother of Baldwin I., takes the cross, vi., 379; conquers Mour-souffe, 403; assumes the regency, 425; reign and character of, 426 *sq.*; death, 429.

- Henry I., King of France, marries granddaughter of Anne, daughter of Romanus II., v., 211 *note*; vi., 89.
- Henry II., Emperor, coronation of, vii., 224 *note*; besieges Rome, 1084 A.D., 305 *note*.
- Henry III., Emperor, visit of, to Southern Italy, 1047 A.D., vi., 180 *note*; invited by the Greeks, 203; besieges Rome, 204; flies before Guiscard, *ib.*
- Henry III., King of Castile, sends embassy to Timour, vii., 67 *note*.
- Henry IV., of England, receives the Emperor Manuel, vii., 92.
- Henry IV., of France, compared with Clovis, iv., 110; with Belisarius, 313.
- Henry V., Emperor, coronation of, vii., 211 *note*; called to Rome by the Frangipani, 218 *note*.
- Henry VI., Emperor, united Naples and Sicily to the empire, v., 304; marries daughter of Roger, vi., 219; conquers Sicily, 221.
- Henry the Fowler, v., 293; title of, 294 *note*; defeats the Hungarians, vi., 144 *sup.*
- Henry, the Greek, of Brunswick, vi., 494 *note*.
- Henry the Wonderful, Duke of Brunswick, vi., 494 *notes*.
- Heptarchy, Saxon, iv., 147 and *note*.
- Hera, Cave of, Mahomet retreats to, v., 337; situation of, *ib.* *note*.
- Heracles, Egyptian bishop, ii., 60.
- Heraclea Pontica, siege of, by the Saracens, vi., 36 and *note*.
- Heraclea (Thracian), i., 264, 347; taken by Maximin, 426; Julian at, ii., 416; Genoese colony in, vi., 466.
- Heracleonas, v., 175; reign, *ib.*; exile of, 176; 440 *note*.
- Heracian, Count, slays Stilicho, iii., 280; oppresses the family of Proba, 328; revolt of, in Africa, 398; death, 399.
- Heracianus, prætorian præfect, i., 284, 285 *note*.
- Heracitus, spurious epistles of, iv., 444 *note*.
- Heracius, Exarch of Africa, v., 66.
- Heracius, favourite of Valentinian III., iii., 477; death, 479.
- Heracius I., Emperor rebels against Phocas, v., 66; made emperor, 67; distress of, 74; his campaigns against Persia, 78 *sup.*; ecstasis of, 141 *sup.*; a Marcianite, 155; = Martina, 174; date of *ib.*; children of, *ib.* *note*; = Mahomet's ambassador, 37. L with, 371 *sup.*, fortifies *ib.* Blachernæ, vii., 174 *note*; *ib.* of, captured by Saracens & flight of, 439; death, 459; *ib.* *note*.
- Heracius II., or Heracleonas, *ib.* Heracius, v., 175, 176; 419 *sup.*
- Heracius, son of Constant II., *ib.* against his brother, Constant IV., v., 278 *sup.*
- Heracius, son of Constantine IV., i., 179.
- Heracius, the præfect, campaign against the Vandals in Africa, 34 *sup.*; his defeat, 37.
- Heræum, Palace of, *see* Constantinian.
- Herat, city of Khorasan, destroyed by Zingis, iii., 427; subdued by the Moslems, v., 410; Magians, 488; taken by the Mongols, 12. 7
- Hercules, columns of, i., 20, 26; Roman title of Commodus, 93.
- Herculeans, guards of Diocletian, 379 and *note*; of Julian, ii., 526.
- Herculius, title of Maximian, i., 353.
- Hercynian Forest, i., 296.
- Hereditary succession, i., 167 *sup.*
- Hereditism, of the first Romans, iv., *note*.
- Heresy, beginning of, ii., 11; persecution of, 330 *sup.*; disabilities attached to, iv., 29 *note*.
- Hermæan promontory, Roman fleet at, iv., 284.
- Hermann, on Capistrano, vii., 149 *sup.*
- Hermanric, King of the Ostrogoths conquers of, iii., 57 *sup.*; wars with the Huns, 91 *sup.*
- Hermanric, King of the Suevi in Spain, iii., 401.
- Hermapion, ii., 268 *note*.
- Hermæchionites, iv., 354.
- Hermenegild, son of Loovegild, Spain, revolt of, iv., 92 *sup.*, 93 and *note*.
- Hermes, Christian forgery, ii., 69.
- Hermias, the philosopher, iv., 266.
- Herminianus, Claudius, i., 303 *note*; severity towards the Christians, ii., 97.
- Hermits, iv., 72 and *note*, 73.
- Hermodorus, the Ephesian, iv., 444 and *note*.
- Hermogenes, general of the cavalry, ii., 385.

- Hermogenian code, iv., 453 and *note*.
 Hermunduri, i., 294 *note*.
 Hero and Leander, tale of, ii., 149 and *note*.
 Herod, son of Odenathus, i., 103.
 Herodes Atticus, family of, i., 45; his education, *ib.*; public monuments, 46.
 Herodian, officer of Justinian, at Spoleto, iv., 407.
 Herodian, the historian, description of Imperial Palace, i., 131 *note*.
 Herodians, sect of, ii., 3 *note*.
 Herodotus on polytheism, i., 29 *note*; on the Persian religion, 200; on the Syrians, ii., 3 *note*; description of Assyria, 495 *note*; on the Scythians, iii., 72 *note*.
 Hertusberg, Count de, on the Lombards, iv., 343 *note*.
 Hertzberg, G., iv., 266 *note*.
 Heruli, i., 242, 243 *note*; body of, in Roman service, 266 and *note*; legion of, in Gaul, ii., 398 and *note*; in Britain, iii., 45; subdued by the Goths, 58; slaves of the, 429 *note*; at the battle of Châlons, 463; allies of Theodoric, iv., 183 and *note*; at Constantinople, in the Nika riots, 223; join the expedition of Belisarius to Africa, 276; defeated by the Lombards, 343; serve under Narses, 413.
 Herzegovina, Prince of, opposes the Ottomans, vii., 33 *note*.
 Hesnus, Arab, v., 326.
 Hessels, J. H., edition of the Salic law, iv., 124 *note*.
 Hesychasts, or Quietists, vi., 506.
 Hexamilion (wall of Manuel), vii., 98 and *note*, 203.
 Heyne, edition of Virgil by, iv., 419 *note*.
 Hia, land of the, conquered by Zingis, vii., 7 *note*.
 Hierapolis, in Syria, Constantius at, ii., 414; granaries of, 484; Julian at, 488 and *note*, 489; besieged by Nushirvan, iv., 366; Chosroes at, v., 49; taken by the Saracens, 441; recovered, vi., 60.
 Hierarchy, imperial, ii., 159 *sq.*
 Hierocles, i., 146 *note*.
 Hierocles, wrote review of the Eastern provinces, iv., 226 *note*.
 Hieroglyphics, ii., 261 *sq.* and *note*.
 Hieromax, or Yermuk, *q.v.*
 Hilâl, an Arab, slays Rostum, v., 405 *note*.
 Hilarion, St., iii., 70 *note*.
 Hilarion, the Syrian anachoret, iv., 61; life of, *ib.* *note*; voyage of, *ib.* *note*.
 Hilarius, senator of Antioch, iii., 170; made governor of Palestine, 171.
 Hilary, Bishop of Poitiers, ii., 350 and *note*; on the *Homoioussion* 352, 353 and *note*; account of Council of Antioch, 367 *note*; banishment, 373; tomb of, destroyed by the Saracens, vi., 15.
 Hilary, Pope, censures the religious toleration of Anthemius, iv., 32 and *note*.
 Hildegardis, daughter of Lewis the Pious, vii., 221 *note*.
 Hilderic, King of the African Vandals, religious toleration of, iv., 83 *sq.*; daughters of, educated by Justinian, 295.
 Hilderic, Vandal prince, religious toleration of, iv., 271; deposed by Gelimer, 272.
 Hildesheim, bishopric of, v., 289.
 Hildibald, commander of the Goths of Italy, iv., 394; death, 395.
 Hilleh, village of, ii., 228.
 Himerius, general, expedition against Crete, vi., 57.
 Hincmar of Rheims, iii., 356 *note*; Life of Remigius, iv., 106 *note*; on baptism of Clovis, 107 *note*; pastoral letter composed by, vi., 18 *note*.
 Hindoos, religion of, v., 487 *note*.
 Hindostan, conquest of, by the Mongols, vii., 12, 50 *sq.*
 Hiong-nou, iii., 75 *note*, 82 *note*, 87 *note*.
 Hipparchus, astronomer, v., 331 *note*.
 Hippocrates, aphorisms of, translated by Constantine, vi., 190 *note*.
 Hippodrome, *see* Constantinople.
 Hippolytus, Bishop, works of, v., 100 *note*.
 Hippo Regius, colony of, iii., 406; city of, *ib.* *note*; siege of, 407 *sq.*; Belisarius at, iv., 288; conquered by Roger of Sicily, vi., 212.
 Hira, iv., 364; v., 320; reduced by Caled, 403; foundation of, *ib.* *note*.
 Hirth, F., iv., 229 *note*.
 Hismahelitæ, Slavonians, vi., 147 *note*.
 Hittin, battle of, vi., 344.
 Hobal, deity of the Caaba, v., 363.
 Hocsemius, John, vii., 259 *note*.
 Hodaibiya, treaty of, between Mahomet and the Koreish, v., 366.
 Hodgkin, Mr., on Ambrose, iii., 160 *note*; on Alaric, 248 *notes*; on journey of Stilicho, 269 *note*, 274 *note*; on Claudian, 283 *note*; on

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Hugh, Count of Vermandois, leader in the first crusade, vi., 279, 286; captured by Alexius Comnenus, 287, 289; returns to France, 303.
- Hugh de Reitestte, vi., 257 *note*.
- Hugh, Duke of Burgundy, at the third crusade, vi., 350, 352 *note*.
- Hugh, King of Burgundy, introduced into Rome by Marozia, v., 300.
- Hugh, son of Azzo of Lombardy, vi., 193 *note*.
- Hughes, Mr., author of Siege of Damascus, v., 426 *note*.
- Hugo, King of Italy, marriage of, vi., 87, 88.
- Huldin, chief of the Huns, joins Stilicho, iii., 264.
- Hume, History of Religion, i., 29 *note*, 112 *note*, 223; on theism and polytheism, iii., 214 *note*; on ancient population, 307 *note*; on crime, iv., 498 *note*; on ecclesiastical government, vii., 298.
- Humphrey, son of Tancred of Hauteville, vi., 184; death, 186.
- Hungarians, war of, with Manuel Comnenus, v., 230; establishment and inroads of, vi., 142 *sq.* See Magyars.
- Hungary, Great, on the Volga, iii., 88 and *note*.
- Hungary, Huns in, iii., 416 *sq.*; Scythian colonies in, 417 *note*; conversion of, vi., 255; devastated by the crusaders, 275; opposes Godfrey of Bouillon, 285; invaded by the Mongols, vii., 15 *sq.*; by the Ottomans, 35 *sq.*; truce with Turkey, 1451 A.D., 183 *note*.
- Huniades, John, campaign against the Turks, vii., 142 *sq.*; defeated at Warna, 146; birth and family of, 148 and *note*; second defeat and flight, 149; defends Belgrade against Mahomet II. *ib.*; death, *ib.*; ambassador, of, at siege of Constantinople, 183 and *note*.
- Hunneric, son of Genseric, King of the Vandals, iii., 409; marries Eudocia, iv., 28; persecutes the Catholics, 83; calls a conference of bishops at Carthage, 85; delivers Roman citizens to the Moors, 86; restores the cathedral at Carthage, 88.
- Huns, origin, iii., 82 and *note*; conquests and wars, *ib.* *sq.*; decline of, 84; emigrations of, 87; white, *ib.* and *note*, 88; of the Volga, *ib.*; subdue the Alani, 89 *sq.*; victories over the Goths, 92 *sq.*; conquered by Shahan, 268; join Alaris, 313; on the Illyrian frontier, 315; under Attila, 416 *sq.*; in Hungary, 417 *note*; intercourse with the Goths, 428; religious opinions of, *ib.* and *note*; mechanic arts encouraged by, *ib.*; language of, *ib.* and *note*; invade Gaul, 457 *sq.*; invade Italy, 457 *sq.*; said to have invaded Britain, iv., 147 and *note*.
- Huntingdon, Henry of, iv., 149 *note*.
- Hyder, river, i., 390 *note*.
- Hycsos, or shepherd kings, v., 322 *note*.
- Hymettus, Mount, honey of, vi., 485 and *note*.
- Hypæpe, city of Asia, i., 49 *note*.
- Hypatia, daughter of Theon, teaches at Alexandria, v., 109; death 110.
- Hypatius, nephew of the Emperor Anastasius, crowned at Constantinople, iv., 225; death, 226; besieges Amida, 258 *note*.
- Hyperides, vi., 106.
- Hyphasis, Alexander the Great at, i., 28.
- Hyrcania, subdued by Nushirvan, iv., 384.
- Hyssus, fortifications of, iv., 376.
- IAMBlichus, neo-Platonist, ii., 437, 439 *note*.
- Iamblichus, one of the seven sleepers, iii., 413.
- Iazygia, settlement of the Gopidæ, iv., 342 *note*.
- Ibas of Edessa, v., 138.
- Ibelin, see John d'Ibelin.
- Iberia, i., 6; conversion of, ii., 64 and *note*; attacked by Sapor, iii., 53.
- Iberian and Caspian gates, iv., 260 and *note*.
- Ibn Abd al-Hakam, historian, v., 453 *note*, 454 *note*, 459 *note*.
- Ibn Alwardi, author of chart, v., 493 *note*.
- Ibn Ishâk, on expedition of Abraham, v., 334 *note*.
- Ibn Khaldûn, v., 459 *note*.
- Ibn Khateb, v., 484 *note*.
- Ibn Kutaiba, v., 459 *note*.
- Ibn Shuna, see Ebn Schounah.
- Ibrâhim = Ibrahim.
- Ibrahim, chief of the Abbassides, vi., 19; death, 20.
- Ibrahim, grandson of Ebn the Elder, v., 484.

- Ibrahim, infant son of Mahomet, v., 381.
- Ibrahim, Prince of Shirwan or Albania, submits to Timour, vii., 47.
- Ibrahim, son of Aglab, vi., 52.
- Ibrahim, son of Sharokh, vii., 62 *note*.
- Ibrahim, vizir of Murād II., vii., 74 and *note*.
- Icasia, v., 199 and *note*.
- Iceni, British tribe, i., 20.
- Ichoglans, Turkish class of, vii., 80.
- Ichthyophagi of Gedrosia, i., 204 *note*; on the shores of the Persian Gulf, v., 314 and *note*.
- Iconium or Cogni, crusaders at, vi., 298; Seljuk capital, 324 and *note*; taken by Frederick Barbarossa, 331; battle of, vii., 26 *note*.
- Iconoclasts, extirpation of, v., 199; rise of, 249 *sqq.*
- Idatius, on passage of the Vandals, iii., 401 *note*; spurious Fragment of Chronicle of, 458 *note*; Bishop of Iria Flavia, iv., 12 *note*; account of the Suevic war, *ib.*; in Galicia, 23 *note*.
- Idolatry, ii., 16 and *note*, 395 and *note*.
- Idrisids, *see* Edrisites.
- Ieroslaus [Yaroslav], of Halicz (not of Kiev), v., 235.
- Iftikhar, *see* Aladin.
- Igilgilis, or Gigeri, iii., 48.
- Igilium, Isle of, resists the Goths, iii., 327 and *note*.
- Igmazen, King of the Isafenses, iii., 49 *sq.*
- Ignatius, Patriarch of Constantinople, restored, vi., 369 and *note*.
- Ignatius, St., ii., 41 *note*; Acts and Epistles of, 97 *note*; on martyrdom, 104; epistle of, to the Smyrneans, v., 100 *note*.
- Igor, son of Ruric, vi., 156.
- Igours, Vigours or Onigors, Tartar race of, iii., 82 and *note*; destroy the kingdom of the Huns, 476; art of writing among the, vii., 4 and *note*.
- Ikshidids, Saracen dynasty of, vi., 54 and *note*.
- Il Khans, dynasty of the, vii., 12 *note*.
- Ilderim, surname of Bajazet, vii., 33 and *note*.
- Illustres, rank of, ii., 160.
- Illyricum, i., 21 and *note*; Julian in, ii., 410; præfecture of, dismembered, iii., 120; divided between Arcadius and Honorius, 216; Western Illyricum ceded to Constantinople, 397 and *note*; seven provinces of, iv., 250; diocese of, separated from Rome, v., 280 and *note*.
- Imād-ad-dawla, his principality vi., 54 *note*.
- Images, worship of, v., 244 *sqq.*; "made without hands," 248 and *note*; condemned by Council of Constantinople, 252; restored by second Council of Nice, 276.
- Imāms, twelve Persian, v., 392 and *note*.
- Imaus, Mount (or Caf), iii., 80; *see* Caf.
- Imbros, Demetrius Palæologus, Lord of, vii., 204.
- Imma, daughter of Charlemagne, marries Eginhard, v., 284 *note*.
- Immæ, battle of, i., 142 *note*, 305 *note*.
- Immortality of the soul, doctrine of the, ii., 19 *sqq.*
- Immortals, royal Persian cavalry, ii., 519 and *note*, iii., 391; put to flight by Belisarius, iv., 274; of John Zimisceus, vi., 160.
- Imperator, i., 60 and *note*; later meaning of, 381.
- Ina, King of Wessex, v., 259 *note*.
- Incarnation, history of the doctrine of, v., 96 *sqq.*
- Incendiarism, law concerning, iv., 498 *sq.*
- Incest, Roman law of, iv., 482.
- India, Roman trade with, i., 54, 55 and *notes*; ambassadors to Constantine from, ii., 220 and *note*; Christians of St. Thomas in, v., 150 and *note*.
- Indian commodities taxed by Alex. Severus, i., 161 and *note*.
- Indians, iv., 428 *note*.
- Indictions, ii., 191 *sqq.* and *notes*.
- Indo-Scythæ, iv., 258 *note*.
- Indulgences, to the emperors, iv., 451 and *note*; practice of, vi., 269.
- Infanticide (by exposing), Constantine's law against, i., 433; Christians try to prevent, ii., 51; iv., 475, 476 and

- Ingulphus, secretary of William the Conqueror, vi., 256.
- Ingundis, consort of Hermenegild, persecuted by Goisvintha, iv., 92, 93.
- Inheritance, Roman law of, iv., 487 *sq.*
- Inigo or Ignatius, founder of the Jesuits, iv., 72 *note.*
- In jure cessio*, process of, iv., 486 *note.*
- Injuries, Roman law concerning, iv., 496 *sq.*
- Innocent I., Bishop of Rome, supposed superstition of, iii., 311.
- Innocent II., Pope, election of, vi., 210; vii., 228; condemns Arnold, 221 and *note*, 222; his triumph over Anacleta, 249.
- Innocent III., Pope, persecutes the Albigois, vi., 124; promotes fourth and fifth crusades, 354 *sqq.*; negotiations with Bulgarians, 375 *note*, 376; biography of, 378 *note*; proclaims fourth crusade, *ib.*; account of pillage of Constantinople, 406; letters of, 415 and *note*; reforms the office of præfect, vii., 228.
- Innocent VI., Pope, his treaty with John Palæologus, vii., 87; his pontificate, 278.
- Innocent, VII., Pope, vii., 285.
- Innocent XI., Pope, vii., 299 *note.*
- Inquisitors, religious, under Theodosius, iii., 152.
- Institutes of Justinian, iv., 464 *sqq.*, 470 *sqq.*; of Caius, 470 and *note.*
- Insula*, or Roman lodging-house, iii., 308 and *note.*
- Interamnia, Septimius Severus at, i., 114.
- Interest, Roman law of, iv., 495 *sq.*
- Interregnum, A. D. 275, i., 318.
- Intiline, province of, ceded to the empire, i., 375 and *note.*
- Invegas, Augustine monk of Palermo, vi., 184 *note.*
- Iona, Isle of, monastery at, iv., 62; library and tombs of, *ib.* *note.*
- Ionia*, work ascribed to an Empress Eudocia, iii., 388 *note.*
- Iphicles, deputy of Epirus, iii., 65 and *note.*
- Irāk, conquered by the Saracens, v., 406; extent of, *ib.* *note*; Bowides at, 489 *note.*
- Iran or Persia, iv., 357.
- Ireland, iii., 42.
- Irenæus, ii., 24 and *note*; preaches in Gaul, 28; works of, v., 100 *note.*
- Irene, daughter of Theodore Lascaris, vi., 457.
- Irene or Pansophia, v., 125 and *note.*
- Irene, wife of John Cantacuzenus, vi., 498; defends Constantinople, 511; besieged in Demotica, vii., 28; invites Amir to Constantinople, *ib.*
- Irene, wife of Leo IV., Emperor of Constantinople, crowned with her son, v., 188; her connexion with Charlemagne, 294; letter of Nicephorus concerning, vi., 35; reign, 189 *sqq.*; restored images, *ib.*; canonised, *ib.*; banished by her son, *ib.*; restored, 191; dethroned and banished to Lesbos by Nicephorus, 192; Life of, 198 *note*; restoration of images by, 275 *sq.*
- Irene, wife of Philip of Suabia, vi., 377.
- Irgana-kon, Mountain of, iv., 349 *note.*
- Irnac, youngest son of Attila, iii., 442; retires to Lesser Scythia, 476; kingdom of, destroyed by the Igours, *ib.*
- Iron, Siberian, iv., 349 and *note.*
- Isa, son of Bajazet, vii., 72.
- Isaac, an Armenian archbishop, iii., 393.
- Isaac, grandson of Eba the elder, v., 484.
- Isaac I., Comnenus, v., 221; in the Abbey of Studion, 222.
- Isaac II., Angelus, accession, v., 240 *sq.*; reign, 241 *sq.*; defeats the Normans, vi., 218; policy of, towards crusaders, 327, 329; character and reign, 374 *sqq.*; deposed by Alexis, 377; restored, 397 *sq.*; death, 402.
- Isaac, lieutenant of Belisarius, iv., 402.
- Isaac, son of Alexis Comnenus, made *Sebastocrator*, v., 228; sons of, 232.
- Isaac, son of John Comnenus, imprisonment of, v., 229; restoration of, vi., 397 *sq.*
- Isaiah of Rhodes, disgrace of, iv., 505.
- Isamus, station of, v., 200 *note.*
- Isar, Atiz, expedition of, vi., 257 *note.*
- Isaurians, rebellion of, i., 280, *sq.*; defeated by Probus, 328; besiege Seleucia, ii., 255; iii., 94; invade Palestine, 382; army of, levied by Leo, iv., 30; destruction of, *ib.* *note*; invaded Asia, 254; defeated in Phrygia by the Goths, 254; betray Rome to the Goths, 403; betray Rome a second time, 409.
- Iscander, *see* Escander.
- Isdigune, ambassador of Chosroes, iv., 383.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Jalal ad-Din Hasan, Ismaelian prince, vii., 13 *note*.
- Jalal ad-Din Mangbarti, *see* Gelaeddin.
- Jalila, battle of, v., 408.
- James de Delayto, vii., 63 *note*.
- James of Sarug, Syrian bishop, iii., 413 and *note*; homily on the seven sleepers, by, v., 247 *note*.
- James, St., Bishop of Edessa, miracles of, ii., 229 *note*.
- James, St., Legend of, in Spain, ii., 63 and *note*.
- Jami (mosques), vii., 201.
- Jane, daughter of Emperor Baldwin, vi., 426.
- Jane, Queen of Naples, sells Avignon, vii., 244 and *note*; strangles her husband, 267.
- Jane, sister of the Count of Savoy, *see* Anne of Savoy.
- Janioum, *see* Rome.
- Janizaries, instituted by Alâ-ad-Din, vii., 25 *note*, 32 and *note*; at the Byzantine Court, 107 and *note*; adoption among, 187.
- Jansenists, ii., 26 *note*; iii., 407 *note*.
- Januarius, St., blood of, vi., 253 *note*.
- Janus, Temple of, iv., 316.
- Jaroslav, Yaroslav, vi., 89 and *note*; 156; college of, 166.
- Jason, hostage in Alaric's camp, iii., 287.
- Jaxartes, river, v., 411 and *note*.
- Jasberin, iii., 437 and *note*.
- Jasyges, Sarmatian tribe, i., 234 *note*, 244; ii., 216.
- Jeffery of Monmouth, iv., 151.
- Jehan Numa, palace of Mahomet II., vii., 167.
- Jerom, St., on the Council of Rimini, ii., 354 *note*; dialogue of, 474 *note*; on the clergy, iii., 29 *note*; on the ravages of the Goths, 116.
- Jeroslaus, *see* Jaroslav.
- Jerusalem, kingdom of, vi., 314 *sqq.*; decline of, 343; female succession in, *ib. note*; conquered by Saladin, 344 *sq.*
- Jerusalem, temple of, destroyed by fire, ii., 89; Christian church at, 321 and *note*; Julian's design to rebuild it, 456 *sqq.*; Church of the Holy Virgin at, iv., 248; city of, described, ii., 454; spoils of temple at, taken from Rome to Carthage, iv., 6; taken by Chosroes, v., 70; monophysite tumults at, 127; taken by the Saracens, 434 *sqq.*; Omar's mosque at, 436 and *note*; conquered by the Turks, vi., 245, 251 *sq.*; sacrilege of the Holy Sepulchre at, 255; miraculous flame in the Holy Sepulchre, 253 and *note*; besieged by Afdal, 307; by the crusaders, 309 *sqq.*; population of, *ib. note*; water supply of, 320 *note*; St. Stephen's Gate at, *ib.*; tower of Psephina in citadel of, 322 *note*; Assise of, 327 *sqq.*; principality of, 328 *note*; Christians of, despoiled by Saladin, 341; taken by Saladin, 345 *sq.*; mosque of Omar at, 346; Richard I. near, 351 and *note*.
- Jesuits, mission of, in Abyssinia, v., 166 *sqq.*; expulsion of, 168.
- Jews, rebellion of, under Hadrian, i., 8 *note*; character of, ii., 2 *sq.*; zeal of, 4 *sqq.*; under the Asmonæan princes, 22; cruelties of, 73; under Nero, 88; of Alexandria, 336; Julian's letter to, 453 and *note*; synagogue of, destroyed at Callinicum, iii., 174 and *note*; conversion of, at Minorca, 213 *note*; exemption of, from municipal offices, 398 *note*; persecution of, in Spain, iv., 95 *sqq.*; persecuted by the Italians, 196; by Heraclius, v., 94; their belief in immortality, 99; persecution of, by Cyril of Alexandria, 108; persecuted by Justinian, 135 *sq.*; in Arabia, 331 *sq.*; assist the Saracens in Spain, 478; massacre of, by first crusaders, vi., 274; pay tribute at Rome in fourteenth century, vii., 318 *note*.
- Jezdegerd, *see* Yazdegerd.
- Jirjir [Præfect Gregory], v., 460 *note*.
- Joan, Pope, v., 297 *note*, 298 *note*.
- Joan, sister of Richard I. of England, vi., 353.
- Joannina, daughter of Belisarius and Antonina, iv., 408.
- Joannina, fortified by Stephen Dushan, vi., 500 *note*.
- Joannites, or followers of Chrysostom, iii., 381 *note*.
- Joasaph, monk of Mount Athos, vi., 506.
- Job, book of, v., 343 and *note*.
- Jodelle, vii., 130 *note*.
- Johannes Grant, German engineer, at siege of Constantinople, vii., 186 *note*.
- John Angelus, Emperor of Salonica, vi., 438 *note*.
- John Asen II., *see* Calo-John of Bulgaria.
- John Asen IV. of Bulgaria, vi., 480 *note*.
- John Bermudes, v., 166 *note*.

- John, Bishop of Antioch, important authority on deaths of Actius and Valentinian, iii., 479 *note*; summoned to the first Council of Ephesus, v., 115; reconciled to Cyril, 117.
- John, Bishop of Asia, *see* John of Ephesus.
- John Boivin, vi., 438 *note*.
- John, brother of Pappus, magister militum of Africa, hero of Corippus, iv., 391 *note*.
- John, brother of Paul of Samosata, vi., 112 *note*.
- John Comnenus, or Calo-Johannes, Emperor of Constantinople, v., 228 *sq.*
- John, count, lover of Eudoxia, iii., 381.
- John, Count of Nevers, his crusade against the Turks, vii., 36; taken prisoner, 37; ransomed, 38, 92.
- John Damascenus, works of, on images, v., 252 *note*, 254; life of, *ib.* *note*.
- John d'Ibelin, compiles Assise of Jerusalem, vi., 317 and *note*, 318 *note*.
- John Ducas, Cæsar, vi., 240 *note*.
- John, Duke of Trebizond, vi., 421 *note*.
- John Eladas, regent for Constantine VII., 208 *note*.
- John, Emperor of the East, Iberia and Peratea, vi., 421 *note*.
- John Geometres, vi., 136 *note*.
- John, grandson of John Vataces, vi., 439 (Lascaris), minority of, 459; not crowned, 464; blinded and banished, 466 *sq.*
- John I., Pope, sent by Theodoric to Constantinople, iv., 197.
- John VII., Greek Pope, vii., 288 *note*.
- John XI., Pope, v., 298 and *note*, 300.
- John XII., Pope, v., 298; disgrace of, 300.
- John XXII. Pope, wealth of, vii., 99 *note*; deposition of, 241; exhorted by Petrarch, 281; said to have introduced triple crown, 283 *note*.
- John XXIII., Pope, vii., 288; imprisoned, 289.
- John of Apri, Patriarch of Constantinople, vi., 497; deposed, 507.
- John of Biclar, historian of the Visigoths, iv., 141 *note*.
- John of Brienne, King of Jerusalem, vi., 432; Emperor of Constantinople, 433; defends Constantinople from Vataces, *ib.*; becomes a monk, 434.
- John of Cappadocia, minister of Justinian, iv., 224; disgrace and exile of, 242; opposes the African expedition, 273; supplies bad food for the army, 279; poverty of, 430 *note*.
- John of Ephesus, on Theodora, iv., 216 *note*; on speech of Justin II., v., 16 *note*.
- John, officer of Basiliscus, iv., 37.
- John of Gorz, embassy of, to Cordova, v., 491 *note*.
- John of Lycopolis, iii., 181 and *note*.
- John of Nikiu, chronicle of, v., 402 *note*, 454 *note*.
- John of Procida, account of, vi., 476 *sq.*
- John of Ravenna, pupil of Petrarch, vii., 123.
- John of Salisbury, on slavery, iv., 132 *note*; on papal avarice, vii., 215 *note*.
- John Palæologus I., emperor, reign, vi., 495; marries daughter of Cantacuzene, 503; takes up arms against Cantacuzene, 505; enters Constantinople, *ib.*; weakness of, vii., 38 *sq.*; imprisonment and escape, 39; death of, 40; pays tribute to Amurath II., 78; treaty with Innocent VI., 87; his visit to Urban V., 88; in Venice, 90.
- John Palæologus II., associated in the empire, vii., 97; reign, *ib.*; embarks in the Pope's galley, *ib.*; enters Venice, 105; enters Ferrara, 106; resides at Ferrara, 107; marries Princess of Trebizond, 98; date of his association, 132 *note*; *with*, 174 *note*.
- John, Patriarch of Alexandria (the almsgiver), receives fugitives from Palestine, v., 70; Life of, 71 *note*; gives money to Heraclius, 77 *note*; account of, 161 and *note*.
- John Philoponus, his intercourse with Amrou, v., 452; works of, *ib.* *note*.
- John, St., Christians of, at Bessora, vi., 331 and *note*.
- John, St., of Jerusalem, hospital of, vi., 253; knights of, *see* Hospitaliers.
- John, St., the Evangelist, ii., 337 and *note*; gospel of, 338 *note*; appearance of, to Theodosius, iii., 183 *note*.
- John, son of Isaac the Sebastocrator, apostacy of, v., 232.
- John, son of Sisiniolus, iv., 390 *note*.
- John, son of Vitalian, general of Justinian, iv., 395 *note*; marries daughter of Germanus, 399 *note*.
- John the Armenian, general of Belisarius, iv., 282.
- John, the Deacon, on Gregory I., v., 33 *note*.
- John, the eunuch, brother of Michael IV., v., 218.
- John, the Exarch, vi., 134 *note*.

- John the Faster, Patriarch of Constantinople, v., 35.
- John, the prefect, expedition against the Arabs, v., 468.
- John, the primicerius, embassy to Alaric, iii., 311; usurped the throne of Honorius, 395; death, 396.
- John the Sanguinary, iv., 323; besieges Rimini, 325; takes Vitiges prisoner, 332 *note*.
- John Tzimisce, *see* Zimisce.
- John Vladislav, Bulgarian ruler, vi., 136 *note*.
- Johnson, Dr., his Irene, vii., 171 *note*, 187 *note*.
- Joiaville, the historian, description of Greek fire, vi., 12; in the East, 359 and *note*.
- Jonas, Bishop of Orleans, iv., 132 *note*.
- Jonas of Damascus, v., 496.
- Jones, Sir William, iv., 496 *note*; his seven poems of the Caaba, v., 325 *note*; on Asiatic poetry, vi., 33 *note*.
- Jordan, John Christopher de, on the Slavonians, vi., 131 *note*.
- Jordan, on Rome, vii., 301 *note*.
- Jornandes, i., 239 and *note*, 251 *note*; account of Alaric, iii., 248 *note*; account of Placidia, 335 and *note*; description of Catalaunian fields, 462; suppresses the defeat of the Visigoths by Majorian, iv., 22.
- Jortin, Dr., ii., 348 *note*.
- Joseph, ancestor of the Zeirides, vi., 211.
- Joseph of Arimathea, St., mission of, vii., 289 *note*.
- Joseph, Patriarch of Constantinople, pardons Emperor Michael, vi., 468; withdraws to a monastery, 471.
- Joseph, Paulician leader, vi., 112 *note*.
- Joseph the Carizmian, opposes Malek Shah, vi., 242.
- Joseph, the patriarch, accompanies John Paleologus to Italy, vii., 104; death, 110.
- Josephs, the, of Amida, Nestorian sect, v., 150.
- Josephus, i., 73 *note*; ii., 4 *note*; on Christ, 86 *note*.
- Josephus, the false, ii., 74 *note*.
- Joshua Stylites, iv., 254 *note*, 258 *note*.
- Joubert, Père, vii., 227 *note*.
- Jovian, ii., 506 *note*; made emperor, 517 *sp.*; campaign in Persia, 519 *sp.*; reign, iii., 1-5; universal toleration proclaimed by, 3; death, 5 *sp.*
- Jovians, guards of Diocletian, i., 379; of Julian, ii., 506; in Britain, iii., 45.
- Jovinian, iii., 249 *note*.
- Jovinus, general of Julian, ii., 410; besieges Aquileia, 415, 423; defeats the Alamanal, iii., 33 *sp.*; consul, 94.
- Jovinus, tyrant, declared emperor at Mentz, iii., 343; death, 344.
- Jovius, quaestor of Julian, ii., 410.
- Jovius, praetorian prefect under Honorius, made emperor by the eunuchs, iii., 314; his treaty with Alaric, 316; deserts Honorius, 319.
- Jovius, sent by Theodosius to close pagan temples, iii., 196.
- Jovius, title of Diocletian, i., 353.
- Jubilee, or Holy Year, institution of, vii., 245; description of first, 246 and *note*; second, 247.
- Judas the Galilaite, ii., 88 and *note*.
- Jude, St., grandsons of, ii., 90 and *note*.
- Juder, Visigothic title, iii., 57 and *note*.
- Judgments of God, among the Franks, iv., 126 *sp.* and *notes*.
- Judicial, combats, iv., 127 *sp.*; established by Gundobald, 128 *note*; in kingdom of Jerusalem, vi., 329 *sp.*; prohibited by Michael VIII., 462; in France and England, 463 and *notes*.
- Judicial procedure, iv., 506 *sp.*
- Jūji, *see* Tōshū.
- Julia Domna, i., 117, 126, 132; death, 141.
- Julia Massa, i., 141.
- Julian, antecessor of Constantinople, vi., 102 *note*.
- Julian, Cardinal, at Council of Florence, vii., 109; legate, 141; account of, 147; death of, at Varna, 148.
- Julian Count, general of the Goths, in Africa, v., 472; invites the Moors and Arabs into Spain, 473; castle and town of, 475 and *note*; advises the Saracens, 477; entertains Musa, 479; death, 484.
- Julian, Emperor, his *Cæsars*, i., 71 *note*, 84 *note*, 97 *note*, 286 *note*, 336 *note*, 338 *note*, 354 *note*; spared by Constantius, ii., 247; education, *ib.*, *sp.* *note*; sent to Milan, 254; to Athens, 255; recalled, *ib.*; made *Cæsar*, 258; in Gaul, 274 *sp.*; defeats the Allemanni, 278 *sp.*; subdues the Franks, 280; crosses the Rhine three times, 282 *sp.*; civil administration of, 284 *sp.*; winters at Paris, 287; Gallic legions ordered to the East, 297 *sp.*; proclaimed emperor, 400 *sp.*; dreams of, 403 and *note*;

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- of his empire, 340 *sup.*; alliance with the Avars, 353 *sup.*; *Lexis* war, 380 *sup.*; negotiations with Nushirvan, 382 *sup.*; his jurisprudence in the West, 424; death and character of, 430 *sup.*; statue of, 432; Code, Pandects, and Institutes of, 441 and *note*, 463 *sup.*; legal inconstancy of, 468 *sup.*; law of, on inheritance of, 490 and *note*; general criticism on legislation of, 510; death of, v., 1; Persian war of, 42; theological character and government of, 132 *sup.*; persecutes heretics and pagans, 134; the Jews and Samaritans, 135; his orthodoxy, 136 *sup.*; heresy of, 139; equestrian statue of, at Constantinople, vii., 134 and *note*.
- Justinian II., Emperor, v., 179; mutilation and exile of, 180; takes refuge with the Chozars, *ib.*; allies himself with the Bulgarians, 181; besieges Constantinople, *ib.*; restoration and death, *ib.* *sup.*; his treatment of Ravenna, 183 *note*; persecutes the Paulicians, vi., 117; his treatment of Leontius and Aspimar, 241 *note*.
- Justinian, general of Honorius, iii., 273.
- Justinian, Roman advocate, iii., 279.
- Justinian, son of Germanus, commands the Eastern army, v., 17 *sup.*
- Justiniana Prima, *see* Tauresium.
- Justiniana Secunda, *see* Ulpiana.
- Justiniani Vita* of Theophilus, iv., 205 *note*.
- Justiniani, John, *see* Giustiniani.
- Justus, the apostate Paulician, vi., 117.
- Jutes, in Kent, iv., 146.
- Juthungi, i., 295 *note*, 296 *note*, 297 *note*.
- Juvenal, i., 31 *note*, 122; his satires read by the Romans, iii., 300; on the hardships of the poor in Rome, 307 and *note*.
- Juventius, præfect, iii., 30.
- KABARS, a Khazar people, vi., 147 *note*.
- Kahina, *see* Cahina.
- Kalfong, residence of the Chinese emperor, vii., 11.
- Kainoka, Jewish tribe of the, v., 364 and *note*.
- Kairawân, *see* Cairoan.
- Kakwayhids, dynasty of the, vi., 55 *note*.
- Kalilah and Dimnah, iv., 363 *note*.
- Kalligas, on Council of Florence, vii., 114 *note*.
- Karahi, Emperor, iii., 97 *note*.
- Kâmil (Mohammad), Sultan, vi., 357 and *note*.
- Kamtchatka, iv., 351.
- Kandahâr, taken by the Moslems, v., 413 *note*.
- Kaoti, Emperor of China, iii., 83 and *note*.
- Karacorum, residence of the successors of Zingis, iii., 437.
- Karâ-Khitay, tribe of Turka, vii., 7 *note*; kingdom of, conquered by Zingis, 8 *note*.
- Karîst, ancient Mysia, conquered by Orchan, vii., 25 *note*.
- Kars, ceded to the empire, vi., 236 *note*.
- Kâshgar, Chinese garrison at, i., 368 *note*; khans of, invade Transoxiana, vii., 44; people of, called Uzbegs, *ib.* *note*; kingdom of, subdued by Timour, 48.
- Kâsimpasha, Bay of, vii., 184 *note*.
- Kastamunlyâ, principality of, conquered by the Turka, vii., 26 *note*.
- Kastoria, fortified by Stephen Dushan, vi., 500 *note*.
- Kataankataci, Moses, Armenian writer, v., 83 *note*.
- Katona, Stephen, vi., 137 *note*.
- Kazgan, Emir of Transoxiana, vii., 44 *note*.
- Keating, Dr., History of Ireland, i., 217 *note*.
- Kebla of prayer, v., 364.
- Kekaumenos, Strategikon of, vi., 136 *note*.
- Kenric, conquests of, iv., 149.
- Keraites, khans of the, vii., 2 and *note*; account of, *ib.*
- Kerak, lordship of, vi., 318 *note*; fortress of, 344.
- Kerbela, plain of, Hosein surrounded in, v., 390.
- Kerboga, Prince of Mosul, vi., 301 *sup.*; twenty-eight emirs of, 306.
- Kerman, *see* Kirmân.
- Kermiyân (Western Phrygia), *see* Ghermian.
- Khalîl pasha, *see* Calil.
- Khalîl, Sultan, takes Acre, vi., 364.
- Khan or Cagan, iii., 78 and *note*; title of Shelun, 262 and *note*; great Khan of the Turka, invades Persia, v., 44.
- Khazars, *see* Chozars.
- Khedar (Khidr) Khan, vi., 245 and *note*.
- Khitans, revolt of, on Chinese frontier, vii., 7.

- Khondemir**, abridges *History of Misp* chond, x., 488 *note*.
- Khoten**, Chinese garrison, v., 488.
- Khubilay**, *see* Cublai.
- Khurista**, conquest of, by **Abbas** ibn Kais, v., 409 *note*; **Magians** in, 488; conquered by **Mongols**, vii., 9.
- Khūzistān**, conquest of, by the **Moslems** of **Kufa**, v., 409 *note*.
- Kienlong**, poet, iii., 77 *note*.
- Kiev**, *see* **Kiow**.
- Kilidje (Kilij)**, **Arslān**, II., his dealings with the crusaders, vi., 331 *note*.
- Kilidje (Kilij)**, **Arslān**, Sultan of **Roum**, *see* **Soliman**, son of **Cutulmish**.
- Kin**, dynasty in **China**, vii., 6 *note*.
- Kinnisrin**, *see* **Chalcis**.
- Kinnoge**, city of, **Mahmūd** at, vi., 226 and *note*.
- Kiotahia**, **Timour** plants his standard at, vii., 60.
- Kiow (Kiev)**, **Andronicus** at, v., 235; **Oleg** at, vi., 149 *note*; capital of **Russia**, 151 and *note*; Church of **St. Sophia** at, 165 and *note*; crypt monastery at, 166 *note*; destroyed by the **Tartars**, vii., 15.
- Kipzak**, **Plains** of, **Bātū** defeats the **Cossacks** in the, vii., 15 and *note*; conquered by **Timour**, 48; **Western Kipzak**, conquered by **Bātū**, *id.* *note*.
- Kirghiz Kazaks**, **Siberian** tribe, vii., 48 *note*.
- Kirmān**, in **Persia**, conquered by the **Arabs**, v., 409 *note*; survival of the religion of the **Magi** in, 489 and *note*; **Seljukian** dynasty of, vi., 247 and *note*.
- Kislar Aga**, protects the **Athenians**, vi., 486.
- Kiss**, on **John Huniades**, vii., 149 *note*.
- Kiaperli**, grand vizier, vii., 78 *note*.
- Klette**, T., on **Philelphus**, vii., 115 *note*.
- Klokotnitsa**, battle of, vi., 433 *note*.
- Knez**, title of **Bulgarian** rulers, vi., 135 *note*.
- Knight, Dr.**, his **Life of Erasmus**, vii., 129 *note*.
- Knighthood**, vi., 282 sqq.
- Knolles**, historian, his **History of the Turks**, vii., 24 *note*.
- Koba**, town near **Medina**, **Mahomet** at, v., 387.
- Kobad**, grandson of the **Persian** king, commands the **Persians** against **Totila**, iv., 413; origin, *id.* *note*.
- Koraidha**, **Jewish** tribe of, v., 364 *note*, 365.
- Koran**, the letters
- persecute **Mahomet**, 351; verdict of, 355; defeated **met** at **Bedr**, 362; defeat at **Ohud**, 363.
- Kosho-Tsaidam**, **Lake**, **Turkist** tion found near, v., 415 *note*.
- Kosovo-polje**, battle of, between **Slavs** and **Ottomans**, vii., 3.
- Krambacher**, on **Icasia**, v., 199.
- Kudether Bidik**, or **Art of Gov** vi., 296 *note*.
- Kul, Turk**, inscription to, v., 4.
- Kunoviza**, battle of, vii., 142.
- Kurikan**, **Turkish** clan, vii., 44.
- Kusdir**, conquered by **Subuk** 225 *note*. *See* **Cosdar**.
- Kuseila**, **Berber** chief, v., 467 *note*.
- Kussai**, *see* **Cosa**.
- Küstendil**, iv., 251 *note*.
- Kutaieh**, *see* **Cotyæum**.
- Kutritakes**, one of the **viziers** **Alexius Strategopoulus**, vi.,
- Kuyuk**, *see* **Gayuk**.
- LABARUM**, or standard of the **C** 299 sqq. and *notes*; name erased from, by **Julian**, 4; played by **Jovian**, iii., 2.
- Labat, Père**, his description of **near Rome**, vii., 237 *note*; **curse of Anagnin**, 243 *note*.
- Labeo, Antistius**, *ib.* 456, 459 and 460.
- Labeo, Q.**, commentaries of the **Tables**, iv., 497 *note*.
- Laconians, Free**, vi., 70 sq.
- La Crose**, v., 113 *note*.
- Lactantius**, i., 351 *note*, 486 and 24 and *note*; his **Institutes**, *notes*; iv., 470 *note*; his **Chr** ii., 307 *note*; on images, v., 1.
- Lactarius, Mount**, iv., 418 and 1.
- Ladislau**, **King of Naples**, vii., 1.
- Ladislau**, **King of Poland** against **gary**, vii., 142 and *note*; against the **Turks**, *id.*; of **peace of Szegedin**, 143; d at **Varna**, 146.

- Læta**, daughter of Proba, iii., 308.
Læta, widow of the Emperor Gratian, generosity of, to the poor in Rome, iii., 309 and *note*.
Læti, Gallic tribe, iii., 461 and *note*.
Lætus, Maecius, i., 124 *note*.
Lætus, praetorian praefect of Commodus, i., 96 *sq.*, 105.
Lagodius, opposes the usurper Constantine, iii., 274 and *note*.
Lahore, city of, taken by Sultan of Gazna, vi., 226.
Laity, order of, ii., 315.
Lambesa, ruins of, iv., 298.
Lampadius, Roman senator, iii., 277 and *note*.
Lanus, river, vi., 46 *note*.
Lancearii, iii., 112.
Lanciani, R., on Rome, vii., 301 *note*; plan of Rome, 325 *note*.
Lancisi, Roman physician, on population of Rome, vii., 313 *note*.
Land question in tenth century, v., 209 *note*; 215 *note*.
Land-tax, under Constantine, ii., 194 and *note*.
Lane-Poole, S., *Studies in a Mosque*, v., 392 *sq.* *note*, 418 *note*; *Life of Saladin*, vi., 340 *note*.
Lanfranc, Archbishop of Canterbury, corrects text of the Bible, iv., 90 *note*.
Langlés, M. his *Life of Timour*, vii., 42 *note*.
Langres, battle of, i., 362; bishops of, iv., 111 *note*.
Languantan, Moorish tribe, iv., 392 *note*.
Languedoc. *see* Septimania.
Laodicea, in Asia Minor, i., 49; council of, ii., 25 *note*; Frederic Barbarossa at, vi., 328.
Laodicea in Syria, Antioch subject to, iii., 170 and *note*; Saracens at, v., 427 and *note*, 437 *note*; taken by the Saracens, 441; by Sultan Soliman, vi., 251; lost by the Franks, 363.
Laplanders, vi., 139 *sq.*
Lardner, Dr., *Credibility*, iii., 153 *note*.
Larissa, captured by the Bulgarians, vi., 136 *note*; besieged by Bohemond, 202.
Lascaris, Constantine, Greek grammar of, vii., 129 *note*.
Lascaris, James, Greek grammarian, vii., 124 *sq.* and *note*; founds Greek colleges of Rome and Paris, *ib.* *note*; brings Mss. from the East for Lorenzo de Medicio, 128.
Lascaris, John, grandson of Vataces, *see* John.
Lascaris, Theodore I., *see* Theodore.
Lascaris, Theodore II., *see* Theodore.
Latifundia, v., 209 *note*.
Latimer, vii., 129 *note*.
Latin Christians, indifference of, ii., 353; influenced by Valens and Ursacius, 354 and *note*; Church of, distracted by schism, vii., 99.
Latin language in the Roman provinces, i., 37 and *note*; official use of, 39; oblivion of the, vi., 101 *sq.*
Latins, name of the Franks, vi., 98.
Latium, right of, i., 36 and *note*.
Latronian, the poet, execution of, iii., 153.
Laugier, Abbé, *History of Venice*, vi., 382 *note*.
Laura, of Eastern monasteries, iv., 59 *note*, 72.
Laure de Noves, vii., 255 and *note*, 257 and *note*.
Laurence, competitor for bishopric of Rome, iv., 195.
Laurence, deacon, ii., 49.
Lavardin, Marquis de, vii., 299 *note*.
Law, study of, ii., 172 *sqq.*; Roman or civil law, iv., 441 *sqq.*; Twelve Tables of, 444 *sqq.*; of the people, 447 *sqq.*; of the Senate, 448; edicts of the emperors, 450 *sqq.*; royal law, 451 and *note*; forms of, 453 *sq.*; three periods of civil law, 454 *sqq.*; legal sects in Rome, 459 *sqq.*; reform of Roman law by Justinian, 461; loss of ancient Roman law, 466 *sq.*; statutes of Draco, 497; criminal laws, *ib.* *sqq.*; abolition of penal laws, 500.
Laws :—
Aquilian, iv., 496 and *note*.
Caninian, i., 321 *note*.
Cornelian, iv., 448, 475 *note*, 476, 502.
Julian, iv., 448, 502, 503 *note*.
Of Citations, iv., 461.
Pompeian, iv., 448, 475 *note*, 502.
Porcian, iv., 500.
Scatinian, iv., 504 and *note*.
See Lex de imperio Vespasiani (= Lex regia).
Valerian, iv., 500.
Voconian, iv., 488 and *note*, 492.
Lawyers, Roman, series of, iv., 454 *sqq.*; their philosophy, 457 *sq.*; authority of, 458.
Laymen, ii., 43 *note*, 46 *sq.*
Lazarus, Kral of Servia, conquered the Ottomans, vii., 33 *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Leo X., Pope, vii., 296; munificence of, 324.
- Leo of Tripolis, attacks Thessalonica, v., 206 *note*.
- Leo Pilatus, first professor of Greek at Florence, vii., 120 *sq.*; his translation of Homer, 121 *note*.
- Leo Sguros, of Nauplia, vi., 418 *note*.
- Leo, slave of the Bishop of Langres, iv., 136 *sq.*
- Leo, son of Bardas Phocas, v., 210 *note*.
- Leo the Jew, founds family of the Pierleoni, vii., 249 *sq.*
- Leo Tornikios, revolt of, v., 239 *note*.
- Leonard Aretin, *see* Aretinus.
- Leonardus Chiensis, on siege of Constantinople, vii., 163 *note*; on cannon of Mahomet, 169 *note*, 173 *note*; on Giustiniani, vii., 191 *note*.
- Leonas, the quaestor, ii., 407.
- Leontia, wife of Phocas, v., 64.
- Leontini, taken by the Saracens, vi., 39 *note*.
- Leontius, Athenian sophist, father of Eudocia, iii., 387.
- Leontius, Bishop of Neapolis in Cyprus, Life of John the Almsgiver, v., 161.
- Leontius, Roman general, made governor of Greece by Justinian II., v., 179; assumes the purple, 180; death, 181.
- Leopards, in possession of Bajazet Sultan, vii., 38 *note*.
- Leopolis, foundation of, vi., 43 and *note*.
- Leovigild, Gothic King of Spain; religious toleration of, iv., 92.
- Leptis, city of, iii., 46 *sq.*; surrenders to Belisarius, iv., 282; duke of, 290; massacre of Moorish deputies at, 392.
- Lesbos, island of, taken by John Vatases, vi., 431 and *note*; recovered by John Cantacuzene, 496; reduced by Turks, vii., 194 *note*.
- Lethe, castles on the Bosphorus, ii., 143 *note*.
- Leti, Gregorio, his Life of Sixtus V., vii., 299 *note*.
- Leucadia, Bishop of, vi., 71.
- Leucothoe, or St. Cyprian, fair at, iv., 193 *note*.
- Leuderis, Gothic commander in Rome, iv., 311.
- Leunclavius on the Turks, vii., 24 *note*, 64; his edition of Chalcondyles, 93 *note*.
- Leutetia, ancient name of Paris, *see* Lutetia.
- Lewis, derivation of the name, iv., 100 *note*.
- Lewis I., the Pious, emperor, defeated at Aix la Chapelle before, iv., 127 *note*; laws on falconry, v., 27 *note*; donation of, 273 *note*; associated in the empire, 291; receives embassy from Charlemagne, vi., 147; his donation to Hildegarda, vii., 221 *note*.
- Lewis II., son of Lewis the Pious, association of, v., 292; reigned in Italy, *ib.*; called "rex," 295; letter of, to Basil I., vi., 169 *note*; death, 169.
- Lewis VII., *see* Louis VII.
- Lewis IX., *see* Louis IX.
- Lewis of Bavaria, emperor, excommunication of, v., 308; Senator of Rome, vii., 232; interferes in papal election, 241 and *note*; coronation of, 252.
- Lewis of Hungary, appeals to Rienzi, vii., 267.
- Lewis the Child, vi., 142.
- Lex, *see* Laws.
- Lex de Imperio Vespasiani (Lex Regia), i., 66 *note*; iv., 451 *note*; discovery of, vii., 261 and *note*.
- Libanius the Sophist, account of Julian, ii., 255 *note*, 407 *note*; on Julian as an orator, 429; on his religion, 442; on the restoration of paganism, 447; account of, and literary character of, 486 *sq.* and *notes*; remarks on Jovian's treaty, 522 and *note*, 525 *note*; funeral oration on Valens, iii., 113 *sq.*; praises the moderation of Theodosius, 206.
- Libanus, iv., 435 and *note*; topography of, v., 430 and *note*; colony of, vii., 13.
- Libel, law of, iv., 499.
- Libellatici, ii., 107 *note*, 113 *note*.
- Libelli, ii., 113 *note*.
- Liber Censuum, Vatican Ms., vi., 187 *note*; vii., 216 *note*.
- Liber Pontificalis, iv., 403 *note*; continuation of, vi., 261 *note*.
- Liberiana, Basilica, iii., 30 *note*.
- Liberius, Bishop of Rome, banishment of, ii., 373 *sq.*; retracts, 374; expulsion and recall, 382 *sq.*
- Liberius, officer of Justinian, iv., 410.
- Liberius, praetorian praefect, iv., 189.
- Libertines, or freedmen, i., 40; iv., 471.
- Libraries of Constantinople destroyed, vii., 198.
- Libri Carolini, v., 279 *note*.

- Liburnian galleys, i., 18; mentioned by Zosimus, iii., 372 *note*.
- Licinius, claimed relationship with Philip, i., 191 *note*; benefactor of Tiridates, 366; birth, *ib. note*; raised to the purple, 405 *note*, 407; divides the empire, 411, 432; alliance with Constantine, 425; war with Maximin, *ib.*; cruelty of, 426; wars with Constantine, 430 *sqq.*, 436; defeated at Hadrianople, 437; death, 440; persecutes the Christians, ii., 296 and *note*.
- Licinius the Younger, Caesar, i., 432 and *note*; death of, ii., 209 and *note*.
- Liegnitz, battle of, between Tartars and Russians, vii., 15 and *note*.
- Lieutenants, imperial, i., 63.
- Lightning, i., 341 and *note*.
- Lignitz, battle of, *see* Liegnitz.
- Ligorius Pyrrhus, topographer, vii., 325 *note*.
- Ligurians, i., 21 and *note*.
- Ligurians, the poem, authorship of, vii., 220 *note*.
- Lilius, ambassador of Phocas, v., 68.
- Lilybæum, fortress of, ceded to the Vandals, iv., 300; claimed by Belisarius, *ib.*; destroyed by the Saracens, vi., 38 *note*.
- Limagne, plain of, iv., 134.
- Limborch, ii., 7 *note*.
- Limigantes, Sarmatian slaves, ii., 219; treachery of, 264; exterminated by Constantius, 265.
- Linacer, vii., 129 *note*.
- Lincoln, Roman colony, i., 36 *note*.
- Lintar, name for Leith, vi., 275.
- Lions, African, i., 93 *note*.
- Lipari, Isle of, Attalus banished to, iii., 345; volcano of, iv., 204 and *note*.
- Liris, or Garigliano, river, fleet of Vandals and Moors at, iv., 20 *note*.
- Lisbon, Saracens at, v., 484; silk manufacture at, vi., 73.
- Lissa, city in Silesia, v., 57.
- Lissus (Alessio), assembly at, vii., 152; death of Scanderbeg at, 154.
- Litarbe, ii., 487 *note*.
- Literature, in the Roman Empire, i., 57; decline of, *ib.*; Byzantine, vi., 62 *sqq.*; 105 *sqq.*
- Lithuania, conversion of, vi., 165.
- Liticiani, Gallic tribe, iii., 461 *note*.
- Litorius, Count, relieves Narbonne, iii., 451; attacks Toulouse, *ib.*
- Liturgy, Roman, of Gregory I., v., 35 and *note*.
- Liturnum, country house of the elder Scipio at, iv., 52 and *note*.
- Liutprand, Bishop of Cremona, v., 263; on Nicephorus Phocas, vi., 57 *note*; embassy of, 66 and *note*, 84 and *note*, 88 *note*.
- Liutprand, King of the Lombards, conveys relics of St. Augustine to Pavia, iv., 288 *note*; v., 264 and *note*.
- Livy, on constitutional history of Rome, iv., 442 *note*; on library at Alexandria, v., 454 *note*.
- Lisios (Λίσιος), Greek form for liegeman, vi., 508 and *note*.
- Locri, or Santa Cyriaca, Barlaam, Bishop of, vii., 119 *note*.
- Locrians, republic of, iv., 445 and *note*.
- Logos, the Platonic, ii., 336; opinion of Athanasius on, 340 and *note*; of the Christians, 337 *sq.*; of Arius, 345 and *note*; of the Gregories, 346 *note*; represented by the sun, 439 and *note*; opinion of the Docetes on, v., 100; of Apollinaris, 105.
- Logothete, office of, iv., 397 *note*; vi., 81 and *note*; of the military chest, 82 *note*; of the Dromos, *ib.*; of the flocks, *ib.*
- Lollianus (Laetianus), tyrant, i., 275, 300 and *note*.
- Lollius Urbicus, wall of, i., 20 *note*.
- Lombards, i., 242; adopt Nicene faith, iv., 95; in Noricum and Pannonia, 343; origin of, *ib. note*; subdue the Gepidæ, 344; destroy their kingdom under Alboin, v., 6 *sq.*; relinquish their lands to the Avars, 9; conquer Italy, 10 *sqq.*; kingdom of the, 24; description of, *ib. sqq.*; dress and marriage of, 27 *sq.*; introduce the chase into Italy, *ib.* and *note*; government and laws of, 29 *sq.*; attack Rome, 264 *sq.*; defeat of, under Astolphus, 267.
- Lombardy, v., 10; ravaged by Attila, iii., 469; kingdom of, under Alboin, v., 4 *sqq.*; destroyed by Charlemagne, 288; Greek province of, vi., 170.
- London, Roman colony, i., 36 *note*; Allectus at, 360.
- Longinus, Exarch of Ravenna, v., 9 and *note*; lover of Rosamund, 14.
- Longinus, tutor of Zenobia, i., 58 and *note*, 303; death, 309.
- Lonicerus, Chronica Turcica of, vii., 163 *note*.
- Lopadium, Louis VII. at, vi., 329 *note*.

- Lorca, surrendered by Theodemir to the Saracens, v., 481.
- Loria, Roger de, *see* Roger.
- Lothaire, Duke of the Alamanni, invades Italy, iv., 420 *sq.*; death of, 422 and *note*.
- Lothaire I., Emperor, constitution of, iv., 124 *note*; associated in the empire, v., 292; kingdom of, *ib.*; vii., 248 *note*.
- Lothaire II., vi., 88; opposes Roger of Sicily, 210.
- Lotharingia, or Lorraine, kingdom of, vi., 278 *note*.
- Loughborough, Lord, vi., 320 *note*.
- Louis, Count of Blois and Chartres, vi., 379.
- Louis ³⁷⁹ le Gros, vi., 320 *note*.
- Louis VII., v., 240; rescued by George of Sicily, vi., 213; conducts second crusade, 324 *sq.*; his march through Anatolia, 329 *sq.* and *note*.
- Louis IX., v., 451 *note*; refuses knight-hood to infidels, vi., 340 *note*; crusades of, 358 *sq.*; takes Damietta, 360; captivity, *ib.*; ransom of, 361 *note*; death of, 362; generosity of, to Baldwin, 435 and *note*; buys holy relics from Baldwin, 437; last crusade of, 475.
- Louis XIV., ii., 451 *note*; sends ambassador to Rome, vii., 299 *note*.
- Lublin, city of, destroyed by the Mongols, vii., 15.
- Lucan, i., 115 *note*; Pompey of, v., 49.
- Lucania, i., 312; forests of, iii., 303 and *note*; Totila in, iv., 404 *sq.*; Belisarius in, 406.
- Lucanians, i., 21.
- Lucanus, Joh. Albinus, vii., 208 *note*.
- Lucar, Cyril, Protestant patriarch of Constantinople, v., 163 *note*.
- Lucas Notaras, Duke of Constantinople, *see* Notaras.
- Lucas Tudensis, Gallician deacon, v., 473 *note*.
- Lucca, siege of, iv., 419 *sq.*; monopoly of silk trade at, vi., 73; three hundred towers at, vii., 314.
- Luccari, M., iv., 205 *note*.
- Lucerne, artificial grass, i., 53.
- Lucian, Count of the East, put to death by Rufinus, iii., 222.
- Lucian, eunuch, protects the Christians, ii., 117.
- Lucian, martyr, iii., 25 *note*.
- Lucian, Presbyter of Jerusalem, ex-bones the bodies of the saints, iii., 210 and *note*, 211.
- Lucian, satyrist, i., 57; Philopatris ascribed to, 320 *note*; on Christianity in Pontus, ii., 58.
- Lucifer of Cagliari, ii., 369 *note*; exile, 373; libels of, 381 *note*, 474 *note*.
- Lucilla, purchases the Bishopric of Carthage, ii., 115 *note*.
- Lucilla, sister of Commodus, i., 87.
- Lucillianus, Count, ii., 229; general of cavalry in Illyricum, 411; taken prisoner, 412; death, iii., 5.
- Lucius, Bishop of Alexandria, iii., 26.
- Lucius II., Pope, vii., 218; applies to Conrad III., 225 *note*.
- Lucius III., Pope, vii., 218 and *note*.
- Lucrine Lake, iii., 297 and *note*.
- Lucullus, i., 209 *note*; villa of, iv., 52; Augustulus banished to castle of, 53; other villas of, *ib.* *note*.
- Ludewig, Life of Justinian, iv., 431, 441 *note*.
- Ludi, Sarmatici, i., 435 *note*; Gothici, *ib.* *See* Games.
- Ludolph, Duke of Saxony, v., 292.
- Ludolphus, *Æthiopian History of*, iv., 385 *note*.
- Ludovicus Vives, iv., 450 *note*.
- Lugdunensis Gallia, province, L., 20.
- Lugdunum or Lyons, i., 20.
- Lugo, camp of Musa at, v., 482.
- Luke, St., body of, removed to Constantinople, iii., 209.
- Lulon, fortress of, v., 200 *note*.
- Lupercal, situation of the, iv., 33 *note*.
- Lupercalia, festival of, celebrated under Anthemius, iv., 32 *sq.*; abolished by Pope Gelasius, 34 and *note*.
- Lupercals, confraternity of, iii., 189.
- Lupicina, Empress (Euphemia), iv., 214.
- Lupicinus, general, ii., 399 and *note*; imprisoned, 404; fights for Valens, iii., 15; governor of Thrace, 97; oppresses the Goths, 98; defeated by them, 101.
- Lupicinus, St., iv., 104 *note*.
- Lupus, Protospata, author of *Chronicles of Bari*, vi., 180 *note*.
- Lupus, St., of Troyes, iii., 458; Life of, *ib.* *note*.
- Lusatia, Wends of, iv., 295. *sq.* *note*.
- Lusignan de, *see* Guy de Lusignan.
- Lusignan of Cyprus, his gifts to Bajazet, vii., 37.
- Lusitania, province of Spain, i., 19; gold of, 160; Alani in, iii., 346.
- Lustai, office of the, vi., 81 *note*.
- Lustral contribution [lustralis collatio or chrysargyron] ii., 198.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Magistracies, civil, laid aside by Diocletian, i., 380 and *note*.
- Magistrates, Roman, i., 66 and *note*.
- Magnaura, Palace of, *see* Constantinople.
- Magnentius, saluted emperor in Gaul, ii., 232 and *note*, 297.; campaign against Constantius II., 238 297.; battle of Murra, 239 297.; defeat and death, 242.
- Magnesia, or Guzel Hissar, i., 49 *note*; Theodore Lascaris died at, vi., 460 and *note*; Amurath II. retires to, vii., 139 and *note*.
- Magna Urbica, i., 342 *note*.
- Magnus of Carrhæ, ii., 514 *note*.
- Magnus, senator, i., 172.
- Magyars or Hungarians, iii., 417 *note*; name of, vi., 137 297.
- Mahadi (Mahdi), caliph, son of Al-Mansûr, wealth of, vi., 24.
- Mahadi (Mahdi), last of the Persian Imâms, v., 392.
- Mahadia, in Africa, vi., 211.
- Mahmûd, Sultan, of Delhi, defeat of, by Timour, vii., 51.
- Mahmûd II., Sultan, massacres the Janizaries, vii., 32 *note*.
- Mahmûd, Prince of Gazna, v., 4 *note*.
- Mahmûd, the Gaznevide, vi., 224 297.; assumes title of Sultan, 225; in Hindostan, 226 297.; character of, 227; death, 230.
- Mahomet = Mohammad, *q.v.*
- Mahomet I. (Ottoman Sultan), son of Bajazet, vii., 73; obtains Anatolia, *ib.*; defeats Mûsâ, *ib.*
- Mahomet II., restores castles of Europe and Asia, ii., 143; his descent from the Comneni, v., 232; puts last Duke of Athens to death, vi., 485; marries Asiatic princess, vii., 63 *note*; besieges Belgrade, 149; character of, 159 and *note* 297.; reign, 161 297.; marriage, 161; hostile intentions of, 162 297.; builds fortress on the Bosphorus, 165; prepares for the siege, 167; great cannon of, 169; forces of, 172 297.; headquarters of, *ib. note*; besieges Constantinople, 177 297.; employs mines, 179; punishes Baltha Ogli, 182; transports his vessels ten miles, 184; constructs a bridge, 185; his treatment of the Greeks, 199 297.; repopulates Constantinople, 200 297.; his mosque, 201; his death, 208.
- Mahomet, the Prophet, iii., 395 *note*; adopts the Legend of the Seven Sleepers, 414 *note*; date of his birth, v., 40 *note*; rejection of his summons by Chosroes, 74 and *note*; ancestors of, 328 and *note*; birth and education, 333 297.; appearance and character of, 335; journeys to Syria, 336; his knowledge of writing, *ib. note*; assumes title of Prophet, 337, 339; creed of, *ib. 297.*; composes the Koran, 342; prophecy of the Pasacle applied to, *ib.* (and *note*); miracles of, 344 297.; vision of, 345 and *note*; institutes a fast, 347; preaches at Mecca, 351 297.; Lives of, 352 *note*; his disciples emigrate to Ethiopia, 355; his flight, *ib. 297.*; Prince of Medina, 356; regal and sacerdotal office of, 358; military laws of, 359; wars of, 361 297.; subdues the Jews, 364; submission of Mecca, 366; ten years' truce with the Korah, *ib.*; submission of Arabia, 370; embassy of, to Heraclius, *ib.*; expedition of Tabuc, 372 297.; death, 373 297.; epilepsy of, *ib. note*; tomb, 375 and *note*; character, *ib. 297.*; private life of, 377 297.; wives, 378; and children, 380; choice of a successor, 382; success of his religion, 394 297.; Life of, in Modern Universal History, 396 *note*; embassy to Mokawkas, 448 and *note*.
- Mahometanism, *see* Islam.
- Maillet, M., Consul, his description of Egypt, v., 457 *note*, 458 *note*, 459 *note*.
- Maimbourg, History of Iconoclasm, v., 251 *note*; on Alexius Comnenus, vi., 287 *note*.
- Maimonides, ii., 3 *note*.
- Maine, Sir Henry, Ancient Law of, iv., 449 *note*.
- Mainfroy, King of Naples and Sicily, vi., 222; proscribed by the Popes, 474.
- Mainotes or Eleuthero-Laconians, vi., 70.
- Mains, *see* Mentz.
- Maiuma, port of Gaza, ii., 477 *note*.
- Majella, *see* Monte Majella.
- Majestas, crime of, i., 81; law concerning, under Arcadius, iii., 365 and *note*; iv., 503.
- Majo, Admiral, conspires against William I. of Sicily, vi., 218.
- Majorca and neighbouring isles, Vandals in, iii., 400; submit to Justinian, iv., 289.

Malaterra, see Galfridus.
Malatesta, Italian family of, vii., 319.
Malatesta, Sigismond, Prince of Rimini, vii., 160 note.
Malaxus, Emanuel, vii., 202 note.
Malazkerd, siege of, vi., 238; called Manzikert, *ib. note*; battle of, 239.
Malchus, account of embassy from the senate to Zeno, iv., 51 note.
Malchus, adventures of, ii., 227 note.
Maldives, islands, ii., 313 note.
Malek Rodosaces, Emir of the tribe of Gassan, ii., 494.
Malek Shah, son of Sultan Alp Arslan, vi., 236; conquests of, 243 *sq.*; pilgrimage of, to Mecca, 245; death of, 246.
Malaspina Ricordano, on Charles of Anjou, vi., 475.
Malleolus, P., iv., 498 note.
Mallevilla, name for Zemlin, vi., 275 note.
Mallius (Theodorus), praetorian praefect, ii., 173 note; epigram of Claudian on, iii., 283 and note.
Malmistra, see Mopsuestia.
Malomir, son of Omortag, vi., 134 note.
Malta, i., 26; taken by the Saracens, vi., 39 note; conquered by Roger of Sicily, vi., 211; Knights Hospitallers at, 316.
Maitepe, Hill of, headquarters of Mahomet, vii., 172 note.
Mahret, Claude, publishes Paris edition of Procopius, iv., 210 note; his unfulfilled promises, 307 note.
Mamaocae, on the Oise, Palace of the Merovingians, vi., 13.

Mananalis, in Cappadocia, vi., 228 note.
Manat, Arabic deity, v., 252 note.
Man-Chu, dynasty in Northern China, vii., 6 note.
Mancipation, iv., 486 note.
Mancipium, explanation of that term in Roman law, iv., 486 note.
Mandaeans, ii., 9 note.
Mandolori, G., on Barlaam, vii., 128 note.
Mandracium, suburb of Carthage, melted by a Roman officer, iv., 284; restored by Belisarius, 285.
Manes, i., 203 note; ii., 331 note; revived, v., 241; rejected by the Paulicians, vi., 113.
Mangi, name of Southern China, vii., 11 note.
Mangū, grandson of Zingis, vii.; 20 and note.
Maniaces, George, Greek governor of Lombardia, general, 218 note; subdues Sicily, vi., 177 and note.
Maniach, Turkish ambassador, iv., 354 note; at the Byzantine court, 355.
Maniach, prince of the Sogdians, iv., 355.
Manichaeans, ii., 14, 331 and note; wars against, under Theodosius, iii., 152; persecuted by Huneric IV., 84; persecuted in the provinces, 97; on the nature of Christ, v., 101; in Arabia, 332; desert the standard of Alexius Comnenus, vi., 122.
Manilius, i., 86 note.
Manilius, Roman lawyer, iv., 467 note.
Manlius Torquatus, i., 62 note.

- Manors or farms granted to the hospitaliers and templars, vi., 316 and *note*.
- Mansûr, *see* Al-Mansur.
- Mansûr, Prince of Fars, opposes Timour, vii., 47.
- Mansûra, battle of, vi., 360 and *note*, 361 *note*.
- Mantinium, ii., 387 and *note*.
- Manuel, brother of Theodore Angelus, vi., 438 *note*.
- Manuel Comnenus, Emperor of Constantinople, v., 230; wars of, *ib. sq.*; character, 231; repulses the Normans, vi., 214; his ambition, 215; makes peace with the Normans, 217; second and third crusades in reign of, 327; accused of treachery, 329; wives of, 372; letters of, to Pope Alexander III., 373 *note*; wall of, vii., 174 *note*.
- Manuel Comnenus, first of the Comneni, v., 220.
- Manuel Comnenus of Trebizond, vi., 421 *note*.
- Manuel Comnenus, son of Andronicus, v., 241.
- Manuel Comnenus, brother of Alexius I., v., 224.
- Manuel Palæologus, Emperor, vii., 39; imprisonment and escape, *ib.*; serves under Bajazet, 40; visits French court, 41; returns to Constantinople, 75; concludes treaty with Mahomet, 76; death, 78, 98; negotiations of, 96; dialogues of, *ib. note*.
- Manuel Palæologus, son of the elder Andronicus, vi., 490.
- Manuel, Roman general, 634 A.D., v., 434.
- Manufactures, Roman, i., 53.
- Manumission, limitation of, i., 321 *note*.
- Manus*, power of a husband over his wife, iv., 477 and *note*.
- Manuscripts, ancient, destruction of, by the Turks in Constantinople, vii., 194 *note*, 198 and *note*.
- Manzikert, *see* Malazkerd.
- Maogamalcha, fortress of, taken by Julian, ii., 498 *sq.*
- Maphriân, Jacobite ecclesiastic, v., 154.
- Maracci, Father, on the Koran, iii., 395; on almsgiving, v., 348 *note*; on Paradise and Hell of Mahomet, 351 *note*.
- Marasquin, vi., 387 *note*.
- Marble, varieties of, i., 175 and *note*.
- Marc Antony, removes the Pergamene library to Alexandria, iii., 199 *note*.
- Marcella, a Roman lady, iii., 249 *note*, 325; taught by Athanasius, iv., 61 *note*.
- Marcellinus, brother of Maximus, iii., 165.
- Marcellinus, Count, Chronicle of, iii., 267, 360 *note*; on treaty of Theodosius with Attila, 431 *note*; on the miracle of Tipasa, iv., 91.
- Marcellinus, Count of the Sacred Largesses, rebels against Constantius, ii., 233; embassy to Constantius, 235; death, 244 and *note*.
- Marcellinus [Marcellianus], son of Maximin, iii., 62 *sq.*
- Marcellinus, Roman general, rules in Dalmatia, iv., 25 *sq.*; acknowledges and assists Anthemius, 35; expels the Vandals from Sardinia, *ib.*; flight to Sicily, 37; death, *ib. note*.
- Marcellus, Bishop of Apamea, destroys the temples, iii., 197 *sq.*
- Marcellus, Bishop of Rome, ii., 220 and *note*.
- Marcellus Epirus, i., 81 *note*.
- Marcellus, general of the cavalry in Gaul, ii., 277 and *note*; son of, executed, 425.
- Marcellus, conspirator against Justinian, iv., 498.
- Marcellus of Ancyra, ii., 349 and *note*.
- Marcellus, centurion, ii., 120.
- March, Spanish, instituted by Charlemagne, v., 288.
- Marcia, concubine of Commodus, i., 92, 96; ii., 109.
- Marcian, conspires against Gallienus, i., 284.
- Marcian, Emperor, iii., 384; marries Pulcheria, 444; education and character, *ib. sq.* and *note*; his dream before the death of Attila, 475; acknowledges Avitus (?), iv., 9 and *note*; death, 29.
- Marcian or Black Forest, ii., 410 and *note*.
- Marcianopolis, siege of, by the Goths, i., 245 and *note*; camp of Valens at, iii., 61; revolt of the Goths at, 99; Attila defeats the Romans at, 425; position of, vi., 160.
- Marcilian fountain, fair at the, iv., 190.
- Marcion, ii., 49 and *note*.
- Marcionites, gnostic sect, ii., 14, 80; persecuted, 331; *phantastic system* of, v., 100; in Arabia, 332; remnant of, in fifth century, vi., 111.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Martel**, *see* Charles Martel.
- Martialis**, assassinates Caracalla, i., 138.
- Martial**, on Ravenna, iii., 260 *note*.
- Martin**, abbot, pilgrimage of, vi., 386 *note*; in Palestine, 389 *note*; pious robbery of, 412 *note*.
- Martin**, brings Slavonians and Huns to siege of Rome, iv., 322.
- Martin I.**, Pope, presided at the Lateran Council, v., 141; exile, *ib.* *note*, 259.
- Martin IV.**, Pope, excludes Michael VIII from Latin Church, vi., 474; French Pope, 476; made senator, vii., 232.
- Martin V.**, Pope, vii., 96, 99; election of, 290; medals of, *ib.* and *note*; restoration of Rome under, 323.
- Martin, St.**, Bishop of Tours, ii., 314 *note*; toleration of, iii., 154; miraculous gifts of, 155 and *note*; destroyed the pagan temples, 197 and *note*; founds monasticism in Gaul, iv., 61; life of, *ib.* *note*; miraculous shrine, 94, 108; miracles of, 131 *note*.
- Martin**, Vice-Præfect of Britain, ii., 244.
- Martina**, wife of Heraclius, v., 77; assumes the purple, 174; disgrace and exile, 176.
- Martinianus**, named Cæsar by Licinius, i., 439 and *note*.
- Martius, Galeotus**, on Matthias Corvinus, vii., 149 *note*.
- Martyropolis**, siege of, iv., 258; restored, v., 52.
- Martyrs**, primitive, legends of, ii., 96; honours paid to, 104; under Diocletian, 116; number of, 137; worship of, iii., 208 *sq.*; fabulous, 210.
- Maru**, city of Khorasan, destroyed by Zingis, iii., 427; tomb of Alp Arslan at, vi., 243.
- Marwān**, caliph, *see* Mervan.
- Mary**, an Egyptian captive, v., 377 *note*, 379.
- Mary**, daughter of Conrad of Montferrat, vi., 432.
- Mary**, Queen of Bulgaria, vi., 473.
- Mary, Virgin**, worship of, by the Latin Church, v., 152; Christians of St. Thomas object to image of, *ib.*; worshipped as a goddess by the Collyridians, 338; doctrine of immaculate conception of, borrowed from the Koran, 341 and *note*.
- Masada**, town near the Dead Sea mentioned by Pliny, iv., 59 *note*.
- Masagrei**, brother of Gildo, commands troops against Gildo, iii., 294 and *note*; his victory, 236; death, 237 and *note*.
- Mascou** on Roman law, iv., 460 *note*.
- Massagetæ**, invade Persia, ii., 231 and *note*; sail for Africa, iv., 276.
- Massoud (Masūd)**, son of Mahmūd the Gaznevide, vi., 230.
- Master-general**, of cavalry and infantry, *see* Magister militum.
- Master of the Offices**, *see* Magister officiorum.
- Maternus**, insurrection of, against Commodus, i., 89.
- Maternus, Julius Firmicus**, on idolatry, iii., 188 *note*; his Cato, 306 *note*.
- Mathaswintha**, iv., 330 *note*; mother of Germanus, 333 *note*.
- Mathematics**, study of, by the Arabs, vi., 29 and *note*.
- Mathilda**, Countess, vi., 261.
- Matthew of Montmorency**, vi., 379; at passage of the Bosphorus, 393; ambassador to the emperor, 397.
- Matthew, St.**, Hebrew gospel of, ii., 57 *note*; v., 98 *note*.
- Matthias Corvinus**, *see* Corvinus.
- Mattiaci**, i., 332 *note*.
- Mattiarii**, iii., 112.
- Ma Tuan-lin**, Chinese book, iv., 229 *note*.
- Maundrell**, his account of march of the Franks, vi., 308 *note*, *sq.* *note*.
- Maurenahar**, name for Transoxiana, *see* Mā-warā-l-nahr.
- Maurice**, Emperor, Strategikon of, iv., 346 *note*; commands the confederates, v., 19 and *note*; reign, 20 *sq.*; policy of, *ib.* *note*; Persian war, 21; receives embassy of Chosroes, 49; wars against the Avars, 57; his books on military art, 59 *note*; flight, 62; execution, 63; Life of, 68 *note*; pretended son of, 69 and *note*.
- Mauringania**, supposed seat of the Franks, i., 254 *note*.
- Mauritania Cæsariensis** and Tingitana, i., 25 and *note*, *sq.*; Genseric in, iii., 402; relinquished to the empire by Genseric, 409; ravaged by Genseric, iv., 23; *Gaditana*, 295 *note*; Tingitana, conquered by Akbah, v., 465.
- Mauritanian Sifti**, province of, iv., 298.
- Maurontius**, Duke of Marseilles, vi., 17 *note*.
- Maurus**, iii., 109 *note*; betrays pass of Succi to the Goths, 115.
- Mavia**, reign of, v., 321 *note*.

- Ma-warā-l-nahr**, Transoxiana, iii., 88 *note*; vii., 10 *note*.
- Maxentius**, son of Maximian, revolt of, i., 397; declared emperor at Rome, 402 *sq.* and *note*; excluded from the succession by Congress of Carnuntum, 405 *note*; opposes Galerius in Italy, 407; one of the six emperors, 408; tyranny of, 412 *sq.* and *note*; civil war with Constantine, 414 *sqq.*; leaves Rome, 421; defeated by Constantine at Saxa Rubra, 422; death, *ib.*; protected the Christians, ii., 130.
- Maximian and Galerius**, persecute the Christians, ii., 120.
- Maximian**, colleague of Diocletian, i., 328, 351; emperor, 352 and *note*; provinces ruled by, 354 and *note*; defeats the Bagaudæ, 355 *sq.*; wars of, 357 *sqq.*; triumph of, 376; abdicates, at Milan, 387; reassumes the purple, 409 and *note*; takes Arles, *ib.*; death, 410 and *note*.
- Maximianists**, Donatist sect, ii., 335.
- Maximilianus**, martyr, ii., 120.
- Maximin**, courtier of Constantinople, his embassy to Attila, iii., 434; account of, *ib.* *note*; interview with the ministers of Attila, 435; returns to Constantinople, 441.
- Maximin, Emperor**, origin and reign, i., 169 *sqq.*; character of, 172 and *note*; marches into Italy, 183; death, 185; portrait of, *ib.*
- Maximin (Galerius Valerius Maximinus)**, (Daza), Cæsar, i., 396; emperor, 408; divides the empire with Licinius, 411; allies himself with Maxentius, 412; takes Byzantium, 426; death, *ib.*; conduct towards Valeria, 427, *sq.*; towards the Christians, ii., 112, 132.
- Maximin, Præfect of Gaul**, iii., 20; tyranny of, 62.
- Maximinianopolis**, *see* Messinople.
- Maximus**, abbot, opponent of monotheism, v., 141 and *note*; protected by Præfect Gregory, 461 *note*.
- Maximus, Emperor with Balbinus**, i., 180; reign, *ib.* *sqq.*; death, 188.
- Maximus**, friend and rival of Gregory Nazianzen, iii., 145 and *note*.
- Maximus**, made emperor in Spain by Gerontius, iii., 340; death, 341.
- Maximus, Marius**, historian, iii., 300 and *note*.
- Maximus**, military Governor of Thrace with Lupicinus, iii., 97 *sq.*
- Maximus, Petronius**, ~~Senator~~, of the Anician family, iii., 428; ~~causes~~ the death of Valentinian, ~~and~~ character of, iv., 2; ~~epistle to~~ ~~Constantine~~ on, *ib.* *note*; made emperor, 3; marries Eudoxia, 4; death, *ib.*
- Maximus**, revolt of, in Britain, ~~iii., 157~~ *sq.*; invades Gaul, 157; ~~persecutes~~ the Priscillianists, 158 *sq.*; ~~invades~~ Italy, 161 *sqq.*; defeat and death, 165.
- Maximus, Roman Patrician**, iv., 428.
- Maximus, the Platonist**, ii., 440; at the court of Julian, 450 and *note*; at Julian's deathbed, 516; ~~iii., 428~~; charged with magic, 19 *note*; ~~and~~ physics of, v., 99 *note*.
- Mazanderân**, Princes of, v., 395 *note*.
- Mazara**, Euphemius lands at, vi., 99; physician of, at the court of Roger of Sicily, 192.
- Mazdak**, the Persian Archmagus, iv., 357 and *note*, *sq.*
- Mazdakites**, massacre of, iv., 360 *note*.
- Mead, Dr.**, on the plague, iv., 438 *note*, 439 *note*.
- Mebodes**, general of Choaroes I., iv., 359; death, *ib.*
- Mebodes**, general of Choaroes II., v., 50.
- Mecca**, v., 317 and *note*; Camba at, 328; besieged by Abraham, 333 *sq.*; flight of Mahomet from, 355; the kabla of prayer, 364; taken by Mahomet, 366 *sq.*; Christians excluded from, 368 and *note*; college at, 494 *note*; pillaged by Abu Taber, vi., 90; Malek Shah at, 245; acknowledges Saladin, 341; threatened by Reginald of Chatillon, 344.
- Medals**, *see* Coins.
- Media**, Persian province, invites Trajan, i., 6; vizier of, appointed by Nushirvan, iv., 360.
- Mediana**, Castle of, iii., 11.
- Medicine**, science of, among the Arabs, vi., 31.
- Medicis**, Cosmo of, vii., 128.
- Medicis**, Lorenzo of, learning of, vii., 128.
- Medina**, residence of Mahomet, v., 317 and *note*; under Scythian conqueror, 318; Mahomet made Prince of, 356 *sq.*; siege of, by Abu Sofyan, 364; death and burial of Mahomet at, 375; acknowledges Saladin, vi., 341.
- Mediomatrici**, iii., 58 *note*.
- Mediterranean Sea**, included in Roman Empire, i., 26.

- Megalasia, Roman festival, i., 89 *note*.
- Mekran, conquered by the Saracens, v., 413 *note*.
- Melania, St., iii., 296 *note*; generosity to the monks, iv., 69.
- Melanthius, iv., 496 and *note*.
- Melchites or royalists, eastern name for Catholics, v., 143 *sq.* and *note*; of Paphlagonia put Xenaias to death, 153; in Egypt, under the Arabs, 452, 491.
- Melotians, sect of, ii., 364 and *note*.
- Meletius, Bishop of Antioch, ii., 364 and *note*, 467 *note*; his death, iii., 149 and *note*; persuades Chrysostom to enter the Church, 375.
- Meliarabes, A., his History of Empire of Nicæa, vi., 455 *note*.
- Melisenda, daughter of Baldwin II., vi., 343.
- Melissenus, pretender, vi., 249.
- Melitene, restored by Justinian, iv., 296; battle of, v., 41; destruction of, 42 and *note*; won from the Saracens by Constantine V., 187 *note*.
- Mellobaudes, Count of the Domestics and King of the Franks, iii. [50 and *note*, 67, *see* Merobaudes], 107.
- Melo of Bari, vi., 175.
- Melos, Isle of, taken by the Venetians, vi., 416 *note*; alum mines in, vii., 75 *note*.
- Melphi, metropolis of the Normans in Apulia, vi., 178 *note*, *sq.*; synod of, 186.
- Membressa, in Africa, iv., 390 *note*.
- Memnon, Bishop of Ephesus, v., 114; degraded by the Oriental synod, 116.
- Memory, Temple of, at Carthage, iii., 339.
- Memphis, taken by the Saracens, v., 446 *sq.* and *notes*.
- Menander (comic poet), last plays of, vi., 106 *note*; "whom the gods love die young," quoted, vii., 283 *note*.
- Menander (historian), extracts of, iv., 357 *note*; embassies of, v., 39 *note*.
- Menbigz, bridge of, over the Euphrates, ii., 489 *note*.
- Menelaus, archer, ii., 240 *note*.
- Mengo, Timour, Khan of Kipzak, vii., 21.
- Menophilus, i., 184.
- Mensurius, Bishop of Carthage, ii., 130.
- Mentesia, lord of, submits to Orchan, vii., 26 *note*.
- Menta, destroyed by the Germans, iii., 270; pillaged by the Franks, 455; massacre of Jews at, vi., 274; story of its foundation, vii., 250 *note*.
- Mequinez, i., 26.
- Merab, in Arabia Felix, reservoir at, v., 316 and *note*.
- Meranes or Mirranes, Persian title, ii., 511, 514.
- Mercury, promontory of, *see* Cape Bona.
- Merdaza, son of Chosroes, v., 92.
- Merians, Russian tribe, vi., 151 *note*.
- Merida, defeat of Hermanric at, iii., 401; Theodoric at, iv., 12; siege of, 93; taken by the Saracens, v., 479 *sq.*
- Merioneth, archers of, iv., 156.
- Merivale, on the population of Roman Empire, i., 42 *note*, 55 *note*.
- Mermeroes, Persian general in the Lasic war, iv., 381.
- Merobaudes, pagan of the fifth century, panegyric of Aetius, iii., 448 *note*.
- Merobaudes, saves Romanus from justice, iii., 50 and *note*; with Equitius elevates Valentinian II., 67; death, 138.
- Meroliac, castle, taken by Theodoric, iv., 135; position of, *id.* *note*.
- Merou, revolts from Yezdegerd, v., 412; taken by Zingis, vii., 9.
- Meroveus, younger son of Clodion, seeks protection of Rome, iii., 455 and *note*.
- Merovingian Kings of the Franks, iii., 453 and *note*; coinage of, iv., 120 and *note*; laws of, 122 *sqq.*; domains of, 130; palaces of, *id.*; survival in Aquitaine, v., 287; last kings, vi., 12 *sq.*
- Merseburg, castle of, vi., 145 and *note*.
- Mervan, last Omayyad caliph, vi., 20 and *note*; death at Busiris, 21.
- Merv-er-Rüd, Yezdegerd at, v., 409 *note*; taken by the Saracens, *id.*
- Merv, taken by the Saracens, v., 409 *note*.
- Mesebroch, name for Merseburg, vi., 275 *note*.
- Mesembria, battle of, vi., 134 *note*, town of, captured by Krum, *id.*; taken by the Turks, vii., 171.
- Mesene, Island of, siege of, i., 204 *note*.
- Mesbed Ali, city of, v., 388 *note*.
- Meshed Hosein, city of, v., 388 *note*.
- Mesopotamia, subdued by Trajan, i., 6; resigned by Hadrian, 7; ravaged by Carus, 340; Galerius defeated in,

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- at, 158; taken by Attila, 468; by the Goths, iv., 327; destroyed, 328 and *note*; taken by Alboin, v., 11; by Frederic I., 304; rebuilt by Manuel, vi., 215.
- Miles, i., 12 *note*.
- Milesians, iii., 40 *note*.
- Military force of the Roman emperors, i., 9 *sq.*; whole amount of, 18.
- Military officers, ii., 174.
- Millennium, doctrine of the, ii., 23 *sq.* and *notes*.
- Millet, culture of, iv., 346 and *note*.
- Milo, trial of, iv., 507 *sq.*
- Milosh Obilic, Servian who stabbed Murad Sultan, vii., 33 *note*.
- Milton, ii., 4 *note*; iv., 434 and *note*.
- Milvian Bridge, i., 114 *note*; Vitiges at, iv., 312 and *note*.
- Mina, valley of, v., 329; Feast of Victims in, 347 *note*.
- Mincius, iii., 472.
- Minden, bishopric of, v., 288.
- Mineo, taken by the Saracens, vi., 99 *note*.
- Minervina, wife of Constantine, ii., 205 and *note*.
- Mines, use of, at siege of Constantinople, vii., 179 and *note*.
- Ming, Chinese dynasty of, vii., 20 *note*, 66.
- Mingrelia, *see* Lazica.
- Minorbino, a count of, vii., 275.
- Minorca, relics of St. Stephen at, iii., 213 *note*.
- Minority, Roman law distinguished two kinds, iii., 226 *note*.
- Mint, revolt of workers in, i., 313 *sq.*
- Minucius, Felix, ii., 75 *note*.
- Mirabilia Romæ*, vii., 304 *note*.
- Miracles of the Primitive Church, ii., 28 *sq.*; pagan writers omit to notice, 68; iii., 210 and *notes*; of the monks, iv., 74 *sq.*; of Mahomet, v., 344.
- Miran, Shah, son of Timour, vii., 71 *note*.
- Mirchond, his History of the East, v., 488 and *note*.
- Mirrantes of Persia, iv., 274 and *note*.
- Mirtschea the Great, Prince of Walachia, at battle of Nicopolis, vii., 35 *note*.
- Mirza Mehemmed Sultan, grandson of Bajazet, vii., 60.
- Miscreants, origin of word, vi., 296 and *note*.
- Misenum, a naval station, i., 18; restored by Majorian, iv., 22; promontory of, 52.
- Misitheus, minister of Gordian, i., 190 and *note*.
- Misithra, Despotat of, province of the empire in fourteenth century, vi., 502 *note*.
- Misnah, ii., 452.
- Misopogon, Julian's, ii., 419, 485 and *notes*.
- Misrah, name of Memphis, v., 447.
- Missionaries, Christian, ii., 57; amongst the Scythians, iii., 428 and *note*.
- Missorium, gold dish belonging to Totismund, King of the Goths, iii., 336.
- Mistriannus, ambassador of Licinius, i., 431.
- Mithras, i., 200; ii., 118 *note*; birthday of, iii., 215 *note*.
- Mithreum, iii., 200; gold bust of, 255 *note*.
- Mithridates, i., 36; subdues Colchos, iv., 375.
- Moswiya, caliph, subdues Persia and Yemen, v., 388; attempt on his life, *ib.*; reign, *ib.* *sq.*; sends forces to Africa, 463; his peace with the emperor, vi., 4.
- Moswiya, Ibn Hudaii, general of the Caliph Moswiyah, v., 464 and *note*.
- Mocilus, beacon of, v., 200 *note*.
- Moctadi (Muktadi), caliph, marries the daughter of Malek Shah, vi., 247.
- Moctador (Muktadir), caliph, vi., 24; defeated by the Carmathians, 50.
- Modain, Al, winter residence of the Sassanids, ii., 502 *sq.*; loyal to Chosroes, v., 50; *see* Ctesiphon.
- Modar, a Gothic prince, iii., 125.
- Modena and Parma, settlement of the Taifalæ in, iii., 109 and *note*; Attila at (?), 469; reduced by the Greeks, v., 22; threatened by the Hungarians, vi., 143 *note*.
- Moderator, name used by the Pope of the Greek emperor, vii., 85 and *note*.
- Modestinus, ii., 73 *note*; authority of, in jurisprudence, iv., 461.
- Mœotis, Lake, i., 323.
- Moesia, i., 22 *sq.*; legions of, elect Marinus, 237; invaded by the Goths, 245; regained by Claudius, 290; revolt of the Goths in, iii., 99 *sq.*; Duke of, *see* Theodosius the Great; Theodoric in, iv., 175; *secunda*, 250 *note*.
- Moeraldowlat (Muiss ad-dawla), vi., 56.
- Moes, Fatimite caliph, v., 393.
- Mogan, plains of, Heraclius in, v., 82 and *note*.

Moguls, great, i., 209 *note*; successors of Timour, vii., 71.

Moguls, *see* Mongols.

Moguntiacum (Mentz), taken by the Alemanni, iii., 34 and *note*.

Mohadi or Mahdi, Abbasside caliph, sends expedition to the Thracian Bosphorus, vi., 34.

Mohagerians, or fugitives of Mecca, v., 357 [Al-Muhajirun].

Mohammad, *see* also Mahomet.

Mohammad-al-Ikshid, founder of the Ikshidid dynasty, vi., 54 *note*.

Mohammad I., Aghlabid caliph, vi., 42 *note*.

Mohammad, Ibn Kasim, conquests beyond the Indus, v., 413 *note*.

Mohammad, Mameluke, Sultan, A.D. 1311-1341, vi., 362 *note*.

Mohammad, son of Abbas, vi., 19.

Mohammad, son of Abubekr, v., 412 *note*.

Mohammad, son of Ismail, vi., 49 *note*.

Mohammad, Sultan of Carizme iii., 87 *note*; defeated by Zingis Khan, vii., 8; death, 9.

Mohtadi (Muhtadi), caliph, vi., 48 *note*.

Mokawkas, an Egyptian noble, v., 448 and *note*, 450.

Moks, slave of the Topa princes, iii., 261.

Mola, surrendered to the Saracens, v., 481.

Moldavia, conquest of, by Bajazet, vii., 34 and *note*.

Molinists, iii., 407 *note*.

Momyllus, Greek corruption of Romulus, iv., 52.

Monachus, George, iv., 242 *note*.

Monaldeschi, L., his Diary, vii., 257 *note*, 300.

Monarchianism, heresy of, ii., 347 *note*.

Monarchy, i., 59.

Monasticism, iv., 57 *sq.*; in Egypt, 59; in Rome, 60; in Palestine, 61; in Gaul, *ib.*; causes of the progress of, 62 *sq.*

Moncada, de, his History of the Catalans, vi., 483 *note*.

Mondars, dynasty of, v., 403 and *note*.

Money, use and value of, i., 220.

Mongols or Moguls, their connection with the Tatars, iii., 71 *note*; barbarous maxims of war, 426 *sq.* and *notes*; conquests of, under Zingis, vii., 1-22; derivation of name, 3 *note*; division of empire of the, 26.

Mongous, iii., 82 and *note*.

Monks, their legends, ii., 45; *see* also 379; iv., 59; serve in the army, iii., 27; destroy pagans, 198; origin of, iv., 57 *sq.*; system of, 59 *sq.*; obedience, 60; dress and habitations, 65 *sq.*; 67 *sq.*; labour, 68 *sq.*; riches, 69; solitude, 70; visions of, 71; *see* also classes of, 72; miracles and wonders of, 74 *sq.*; suppressed by Constantine V., v., 254 *sq.*; attitude of the Saracens to, 416; lay-monks, *see* *note*.

Monomachus, meaning of the title, ii., 219 and *note*.

Monophysite doctrine, v., 122; defined by Severus, 153.

Monophysites, pillage Jerusalem, v., 127; massacre of, in Persia, 247.

Monopolies, under Justinian, iv., 291.

Monothelite controversy, v., 249 *sq.*; Greek patriarch a Monothelite, 292 *note*.

Monoxyla, or canoes, vi., 154.

Monreal, *see* Montreal (Chevalier).

Monstrelet, on siege of Constantinople, vii., 163 *note*.

Montaigne, i., 268 *note*.

Montanists, ii., 19 *note*; excommunicated, 52 *note*; on martyrdom, 50; persecution of, by Constantine, 59; in Phrygia, v., 134 and *note*.

Montasser, caliph [Muntadir], vi., 47 *sq.*

Monte Maggiore, battle of, between Normans and Greeks, vi., 178 *note*.

Monte Majella, vii., 277 *note*.

Monte Peloso, Norman victory at, vi., 178 *note*.

Montesquieu, de, i., 192; his Sylla and Eucrates, 183 *note*; on Roman military government, 192; on the censorship, 247 *note*; on taxation, ii., 190 and *note*; criticised by Raynal, 391 *note*; on decline of the empire, 391; on English laws, 495; on revolutions of Asia, iii., 75 *note*; on the Goths, 132 *note*; on Armorica, 353 *note*; proposed history of Theodoric, iv., 180 *note*; on secret history of Procopius, 211 *note*; on Justinian, 250 *note*; on crime, 506 and *note*; on climate, vii., 210 *note*; on a passage of Florus, 236 *note*.

Montfaucon, Father, edition of St. Chrysostom, iii., 358 *note*, 374 *note*; on the Coliseum, vii., 321 *note*; his visits to antiquities of Rome, 304 *note*.

- Montferrat, Marquis of, sends his daughter to Constantinople, vii., 97.
- Montius, quaestor of the palace, ii., 250 and *note*, 27.
- Montreal (beyond Jordan), lordship of, vi., 318 *note*.
- Montreal, Chevalier, Italian freebooter, vii., 279 and *note*.
- Monuments, Roman, i., 43 *sqq.*
- Monza, Palace of, v., 27 *note*.
- Moors and Parthians, instructors of Commodus, i., 93.
- Moors, wars of Antoninus against the, i., 8 *note*; description of the, iii., 51 and *note*; preserved the Mahometan religion, 207 *note*; ally themselves with the Vandals, 402 and *note*; Gelimer among the, iv., 291 and *note*; origin and manners of, 296 and *note*; revolt from Justinian, 297; defeat of, 298; rebellion of, 392 *sq.*; conversion of, to Islam, v., 471.
- Mopsucrene, near Tarsus, death of Constantine at, ii., 415.
- Mopuestia, in Cilicia, Ætius at, ii., 374 *note*; siege of, by Andronicus, v., 233; by Phocas and Zimisces, vi., 58; taken by the crusaders, 298; restored to the empire, 324; name of, *ib. note*.
- Moravia, i., 235 *note*.
- Mordvans, religion of the, vii., 137 *note*.
- Mores, the, *see* Peloponnesus.
- Morging cup, wedding gift of the Lombards, iii., 336 *note*.
- Morocco, i., 26.
- Morosini, Patriarch of Constantinople, vi., 415 and *note*.
- Morosi, on Greek dialects in Italy, vii., 118 *note*.
- Morrah, district of, in fourteenth century, vi., 502 *note*.
- Mortgages, Roman laws concerning, iv., 495.
- Mortmain, in Empire of Romania, vi., 499.
- Moscow, province of, vi., 150; city of, destroyed by Mongols, vii., 15 and *note*; burnt, A.D., 1382, 48 *note*; threatened by Timour, 49; taken by Toctamish, *ib. note*.
- Moseilama, a false Arabian prophet, v., 398 and *note*; death, 399.
- Moselle, iii., 33 and *note*.
- Moses of Chorene, ii., 227; Persian war described by, iii., 54 *note*; adventures of Para, 57 *note*; history of Armenia, 391 *note*.
- Moses, religion of, ii., 4 *sqq.*; did not teach immortality, 21; in the Koran, v., 340; laws of, compared with those of Mahomet, 359.
- Mosheim on Gnosticism, ii., 13 *note*, 14 *note*; v., 97 *note*; on the Paulicians, vi., 111 *note*; on Arnold of Brescia, vii., 219 *note*.
- Moslemah, brother of Caliph Soliman, besieges Constantinople, vi., 6 *sqq.*; his retreat, 9.
- Moslim, or Musulman, meaning of, v., 337 *note*.
- Mosque founded at Constantinople, vi., 329.
- Mostali, Caliph of Egypt, imprisons deputies of the crusaders, vi., 307.
- Mostarabes, *see* Mozarabes.
- Mostasem [Mustasim], last of the Abbaside caliphs, vi., 44 and *note*; death, 47; brings Turks into Bagdad, *ib.*; put to death by Holagou, vii., 14.
- Mosthadi (Mustadi), caliph of Bagdad, his death, vi., 23 *note*; acknowledged in Egypt, 399.
- Mosul, Heraclius, at, v., 89 and *note*.
- Motadbed (Mutadid), caliph, v., 492 and *note*.
- Motassem (Mutasim), caliph, "Octonary," war with Theophilus, vi., 44 *sqq.*
- Motawakkel (Mutawakkil), caliph, edicts of, v., 492 *note*; death of, vi., 47.
- Motas, caliph, vi., 48 *note*.
- Moulinet, metallic history of, vi., 290 *note*.
- Moultan, conquest of, by grandson of Timour, vii., 51.
- Mountain, old man of the, vii., 13.
- Mourzoufle, deposes Isaac Angelus, vi., 402; flight, 405; death, 419.
- Mousa, *see* also Mūsā.
- Mousa, son of Bajazet, King of Anatolia, vii., 61; flight of, and defeat by Mahomet, 73; death, 74.
- Mousa Cassem, descendant of Ali, v., 393 *note*.
- Moxoene, province of, i., 375 and *note*.
- Moyle, Mr., i., 197 *note*; on Roman religious colleges, iii., 189 *note*.
- Mozarabes of Spain and Africa, v., 490 and *note*.
- Mucaper, assassinates Aurelian, i., 316.
- Mucii, family of, iv., 456.
- Muerin (crier), vii., 199.
- Mugello, battle of, iv., 395 and *note*.
- Mugnier on union of Greek and Latin churches, vii., 100 *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Narbonne (Narona) in Illyricum, i., 337 *note*.
- Narbonne, province of, i., 20; First and Second Narbonnese, two of the seven provinces, iii., 356 *note*.
- Nardini, topographer, vii., 325 *note*.
- Narisci, i., 234 and *note*.
- Narni, Galerius at, i., 405; saved from Alaric, iii., 288; rock of, iv., 312; taken by Belisarius, 323.
- Narses, King of Persia, war with Rome, i., 369 and *note*; flight, 371; receives the ambassadors of the emperors in Media, 373; treaty with Rome, 374.
- Narses, Persian ambassador of Sapor, ii., 265.
- Narses, Persian general of the Emperor Maurice, restores Chosroes, v., 50 and *note*; revolt and death of, 69.
- Narses, the eunuch, iv., 325; opposes Belisarius, 326 *sq.*; recall of, 327; character and expedition of, 412; titles of, *ib. note*; marches from Ravenna, 414; defeats Totila, 415; takes Rome, 416 *sq.*; his disaffection and death, v., 9 *sq.*
- Narshaki of Bokhara on the conquest of Transoxiana, v., 413 *note*.
- Nasirius, Codex, sacred book of the Christians of St. John.
- Nasr ibn Ahmad, founder of Samānid dynasty, vi., 53 *note*.
- Natanleod opposes Cerdic, iv., 150 *note*.
- Nations, or Ditch, battle of the, v., 364.
- Naulobatus, chief of the Heruli, i., 266.
- Navigation, Roman, i., 51; iii., 359 and *note*; in fourteenth century, vii., 266 *note*.
- Navy, Roman, i., 17, 18; stations of, under Augustus, *ib.*; amount of, *ib.*; of the Greek emperors, vi., 91 *sq.*
- Naxos, Island of, taken by the Venetians, vi., 416 *note*.
- Nazarene church, at Jerusalem, ii., 8.
- Nazario, Church of S., and S. Celso, at Ravenna, Mausoleum of Placidia, iii., 477.
- Nazarius, oration of, i., 433 *note*; account of Constantine's dream, ii., 304 and *note*.
- Nazianzus, Church of, ii., 478 *note*; site of, iii., 144 and *note*.
- Neapolis, *see* Sichem.
- Nebridius, prætorian præfect in Gaul, quaestor of the palace, ii., 250 *note*, 409 and *note*.
- Necho, King of Egypt, constructs canal, v., 456 *note*.
- Nectarius, successor of Gregory at Constantinople, iii., 190 and *note*, 374.
- Neged, district of Arabia, v., 314.
- Negra, city of Yemen, iv., 385 and *note*.
- Negroes, African, iii., 52 and *note*.
- Negus of Abyssinia, iv., 385, 386.
- Nehavend, battle of, v., 408, 409 *note*.
- Neisabour, *see* Nishabur.
- Nemausus, taken by the Saracens, vi., 13 *note*.
- Nemesianus, i., 311 *note*, 347 *note*.
- Nennius, iv., 144.
- Neo-Cæsarea, retreat of St. Basil near, iv., 61 *note*.
- Neopatas, in Thessaly, vi., 485.
- Neo-Platonists, i., 392; ii., 119; suppressed at Athens, iv., 265 *sq.*
- Nepos, Julius, Emperor of the West, iv., 46; makes Ecdicius patrician, *ib. note*; flight and death, 47; sends Epiphanius to the Visigoths, *ib. note*.
- Nepotian, nephew of Constantine, ii., 242.
- Nepotianus (consul), i., 401 *note*; ii., 206.
- Nepthalites (Ephthalites), or White Huns, *see* Euthalites.
- Nero, Emperor, i., 73, 92, 94 *note*; conspiracy against, 71; character of, 79; desires to abolish taxes, 164; said to have burned Rome, ii., 84 *sq.*; introduces musical contest at Olympia, vii., 257 *note*; fire in his reign, 306 and *note*.
- Nerva, Emperor, i., 74; administration of, ii., 92.
- Neshri, Ottoman historian, vii., 61 *note*.
- Nestor, Russian chronicle ascribed to, vi., 148 *note*.
- Nestorian heresy, suppressed by Pulcheria, iii., 385; controversy in the East, iv., 97.
- Nestorians, opinions of the, v., 145 *sq.*; school of, at Edessa closed, 147; missions of the, in Tartary, India, China, 148; under the caliphs, 150; in Transoxiana, 414 *note*; friendly to the Mahometan government, 491.
- Nestorius, Patriarch of Constantinople, v., 105, 110 *sq.*; heresy of, 111; condemned by the Council of Ephesus, 115; exile of, 119; death, 120.
- Netad, battle of the, iii., 475; position of, *ib. note*.
- Neumann, C., on the empire in the eleventh century, v., 222 *note*.
- Neuss, fortified by Julian, ii., 284 *note*; siege of, vii., 141 *note*.

- Nevers**, ii., 197 and *note*.
- Nevigastes**, general of Honorius, iii., 273.
- Nevitta**, general of Julian's cavalry, ii., 410; defends pass of Succo, 412, 423; consul, 426; in Mesopotamia, 492; at Maogamaloba, 498; faction of, after death of Julian, 517.
- Newstadt**, in Austria, defended by the Franks against the Tartars, vii., 17.
- Newton**, Sir Isaac, iv., 434; on corruption of the New Testament text, v., 104 *note*; chronological rule of, 242.
- Neyss (Neisse)**, city in Silesia, v., 57.
- Nicaea**, *see* Nice.
- Nice**, in Bithynia, gymnasium and theatre at, i., 44 *note*; burnt by the Goths, 264; council of, ii., 328; emperor elected at, iii., 8; its canons, concerning synods, 327 *note*; synod at, v., 123, A.D. 451; reduced by Andronicus, 240; second council favours image worship, 276; metropolis of the Obsequian theme, vi., 6 *note*; pillaged by the Paulicians, 119; Seljuk conquest of, 249 and *note*; capital of Roum, 250; crusaders near, 276; besieged by the crusaders, 295; taken by Alexius Comnenus, *ib.*; Conrad at, 329 *note*; Theodore Lascaris at, 420; empire of, *ib.*; panic of citizens of, caused by the Tartars, vii., 22; taken by the Turks, 25 and *note*; Mirza Mehemmed at, 60.
- Nicephorium**, or Callinicum, town of, Julian at, ii., 491; vi., 35 *note*; pillaged by the Carmathians, 50.
- Nicephorus I.**, Emperor of Constantinople, v., 7 *note*; character of, 192; financial administration of, *ib.* *note*; embassy of, to Charlemagne, 294; to Haroun al Rashid, vi., 35; clemency to the Paulicians, 117; slain by the Bulgarians, 133; expedition against the Bulgarians, 158 *note*; treaty of, with Bulgaria, 159 *note*; death of, *ib.*
- Nicephorus II.**, Phocas, Emperor of Constantinople, character of, v., 212 and *note*; death, 213, 214; fortifies Bagras, 300 *note*; reduced Crete, vi., 57; Eastern conquests, 58.
- Nicephorus III.**, Botaniates, Emperor of Constantinople, revolt of, v., 224; interview with Alexius, 225; revolt of, vi., 249.
- Nicephorus Eremmydes**, his autobiography, vi., 455 *note*; his quarrel with Vataces, 457 *note*.
- Nicephorus Bryennius**, revolts i., 224; vi., 249; vanquished, history of, vi., 235 *note*.
- Nicephorus Callistus**, Greek of the fourteenth century, account of death of Theodosius, iii., 44 = *note*.
- Nicephorus**, son of Constantine Dromynus, v., 188 *et seq.*
- Nicephorus Gregoras**, historian, *see note*, 489 and *note*, 503 *note*; *see* **Quintus**, 507 *note*; on **Caesar** vii., 29 *note*, 134 *note*.
- Nicephorus Melissenus**, rebelled i., 225.
- Nicephorus**, son of Michael II. of Egypt, vi., 458 *note*.
- Nicephorus**, patriarch and chronicler, v., 192 *note*; abridgment of, *see note*.
- Nicephorus Xiphias**, victory of, over Bulgarians, vi., 136 *note*.
- Nicetas**, son of Constantine V., v., 12.
- Nicetas**, son of Gregory, lieutenant of Maurice, v., 66; marries daughter of Heraclius, 68.
- Nicetas**, a Greek general in tenth century, vii., 185 *note*.
- Nicetas Choniates**, historian, vi., 11 *note*; defends Philippopolis against the Franks, 327 *note*; on **Isaac Angelus**, 374 *note*, 402; on flight of the Greeks, 404; saved by a Venetian merchant, 406 and *note*; narrative of, compared to Villehardouin, 407; misfortunes of, 408; Ms. of, in Oxford, 410.
- Nicetas Bishop of Trèves**, v.
- Nicholas Specialis**, Sicilian, 478 *note*.
- Nicholas**, Cardinal, corrects text of the Latin Bible, iv., 90 *note*.
- Nicholas I.**, Pope, his quarrel with Photius, vi., 369.
- Nicholas II.**, Pope, makes Robert Guiscard duke of Apulia, vi., 151.
- Nicholas III.**, Marquis of Este, vii., 12 and *note*.
- Nicholas III.**, Pope, vi., 476; amity of, to Charles of Anjou, vii., 232; *see* Bull, *ib.* *note*.
- Nicholas IV.**, Pope, vii., 251; [Urban] 252; his policy, 253 and *note*.
- Nicholas V.**, Pope, vii., 127, 206; founds Vatican library, 123; *see* to assist the Greek emperor, 171; recognised by Greek Church, 173, 290; Rome restored under, 272.
- Nicholas Quondam Venetian**, vi., 436.
- Nicodemus**, body of, exhumed, iii., 21.

- Nicolaus Mysticus, Patriarch of Constantinople**, v., 207 and *note*; vi., 135 *note*.
- Nicolo, S. di Lido, Island of**, crusaders imprisoned by the Venetians in, vi., 386 *note*.
- Nicomedia, forum and aqueduct at**, i., 44 *note*; taken by the Goths, 263, 264; residence of Maximian and Diocletian, 378; abdication of Diocletian, 387; Church of, burnt, ii., 122; Palace of, burnt, 124; earthquake at, 361; pillaged by the Paulicians, vi., 119; Seljuk conquest of, 249; crusaders at, 294; territory of, invaded by Othman, vii., 24.
- Nicon, St., Life of**, vi., 57 *note*.
- Nicopolis, siege of**, i., 246 and *note*; restored by Julian, ii., 428; capitulated to the Goths, iii., 125 *note*; property of Paula, 293 and *note*; Goths at, iv., 410; battle of, between Turks and European allies, vii., 35.
- Nicosia, Cathedral of**, vi., 318 *note*.
- Niebuhr, his work on Arabia**, v., 384 *note*; his visit to Meshed Ali, 392 *note*, 393 *note*.
- Niger Pescennius, governor of Syria**, *see* Pescennius.
- Nika riots at Constantinople**, iv., 222 *sq.*; suppressed, 226.
- Nile, statue of, found at Rome**, vii., 322.
- Nile, navigation of the**, i., 336; iii., 359 *note*; rising of the, v., 447 and *note*.
- Nilus, Patriarch**, vii., 39 *note*.
- Nine, reverence of the Tartars for mysterious number**, vii., 47 *note*.
- Nineveh, battle of**, v., 89; circumference of, *ib.* *note*.
- Nini, battle of the river**, v., 470 and *note*.
- Ninus, date**, i., 195 *note*.
- Nishapur, royal city of the Seljuks**, vi., 232; palace at, 233; taken by Zingis, iii., 427; vii., 9.
- Nisapur, *see* Nishapur.**
- Nisavi, secretary of Sultan Gelaleddin**, vii., 5 *note*.
- Nisibis, i.**, 191 *note*; capture of, by Avidius Cassius, 206 *note*; besieged by Sapor, 269; meeting of the emperors at, 372, 374; siege of, by Sapor, ii., 229; ceded by Jovian, 521; taken by Zimisce, vi., 60.
- Nitria, Desert of**, iii., 28; tall brothers of, 377 *note*; anachorets of, iv., 59.
- Nitzob, battle of**, vii., 142.
- Nivernois, Duke of; on political system of Clovis**, iv., 102 *note*.
- Nizam (al-Mulk), visir**, vi., 244; crimes and dismissal of, 246.
- Noah, a prophet, his place in the Koran**, v., 340; seven precepts of, *ib.* *note*.
- Nobadae or Nubians, i.**, 364; conversion of, v., 164 and *note*.
- Nobilissimus, title of**, ii., 212 and *note*.
- Nobles, Roman, wealth of the**, iii., 292 *sq.* and *notes*; manners of, 294 and *notes*; character of, by Ammianus Marcellinus, 295 *sq.* and *note*.
- Nocera, in Apulia, Saracen colony at**, vi., 222.
- Noga, Mongal chief**, vii., 21.
- Nogaret, William of, minister of Philip the Fair**, vii., 243.
- Nogent, near Soissons, battle of**, iv., 103 *note*.
- Nohordates (Nohordares), ii.**, 514.
- Nola, retreat of Paulinus**, iii., 250 *note*, 330; destroyed by Alaric, 331.
- Nolhac, de. P.**, vii., 118 *note*.
- Nolli, plan of Rome by**, vii., 325 *note*.
- Nomius, ambassador of Theodosius to Attila**, iii., 443.
- Nonnosus, ambassador of Justinian**, iv., 285 *note*; his interview with the Negus, 386.
- Noodt, treatise on Aquilian law**, iv., 496 *note*, 506 *note*.
- Noricum, i.**, 22.
- Normans or Northmen, vi.**, 148; invade Italy, 173; in Sicily, 176; in Apulia, 178; Italian conquests, 188; conquest of Sicily, 191; extinction of, 223; serve under Romanus, 238.
- Northern Sea (Baikal), iii.**, 82.
- Notaras, Lucas, Great Duke**, vii., 157, 177; quarrels with Giustiniani, 186; his fate, 199 *sq.*
- Notaris, official despatch**, i., 285 *note*.
- Notitia Dignitatum, ii.**, 158 and *note*, 179; Urbis Romae, iii., 191 *note*; Imperii, 234 *note*; of Ancient Gaul, by De Valois and D'Anville, iii., 352 *note*; cities mentioned in, i., 19 *note*.
- Noureddin (Nur-ad-Din), Sultan of Aleppo**, v., 236; war with Christians vi., 335 *sq.*; conquests in Egypt, 338 *sq.*; death of, 341.
- Novari, v.**, 459 *note*.
- Novatians, excommunicated**, ii., 52 *note*; persecuted, 331; exempted from penalties, 332 and *note*; of Constantinople, 386.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Olympiodorus, account of Rome, iii., 392 *sq.*
- Olympius, the philosopher, defends paganism, iii., 200 and *note*.
- Olympius of Tralles, iv., 243.
- Olympius, an officer of the palace, under Honorius plots against Stilicho, iii., 278 *sq.*; dismissed the ambassadors of Alaric, 314; death, *ib.*
- Olympus, deities of, ii., 435.
- Oman, district of Arabia, v., 314.
- Omar I., caliph [Omar ibn al-Khattab], mosque of, at Jerusalem, ii., 458; conversion to Mahometanism, v., 353; acknowledges Abubeker, 382; reign and death, 383; virtues of, 400; conquests, 401 *sq.*; founds Bassora, 406; interview with Harmosan at Jerusalem, 435 *sq.*; mosque of, 436 and *note*; Mahomet's opinion of, 442 *note*; destroys library at Alexandria, and Persian books, 453 *sq. note*; mosque of, at Jerusalem, vi., 346.
- Omar II., caliph, persecutes the Christians, v., 498 *note*; vi., 8 and *note*.
- Omayya, *see* Ommiyah.
- Ommiyah, family of, v., 355; support Omayya, 387; Syria under the, 442; revolt of Arabia and Persia from, vi., 18 *sqq.*; fall of, 21.
- Omortag, *see* Giom Omortag.
- Onagri, warlike engines, iv., 315 and *note*.
- Onegesius, favourite of Attila, iii., 428 *sq.*; wife of, receives Attila, 439.
- Onulph, brother of Odoacer, iv., 49.
- Opadna, iv., 258 *note*.
- Ophites, ii., 12.
- Opilio, delator of Boethius, iv., 201 *note*.
- Opima, iii., 129 *note*.
- Opis, ii., 509.
- Oppas, Archbishop of Toledo, v., 473, 479 *note*.
- Oppian law, iv., 478 *note*.
- Opsikian Theme, mutiny of, v., 184; besiege Anastasius, vi., 6 *note*.
- Opsopoeus, iv., 307 *note*.
- Optatianus, panegyric of, i., 435 *note*; ii., 208.
- Optatus, brother-in-law of Constantine, ii., 206; his death, 223.
- Optatus of Milevis, ii., 387 *note*.
- Ora or Opta, given by Theodemir to the Saracens, v., 481.
- Oracles, ii., 118 and *note*; abolished, 392.
- Orang outang, iii., 51 *note*.
- Orchan, son of the Caliph Othman, conquers Prusa, vii., 24; conquests of, 25 *sqq.*; marries daughter of Cantacuzene, 29; death, 31.
- Orchoe, in Assyria, ii., 495 *note*.
- Orda, grandson of Zingis, vii., 48 *note*.
- Ordeals, trial by, abolished by Michael VIII., vi., 468; compared with judicial combat, 463 *note*.
- Ordination of clergy, ii., 318 and *note*.
- Orestes, prefect of Egypt, persecuted by Cyril, v., 109.
- Orestes, Roman patrician, iv., 403.
- Orestes the patrician, ambassador of Attila, iii., 434 *sq.*; at Constantinople, 443; deposes Nepos, iv., 47; account of, *ib. sq.*; refuses to divide Italy, 48; put to death by Odoacer, 49.
- Orhivuela, given by Theodemir to the Saracens, v., 481.
- Oribasius, physician of Julian, ii., 403 *note*.
- Origen, ii., 14 *note*, 37; account of the number of Christians, 65; of the martyrs, 98; tries to convert Mamea, 111; opinions of, v., 137 and *note*.
- Origenism, controversy in Egypt concerning, iii., 377.
- Orlando (Rutland or Rolando), v., 285 *note*.
- Orleans, Duke of, brother of Charles VI. of France, vii., 92.
- Orleans, colony of Alani at, iii., 449 and *note*; besieged by Attila, 459; siege of, raised, 461; Ægidius defeats Ricimer at, iv., 38.
- Ormuzd, principle of good, i., 199 and *note*.
- Ormuz, city of, vii., 47 and *note*.
- Orosius, i., 256; iii., 265; in Palestine, 333 and *note*; history of Africa, 338 *note*; on an inundation of Rome, vii., 307 *note*.
- Orpheus, Christian forgery of, ii., 69 and *note*.
- Orsini, *see* Ursini.
- Ortobogral, father of the Caliph Othman, vii., 23.
- Ortok, hereditary Emir of Jerusalem, vi., 257.
- Ortokides, expulsion of the, vi., 257 *note*.
- Ortous, territory of, iii., 87.
- Orvieto, taken by Belisarius, iv., 327; bishop of, vicar of pope, vii., 262, 265, 270.
- Osimo (Auximum), taken by Belisarius, iv., 327, 330 and *note*.

- Osiris, Egyptian deity, iii., 199 and *note*.
 Osisimi, tribe of, iv., 150.
 Osius, Bishop of Cordova, ii., 314 *note*, 333; presided at Council of Nice, 356; banishment, 373 *sq.* and *note*.
 Oskold, Slav hero, vi., 149 *note*.
 Osnaburgh, bishopric of, v., 288.
 Osrhoene, conquered by Trajan, i., 6; by Severus and Caracalla, 207.
 Osset, or Julia Constantia, in Bœtica, font at, iv., 94 and *note*.
 Ossian's poems, i., 129 and *note*; ii., 64 *note*.
 Ostia, port of, i., 51; taken by Alaric, iii., 317; description of, *ib.* *note*; an episcopal city, 318 *note*; held by the Goths, iv., 401 *note*; Cæsarius at, vi., 42; bishops of, their part in imperial coronations, vii., 211 *note*; in the twelfth century, 237.
 Ostius, L., first parricide in Rome, iv., 498 *note*.
 Ostrogoths, *see* under Goths.
 Ostrogotha, i., 245 *note*.
 Otas the satrap, i., 367.
 Othmān, caliph, revises the **Koran**, v., 343; reign, 383; forged document bearing the seal of, 385 and *note*; death of, 386; recalls Amrou, 445.
 Othmān, first Ottoman Sultan, reign, vii., 23 *sq.*
 Otho, Roman Emperor, i., 74, 105 *note*.
 Otho (Otto) I., or Great, Emperor of the West, v., 293 and *note*; restores the Western Empire, *ib.* *sq.*; nominates the Popes, 297; war with the Hungarians, vi., 144 *sqq.*; defeats the Hungarians at the battle of the Lech, 145; Zürich walled in his reign, vii., 221 *note*.
 Otho (Otto), II., Emperor of the West, marries Theophano, v., 211 and *note*; massacres the senators, 301 and *note*; vi., 88.
 Otho (Otto), III., removes bones of Bœthius, iv., 202 and *note*; revolt of Rome against, v., 301; defeat of, by the Saracens, vi., 170; spurious diploma of, vii., 224 *note*.
 Otho (Otto) of Freisingen, historian, on Italian cities, v., 303 *note*; vi., 329; leads part of Conrad's army, 330 *note*; his Works, vii., 232 *note*; on the Franks, 235 *note*.
 Otho de la Roche, Duke of Athens and Thebes, vi., 484.
 Otranto (Hydrus, Hydruntum), Greek dialect spoken in, vii., 118 *note*; capture by Turks, 208 and *note*.
 Otrar, massacre of Moguls at, vii., 9 and *note*; taken by Zingis, 9 and *note*; death of Timour at, vii., 68.
 Otter, on Africa, v., 459 *note*; travels in Turkey, vi., 297 *note*.
 Ottomans, origin of, vii., 22; etymology of name, 23 *note*; era of Ottoman Empire, 24; their conquests under Orchan, *ib.* *sqq.*; coinage of the, 25 *note*; cavalry, *ib.*; causes of success of, 27 *note*; establishment of, in Europe, 30; conquests of, under Bajazet, 34 *sqq.*; threaten Constantinople, 40; attack Constantinople, 76; besiege Constantinople under Amurath II., 77; hereditary succession and merit of the, 78 *sq.*; education and discipline of, 79 *sq.*; levy tribute on the Christians, *ib.* *note*; principle of Ottoman law, that the Sultans may abrogate treaties, 162.
 Outlaws, in Gaul, ii., 405 and *note*.
 Ovid, i., 82 *note*; 227 *note*, his *Fasti*, ii., 18 *note*; description of the Sarmatians, 216 and *note*.
 Oxford, number of students at university of, vii., 116 *note*.
 Oxus or Gihon, river, iv., 357, 371; v., 411 and *note*.
 Oxyrhynchus, city of, monasteries at, iv., 60 and *note*.
 PACATUS, his panegyric of Theodosius the Great, iii., 166 *note*.
 Pachomius, Abbot, in the Isle of Tabenne, iv., 62.
 Pachymeres, George, historian, on Ordeals, vi., 461 *note*; his perspicuity, 462 *note*, 489 and *note*.
 Pacts, in Roman law, iv., 493.
 Pacuvius, his *Brutus* and *Decius*, iii., 306 *note*.
 Paderborn, camp of Charlemagne at, v., 282; bishopric of, 287.
 Padua, destroyed by Attila, iii., 468; wealth of, 470.
 Prænius, i., 362 *note*.
 Præderasty, laws against, iv., 504 *sqq.*
 Prætus, Lucas, vii., 293 *note*.
 Prætus, Thræsea, i., 134 *note*.
 Pagan, history of the word, ii., 394 *note*.
 Paganism, toleration of, by Constantine and his sons, ii., 391 *sqq.*; restored by Julian, 445 *sqq.*; fall of, under Jovian, iii., 3 *sq.*; tolerated by Valentinian, 24; account of, under Theodosius, 188 *sqq.*

- prohibited, 203 *sq.*; extinguished, 206; in the fifteenth century, vii., 130.
- Pagans, zeal against the Christians, ii., 118; favoured by Julian, 451; they persecute the Christians, 469 *sq.*; of the West, iii., 206; tolerated by Theodosius, *ib.* and 207; conversion of, under Justinian, v., 135.
- Pagi, chronology of, iv., 312 *note.*
- Pagus Arebrignus, i., 52 *note.*
- Painting, in Italy, in sixth century, v., 34.
- Palaces of the Merovingians, iv., 130.
- Palæologi, end of the, vii., 203 *sq.* and *note.*; of Montserrat, extinction of the, 203 *note.*
- Palæologus, Andrew, son of Thomas, despot of the Morea, vii., 205 and *note.*
- Palæologus, Andronicus, Regent of Constantinople, vii., 90; receives Thessalonica, 98.
- Palæologus, Andronicus, son of John, vii., 39; blinded, *ib.*; made Emperor, *ib.*
- Palæologus, Demetrius, despot of the Morea, vii., 155; pays tribute to Turks, 203; civil war with his brother, 204; submits to Turks and receives islands in North Aegean, *ib.*
- Palæologus, George, v., 226; defends Durazzo, vi., 196; besieges Bari, 214; death, 217.
- Palæologus, John, brother of Michael VIII., vi., 439 *note.*
- Palæologus, John, son of Andronicus, vii., 39; blinded, *ib.*; made Emperor, *ib.*; held Selymbria, 40; civil war with Manuel, *ib.*; receives Ottoman support, 41.
- Palæologus, Manuel, son of Thomas, despot of the Morea, vii., 205.
- Palæologus, Michael, lieutenant of the Emperor Manuel, vi., 214.
- Palæologus, Theodore, vii., 191 *note.*
- Palæologus, Thomas, despot of the Morea, vii., 155; son of, 167; pays tribute to Turks, 203; war with his brother, 204; flees to Italy, 205.
- Palamas, Gregory, his theological views, vi., 507 and *note.*
- Palamites, *see* Palamas.
- Palanders or horse transports, vi., 390 and 393 *note.*
- Palatine, Mount, i., 299 *note.*; iv., 33.
- Palatines, ii., 177; auxiliaries, 398 *note.*; or borderers, in Africa, iv., 290.
- Palermo, sack of, by Genseric, iv., 2; taken by Belisarius, 304 *sq.*; Saracens at, vi., 39 and *note.*; silk manufacture at, 72 *note* and 73; coronation of Roger at, 209.
- Palestine, i., 24; invaded by the Isaurians, iii., 382; taxes remitted after Samaritan revolt, iv., 237 and *note.*; monasteries built by Justinian in, 249; corruption of, 506 *note.*
- Palestrina or (Prænestè), overthrown by the Romans, vii., 237; seat of the Colonna, 251.
- Palimbothra (Patna), *see* Kinnoga.
- Palladium, i., 145; iii., 189 *note.*; of Edessa, v., 248; brought to Constantinople, 250 and *note.*
- Palladius, Bishop of Hælesopolis, defence of St. Chrysostom, iii., 374 *note.*; iv., 64 *note.*
- Palladius, son of the Emperor Petronius Maximus, marries daughter of Valentinian III., iv., 3.
- Palladius, messenger, iii., 391.
- Palladius, a notary, sent to Africa, iii., 47 and *note.*
- Pallas, son of Evander, discovery of his tomb, vii., 322 *note.*
- Pallas, i., 90.
- Pallium, vii., 318 and *note.*
- Palma, A. Cornelius, lieutenant of Trajan, v., 318 *note.*
- Palmaria, Isle of, Sylverius at, 396 *note.*, 397 *note.*
- Palmyra, i., 272 and *note.*, 306 *sq.*
- Paltogles, admiral of Mahomet II., vii., 171 *note.*
- Pambo, the monk, iv., 69 *note.*
- Pampeluna, taken by Euric, iv., 38.
- Pamphronius, Roman patrician, his mission to Constantinople, v., 21.
- Pamphylia, peasants of, resist Tribigild, iii., 967.
- Pan, Altar of, on the Palatine, iv., 33.
- Panætius, friend of Scipio, iv., 458.
- Panaretos, Michael, historian of Trebizond, vi., 421 *note.*
- Panchatantra, collection of fables, iv., 363 *note.*
- Pandects, or Digest of Justinian, iv., 452, 464 and *notes.*, 465; Latin of, 466 *note.*; faintly remembered at Rome, vii., 225.
- Pandetaria, ii., 91 *note.*
- Pandulph of Capua, vi., 176 *note.*
- Pandulph of Pisa, vi., 261 *note.*; vii., 216 *note.*
- Pandulph, nephew of Hugh of Alatri, vi., 261 *note.*

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Paul the Civilian, i., 125; iv., 456; authority of, 462.
- Paul, commissioner in Africa, ii., 388 and *note*.
- Paul, orthodox bishop of Constantinople, banished, ii., 357; flight, 385.
- Paul, the deacon of Aquileia, on the Seven Sleepers, iii., 414 *note*; on the provinces of Italy, 469 *note*.
- Paul, the hermit, ii., 96 *note*.
- Paul, brother of the Patrician Orestes, vi., 49.
- Paul II., Pope, persecutes Roman Academy, vii., 130 *note*.
- Paul III., Pope, vandalism of his nephews, vii., 320 and *note*.
- Paul IV., Pope, vii., 297 *note*.
- Paul of Samosata, Bishop of Antioch, ii., 114; his degradation, 115; vi., 112 *note*.
- Paul the Silentary, iv., 245 *note*, 247 *note*.
- Paul of Tanis, Patriarch of Alexandria, persecution of, and death, ii., 384 and *note*; v., 160.
- Paul, Warnefrid, the deacon of Friuli, on the Lombards, v., 5 *note*, 7 *note*.
- Paula, pupil of Jerome, family of, iii., 289 and *note*, 290; owned Nicopolis, 293; founds hospital and monasteries in Palestine, iv., 63; epitaph of, by Jerome, *ib. note*; generosity of, to the monks, 69.
- Paulicians, Christian sect, description of, vi., 110 *sq.*; derivation of name, 112 *note*; seven teachers of the, *ib.*; belief and worship of, 113 *sq.*; in Armenia and Pontus, 115 *sq.*; persecuted 116; revolt of, 118; in Asia Minor, 119; in Thrace, 120; in Italy and France, 123 and vii., 219; settled among the Albigeois, vi., 124 *sq.*.
- Paulinus of Bordeaux, iii., 351 and *note*.
- Paulinus, Suetonius, i., 3 *note*.
- Paulinus, Bishop of Antioch, iii., 149.
- Paulinus, Bishop of Nola, iii., 250, 264 *note*.
- Paulinus, secretary of Ambrose, iii., 161.
- Paulinus, master of the offices, execution of, iii., 389.
- Paulinus, Patriarch of Aquileia, v., 11.
- Paulinus, Bishop of Trèves, banishment, ii., 373.
- Paullini, family of the, conversion of, iii., 194.
- Paullina, wife of Maximin, i., 173 *note*.
- Paulus, Julius, on Roman law, iv., 488.
- Paulus the Secutor, i., 95 and *note*.
- Pautalia, iv., 251 *note*.
- Pavia, battle of, i., 298; pillaged by Attila, 468; Honorius at, iii., 279; siege of, by Odoacer, iv., 49; buildings of Theodoric at, 192; Boethius at, 201; taken by Charlemagne, v., 268; burnt by the Hungarians, vi., 143.
- Parimacia, monastic loaves, iv., 68 *note*.
- Peace, temple of, at Rome, *see* Rome.
- Peacock, a royal bird, vii., 206 *note*.
- Pearl fishery in Britain, i., 3 and *note*; in Ormus and Cape Comoria, i., 55 *note*; large pearl in caliph's treasury at Cairo, vi., 336 *note*.
- Pegasiens, legal sect of the, iv., 460 and *note*.
- Pegasus, slave of Domitian, iv., 460 and *note*.
- Pegu, kingdom of, conquered by Zingis, vii., 12.
- Pehlvi language, i., 198 *note*.
- Peking, besieged by Zingis, vii., 7 and *note*; royal residence of the Khans, 10 *note*, 20.
- Pelagian controversy, iii., 270 and *note*.
- Pelagianism in Britain, iii., 356 and *note*; decay of, iv., 97.
- Pelagius, papal legate in Egypt, vi., 355; his measures at Constantinople, 428.
- Pelagius, archdeacon, embassy to Gothic camp, iv., 402 and *note*; appeals to Totila, 403; Pope, *ib. note*; v., 138.
- Pelagius, prætorian præfect, oppresses the people of Pavia, iv., 54 *note*.
- Pelamides, or thunnies, ii., 147 *note*.
- Pelham, Mr., on Arrian, iv., 371 *note*.
- Pella, Nazarene church at, ii., 9 and *note*; iv., 172 *note*.
- Pellegrini, on Greek dialect of Calabria, vii., 118 *note*.
- Pellegrino Camillo, history of the Lombards, vi., 167 *note*.
- Peloponnesus, state of, in eighth century, vi., 69 *sq.*; cities and revenue of, 71; manufacture of silk in, *ib.* and 72; families of, transported to Constantinople, vii., 201; condition in fifteenth century, 203 and *note*; Albanians in, *ib.*; conquered by Turks, 204.
- Pelso, lake, i., 411 and *note*; iv., 170 *note*.
- Pelusium, plague at, iv., 437; taken by Chosroes, v., 71; taken by Amrou, 446; evacuated by Shiracoub, vi., 337.
- Penance, public, ii., 52.
- Pendragon, or British dictator, iii., 356.

- Pengwern, or Cœrmarthaen, iv. 155.
- Peniscola, Benedict XIII. at, vii., 289.
- Penitentials, Greek, vi., 268.
- Pentadius, master of the offices, ii., 404.
- Pentapolis, the inland (in Italy), v., 23.
- Pentapolis, the maritime (in Italy) of Ravenna, v., 23, 272.
- Pepin, son of Charles Martel, delivers Rome, v., 266 *sq.*; King of France, 268 *sq.*; coronation of, *ib.* and *note*; donations of, to the Pope, 271 *sq.*; recovers Narbonne, vi., 18 *note*.
- Pepin, John, Count of Minorbino, vii., 275 and *note*.
- Pepper, price of, iii., 312 *note*.
- Pera, ii., 149; Latins in, vi., 401; Genoese in, 508; siege of, 511 *sq.*; power of the colony at, 514; royal school of the Turks at, vii., 79.
- Peratea, in Crimea, vi., 421 *note*.
- Peredeus, murdered Alboin, v., 13.
- Peregrinus, the philosopher, ii., 34 *note*.
- Perennis, minister of Commodus, i., 88 and *note*.
- Perfectissimus, rank of, ii., 161 *note*.
- Pergamus, ancient splendour of, i., 49 and *note*; library of, iii., 199 *note*; taken by the Saracens, vi., 7.
- Peristhlava, Sviatoslav at, vi., 158 *note*.
- Perinthus, i., 119; Belisarius at, iv., 278.
- Periplus, of Sallust, iv., 371 *note*; of Arrian, *ib.*
- Perisabor, or Anbar, on the Euphrates, destroyed by Julian, ii., 497 and *note*.
- Perjury, Roman law concerning, iv., 499.
- Peroun, god of thunder, vi., 163.
- Perozes, Persian physician, iv., 363.
- Perozes, King of Persia, iii., 88; death, iv., 257 *sq.* and *note*; Nestorianism of, v., 147.
- Perpera, silver coin, vi., 436 *note*.
- Perpignan, iv., 117 *note*.
- Perron, Cardinal du, on early Christian faith, iii., 214 *note*.
- Persarmenia, iii., 393; revolt of, v., 40 *sq.*
- Persecution of the early Christians, under Nero, i., 83 *sq.*; under Domitian, 89 *sq.*; three methods of escaping, 106 *sq.*; ten persecutions, 108; in second century, 109; by Severus, 110; in third century, 111 *sq.*; by Diocletian and his colleagues, 121 *sq.*; in Italy and Africa, 130 *sq.*; in the East, 131 *sq.*; fresh persecution by Maximin, 134; end of, 135.
- Perseus, treasures of, i., 158.
- Persia, foundation of Sassanid monarchy in, i., 195 *sq.*; religion of, 197; extent and population of, 204; military power of, 211; civil war in, 369; war between Sapor and Constantine, ii., 497 *sq.*; Christians of, protected by Constantine, 313; Julian invades, 492; peace with Theodosius, iii., 391; under Kobad or Cabades, iv., 357 *sq.*; accession of Chosroes, 358; province of, 360; endless peace with Rome, 364; war with Rome, v., 39 *sq.*; anarchy after the death of Chosroes, 42 *sq.*; Christianity in, 146 *sq.*; Shiite schism in, 384 and *note*; Sophis of, 393 and *note*; conquered by the Saracens, 409 *sq.*; Seljuks in, vi., 247; under Sangiar, 335; under Mohammad of Carizme, vii., 8; conquered by Holagou, 12; decline of Mogul Khans in, 22; conquered by Timour, 46 *sq.*
- Persona, Christopher, translates works of Procopius, iv., 216 *note*.
- Pertinax, Emperor, i., 96 *sq.*; death, 102, 109 *note*; apotheosis of, 115.
- Pertinax Helvius, i., 134 and *note*.
- Perusia (Perugia), taken by Maximian, iv., 323; besieged by Maximian; a retreat of Pope, vi., 200 *note*.
- Pescennius Niger, governor of Syria, i., 108, 110; war with Severus, 110 *sq.*; death, 120.
- Pessinus, ii., 449; altar of Cybele, *ib.*
- Pestcherski, or Crypt Monastery, vi., 166 *note*.
- Pestilence at Rome, under Constantine, i., 91.
- Petancius, Felix, on Varna, vii., 147 *note*.
- Petavius, on the Trinity, ii., 95 *note*; v., 96 *note*.
- Peter, King of Arragon, receives Countess of Anjou, vi., 477; proclaimed King of Sicily, 478.
- Peter Bartholomy, vision of Holy Spirit seen by, vi., 304 *sq.*
- Peter, Bishop of Alexandria, iii., 141.
- Peter, Bulgarian Tsar, vi., 129 *note*; 158 *note*.
- Peter of Bulgaria, founds second Bulgarian kingdom, vi., 375.
- Peter of Courtenay, Emperor of Constantinople, vi., 429; captivity and death, 430 and *note*.

- Peter Gnapheus, Patriarch of Antioch, v., 130 and *note*.
- Peter the Great, Tsar of Russia, ii 210; iv., 261 *note*; fleet of, in the Caspian, v., 42 *note*.
- Peter the Hermit, vi., 259; proclaims first crusade, 260 *sq.*; leads the first, 274; flight of, 275; shirks the fast, 303.
- Peter, brother of the Emperor Maurice, v., 58.
- Peter the Notary, iii., 281 *note*.
- Peter, the Patrician, i., 372 *note*; ambassador to Italy, iv., 306.
- Peter Phocas, defeated by Sclerus, v., 216 *note*.
- Peter the Reader, murders Hypatia, v., 110.
- Peter de Rupibus, Bishop of Winchester, vii., 238 *note*.
- Peter, St., visit to Rome of, ii., 46 and *note*; trophies of, at Rome, iii., 208 *sq.*; apparition to Attila, 473; Epistles of, rejected by the Paulicians, vi., 113 and *note*; church of, at Rome, spared by the Goths, iii., 322.
- Peter of Navarre, gunpowder mines used by, vii., 179 *note*.
- Peter of Corbara, vii., 241.
- Petit de la Croix, his history of Zingis, vii., 5 *note*; of Timur Beg, 42 *note*.
- Petra, Arabian town of, iv., 377 and *note*; siege of, 379 *sq.*
- Petrarch, on Charles IV., v., 308; epistle of, to the Doge of Venice, vi., 513; revived learning in Italy, vii., 119 *sq.*; Greek studies of, *ib.*; on St. Bernard, 219 *note*; on foreigners in Rome, 248 *note*; character and coronation, 255 *sqq.*; relations to Rienzi, 260, 268; letter of consolation to the Colonna, A.D. 1347, 274 *note*; advice to a cardinal on reforming Roman government, 276 *note*; regarded Rienzi as a poet, 278 and *note*; invites Emperor Charles IV., 280 and *note*; exhorts Popes to return from Avignon, *ib.* *sq.*; influence of, on Porcaro, 293; on the despoiling of Roman buildings, 311 and *note*, 316 and *note*; on the population of Rome, 313 and *note*; on the indifference of the Romans to their monuments, 321 and *note*.
- Petronius, father-in-law of Valens, iii., 13.
- Petronius, Maximus, *see* Maximus.
- Petronius. P., Diaries of, vii., 290 *note*, 300.
- Petrus de Godis, vii., 295 *note*.
- Petrus Pisanus, his Lives of the Popes, vi., 261 *note*.
- Petrus Tudebodus, history of, vi., 266.
- Petulantis, corps of, ii., 398 and *note*.
- Pescini, i., 244.
- Peyssonel, M. de, i., 260 *note*; vii., 204 *note*.
- Pesaro, Inscription at, i., 298 *note*.
- Pfeffel, his *Abregé Chronologique de l'Histoire d'Allemagne*, v., 307 *note*.
- Phadatas, occupies Cyzicus, vi., 2 *note*.
- Phalanx, Grecian, i., 13; Macedonian, of Caracalla, 138.
- Phallas, horse of Heraclius, v., 89.
- Phanagoria, city of, Justinian II. at, v., 180.
- Phantastic system, invented by the Docetes, v., 100.
- Pharamond, iii., 350 and *note*.
- Pharandsem, wife of Arsaces Tiranus (Arshak), iii., 53 and *note*.
- Pharas, chief of the Heruli, iv., 276; letter to Gelimer, 291 *sq.*
- Pharezdak, poet, v., 445.
- Pharisees, sect of the, ii., 22.
- Pharos, lighthouse at Constantinople, v., 200 *note*.
- Phasis, river, i., 262, 324; iv., 371; fortifications on, 376; Grecian colony of, 381; Heraclius at, v., 87.
- Phasis, town, i., 262 *note*.
- Pheasant, a royal bird, vii., 206 and *note*.
- Pheretime of Cyrene, v., 10 *note*.
- Phidias, transformed into a magician, vii., 322.
- Philadelphia in Asia Minor, siege of, raised by Roger de Flor, vi., 481; in fourteenth century, 502 *note*; capture of, by the Ottomans, vii., 27 and *note*; Frederic Barbarossa at, vi., 328.
- Philadelphia, in Syria, fortifications of, v., 417 and *note*.
- Philagrius, præfect of Egypt, ii., 367.
- Philaretus, governor of Antioch, vi., 250.
- Philelphus, Francis, sophist, vii., 115 and *note*; Latin ode of, 160 *note*, 196; on siege of Constantinople, 172.
- Philemuth, commands the Heruli against Totila, iv., 413.
- Philip, prætorian præfect, under Gordian III., i., 191 and *note*; reign, 192 *sqq.*; rebellion against, 238; death, *ib.*; protected the Christians, ii., 112.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Placens, John, the Sanguinary at**, iv., 303 *sq.*; famine in, 425 and *note*.
- Placens, v.**, 245 *sq.*
- Placeni, family of**, vii., 217 *note*; their fortress, 315 *note*.
- Placena, Jordan**, vii., 225 *note*.
- Placina of Africa**, *see* Pygmies.
- Plate, Pontius, procurator**, ii., 85, 108 and *note*.
- Platimages, Christian**, ii., 455 and *note*.
- Platius, missionary in Hungary**, vi., 147 *note*.
- Platium, the, and the Paradisi**, two galleys of the Latins, vi., 404 and *note*.
- Platny, fables of**, iv., 369 and *note*.
- Platow, description of the**, i., 12 *sq.* and *note*.
- Platyan Gates, battle of**, iv., 318 and *note*.
- Plana marina, manufacture of silk from**, iv., 230 and *note*.
- Pipa, a German princess**, i., 259.
- Piratus, i.**, 265, 437 and *note*.
- Pisa, Pandects at**, iv., 468 and *note*; merchants of, expelled by the Genoese from the Crimea, vi., 510; Council of, vii., 100.
- Pisani, Venetian admiral**, vi., 513.
- Pisidia, praetor of**, iv., 255; people of, *ib.* *note*; Manuel Comnenus in, v., 291.
- Pisko, Julius, on Scanderbeg**, vii., 150 *note*.
- Piso, Calpurnius, i.**, 275 *sq.*
- Plasumena, mother of Laeta**, iii., 309 *note*.
- Pistis Sophia, Gnostic work, preserved in Coptic**, ii., 14.
- Pityus, siege of, by the Goths, i.**, 262; Abundantius at, iii., 363 and *note*; desert of, 380; fortifications of, iv., 376 and *note*.
- Pius II., Pope, see Aeneas Sylvius**.
- Placentia, battle of, i.**, 298; Avitus made bishop of, iv., 14; synod of, vi., 262.
- Placidia, sister of Honorius, adventures of, iii.**, 334 *sq.*; marries Adolphus, *ib.*; marries Constantius, 394; flies to Constantinople, 395; administration of, 398 *sq.*; banishes Honoria, 456; death, 477; sepulchre at Ravenna, *ib.* *note*.
- Placidia, younger daughter of Valentinian III., restored by Genseric**, iv., 28; marries Olybrius, 44.
- Plague, at Rome, iii.**, 310; under Justinian, iv., 436-440; under Constantine V., v., 187 *note*.
- Plana-trees, cultivated by the ancients**, iii., 392 and *note*.
- Planudes, Maximus, vi.**, 443 *note*.
- Platzen, bulwarks of, restored by Justinian**, iv., 252.
- Plato of Studion, v.**, 190 *note*; banished, 192 *note*.
- Plato, on Immortality, ii.**, 20; his Republic, 47 and *note*; system of, before Christ, 335 *sq.*; dialogues, translated into Persian, iv., 362 *sq.* *note*; study revived in Italy, vi., 126.
- Platonists, new, see Neo-Platonists**.
- Platonists, theology of, i.**, 30.
- Plautianus, minister of Severus, i.**, 123.
- Plautilla, Fulvia, daughter of Plautianus, i.**, 123 and *note*.
- Plebeians, Roman, ii.**, 163 *sq.*
- Pletho, George Gemistus, vii.**, 126 *note*, 130 *note*; on state of the Morea, 203 *note*.
- Plinthea, ambassador to the Huns, iii.**, 417.
- Pliny, the elder, i.**, 365; Hist. Natur., ii., 70; on monks, iv., 58 *note*; on use of silk, 229; on the Arabs, v., 322.
- Pliny, the younger, i.**, 80, 163; examines the Christians of Bithynia, ii., 33; letters to Trajan, 58 and *note*; edict against the Christians, 78 *note*; proceedings against the Christians, 92; on the augurate, iii., 190 *note*.
- Plotina, Empress, i.**, 75.
- Plotinus, the philosopher, i.**, 191 *note*, 274 and *note*, 392 and *note*; ii., 437.
- Plumbatae, weapons, i.**, 380 *note*.
- Plutarch, his treatise of Isis and Osiris, ii.**, 315 *note*; his Lives, vi., 33 *note*; on the tribunes, vii., 268 *note*.
- Pocock, on dynasty of the Almoadars, v.**, 403 *note*; his Description of the East, 429 *note*.
- Podestà, office of, vii.**, 230 and *note*.
- Poet Laureate, vii.**, 296, 298.
- Poetovio (Pettau), ii.**, 253.
- Poggius, his dialogue, De Varietate Fortunae, vii.**, 62 and *note*; discourse of, from the Capitoline, 301 and *note*, 320 and *note*.
- Poimaneses, battle of, vi.**, 431.
- Poitiers, battle of, see Vouillé**.
- Pol, St., Count of, joins fourth crusade, vi.**, 389, 393; Lord of Demotien, 418.

- Pola, ii., 253; Belisarius at, iv., 999.
- Poland, ravaged by the Mongols, vii., 15.
- Poleno, King of Colchos, iv., 376 and *note*.
- Polenta, Roman family of, vii., 319.
- Politian, Angelo, vii., 128.
- Pollentia, battle of, date of, iii., 253 *sq.* and *note*; sack of, by Theodoric, iv., 12.
- Pollistore, vii., 277 *note*.
- Polovtzi, name of the tribe of Uzi, vi., 298 *note*.
- Polybius, on Rome, iv., 160 and *note*, 461.
- Polycarp, martyr, relics of, iii., 210 *note*.
- Polyeuctes, Patriarch of Constantinople, dismisses Theophano, v., 214 and *note*.
- Polyeuctes, Martyr, story of, ii., 105 *note*.
- Polytheism, i., 29 *note*; weakness of, ii., 54, 436; revival of, iii., 212 *sq.*
- Pomœrium, Rienzi's confusion with pomarium, vii., 261 *note*.
- Pompeianus, Claudius, i., 85, 95, 98.
- Pompeianus, præfect of Rome, superstition of, iii., 310 *sq.* *note*.
- Pompeianus, Ruricius, commandant of Verona, i., 418; death, 419.
- Pompey the Great, i., 62 and *note*; villa of, iv., 306 *note*; at the Caspian Sea, v., 42.
- Pompey, nephew of the Emperor Anastasius, iv., 225; death, 226.
- Pomponius Laetus, iii., 282 *note*; founded Roman Academy, vii., 130 *note*.
- Pomponius, Mela, i., 3 *note*; on Mauritania, v., 465.
- Pomptine marshes, drained by Theodoric, iv., 192 *sq.* *note*, 310.
- Ponte Molle, *see* Milvian Bridge.
- Pontifex Maximus, i., 31, 65; title of, adopted by Christian emperors, ii., 394 and *note*.
- Pontiffs, ambition of the Roman, ii., 45; pagan pontiffs established, 134; jurisdiction of, iii., 189 and *note*.
- Pontirolo (pons Aureoli), i., 283 and *note*.
- Pontius, his Life of Cyprian, ii., 100 *note*.
- Pontus, kingdom of, Alani in, i., 323; Christianity in, ii., 58; Paulicians in, vi., 115; kings of, *ib.* *note*.
- Pope, Alexander, Homer's Iliad, i., 29 *note*.
- Popes of Rome, title given to pontiff, iv., 194; their 36 *sq.*; policy and amb *sq.*; regarded as first in Rome, 264; assisted by lovingians, 268; donation and Charlemagne to, 271; donation of Constantine and final separation of, from the empire, 279; transfer the Charlemagne, 281; method election, 296 *sq.*; poverty in ninth and tenth century alleged gift of Constantine 212; authority of, in Rome appeals to, 214; election of absence from Rome, 241; return of Gregory XL., 2 crown or tiara of, 283 and 2 popes of the great schism, absolute dominion of R *sq.*; their government, care of public buildings, 3.
- Popov, N., work on Leo VI. *note*.
- Poppæa, Nero's mistress, introduced the Jews, ii., 88.
- Population of Europe, i., 42 of Rome, iii., 306 *sq.* 2 Rome.
- Porcaro, Stephen, his conspiracy Rome, vii., 293 *sq.*; death.
- Porcelain, Chinese, iii., 298 *note*.
- Porcian laws, i., 62.
- Porphyrians, the Artax 20 356.
- Porphyrio, whale, iv., 290 and Porphyrius Optatianus, *see* Opt Porphyrogenitus, meaning of, v Porphyry, neo-Platonist, i., *note*; ii., 437.
- Porphyry of Gaza, iii., 982 *note*.
- Portico of the Stoics, iv., 289.
- Porto, city of, iv., 319; Goths 2 323, 401 *note*; colony of C planted in by Leo IV., bishops of, their part in coronations, vii., 211 *note*; i century, 237.
- Portoria, or customs, i., 161.
- Portuguese, in Abyssinia, iv., 9 v., 165 *sq.*; in South Persia *note*.
- Portus, *see* Porto.
- Porus, i., 209 *note*.
- Posides, eunuch of Claudius, *note*.
- Possidius, Life of St. Augustin *note*.

- Posthumian, a Gallic monk, iv., 62 *note* ; on monastic institutions, 64 *note*.
- Posthumus, general of Gallienus, i., 256 and *note* ; emperor, 275, 278 *note* ; death, 300.
- Posts and post-houses under the empire, i., 50 *sq.* and *note* ; post-waggons, 400 *note*.
- Potamius, quaestor, in the Gothic camp, iii., 319.
- Potestas, in sense of municipal magistrature, vii., 230 *note*.
- Potidsea, destroyed by the Bulgarians, iv., 347.
- Poullains, or Pullani, children of the crusaders in Syria, vi., 315 *note*.
- Præfect, Latin title, iv., 126 and *note*.
- Præfects of Rome and Constantinople, iv., 483 *note* ; of Rome in middle ages, vii., 217 *note*, 227 *sq.*
- Præjecta, niece of Justinian, iv., 407 and *note*.
- Præpositus, chamberlain, ii., 182.
- Præses, ii., 170, 176 *note*.
- Præsens, Bruttius, ii., 91 *note*.
- Prætextatus, Archbishop of Rouen, iv., 139 *note*.
- Prætextatus, Proconsul of Achaia, iii., 24, 31 and *note*.
- Prætorian Guards, i., 17 ; of Augustus, 64 ; discontent under Pertinax, 101 ; assassinate Pertinax, 102 ; description of, 104 ; number of, *ib.* *note* ; claims of, 105 ; sell the empire, *ib.* ; disgraced by Severus, 114 ; remodelled by him, 122 ; pay, 136 *note* ; murder Ulpian, 153 ; rebel against Maximus, 187 ; revolt of, under Maximus, 188 ; reduced by Diocletian, 379 ; elevate Maxentius, 403 ; oppose Maximian, 409 ; increased by Maxentius, 416 ; rebel against Constantine, 422 ; suppressed by him, 424.
- Prætorian præfects, office of, i., 123 ; civil and military power, ii., 165 ; four præfects, 166 *sq.* ; of Rome and Constantinople, 167.
- Prætor tutelaris, instituted by Marcus Aurelius, iv., 483 *note*.
- Prætors, Roman, i., 66 *note*.
- Praevalitana, province of, iv., 250 *note*.
- Pragmatic Sanction of Justinian, iv., 425 *note*.
- Prague, university of, founded by Charles IV., v., 308 *note* ; Riensi at, vii., 277.
- Praxagoras, Life of Constantine, i., 398 *note*.
- Praxens, heresy of, ii., 343 and *note* ; Fauns of, iv., 315 *note*.
- Praxedis (Eupræcia, Eufrasia, Adalais), wife of Henry IV., of Germany, vi., 261 *note*.
- Praxiteles, sculptures of, i., 267 ; transformed into a magician, vii., 322.
- Pray, George, on the Hungarians, vi., 137 *note*.
- Preaching, freedom of public, ii., 326 *sq.* and *notex*.
- Presbyters, ii., 41.
- Presidents, *see* Præses.
- Presidius, iv., 325.
- Prespa, capital of Samuel the Bulgarian, vi., 136 *note*.
- Prester John, story of, v., 149 and *note* ; vii., 2 and *note*.
- Priarius, King of the Alamanni, iii., 107.
- Prideaux, Dr., i., 197 *note* ; Life of Mahomet, v., 352 *note*.
- Priesthoods, pagan, hereditary, ii., 318 *note* ; impostures of, iii., 201.
- Primate, title of the Bishop of Carthage, iv., 87 *note*.
- Primogeniture, iv., 488.
- Priniceps Senatus, i., 60, 99 *note*.
- Principate of Augustus, i., 61 *sqq.* ; transformed by Diocletian, 351 *note*.
- Printing in China, iv., 234.
- Prior, chief of militia at Rome, vii., 292 *note*.
- Prisca, wife of Diocletian, i., 428 ; embraces Christianity, ii., 117.
- Priscian, iv., 266.
- Priscillian, Bishop of Avila, execution of, iii., 153 and *note*.
- Priscillianists, persecuted by Maximus, iii., 153 *sq.* ; tenets of, 154.
- Priscus, accepts the purple from the Goths, i., 246.
- Priscus, engineer, fortifies Byzantium against Severus, i., 119 and *note*.
- Priscus, general of the Emperor Maurice, defeats the Avars, v., 59.
- Priscus, Helvidius, i., 134 *note*.
- Priscus, philosopher, ii., 516.
- Priscus, the historian, his mention of Eudocia, iii., 390 *note* ; concerning Attila, 416 *note* ; on the wars of the Huns, 424 *note* ; meets a Greek in the camp of Attila, 429 ; accompanies Maximian to Attila, 434 ; account of, *ib.* *note*.
- Priscus, Thrasæa, i., 134 and *note*.
- Priulf, Gothic leader, iii., 132 and *note* ; death, *ib.*

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Prussia, Goths in, i., 242.
 Prussians invade Britain, iv., 147.
 Prypec, river, i., 243.
Psallition, or the scissors, name given to Alexander the Logothete, iv., 397.
 Psalmody, ii., 381 *sq.*
 Psellus, Michael, instructor of Michael VII., v., 224; vi., 106 *note*; revived study of Plato, vii., 126 *note*.
 Psellus the elder, vi., 106 *note*.
 Psephina, tower (Neblosa, Castellum Pisanum) at Jerusalem, vi., 311 *note*.
 Pnylli, African tribe, iv., 94 *note*.
 Ptolemais, or Acre, ii., 324 and *note*; taken by Saracens, v., 441; *see* Acre.
 Ptolemies, library of, iii., 199 *note*.
 Ptolemy I., Soter, i., 385 *note*.
 Ptolemy II., Philadelphus, clears canal, v., 456 *note*; navy of, vi., 92 *note*.
 Ptolemy III., Evergetes, inscription of, at Adulis, iv., 233 *note*.
 Ptolemy, Roman senator, v., 301.
 Pudentius, African subject, iv., 273.
Pugione, a, Cleander's title, i., 91 *note*.
 Puisdu, Pierre, vii., 242 *note*, 287 *note*.
 Pulcheria, sister of Theodosius the Younger, Augusta, iii., 384; character and administration, *ib.* and *note*; religious opinions of, 385; educates Theodosius, 386; Empress of the East, 444; puts Chrysaphius to death, *ib.*; marries the senator Marcian, *ib.*; death and canonisation, iv., 29 and *note*.
 Pulci, Morgante Maggiore of, vii., 130 *note*.
 Pule Rudbar, or Hyrcanian Rock, v., 45 and *note*.
 Pullani, or Poullains, vi., 315 *note*.
 Punic idiom, i., 37.
 Punishments, capital, revival of, iv., 502.
 Punjab, Timour in, vii., 51.
 Pupienus, i., 188 *note*.
 Purim, Jewish feast, ii., 74 *note*.
 Purple chamber of the Byzantine palace, vi., 77.
 Purple colour, Phoenician, iv., 228 and *note*.
 Purple or porphyry, v., 208.
 Purpurius, ii., 333 *note*.
 Purser, Mr. L. C., i., 69 *note*.
 Pusæus, ii., 494.
 Pydna, iv., 172 *note*.
 Pygmies, iii., 51 and *note*.
 Pylades, a dancer, i., 107.
 Pyramids, Egyptian, vii., 305 and *note*.
 Pyramus, river, v., 24 *note*.
 Pyrrhic dance, i., 22 and *note*.
 Pyrrhus, iv., 313.
 Pyrrhus, the Monothelite, v., 276.
 Pytheas, of Marseille, i., 222 *note*.
 QUADI, subdued by M. Antoninus, i., 78, 234 *note*, 235; wars with Commodus, 85, 19. *note*; receive the Sarmatians, ii., 229; subdued by Constantius, 262 *sq.*; oppressed by Marcellinus, iii., 63; invade Pannonia, *ib.*; appeal to Valentinian, 65.
 Quadriburgium (Schenkenachans), fortified by Julian, ii., 284 *note*.
 Quadrivium, vi., 106 *note*.
 Questiones, iv., 507.
 Questora, ii., 183-185 and *notes*.
 Quarto-decimans, *see* Audians.
 Quiery, assemblies at, v., 266.
 Quietists, *see* Hesychasts.
 Quindecimviri, iii., 189.
 Quinque Gentiani, i., 362 *note*.
 Quintianus, Bishop of Rodez, iv., 115 and *note*; life of, *ib.*
 Quintilian brothers, i., 87.
 Quintilian, the critic, v., 455 *note*.
 Quintilius [M. Aurelius Claudius], brother of Claudius, i., 291 and *note*.
 Quintus Curtius, i., 189 *note*, 209 *note*.
 Quirites, i., 155 *note*.
 RACCA, palace of Harun al-Rashid at, vi., 35; *see* Nicephorium.
 Racine, iii., 244 *note*.
 Radki on Slavonian struggles with the Turks, vii., 33 *note*.
 Radagaisus, or Rhodogast, in league with Alaric, iii., 251 *note*; invades Italy, 263; besieges Florence, 264; threatens Rome, 265; his defeat by Stilicho, *ib.*; death, 267, 275.
 Radbod, King of the Frisians, iv., 81 *note*.
 Radiger, King of the Varni, iv., 197.
 Radulphus Cadomensis on miracle of the Holy Lance, vi., 326 *note*.
 Rague, or Rei, princes of, v., 45 and *note*; 409; vi., 233.
 Ragnachar, dominions of, iv., 101 *note*.
 Ragusa, i., 22; taken by the Saracens, vi., 39 *note*; treaty of, with Murad Sultan, vii., 31 *note*.
 Rahdi, the Abbeid, vi., 55.
 Rainulf, count, leader of the Normans, vi., 176 and *note*; receives Siponto and Mount Garganus, 179 *note*.
 Ralph of Coggeshall, vi., 352 *note*.

- 286 *note*.
- Rama, submits to Saracens, v., 441 and *note*; crusaders at, vi., 308; battle of, 345 *note*.
- Rasenna, taken by the Saracens, vi., 29 *note*; battle of, 177.
- Rasulak, *see* Rama.
- Ramusio, his history of the conquest of Constantinople, vi., 412 *note*.
- Randniz, vii., 277.
- Rando, chief of the Alamanni, enters Mentz, iii., 34.
- Ransona, Peter, on Corvinus, vii., 249 *note*.
- Raphael, his picture of the apparition of SS. Peter and Paul to Attila, iii., 473 and *note*; his fresco of the battle of Ostia, vi., 42 *note*; finding of his coffin, vii., 310 *note*, 324.
- Rasaphe, or Sergiopolis, tomb of Sergius and Bacchus at, v., 52 and *note*.
- Rashdall, H., on universities in the middle ages, vii., 116 *note*.
- Ratchis, duke, v., 7 *note*.
- Ratiaria, magazine of arms at, iii., 247; destroyed by the Huns, 425 and *note*.
- Rationales, ii., 184 *note*, 186 and *notes*.
- Ravenna, naval station, i., 18; besieged by Maximian, 404; account of, iii., 259 and *note*, 27. and *notes*; Stilicho slain at, 280; entered by Ardaburius and Aspar, 396; arsenal of, restored by Majorian, iv., 22; besieged by Theodoric the Ostrogoth, 179; buildings of Theodoric at, 192 *note*; taken by Belisarius, 330, 332 and *note*; Narses at, 413; marshes near, *ib.* *note*; exarchate of, v., 23; set on fire by Justinian II., 183; sedition concerning image worship at, 261 27.; Greeks expelled from, *ib.*; subdued by Astolphus, 265 and *note*; mosaics of, given to Charlemagne, 273; marbles taken from, to Aix la Chapelle, vii., 311 and *note*.
- Ravennata, parliament at, vi., 429 *note*.
- Raymond, Count of Toulouse, v., 230; takes part in the first crusade, vi., 263, 260; march to Constantinople, 267, 267.; relation of, to King of France, 290; at Dorylaeum, 296; illness of, 298; at Antioch, 303; guardian of the Holy Lance, 304; expedition into Syria, 308; at siege of Jerusalem, 310; saves the garrison, 312; refuses crown of Jerusalem, 312; death of, *ib.*
- 214 *note*.
- Raymond, Count of Toulouse, 344 27.
- Raymond des Agiles, on Holy Lance, vi., 3.
- Raynal, Abbe, his History, ii., 312 *note*, Montesquieu, 391.
- Rayy, *see* Ragæ.
- Razis, Arabian physician.
- Recared, son and successor, conversion of, iv., 9.
- Reoblarus, King of the Franks, message to Theodoric, 174 *note*.
- Recitach, son of Theodoric Triarius, iv., 174 *note*.
- Red Sea, part of Marcian, *note*.
- Reformation, Protestant consequences of, vi., 292 *note*.
- Reformatores, council of, 292 *note*.
- Roggio, conquered by Ratchis, vi., 187.
- Regia Potestas, l., 64 *note*.
- Regilianus, Emperor, i., 184 *note*.
- Reginald of Chastillon, v., 267 *note*.
- Regnum, *see* Tars.
- Rehimene, province of, i., 184 *note*.
- Reindeer in Germany, i., 184 *note*.
- Reinier, brother of Marcellin, vi., 388 *note*.
- Rei, *see* Ragæ.
- Reis Effendi, principal sultan, vii., 151.
- Reiske, vii., 199.
- Reland, treatise on the temple at Jerusalem, Mahomet, v., 349 *note*.
- Mahomet, 360 *note*.
- Land, 433 *note*.
- Relics, worship of, iii., 21 412, 436 27.
- Remigius, Bishop of Rheims, and *note*; epistles of.
- Remigius, master of the Holy Lance, iii., 267 *note*.
- Renatus Profuturus Frigidianus, actor of Aetius, iii., 267 *note*.
- Renaudot, Abbe, v., 163.
- Rennel, Major, his map of Asia, iv., 232 *note*.
- Hindustan, vii., 51 *note*.
- Rennes, subdued by the Franks, iv., 150.
- Renuntiatio, l., 67 *note*.
- Repentance, doctrine of,

- Republic, Roman, name of, confined to the Latin provinces, iii., 359.
- Resaina, Persians defeated by Misithus, i., 191 *note*.
- Res mancipi*, iv., 485 *note*.
- Restan or Arethusa, ii., 464 *note*.
- Restitutus, sub-deacon, confessor who spoke with tongues, iv., 91.
- Restom, or Rostam, hero, iv., 362 *note*; romance of Restom and Isfendiar, *ib.* See Rustan.
- Resurrection of the dead, ii., 29; church of the, on Calvary, ii., 457; Mohammedan belief in, v., 348 *sq.*
- Retarius, i., 94.
- Retz, Cardinal de, his description of Conclave of 1665, vii., 240 *note, sq. note*.
- Revenue, total under Augustus, i., 160 and *note*; of the Christian Church, ii., 50.
- Rex*, title of, 328 *note sq.*
- Rex Romæ*, vii., 286 *note*.
- Rex versuum*, vii., 256 *note*.
- Rhadagast, iii., 262 *note*.
- Rhætia, i., 22, 328; invaded by the Goths, iii., 251 and *note*; Alamanni in, iv., 105 *note*.
- Rhazates, general of Chosroes II., v., 89.
- Rhegium, taken by Totila, iv., 409; Columna Rhegina, v., 22 and *note*.
- Rheims, taken by the Germans, iii., 270; occupied by the Huns, 459 *note*; siege of, by Chlodwig, iv., 103 *note*; baptism of Clovis at, 107 and *note*.
- Rhetoric, study of, encouraged by Valentinian, iii., 22; iv., 262.
- Rhine, freezing of the, i., 214; seven posts of Julian on the, ii., 283 and *note*; fortified by Valentinian I., iii., 35; crossed by the Suevi, Vandals, Alani and Burgundians, 269.
- Rhodanus, chamberlain, iii., 20 *note*.
- Rhodes, Isle of, conquered by Chosroes, v., 71; attacked by Saracens, 443 and *note*; colossus of, *ib.*; reduced by John Vataces, vii., 431; subject to Michael, 470; conquered by the Turks, vii., 26 *sq.*
- Rhodope, ridge of mountains, iii., 102 *note*.
- Rhodosto, Andronicus and John Palæologus at, vii., 39.
- Rhoeteum, city of, ii., 146.
- Rhyndacus, river, i., 264.
- Riada, battle of, vi., 145 *note*.
- Rialto, Island of, vi., 380.
- Riazan, city of, taken by the Mongols, vii., 15.
- Ricci, G., iv., 204 *note*.
- Richard I. of England, in the East, vi., 347, 349 *sqq.*; treaty with Saladin, 353 *sq.*; conquers Cyprus, 375; his answer to Fulke of Neully, 378.
- Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity, vi., 353 *note*.
- Richard, Count of Aversa, vi., 182.
- Richard de St. Germano, vi., 356 *note*.
- Richard of Cirencester, i., 5 *note*; iii., 354 *note*.
- Richard of Cornwall, candidate for Roman kingdom, v., 307 *note*.
- Richomer, count of the domestics, iii., 103; ambassador to the Gothic camp, 121 *sq.*; retreat of, at Hadrianople, 113.
- Ricimer, Count, family of, iv., 13; destroys Vandal fleet, 14; deposes Avitus, *ib.*; consents to elevation of Majorian, 16; causes his deposition, 24; reigns under name of Severus, *ib.*; negotiations with the Eastern Empire, 28; marries his daughter to Anthemius, 31; defeated at Orleans, 38; resides at Milan, 42; marches to Rome, 43; takes Rome, 45; death, *ib.*
- Rienzi, Cola di, the Roman tribune, account of, vii., 259 *sqq.*; assumes government of Rome, 262; tribune, 263; laws of, *ib. sq.*; taxation of, 264; his Italian policy, 266; follies, 268; knighthood, 269 *sqq.*; coronation of, 271; arrests Colonna and Orsini, 272; fall and flight of, 274 *sqq.*; at Prague and Avignon, 277; senator of Rome, 278; death of, 279; his pyre, 304 *note*; knowledge of Roman antiquities, 321.
- Rimini, council of, ii., 322 and *note*, 352 *sq.* and *note*; confession of, 473; Alaric at, iii., 287; conference at, between Jovius and Alaric, 316; British bishops at the Council of, 355 *note*; taken by John the Sanguinary, iv., 324; siege of, by the Goths, 325.
- Rinaldo, hero of Tasso, vi., 281 *note*.
- Riothamus, British chieftain, sails up the Loire, iv., 39.
- Ripaille, hermitage of, near Thonon, vii., 114 and *note*.
- Ripuarian Law (*Lex Ribuaria*), iv., 122 and *note*.
- Ripuarians or Riparii, join Theodoric against the Huns, iii., 461 and *note*; Franks, territory of, iv., 108 *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- 68; Revenue of the Eastern Empire, 74; period of ignorance in, 103 *sq.*; revival of Greek learning in, 104; decay of genius in, 107; want of national emulation in, 109 *sq.*; restoration of, at Niessa, 455; provinces of, in the fourteenth century, 502 *note*.
- Roman island, i., 326 *note*.
- Romans, number of, in the Punic war, iii., 289 and *note*; in Gaul, under the Merovingians, iv., 138 and *note sq.*; language of, 140 and *note*; their fondness for the factions of the circus, 219 *sq.*; intercourse with the Greeks, 445; name of, in the empire of Constantinople, vi., 103.
- Romanus I., Lecapenus, commands fleet, v., 208 and *note*; reign, 209; rebellion of his children, 210; compared to Pippin, 214 *note*.
- Romanus II., Emperor, v., 211; children of, *ib.*
- Romanus III., Argyros, Emperor, v., 217 *sq.*
- Romanus IV., Diogenes, marries Eudocia, v., 222; deposed, 223; his wars against the Turks, vi., 237; defeated by Alp Arslan, 239; captivity and deliverance of, 240.
- Romanus, son of Constantine Porphyrogenitus, vi., 87.
- Romanus, Count, in Africa, iii., 46 *sq.*; chronological difficulties of the history of, 47 *note*.
- Romanus, governor of Bosra, v., 418.
- Romanus, military duke, ambassador to Attila, iii., 449 *note*.
- Rome, Church of, foundation of, ii., 46 and *note*; statistics of, in third century, 61 and *notes*; under Constantine, 382 *sq.*; vices under Valentinian, iii., 30; accepts image worship, v., 256; discipline different from that of the Greek Church, vi., 368; quarrel with Greek Church, 369 *sq.*; corruption of, vii., 99; great schism of, 285 *sq.*
- Rome, greatness of, i., 28; foreign creeds in, 32; number of citizens, 33; freedom of, *ib. sq.*; monuments at, 43 and *note*; date of its foundation, 194 *note*; threatened by the Alemanni, 258; pestilence in, under Gallienus, 281; fortified by Aurelian, 299; sedition at, under Aurelian, 313; Diocletian and Maximilian, first emperors who did not live in, 378; Diocletian visits Rome, 379; Maxentius resides at, 414; Babylon of the primitive Christians, ii., 25; destruction of, predicted, *ib.*; fire under Nero, 84; prefects of, 169; vicars of, 170 *note*; visit of Constantius to, 260 *sq.*; council of, 333; appeals to See of Rome sanctioned by the Council of Sardica, 368 *note*; 424 temples at, 457 *note*; inquiry concerning magic at, *ib.*, 16 *sq.*; conversion of, to Christianity, 193 *sq.*; prosperity in the Theodosian age, 292 *sq.*; description of, 295 *sq.*; population of, 306 *sq.* and *note*; house rent, 308 and *note*; siege by Alaric, 309 *sq.*; second siege, 317 *sq.*; third siege, 321 *sq.*; pillage and fire of, 323 *sq.*; restoration of the *Forum* of, 326 *note*; sack of, by troops of Charles V., 328 *sq.*; laws for the relief of, 337; restoration of the city, 338 and *note*; sacked by Genseric, iv., 5 *sq.*; Majorian protects the edifices of, 19 *sq.*; sacked by Ricimer, 44 *sq.*; monasticism in, 60; under Theodoric the Great, 190 *sq.*; citizens invite Bellsarius, 311; siege by Vitiges 312 *sq.*; circumference of, 314 and *note*; distress during the siege, 318 *sq.*; besieged by Totila, 400 *sq.*; famine, *ib.*; taken by Totila, 403; by Belisarius, 405; retaken by Totila, 408; by Narses, 416; five sieges of, 417 and *note*; citizens send embassies to Tiberius and Maurice, v., 21; duchy of, 23; subject to the exarchs, *ib. sq.*; depopulation, 31 *sq.*; preserved by the relics of the apostles, 32 *sq.*; temples of, attacked by Gregory I., 32; republic of, 262; territory of the duchy of, *ib.* and *note*; style of the Roman senate and people revived, 263; attacked by the Lombards, 264; saved by Pepin, 266 *sq.*; separation from the eastern empire, 280 *sq.*; plundered by the Arabs, vi., 40 *sq.*; Constans II. attempts to restore seat of empire to, 101; siege of, by Henry III. of Germany, 204; Saracens under Robert Guiscard at, 205; compared with Constantinople, vii., 132; revolutions at, from the eleventh century, 209 *sq.*; French and German emperors of, 210 *sq.*; authority of the popes, 212 *sq.*; St. Bernard's character of the Romans,

229 and *note*; restoration of the senate, consuls and tribunes, 223 *sq.*; of the Capitol 226; of the prefects of the city, 227 *sq.*; the revolution of A.D. 1292, 229 *note*; first municipal statute of, *ib.*; wars with neighbouring cities, 235 *sq.*; popes reside at Avignon, 244; nobles and barons of, 247 *sq.*; coronation of Petrarch at, 257 *sq.*; conspiracy of Rienzi, 262; city under his administration, 263 *sq.*; taxation of, 264; population in fourteenth century, *ib. note*, 313 and *note*; in sixteenth century, *ib.*; in eighteenth century, 324 *note*; Pope Gregory XI. returns from Avignon to, 282; state of during the great schism, 286; last revolt of, 290; last coronation of a German emperor at, 291; statutes and government of, *ib. sq.*; councils of, 292 *sq.*; conspiracy of Porcaro at, 293 *sq.*; last disorders of the nobles, 295; absolutely ruled by the popes, 296 *sq.*; taken by Charles V., 297; authorities for its history in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, 299 *sq.*; *quartieri* (franchises) of, 299 and *note*; Poggius' description of, 301 *sq.*; her buildings and ruins, *ib.*; decay of, 304 *sq.*; four causes of destruction, 305 *sq.*; games at Rome, 318; bull-fight at, *ib. sq.*; barbarism of the Romans, 321 *sq.*; restored under Martin V. and his successors, 323 *sq.*

Rome, New, ii., 158, *see* Constantinople.

Rome, topography and buildings:—

Amphitheatre of Titus, *see* Colosseum.

Aqueducts, vii., 324.

Arches of: Antoninus, vii., 314 *note*. Augustus, 303 *note*. Claudius, *ib.* Constantine, 303. Faustina, *ib.* Gallienus, *ib.* Julius Cæsar, 314 *note*. Lentulus, 303 *note*. Severus, 303. Tiberius, *ib. note*. Titus, 303, 314 *note*.

Arx, vii., 226 *note*.

Augustus, Mausoleum of, vii., 304 and *note*.

Basilica Julii, iv., 332 *note*.

Baths of: Alexander, vii., 303 and *note*. Caracalla, iii., 304 *sq.*; vii., 302. Constantine, 303, 322. Decius, 303 *note*. Diocletian, i., 401 and

note;
Titus.

note.

note, 315 and *note*.

Campus Martius, vii., 312.

Capitol, *see* below, under

Castles: Torre di Bove, vii.
Of the Braii, 314 *note*.

ib. Of the Cenci, 315 *note*.

Colonna, 304 *note*, 315 *note*.

Cosetti, 314 *note*. Of 1

pani, *ib.* Of the Pier

note, 315 *note*. Of the S

note. St. Angelo, 249. *see*

note.

Catulus, *see* *note* of, vii., 302.

Cestius, pyramid of, vii., 303.

Churches, shape of, vii.,

Angelo, vii., *note*. St. C

St. John Lateran, *see* *note*

and *note*, 323. St. M

Coeli, 226 *note*, 289 *note*.

in Turri, 221 *note*. S

Maggiore, 308 *note*, 319.

sopra Minerva, 320 *note*.

(Pantheon). St. Paul,

to, a title to absolution,

Peter, first coronation in,

pilgrimage to, a title to a

246, 312; its defences, 3

most glorious" religious

324. St. Stephen (in

Pietra), 303 *note*.

Circus Agonalis, vii., 328 and

Colosseum or Coliseum, vii.,

used as a quarry, 320 *sq.*

Columns of: Marcus Anton

303 and *note*. Trajan, 30

Constantine, church and

vii., 269.

Crescentius, Tower of, vii.,

Forum olitorium, vii., 226 *note*

Gates: Asinarian, Belisari

Rome by, iv., 312, 320;

Isaurians to Totila, 409.

324 and *note*. Capena, 32

Flaminian, opened to

313. Maggiore, 317. Pi

and *note*. St. Paul, c

Goths, 409. Salarian,

saulted by Vitiges, 317

enter by, 321.

Goths, camps of the, at the

315 *note*.

- Adrian, Mausoleum of (Castle of St. Angelo)**, iv., 315 and *note*; vii., 299, 304, 315 *sq.* and *note*.
Hills: Aventine, vii., 262. Capitoline, in Middle Ages, 296 and *note*; fortification of, *ib.*; Poggius on, 308 and *note*; legend of the capitol, 301 *sq.* and *note*. Palatine, Poggius on, 302. Tarpeian, 296 *note*. Testacean, 318 and *note*.
Lateran, *see* under Churches and Palaces.
Leonine city, foundation of, vi., 43 and *note*.
Library, Palatine, destroyed by Gregory I., v., 32.
Meta Romuli, vii., 246 *note*.
Monasteries, vii., 312 and *note*.
Navalia, near Monte Testaceo, iv., 409 *note*.
Navona, vii., 318 *note*.
Nero's tower, Garden of, vii., 319.
Obelisks, Egyptian, ii., 262 and *note*; vii., 303 and *note*, 324.
Palaces: of Constantine, *see* above Constantine. Farnese, vii., 320. Lateran, restored by Callixtus II., 218 *note*; Charles of Anjou in, 231; decay of, 281. Numa, 306 *note*, *sq.* *note*. Pincian, iv., 320 and *note*. of Severus (Septizonium), defended by nephew of Gregory VII., vi., 204; history and remains of, 305 and *note*, 312, 315. Vatican, decay of, vii., 281. Of Sallust, *see* Sallust.
Pomœrium, vii., 261 *note*.
Porticus crinorum, vii., 226 *note*.
Regions of, vii., 314 and *note*.
Rota porphyretica, vii., 211 *note*.
St. Laurence, suburb of, vii., 263.
St. Silvester, convent of, vii., 274 *note*.
Septizonium, *see* Palace of Severus.
Stadium, vii., 303 *note*.
Statues: horses "of Phidias and Praxiteles," vii., 303, 322 and *note*; the Nile, 322; of Pompey, 323.
Tabularium, vii., 226 *note*.
Temples of, Concord, vii., 313 and *note*. Hercules (dedicated by Evander), 306 *note*. Janus, iv., 316 and *note*; vii., 314 *note*. Jupiter Capitolinus, 226 and *note*. Jupiter Stator, 306 *note*. Minerva, 323. The Moon, 306 *note*. Neptune, 303 *note*. The Pantheon, 300, 310 and *note*, *sq.* and *note*. Peace, v., 32; vii., 302. Vesta, 306 *note*, *sq.* *note*.
Theatres of: Balbus, vii., 315 *note*. Marcellus, v., 32; vii., 217 *note*, 303, 315 and *note*. Pompeius, 303, 315 and *note*.
Vatican quarter, iv., 318 (and *see* under Palaces).
Via Flaminia, Narses on the, iv., 414 and *note*.
Via Latina, iv., 311.
Vivarium, iv., 317 and *note*.
Romilda, v., 74.
Romuald, Duke of Beneventum, v., 24.
Romulus, Count, ambassador to Attila, iii., 449 *note*; his daughter, mother of Augustulus, iv., 52.
Romulus, interregnum after, i., 318.
Romulus, son of Maxentius, i., 413 *note*.
Roncaglia, diet of, v., 303.
Roncevalles, battle of, v., 285.
Rorico, iv., 117 *note*, *sq.* *note*.
Rosamund, daughter of Cunimund, King of the Gepidae, marries Alboin, v., 5; murders him, 12 *sq.*; flight and death, 14.
Roselli, Nicolò, vii., 216 *note*.
Rospigliosi, Italian family, vii., 290 *note*.
Rossano, held by the Goths, iv., 406 and *note*; seven convents at, vii., 118 *note*.
Rosweyde, Life of the Fathers, iv., 75 *note*.
Rotharis, King of the Lombards, iv., 95 *note*; laws of, 26 *note*; concerning witchcraft, v., 30.
Rotrud, daughter of Charles the Great, v., 190 *note*.
Rouda, island of the Nile at Memphis, v., 446.
Roum, Seljukian kingdom of, vi., 249 *sq.*; extent of, 294.
Roumelia, i., 23; Eastern and Western, *ib.* *note*.
Rousseau, on animal food, iii., 72 *note*; his parallel between Christ and Socrates, v., 103 *note*.
Rovere, Jacova di, vii., 318.
Rowe, Mr., his tragedy of the Royal Convert, iv., 158 *note*.
Roxolani, Sarmatian tribe, i., 244, 278 *note*; iii., 92 and *note*.
Rubies, in the East, vi., 228 and *note*; in caliph's treasure at Cairo, 336 *note*.
Rubruquis, the monk, traveller, iii., 88 *note*; visits the court of the great Khan, vii., 6 *note*, 19 *note*.
Rudbeck, Olaus, i., 216 *note*, *sq.*
Rudolph, Emperor, v., 307 *note*.
Rudolph, Norman adventurer in Italy, vi., 174 *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Said, lieutenant of the caliph Omar, v., 406 *sq.*
- Saif, Homerite prince, restored by Nushirvan, v., 40.
- Sain (Shāhin), Persian general, interview with Heraclius, v., 76, 81 *note*, 84 *note*.
- Saints, worship of, iii., 208 *sqq.*
- Sakaliba, *see* Lulon.
- Sala, river, iii., 36 *note*; Charlemagne's camp at, v., 294.
- Saladine tenth, *see* Tithe.
- Saladin, Sultan, v., 236; defends Alexandria, vi., 338; Grand Vizir of Egypt, 340 and *note*; character of, 341 *sq.*; conquest of Palestine, 342 *sqq.*; treats with Richard I., 352; death of, 354; Saladine tenth, *ib.* and *note*; embassy of Isaac Angelus to, 374 and *note*.
- Salmkamen, battle of, vii., 78 *note*.
- Salban, v., 83 *note*; taken by Heraclius, 84.
- Salem, son of Ziyād, v., 413 *note*.
- Salerno, anonymous writer of, v., 295 *note*; school of, vi., 31 and *note*; subject to Greek emperor., 169; siege of, by the Saracens, 171, 174 *note*; by the Normans, 187; medical school of, 189 and *note*; Gregory VII. at, vii., 216.
- Salian Franks in Toxandria, ii., 281 and *note*.
- Salians, confraternity of the, iii., 189.
- Salic lands, iv., 131 and *note*.
- Salic laws, iv., 122 *note*.
- Salices [Ad], battle of, iii., 104 and *note*.
- Salih Ayyūb, Sultan, vi., 358 *note*; death of, 361 *note*.
- Salimbene, Fra, vii., 253 *note*.
- Salisbury, siege of, iv., 149.
- Salle, town, i., 26.
- Sallust, description of the Moors, iv., 296; Periplus of, 371 *note*.
- Sallust, officer of Julian, ii., 275 and *note*, 399; Præfect of Gaul, 409 and *note*, 422 *note*.
- Sallust, Palace of, at Rome, destroyed by the Goths, iii., 325 and *note*.
- Sallust, Præfect of the East, judge at Chalcedon, ii., 422 and *note*; his advice to Julian, 504; refuses the empire, 518; iii., 7; his embassy to Sapor, ii., 521; Præfect of the East for the second time and quells revolt of Procopius, iii., 15.
- Sallustia Barbia Orbiana, wife of Alexander Severus, i., 190 and *note*.
- Salmasius, i., 91 *note*; on silk, iv., 229.
- Salona or Sula, *see* Amphissa.
- Salona, residence of Diocletian, i., 387; description of, 389 *sqq.*; Diocletian's palace at, 390; fleet of Belisarius at, iv., 398; Narses at, 413.
- Salonina, Empress, i., 259 *note*.
- Saloninus, son of Gallienus, i., 255, 278 *note*.
- Salt, tax on, at Rome, vii., 264, 275.
- Salva, Castra of, iii., 35.
- Salvian, on Carthage, iii., 411 and *note*.
- Sāmān, a nobleman of Balkh, vi., 53 *note*.
- Sāmānids, Saracen dynasty of, vi., 53 and *note*; fall of, 225.
- Samarā on the Tigris, ii., 519 and *note*; residence of Motassem, vi., 23 *note*, 47; palace at, 46; name of, *ib.* *note*.
- Samarcand, iv., 351; missionaries of, v., 149; conquered by the Saracens, 414 and *note*; defeat of Moslems by the Turks near, 415 *note*; Seljuk in, vi., 232; subdued by Malek Shah, 244; taken by Zingis, vii., 9; observatory at, 44 *note*; Timour at, 52; triumph of Timour at, 66.
- Samaritans of Palestine, persecuted by Justinian, v., 135 *sq.*
- Samiel, hot wind, ii., 524 *note*.
- Samnites, i., 21.
- Samosata, massacre of heretics at, ii., 387; taken by Zimiscus, vi., 60; rise of Paulician sect at, 111.
- Samothrace, inhabitants of, transported to Constantinople, vii., 201 *note*; Demetrius Palæologus lord of, 204.
- Samoyedes, iii., 81; in Greenland, iv., 184 *note*; vii., 18.
- Sampsiceramus, ii., 464 *note*.
- Samsamah, weapon of Caliph Harun, vi., 35.
- Samuel, son of Shishman, vi., 136 *note*.
- Samuel the prophet, ashes of, brought to Constantinople, iii., 209.
- Samuka, general of Zingis, vii., 9 *note*.
- Sancho, the Fat, King of Leon, vi., 31 *note*.
- Sanctuary, privilege of, ii., 322 and *note*.
- Sand, used for Mahometan ablutions, v., 346.
- Sandoval, History of, v., 481 *note*.
- Sandwich, iii., 43.
- Sangarius, river, iv., 250.
- Sangeles, for Count of St. Gilles, vi., 293 *note*.

Sangiar (Sinjar), Seljukian Sultan of Persia, vi., 335.
Sangiban, King of the Alani, offers to betray Orleans to Attila, iii., 459; at the battle of Châlons, 463.
Sanjak, iv., 251 and *note*; title given to Scanderbeg, vii., 151.
Sanut, family of, acquire Duchy of Naxos, vi., 417.
Sanutus Marinus, History of Jerusalem by, vi., 314 *note*.
Sapaudia, *see* Savoy.
Saphadin or Ardel, brother of Saladin, *see* Ardel.
Saphrax, Gothic warrior, iii., 92, *see* Alatheus.
Sapor I., son of Artaxerxes, accession of, i., 211; Roman wars of, 269 *sqq.*; death, 308 and *note*.
Sapor II., son of Hormouz, King of Persia, birth of, ii., 224; besieges Nisibis, 226; defeats Chosroes, 227; defeats Constantius, 228; raises siege of Nisibis, 231; expedition to Mesopotamia, 267 *sqq.*; besieges Amida, 269; Singara and Bezabde, 271; attempts Virtha, *ib.*; sends a messenger to Hormisdas, 507; his peace with Jovian, 520 *sq.*; invades Armenia, iii., 52 *sqq.*; death, 55.
Sapor, lieutenant of Theodosius, iii., 147.
Saracens, Greek and Latin name for the Arabians, described by Ammianus, ii., 227 *note*; in the service of Julian, 491; iii., 94; in the service of Valens, 115 and *note*; pillage a town in Syria, v., 95; wars with Theophilus, 197; name applied to the Arabians, 320; derivation of name, *ib.* *note*; their caliphs, 399 *sq.*; military force of the, vi., 96 *sqq.* *See* Arabs.
Saragossa (Caesar Augusta), city of, taken by Euric, iv., 38; Emir of, asks protection from Charlemagne, v., 287; mosque at, 480.
Sarapana, river, iv., 371 *note*.
Sarbaraza (Shahrbaraz), Persian general, v., 79 *note*, 81 *note*; defeated by Heraclius, 84 and *note*, 85; at Chalcedon, 88.
Sarbar, *see* Sarbaraza.
Sardes, Turks driven from, vi., 322.
Sardica (Sophia), Galerius dies at, i., 411 *note*; Constantius and Vetrano

dors of Theodosius and Attila meet at, iii., 434 *sq.*; Justinian born at, iv., 205 and *note*.
Sardinia, Island of, ravaged by the Vandals, iv., 27; bishops exiled into, by Thrasimund, 85 and *note*; surrendered with Corsica to officer of Justinian, 289; Duke of, 290; Arabs and Moors at, vi., 42.
Sarmatæ, Alani settled in Gaul, iii., 461 and *note*.
Sarmatian games, i., 435 *note*.
Sarmatians, i., 234 and *note*, 244; subdued by Probus, 328; subdued by Emperor Carus, 339; allies of the Goths, 435; account of, ii., 214 *sqq.*; settlements on the Danube, 216; their Gothic wars, 217 *sqq.*; alliance with the Quadi, 219; colony of, in the Roman provinces, 220; crossed the Danube, 255; made into a kingdom by Constantius, 263; alliance with the Quadi against Valentinian, iii., 63 *sqq.*.
Sarmatia, province of, i., 235 *note*.
Sarnus or Draco River, iv., 418 and *note*.
Sarts, tribe of, iii., 436 *note*.
Sarukhan, Emir of, subdued by Bajazet, vii., 34.
Sarûkhân, Turkish chieftain, vii., 26 and *note*.
Sarus, a Gothic warrior, joins Stilicho, iii., 264; pursues Constantine, 273; at Bologna, 280; ability of, 285; destroys a body of Goths, 321; supports Jovinus, 344; death, *ib.*.
Sarus, River, battle at the, Persians defeated by Heraclius, v., 84 *sq.*.
Sasima, Bishopric of, held by Gregory Nazianzen, iii., 144 and *note*.
Sassan, founder of the Persian dynasty, i., 196 *note*; house of, iv., 357.
Sassanides, Persian dynasty of, i., 196 and *note*.
Sassoferrato, iv., 414 *note*.
Satala, in Armenia, restored by Justinian, iv., 256.
Satalia, the ancient Attalia, Louis VII. at, vi., 330.
Sathas, C., on the Historia Patriarchica, vii., 202 *note*.
Satires, ii., 479 *note*.
Satrapies, Persian, i., 208 and *note*.
Saturnalia, at Antioch, ii., 484; of Lipsius, iii., 258 *note*.
Saturninus, Cælius, ii., 173.

- Saturninus**, consul, iii., 364; count of the domestics, assassinated by order of Eudocia, 389.
Saturninus, Count, daughter of, chosen to marry Attila's secretary, iii., 433.
Saturninus, general of the cavalry, operations of, against the Goths, iii., 105.
Saturninus, general of Probus, revolt, i., 333.
Saturninus, husband of Theodora's favourite, iv., 216 note.
Satyrs, Greek, ii., 479 note; in Africa, iii., 51 and note.
Saul, general of Stilicho, slain at Pol-lentia, iii., 253 sq.
Sauromaces, King of the Iberians, ex-pelled by Sapor, lii., 53.
Sauses, son of Amurath I., vii., 99 and note.
Savary, travels in Egypt, v., 459 note, 459 note.
Save, i., 22 note.
Savelli, Lucas, senator, vii., 298, 276.
Savelli, Roman family, vii., 249 and note, sq. note; member of, mur-dered at Rome, 295, 319.
Saverne, ii., 277 and note.
Savigny, on Roman law, iv., 442 note.
Savoy (Sapaadia), first mention of, iii., 490 note; Burgundians settle in, *ib.*
Saxa Rubra, battle of, 421 sq.
Saxons, i., 357 note; account of, iii., 37 sq.; settlement in Gaul, 39; join Theodoric against Attila, 461 and note; converted by Roman mission-aries in Britain, iv., 78; in Britain, 145 sq.; Saxon heptarchy, 146 sq.; tribe of *old Saxons*, 146; invade Italy under Alboin, v., 8; van-quished by Charlemagne, 288.
Saxony, ancient, v., 288 sq.
Scabini, iv., 125 note.
Scævola Mucius, Roman lawyer, iii., 300 note; iv., 456.
Scævola, Q. Cervidius, master of Pa-pinian, iv., 453 note.
Scaliger, vii., 129.
Scanderbeg, Prince of Albania, vii., 139; birth and education of, 150 sq.; revolt of, from the Turks, 151 sq.; date of his birth, *ib.* note; valour of, 152; Calabrian expedition of, 153 and note; applies to Pope Pius II., 154; death of, at Alessio, *ib.*
Scanderoon, Gulf of, Heraclius at, v., 78.
Scandinavia, i., 214 and note.
Scanzia or Thule, *see* Thule.
Scaramanglon, tunic of the Byzantine Emperors, vi., 80 note.
Scarponna, battle of, iii., 33 sq.
Scatinian law, *see* Law.
Scaurus, family of, ii., 164 note.
Scepticism of the pagan world, ii., 55.
Sceptre, Greek (*σκιακίς*), vi., 465 note.
Schafarik, his *Slawische Alterthümer*, vi., 132 note.
Schepes, G., his *Priscillian*, lii., 153 note.
Schiltberger, John, on battle of Nico-polis, vii., 35 note, 61 note.
Schlumberger, M., on Nicephorus, v., 212 note; *L'épopée byzantine*, 216 note.
Schola, of guards, i., 98; military, ii., 183; iv., 426 and note.
Scholasticus, ii., 174 note.
Schultens, *Life of Saladin* by, vi., 340 note.
Schuttingius, oration of, iv., 465 note.
Schultze, F., on the Renaissance, vii., 126 note.
Schwarzer, on imperial coronations, vii., 210 note.
Science, cultivated by the Greeks, i., 57.
Scipio, Younger, iv., 488 note; at sack of Carthage, vii., 199 note.
Sciri, Scirri, *see* Scyrri.
Scironian rocks, iii., 243 and note.
Sclavonia, crusaders in, vi., 286.
Sclavonians, *see* Slavonians.
Sclerena, concubine of Constantine X. (IX.), v., 219.
Sclerus, *see* Bardas Sclerus.
Scodra or Scutari, crusaders at, vi., 286 and note.
Scota, daughter of Pharaoh, iii., 40.
Scotland, crusaders from, vi., 293 and note; historians of, vii., 296 note.
Scots and Picts, invade Britain, ii., 399 and note; iii., 43 sq.; description of, 41 sq. and note.
Scotta, brother of Onegesius, procures Maximin an interview with Attila, iii., 436.
Scourge of God, epithet of Attila, iii., 427 and note.
Scribonianus, revolt of, i., 73 note.
Scrinia, ii., 183 and note.
Scudilo, Tribune, ii., 252.
Scupi, iv., 251 note.
Scutari, in Bithynia, *see* Chryzopella.
Scutari, in Dalmatia, *see* Scodra.
Seytkus, continuator of Cedrenus, vi., 235 note.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

27. ; refuses to allow Pagan sacrifices, 311; convened by Attalus, 318; condemns Avitus to death, iv., 14; elects Libius Severus, 24; supports Anthemius, 45; epistle to Zeno on transfer of seat of empire to the East, 50 *sq.*; deputies of, invite Justinian's lieutenant to enter Rome, 311; extinction of, 417; decrees of, 448; office of President of the Senate of Constantinople, v., 215; authority of, eradicated by Leo the Philosopher, vi., 90; revival of, in twelfth century, vii., 223 *sqq.*; no senate between eighth and twelfth centuries, 224 *note*; election of, 228 *sq.*
- Senator**, title of in middle age, vii., 224 *note*; office of, 229 *sq.*; Charles of Anjou elected, 231; Rienzi, 278; Forensis, 291.
- Senatorial tax** (*foliis*), i., 424 and *note*.
- Senators**, Roman, i., 34 *note*, 94 *note*; in Theodosian age, iii., 289 *sqq.*
- Seneca**, *Quest. Natur.*, ii., 70; on the luxury of Rome, 293 and *note*; iv., 52 *note*; on Corsica, 85 and *note*; on comets, 433 and *note*.
- Seniors or Lords**, iv., 131.
- Sena**, Decentius at, ii., 243; Julia at, 276; monasteries at, iv., 157 *note*; Abderame at, vi., 14.
- Sentinum**, battle of, iv., 414 *note*.
- Septem or Ceuta**, taken by Roman tribune, iv., 289 and *note*; besieged by the Visigoths, 298 *sq.*; attacked by the Saracens, v., 472 and *note*, 474.
- Septetius**, interpretation of the word, v., 259 *note*.
- Septimania**, retained by the Visigoths, iv., 118; invaded by Gontran, 140 *sq.*; invaded by Saracens, v., 480.
- Septisonium of Severus**, *see* under Rome.
- Sepulchres of the Gauls**, *see* *Busta Gallorum*.
- Sepalveda**, vii., 278 *note*.
- Sequani**, lands of the, taken by the Germans, iv., 129.
- Seraglio**, ii., 148.
- Serai**, city and palace of, vii., 17 and *note*.
- Serapeum**, at Alexandria, *see* *Serapis*.
- Serapion**, deacon of Chrysostom, iii., 377.
- Serapion**, friend of Julian, v., 419 *note*.
- Serapion**, saint of the Nitrian desert, v., 102; teaches Cyril of Alexandria, 107.
- Serapis**, i., 132, 196; temple of, ii., 143; description of the temple of, at Alexandria, iii., 198 *sq.*; its destruction, 200 *sqq.*
- Serastani**, provincial troops of the Turks, vii., 172 *note*.
- Serbi**, tribe of, v., 57 *note*.
- Serena**, niece of Theodosius, marries Stilicho, iii., 225 and *note*; intercession of, concerning Alario, 277; paganism of, 282 and *note*.
- Serendib**, *see* *Taprobana*.
- Seres or Sinae**, iv., 231 *note*.
- Sergievich**, vi., 153 *note*.
- Sergiopolis**, *see* *Rasapha*.
- Sergius IV.**, Duke of Naples, vi., 176 *note*.
- Sergius and Bacchus**, saints and martyrs, v., 52 and *note*.
- Sergius**, the interpreter, ii., 224 *note*; iv., 361 *note*.
- Sergius the Paulician**, vi., 112 *note*; pilgrimage of, 117 and *note*.
- Sergius**, Patriarch of Constantinople, condemned by Third Council, v., 142.
- Sergius I.**, Pope, v., 183 *note*.
- Sergius**, nephew of Solomon the eunuch, iv., 391 and *note*, 392.
- Serica**, iv., 230.
- Seriphus**, Isle of, i., 82 and *note*.
- Serjabil**, friend of Caled, v., 418.
- Serjeants**, horsemen who were not knights, vi., 315, 394 and *note*.
- Seronatus**, præfect of Gaul, execution of, iv., 42.
- Serranus**, friend of Sidonius Apollinaris, iv., 2 *note*.
- Serres**, city of, taken by the Servians, vi., 500 *note*.
- Servatius**, St., of Tongres, iii., 458.
- Servetus**, martyrdom of, vi., 127 and *note*.
- Servia**, rebellion of, A.D. 1040, v., 218 *note*; dominant position of, in fourteenth century, vi., 500 *note*; code of laws of Stephen Dushan, *ib.*; expedition of Cantacuzene into, 504.
- Servians**, overthrown by the Bulgarians, vi., 134 and *note*; settlement of, in Constantinople, vii., 201 *note*.
- Servitudes**, term in Roman law, iv., 487 and *note*.
- Servius**, civil law of Rome made by, iv., 443.
- Sesostris**, long wall of, v., 322 and *note*.
- Sestus**, ii., 145; fortifications of, iv., 252.

SEVERIANUS, I., 420.

Severinus, St., his prophetic speech to Odoacer, iv., 50; Life of, by Eugippius, *ib.* note; his bones laid in monastery of Misenum, 53; death, *ib.* note.

Severus, Alexander, i., 142 note; made Caesar, 147; reign, 148 sq.; character, 156; murdered, 170; victory over Artaxerxes, 209; leniency to the Christians, ii., 110; religious syncretism, 111 sq.; private worship of, v., 245 note.

Severus, Bishop of Hermopolis Magna, Arabic history of, v., 108 note.

Severus, Bishop of Minorca, iii., 213 note.

Severus, blind man, miraculously cured, iii., 160.

Severus, general of cavalry under Julian, ii., 277.

Severus, Jacobite historian, v., 449 note.

Severus, Libius, elected emperor by Ricimer, iv., 24; death, 25.

Severus, officer of Galerius, made Caesar, i., 396 and note; Augustus, 400; defeat and death, 403 and note.

Severus, Patriarch of Antioch, Monophysite, v., 153; Life of *ib.* note.

Severus, philosopher, consul under Anthemius, iv., 32.

Severus, Septimius, i., 99 note; commands in Pannonia, 111; declared emperor, *ib.*; marches to Rome, 112; rapid march, 114 and note; disgraces the prætorians, *ib.*; emperor, *ib.*; defeats Niger and Albinus, 115; reign, 116 sq.; expedition to Britain, 128 sq.; assumed the name *Pertinax*, 128 note; death, 130; promoted Maximin, 169; his treatment of the Christians, ii., 110.

Severus, Sulpicius, ii., 25 note; iii., 153 note; Dialogues and Life of St. Martin by, iv., 75 note.

Seville in fourth century, iii., 345; siege of, iv., 93; taken by Musa, v., 479; legion of Emesa at, 484; Christianity abolished in, 491.

Sfetigrade, siege of, vii., 139 note, 152; site of, 153 note.

Shaba, the great Khan, invades Persia, v., 44.

Shafai, sect of, vi., 342.

Shāhin, *see* Sain.

Shahmanism, ancient religion of, vii., 137 note.

NOTE.

Shāhraplakan, Persian general, v., 84 note.

Shahrbarāz, *see* Sarbarasa.

Shajar-ad-Durr, Queen of Egypt, vi., 361 note.

Shamer, Arabian chief, v., 391.

Sharokh, son of Timour, vii., 72.

Shah Abbas, i., 204 note; plants colony at Ispahan, v., 489.

Shah Allum, vii., 42 note, 71 note.

Shaw, Dr., account of the Berbers, v., 471 note.

Shawar, leader of a faction in Egypt, vi., 337 and note; death of, 339.

Shazbān, Khan of the Kirghiz Kazan, vii., 48 note.

Shbediz, horse of Chosroes, v., 73.

Sheibani Khan, conquers Siberia, vii., 17.

Sheikha, Arabian, v., 321.

Shelun, or Zarun, descendant of Mocho and conqueror of Tartary, iii., 261 and note.

Sherefeddin, Ali, his history of Timour, vii., 42 note, 61 sq. note; his account of Bajazet, 64.

Sherhzour, city of, Heraclius at, v., 90.

Sherif al-Edriasi, Arabian scholar, vi., 193 note.

Sherif, used by Zonaras for ambassador, vi., 232 note.

Sheroë, daughter of Chosroes, v., 52 note.

Shiites, sect of Mahometans, v., 384; burial ground of, near tomb of Ali, 388.

Shiracouh, Emir of Nouredin, vi., 337 and note; second invasion of Egypt by, 338; governs Egypt, 339.

Shishman of Bulgaria, vii., 31 note; revolts against the Ottomans, 33 note.

Shishman of Trnovo, kingdom of, vi., 136 note.

Siam, i., 209 note.

Siasset Nameh, or book of government by Nizam, vi., 246 note.

Siberia, description of, iii., 81; conquered by Sheibani Khan, vii., 17.

Sibylline books, consulted by Aurelian, i., 298 sq.; by Constantine, ii., 307; burnt by Stilicho, 282.

Sibyls, Christian, ii., 69.

Sicamber, name applied by Remigius to Clovis, iv., 107 note.

Sichem [Neapolis], taken by Saracens, v., 441.

- Sichem, or Naplous, temples at, ii., 457 *note*; position of, v., 136 *note*; grove of Tano near, vi., 310; cut down by crusaders, *ib.*
- Sicily, i., 279; conquered by the Vandals, iv., 2, 37; ceded to Theodoric, 179; regained by Belisarius, 303 *sq.*; plundered by Totila, 409 *sq.*; reduced by Artaban, 411; partly recovered by Maniaces, v., 218 *note*; conquered by the Arabs, vi., 38 *sq.*; Roger the Norman introduces silk into, 73; Normans serve in, 176; princes of, legates of holy see, 193; Roger II., King of, 208; under William the Bad, 218; under William the Good, 219; subdued by Henry VI., 221; by Charles of Anjou, 474 *sq.*; Sicilian Vespers, 478 and *note*; falls under the House of Aragon, 479 *sq.*
- Sicinius, Basilica of, iii., 30 and *note*.
- Sickel, W., on imperial coronations, vii., 210 *note*.
- Sicorius Probus, i., 373.
- Siculi, tribe of the Huns, vi., 147 *note*.
- Siculus, Peter, historian, vi., 111 *note*, 114 *note*.
- Sicupi, tribe of Tatars, iii., 86 and *note*; power of, 89; style themselves "Topa," 261.
- Sidon, manufacturers of, iv., 227; taken by Saracens, v., 441; Emir of, helps crusaders, vi., 308; lord of, in court of peers, 318; lordship of, *ib. note*; lost by the Franks, 363.
- Sidonius Apollinaris, on taxation, ii., 196; on Saxon pirates, iii., 39 *note*; on human sacrifices, 40 *note*; proposed history of Attila, 457; on Emperor Maximus, iv., 2 *note*; account of Avitus, 7 *note*, *sq. note*, 13; of the country life of the Gallic nobles, 8 *note*; of Theodoric, 9 and *note*, *sq.*; panegyric on Majorian, 15 and *note*; on Anthemius, 31 and *note*, *sq.* and *note*; on trial of Arvandus, 39 *note*, 41; on Seronatus, 42 *note*; on Basilus, 54 and *note*; epistles of, 82 *note*; ambassador to Euric, 100.
- Siebenbürgen, *see* Transylvania.
- Siffin, plain of, battle of rival caliphs on, v., 387; site of, *ib. note*.
- Sigambrians, short hair of, iii., 453 *note*.
- Sigan, capital of China, iii., 86; Yestd dies at, v., 412.
- Siganfu, inscription of. *See* Singanfu.
- Sigebut, despoils the daughter of Eba of her estate, v., 484.
- Sigelgaita, *see* Gaita.
- Sigibert, King of Austrasia, iv., 92.
- Sigibert, King of the Ripuarian Franks, iv., 105 *note*.
- Sigismund, emperor, protects the synod of Constance, vii., 101, 103, 288.
- Sigismund, King of the Burgundians, iv., 112 *sq.*; flight and death, 113.
- Sigismund, King of Hungary, war with Bajazet, vii., 35 *sq.*
- Signia, the Conti counts of, vii., 249.
- Sigonius on Roman law, iv., 506; on Pope Gregory I., v., 38 *note*; de Regno Italise, vi., 167 *note*.
- Silentiary, office of, iv., 381 *note*.
- Silenus, character of, in *Cæsars* of Julian, ii., 479; in sixth eclogue of Virgil, *ib. note*.
- Silingi, in Bætica, iii., 346; exterminated by Wallia, 349.
- Silistria, battle of, vi., 161 *note*.
- Silius Italicus, i., 38 *note*.
- Silk, trade in, i., 55; manufacture of, in China, iv., 228 *sq.*; importation from China, 230; in Greece, 233 *sq.*; vi., 72; in Spain, Sicily and Italy, *ib.* and 72.
- Silko, King of Nubia, conversion of, v., 164 and *note*; receives envoy from Justinian, *ib.*
- Silures, British tribe, i., 20; iv., 150.
- Silvanus, *see* Constantine, teacher of the Paulicians.
- Silver, i., 55 and *note*.
- Silvester I., St., Pope, baptizes Constantine the Great, v., 274; legend of his healing Constantine, vii., 270 and *note*.
- Silvester II. (Gerbert), Pope, his epitaph on Boethius, iv., 202 *note*.
- Simeon, King of Bulgaria, vi., 134 and *note*; besieges Constantinople, 135.
- Simeon, Greek minister, vi., 116.
- Simeon Metaphrastes, vi., 64 and *note*.
- Simeon Stylites, the Syrian hermit, iv., 73 *sq.*
- Simeon, teacher of the Paulicians, vi., 112; causes death of Sylvanus, 116.
- Simeons, Nestorian sect, revolt of, v., 150.
- Simocatta, *see* Theophylactus.
- Simon de Montfort in fourth crusade, vi., 379.
- Simon the Magician, v., 119.
- Simony, ii., 115 *note*.
- Simplicius, Bishop of Rome, ii., 323 and *note*; his ecclesiastical distribution of Rome, iv., 45 *note*.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Soliman, Shah of Carisme, death of, vii., 23.
- Soliman, son of Bajaset, vii., 59; submits to Timour, 65; character and death, 72.
- Soliman, son of Cutulmish, conquers Asia Minor, vi., 248; his new kingdom of Roum, 249; threatens Constantinople, 251; conquers Jerusalem, *ib. sq.*; tempts the crusaders into plain of Nice, 276; kingdom of, invaded by the crusaders, 294 *sq.*; called Kilidge Arslan, *ib.* and *note.*
- Soliman, son of Orchan, vii., 30; death, 31.
- Soliman, the Magnificent, Ottoman Sultan, alleged treatment of Greek Church, vii., 203 *note.*
- Solomon, King of the Jews, book of Wisdom of, ii., 337 and *note.*; his sacrifices, 457; not author of Ecclesiastes, iv., 294 *note.*
- Solomon, the eunuch, commands in Africa, iv., 297 and *note sqq.*; conquers the Moors, 298; conspiracy against, 389; death of, 393 and *note.*
- Solon, tables of, iv., 445.
- Sondis, Mount, iv., 175 and *note.*
- Song, Chinese dynasty, vii., 11.
- Sonna, Mahometan oral law, v., 343 *sq.*
- Sonnenwald, sacred wood of the Suevi, i., 157.
- Sonnites, orthodox Mahometans, v., 384.
- Sontius, river, Odoacer at the, iv., 178.
- Sopater, the Philosopher, ii., 366 *note.* 449 *note.*
- Sophene, i., 375.
- Sophia, Basil II. at, vi., 136 *note.*; taken by the Turks, vii., 31 *note.* See Sardica.
- Sophia, Empress, iv., 212 *note.*; relieves the citizens of Constantinople of debt, v., 2 *sq.*; recalls Narses, 9; her treatment by Tiberius, 17 *sq.*
- Sophia, St., church of, at Constantinople, account of, *see* Constantinople.
- Sophian, lieutenant of Moawiyah, vi., 2 and *note.*
- Sophronia, Roman matron, i., 414 *note.*
- Sophronius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, treats with Omar, v., 435 *sq.* and *note.*
- Sophys, reign of, in Tauris, v., 82; claimed descent from Mahomet, 393 and *note.*
- Sora, Lombard fortress, v., 269 *note.*
- Sorbonne, faculty of the, vii., 287.
- Sortes Sanctorum, mode of divination, iv., 115 and *note.*
- Sosibius, ii., 466 *note.*
- Soubahs, rebellion of, in Hindostan, vii., 50.
- Soul, immortality of the, belief of ancient Germans concerning, i., 230; attitude of the pagans towards the doctrine of, ii., 19 *sqq.*; pre-existence of, 20 and *note.*; Jewish views of, 21 *sq.*; material, of universe, 337 and *note.*; metaphysics of, v., 99 and *note.*; views of origin of, *ib.* *note.*
- Sovon or So-on, Chinese patriot, iii., 82 *sq.* *note.*
- Sozomen, ii., 470 *note.*; on Chrysostom, iii., 376 *note.*; on Pulcheria, 386 *note.*
- Sozopetra, besieged by the Emperor Theophilus, vi., 44.
- Sozopolis, frontier city in Thrace, vi., 502 *note.*
- Spada, ii., 245 *note.*
- Spain, provinces of, i., 19; division of, by Augustus, *ib.*; wealth of, 159; under Constantius, 354 and *note.*, 399 and *note.*; Christianity in, ii., 63; subdued by Constantine, iii., 273 *sq.*; account of, for first four centuries, 345; cities of, *ib.*; barbarians in, 346; Goths in, 347; conquest of and restoration of, by the Goths, 348; Vandals and Suevi driven into Galicia, 349; Visigoths in, converted from Arianism, iv., 92; legislative assemblies of, 142 *sqq.*; civil war in, 299; under Charlemagne, v., 287; Arabs in, 484; agriculture in, 485; religious toleration in, 486 *sq.*; revolt under the Abbassides, vi., 21 *sq.*, 52.
- Spalatro (Salona), i., 389 *sqq.*
- Spanheim, E., his *Orbis Romanus*, i., 33 *note.*; his *de Usu Numismatum*, 380 *note.*; his version of Julian, ii., 479 *note.*
- Spanheim, F., his *Historia Imaginum restituta*, v., 251 *note.*
- Spaniards, in the sixteenth century, iii., 329; in Italy, vii., 297.
- Sparta, destroyed by Alaric, iii., 243; Mahomet II. at, vii., 204.
- Spartianus, i., 106 *note.*, 108 *note.*, 120 *notes.*
- Spectabiles*, title of, ii., 160.
- Spectacles, Roman, i., 343 *sq.*

- Spelman, i., 370 *note*.
Sphaeristerium or tennis court, v., 211.
 Spice country, i., 2.
 Spires, destroyed, ii., 273; by the Germans, iii., 270; massacre of the Jews at, vi., 274.
 Spoleto, buildings of Theodoric at, iv., 192; taken by Belisarius, 323; betrayed to the Goths by Herodian, 407; Duke of, pillages Ravenna, v., 21; Duke of, assists Leo III., 282; baths of, vii., 312 *note*.
 Spondanus, on the schism of Constantinople, vii., 135 *note*; on Hungarian crusade, 141; on Corvinus, 149 *note*; on union of Greek and Latin Churches, 174 *note*; on death of Constantine Palæologus, 193 *note*; his annals, 207 *note*.
Sportulæ or *Sportellæ*, iii., 299 *note*.
 Squillace, retreat of Cassiodorus, iv., 189.
 Squirrels (or dormice, *glires*), eaten by the Romans, iii., 299 and *note*.
 Stagira, Alexius Angelus at, vi., 377.
 Stagirus, friend of St. Chrysostom, iv., 71 *note*.
 Stamboul, ii., 158 *note*.
 Statius, epistle of, iv., 308 *note*; his failure at Capitoline contest, vii., 257 *note*.
 Statues, destruction of, at Constantinople, vi., 409 *sq.*
 Stature, Roman military, ii., 179 and *note*.
 Stauracius, Emperor of Constantinople, v., 192.
 Stefaneschi, Martin [not Ursini], vii., 265.
 Stein, L., on Theodore Gaza, vii., 126 *note*.
Stephanephorus, magistrate of the Chersonites, ii., 218 *note*.
 Stephanie of Hebron, vi., 345 *note*.
 Stephanites and Ichnelates, iv., 363 *note*.
 Stephen III., Pope, mission of, to Lombardy, v., 266.
 Stephen, Count of Blois and Chartres, in first crusade, vi., 280; march to Constantinople, 286; letter of, 290; deserts at Antioch, 303.
 Stephen Dushan, despot of Serbia, receives Cantacuzene, vi., 499; account of, 500 *note*; laws of, *ib.*
 Stephen, Earl of Albemarle, at battle of Antioch, vi., 293 *note*.
 Stephen, freedman of Domitilla, ii., 92.
 Stephen of Edessa, Greek physician of Kobad, iv., 362 *note*.
 Stephen of Hungary, embassy of, to Pope Sylvester, vi., 165 *note*; *sq.* *note*; protects pilgrims, 255.
 Stephen, St., first martyr, body of, removed to Mount Sion, iii., 211 and *note*; Abbey of, near Constantinople, vi., 391; Tower of, on Sea of Marmora, stormed by the Turks, vii., 171 *note*.
 Stephen, son of Romanus I., v., 209.
 Stephen the Savage, favourite of Justinian II., v., 182.
 Stephen Urosh III. of Serbia, vi., 500 *note*.
 Stephens, Robert, error in text of Greek Testament, iv., 90 *note*; vii., 129.
Stigmata of the Crusaders, vi., 273 *note*.
 Stilicho, general of the West, iii., 181; account of, 224 *sq.*; marries Serena, 225; guardian of the sons of Theodosius, 226; marches to Thessalonica, 228; his property confiscated, 230; brings corn from Gaul to supply Rome, 233; expedition to Greece against Alaric, 244 *sq.*; defeats the barbarians in Rætia, 251 and *note*; battle of Pollentia, 253; takes part in the triumph of Honorius at Rome, 257; opposes Radagaisus, 265 *sq.*; treaty with Alaric, 275; adventures, 276 *sq.*; death, 280 and *note*; his memory persecuted, 281 and *notes*.
 Stipulations, iv., 493.
 St. Marc, on Charlemagne, v., 273.
 Stobæus, commonplace book of, vi., 105, *sq.* *note*.
 Stoic philosophy, i., 30.
 Stoics, maxims of the, iv., 508.
 Stonehenge, iv., 146 *note*.
 Stoza, a private soldier, insurrection of, iv., 390 and *notes*.
 Stradiots, Albanian cavalry, vii., 153 *note*.
 Strasburg, destroyed, ii., 273; battle of, 278 *sq.*; destroyed by the Germans, iii., 270.
 Strata, Roman road from Auranitis to Babylonia, iv., 365.
Strategikon, authorship of the, iv., 346 *note*.
 Strategius, Arian Christian, ii., 331 *note*.
 Stratopedarch, Byzantine officer, vi., 82.
 Strigonium, *see* Gran.
 Stritter, John Gotthelf, vi., 129 *note*.

- Strymon, river, ii., 266.
 Stubbs, Bishop, on Franks in Palestine, vi., 316 *note*; on kingdom of Jerusalem, 343 *note*; on the Itinerarium Reg. Ric, 353 *note*.
 Studion, fort of, vii., 171 *note*.
 Studites, *see* Damascenus and Theodore.
 Stuhr, F., on Councils of Pisa and Constance, vii., 100 *note*.
 Stukely, Dr., i., 359 *note*.
 Sturgeons of the Don, vi., 510 and *note*.
 Stutias, *see* Stosa.
 Stylianus Zautzes, minister of Leo VI., v., 206 *note*.
 Suanians, tribe of, iv., 375.
 Suarés, Joseph Maria, vii., 317 *note*.
 Sub-deacons (Rectores), jurisdiction of, v., 37.
 Subregulus, epithet of Charles Martel, v., 266 *note*.
 Subuktigin, *see* Sebectagi.
 Suburbicarian Churches, ii., 327 *note*.
 Subutai, general of Zingis, vii., 9 *note*, 15 *note*.
 Successianus, i., 262.
 Succi, Pass of, ii., 412 and *note*, 414; fortified by Frigeridus, iii., 109 *note*; betrayed by Maurus, 115.
 Sueno, Prince, death of, vi., 278 *note*.
 Suerid, Gothic leader, iii., 100.
 Suetonius, account of the Christians under Nero, ii., 86.
 Suevi, origin of, i., 257; assume the name of Alamanni, *ib.*; in Italy, 258; in Gaul, *ib.*; in Galicia, 349; iv., 11; defeated by Theodoric near Astorga, 12; hold Galicia, 38; conversion of, 77, 94 and *note*, 94.
 Sufetula (Sbaitla), Gregory the Præfect at, v., 461 *note*; taken by Saracens, 462 and *note* *sq.* *note*.
 Suger, Abbé, vi., 330 *note*.
 Suicide, under the Romans, iv., 509.
 Suidas, Lexicon of, iii., 362 *note*; vi., 105 *sq.* *note*.
 Suintila, King of the Visigoths, iv., 299 *note*.
 Suiones, i., 223.
 Sujerass, river, iv., 392 *note*.
 Sulaymān, *see* also Soliman.
 Sulaymān, caliph, conquests of, v., 414 *note*; *see* Soliman.
 Sullecte, receives Belisarius, iv., 281 and *note*.
 Sulpicianus, i., 105 *sq.*
 Sulpicius, Alexander, historian, iii., 178 *note*.
 Sulpicius Severus, *see* Severus.
 Sulpicius, Servius, Roman lawyer, iv., 496 *sq.*
 Sultan, title of, vi., 225 and *note*.
 Sumium, province of, i., 374 *note*.
 Sumnat, pagoda of, vi., 226.
 Sun, worship of, at Rome, i., 145; by the Persians, 200; temple of the, at Emesa, 142, 144; at Rome, 912 and *note*; represented the *Logos*, ii., 439.
 Sunday, ii., 290 and *note*.
 Sunnites, *see* Sonnites.
 Sunno, Frankish prince, iii., 269.
 Super-indictions, ii., 191.
 Superstition, i., 298; ii., 56; iii., 207; its fluctuations, vii., 241 *note*; modern decline of, 308 *note*.
 Surat, Magian religion among the exiles at, v., 489.
 Surenas, Persian general, ii., 494; flight of, 505; in the camp of Julian, 521.
 Surgut on the Sangar, camp of Orthogrul, vii., 23.
 Surmar (Suomar), King of the Alamanni, ii., 283.
 Surnames, uncertainty of, in Later Empire, i., 320 *note*; multiplication of, iii., 206 *note*; v., 219 *sq.*
 Sus, river of Western Africa, v., 465.
 Susa, in Italy, i., 417.
 Susanna, St., Church of, at Rome, on the site of Sallust's Palace, iii., 326 *note*.
 Susneus, *see* Segued.
 Sutri, camp of Barbarossa at, vii., 233 and *note*.
 Sviatopolk, or Svatopluk, vi., 142 *note*.
 Swabia, duchy of, v., 307 *note*.
 Swatoslaus, King of Russia, reign of, vi., 157 and *note*; paganism of, 163.
 Sweden, population of, in fifteenth century, vii., 206 *note*.
 Swedes, engaged in herring fishery on coast of England, vii., 16 *note*.
 Swinburne, Travels in Spain, v., 481 *note*.
 Swiss Cantons, i., 255.
 Switzerland, idolatry in, iv., 421 *note*.
 Sword (Roman), *see* Arms; of Aristotle, i., 338; of Mars, discovered by Attila, iii., 419 *sq.* and *note*; of God (Caled), v., 371.
 Syagrius, son of Ægidius, King of the Franks, reigns over Soissons, iv., 102; extent of his kingdom, *ib.* *note*; defeat of, by Clovis and flight, 103.
 Syagrius, son of Timasius, iii., 364.
 Sybaris, attempt of Belisarius to relieve, iv., 406 and *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Taberites (Tābirids), dynasty of, vi., 52 and *note*.
- Taber (Tāhir), founder of Taberite dynasty, vi., 52 *note*.
- Tāhir, son of Amr, vi., 53 *note*.
- Tai, tribe of, v., 390.
- Taifalæ, Gothic tribe, ii., 264; ally themselves to Fritigern, iii., 106 and *note*.
- Taitsong, Emperor of China, v., 411.
- Tais, town of, i., 204 *note*.
- Talba, bishopric of, v., 129.
- Talents, i., 159 and *note*; Attic, vii., 169 *note*.
- Talmis, Inscription of, v., 164 *note*.
- Tamerlane, *see* Timour.
- Tamsapor, satrap, ii., 265.
- Tana, or Azoph, merchants of, send deputation to Timour, vii., 49; sack of, 50 *note*.
- Tanais, river, battle on, between Huns and Alani, iii., 90.
- Tancred, King of Sicily, vi., 221.
- Tancred, cousin of Bohemond, joins first crusade, vi., 281 *note*; at Constantinople, 290; parentage of, 296 *note*; at Antioch, 303; lenity of, at siege of Jerusalem, 311; defends Antioch, 323.
- Tancred de Hauteville, vi., 184, 186.
- Tang, Chinese dynasty of the, v., 411 and *note*.
- Tangier, Saracens advance to, v., 464.
- Tanjou, chief of the Huns, iii., 82 *sqq.*
- Taormina, *see* Tauromenium.
- Taor, village of, iv., 251 *note*.
- Taprobana (Ceylon), i., 54 and *note*, 326 *note*; ii., 480 and *note*; iv., 232 and *note*; Christianity in, v., 149.
- Tarachus, ii., 136 *note*.
- Taragai, father of Timour, vii., 44 *note*.
- Taranton, city in territory of the Huns, v., 83 *note*.
- Tarantula, bite of, vi., 192 *note*.
- Tarantus, nickname of Caracalla, i., 127 *note*.
- Tarasius, patriarch of Constantinople, v., 190 *note*; crowns Nicephorus, 191 *note*; acknowledges his supremacy, 192 *note*, 276; presides at seventh general council, 277.
- Tarcalissæus, *see* Zeno.
- Tarentum, assaulted by Anastasius, iv., 185; taken by Totila, 409; Constans II. at, v., 177.
- Targetius, ambassador of the Avars, v., 3.
- Targetteers, domestic guards, iii., 8.
- Tarif, Saracen chief in Spain, v., 474.
- Tarik, lieutenant of Mūsā, at Gibraltar, v., 475 and *note*; his treatment of Jews, 478, 482 *sq.*; ill-treated by Mūsā, 480.
- Tarkhan, Prince of Fargana, v., 411.
- Tarquin, posthumous punishments invented by, iv., 509 and *note*.
- Tarquitius, ii., 513 *note*.
- Tarraco, i., 413 *note*.
- Tarragona, province of, i., 19; city of, *ib.*; sacked by the Goths, 256; in fourth century, iii., 345.
- Tarsus, in Cilicia, taken by Sapor, i., 271, 325; Julian at, ii., 486; burial of Julian at, 528 *sq.*; King of Armenia at, iii., 56; reduced by the Saracens, v., 442; siege of, vi., 58; taken by crusaders, 298; restored to the empire, 324.
- Tartartopa, or Tartar gates, iv., 260 *note*.
- Tartary, *see* Scythia.
- Tasillo, Duke of Bavaria, v., 288.
- Tasso, iv., 412 *note*; account of Rinaldo, vi., 281 *note*; sacred grove of, near Sichem, 310 and *note*.
- Tatars, or Tartars, description of, iii., 71 *sqq.*; manners of, 71 and *note*; diet, 72 and *note sq.*; habitations, 74 *sq.*; emigrations of, 75 and *note*; exercises, 76; government, 77 *sqq.* and *notes*; compared to the Huns of Attila, 426; origin of, vii., 3 *note*; under Zingis, *ib.* *sqq.*
- Tatian, præfect of the East, imprisonment and exile of, iii., 218 and *note, sq.*
- Tatullus, of Petovio, accompanies embassy to Attila, iii., 449 *note*; father of Orestes, iv., 47.
- Tauresium, village of, Justinian born at, iv., 205 *note*, 250 *sq. note*.
- Tauri, i., 260.
- Tauris, or Gandzaca, residence of Tiridates, i., 376; Heraclius at, v., 82 and *note*.
- Taurobolia, feast of, ii., 118 *note*.
- Tauromenium, capture of, by Saracens, vi., 39 and *note*.
- Taurus, brazen statue in the square of, vi., 157 and *note*.
- Taurus, philosopher, iv., 474 *note*.
- Taurus, prætorian præfect of Italy, ii., 361; flight of, 412; banished, 423 and *note*.
- Tavernier, v., 81 *note*; description of Kerman, vi., 247 *note*.

Taxation, Romans were exempted from, i., 158; provincial taxation, *ib.*; under Augustus, 160 *sq.*; under Trajan and the Antonines, 164; under Alexander Severus, 165; under Diocletian, 384; under Galerius, 401 *sq.*; under Constantine the Great, ii., 191 *sq.*; landtax, 193 *sq.*; on trade and industry, 198; reduced by Valens, iii., 23; laws of Majorian concerning, iv., 18; under Justinian, 237 *sq.*. See **Tribute**.

Tayef, siege of, by Mahomet, v., 368 and *note*; submits to Mahomet, 370.

Taylor, Mr. Isaac, i., 218 *note*.

Tcheremisses, religion of the, vii., 137 *note*.

Tebeste, modern Tibesh, battle of, iv., 392 and *note*, *sq.* and *note*.

Tecbir, Arabian war cry, v., 429 and *note*.

Tecrit, taken by Timour, ii., 271 and *note*.

Tedardi, on siege of Constantinople, vii., 178 *note*.

Teflis, Heraclius at, v., 87.

Teias, Gothic commander, iv., 413; defeat and death of, 418.

Tekkur, title of Greek princes of Constantinople, vii., 65 *note*.

Tekla, rivulet near Jerusalem, vi., 310 *note*.

Teleki, on the Hunyadys, vii., 148 *note*.

Telemachus, St., iii., 258 and *note*.

Telenissa, mountain of, iv., 74.

Telha, Arabian chief, revolts against Ali, v., 386; death, 387.

Tell Mannas, village of, taken by Raymond of Toulouse, vi., 308 *note*.

Tempe, vale of, iv., 251 *sq.* and *note*.

Templars, knights, foundation of, vi., 316 *note*.

Temple of Elagabalus, i., 145.

Temple of Solomon, *see* Jerusalem.

Temple, Sir William, v., 455 *note*; on the Saracens, vi., 22 *note*; on Timour, vii., 75 *note*; on Scanderbeg and Huniades, 150 *note*.

Temples, pagan, destroyed, ii., 392 *sq.*; in the provinces, iii., 195 *sq.*; Marcellus leads an army to destroy, 197.

Templeman, Dr. (Survey of the Globe), i., 27 *note*.

Temugin, *see* Zingis.

Tencteri, i., 257.

Tenedos, isle of, John Paleologus at, vi., 502.

Teneriff, Mount, i., 25 *note*.

Tephrice, foundation of, vi., 258 and *note*.

Terbelis, the Bulgarian, battles of Constantinople, v., 282; under Justinian II., vi., 235 *note*.

Teredon, city of Assyria, ii., 495 *note*.

Terek, battle of the river, vi., 258 *note*.

Terracina, inscription at, iv., 233 *note*; v., 262 and *note*.

Terrasson, on Roman Jurisprudence, ii., 443 *note*.

Tertullian, De Coronâ, ii., 29 *note*; on the last judgment, 27; his apology, 63 and *note*; Montanist opinions of, 80; describes the reign of Tiberius and M. Antoninus, 228, 341 and *note*; opposes the Paganists, ii., 347 *note*.

Tertullus, Prefect of Rome, ii., 229.

Tervingi, oppose Claudius, i., 258 *note*. See **Thervingi**.

Tesserae (dice), iii., 300 and *note*.

Testament, Greek New, text of, iv., 92; published by Erasmus, *ib.* *note*; text concerning the three witnesses included in, *ib.*

Testaments, law of, iv., 489 *sq.*.

Tetricus, i., 288; reigned in Gaul, 275 *sq.*; defeated by Aurelian, 290; reign, 301 and *note*; at Rome, 320 *sq.*; reinstated, 312.

Teucri, name applied to Turks, vii., 293 *note*.

Teutonic knights, i., 242 *note*; iv., 254.

Thabor, Mount, discussion concerning Divine Light of, vi., 506.

Thacea, battle of, iv., 390 and *note*.

Thadeus de Roma, vii., 223 *note*.

Thais, King of Yemen, ii., 225.

Tha'labites, iv., 364 *note*.

Thaman, *see* Othman.

Thamar, Queen of Iberia, vi., 420 *note*.

Thamud, tribe of, v., 328, 354; caverns of, *ib.* *note*.

Thanet, isle of, iv., 145.

Thapsacus, fords of, ii., 268, 491 *note*.

Theatres, performances in, iii., 306.

Theban legion, ii., 120 *note*; at Hadrianople, 252 *note*.

Thebais, deserts of, Western bishops banished to, ii., 374 *note*; monks of, 376.

Thebarma, or Ormia, city of, v., 83 and *note*.

Thebes (in Boeotia), taken by Roger of Sicily, vi., 212; under Otto de la Roche, 484; under the Accaioli, 485.

- Thebes (in Egypt), kings of, i., 110 *note* ; walls of, ii., 150 and *note*.
- Thecla, sister of the Emperor Michael, v., 203 *note*.
- Theft, Roman law concerning, iv., 500, 503.
- Thegan, biographer of Lewis the Pious, v., 291.
- Theiss, or Tibiscus, river, ii., 216 ; Roman embassy to Attila crosses the, iii., 437.
- Themes, vi., 6 and *note*, 66 *sq.*
- Themistius, his fourth oration, ii., 260 *note*, 397 *note* ; epistle of Julian to, 417 *note* ; his address to Jovian, iii., 4 and *note* ; oration, A.D. 374, 26 *note* ; speech to Valens, 62 *note* ; oration on Theodosius, 130 *note*.
- Theobald, Duke of Spoleto, vi., 172 and *note*.
- Theobald of Champagne, vi., 379.
- Theoctiste, daughter of Emperor Maurice, v., 65.
- Theodatus (Theodahad), reigns in Italy, iv., 182 *note* ; coin of, 188 *note*, 303 *sq.* ; negotiates with Justinian, *ib.* *sq.* ; abdication of, 306 *sq.* ; revolts against Justinian, 307 *sq.* ; death, 310.
- Theodebald, King of the Franks, iv., 420 and *note*.
- Theodebert, King of Austrasia, iv., 157 and *note* ; invades Italy, 328 ; death, 329.
- Theodelinda, *see* Theudelinda.
- Theodemir, Gothic prince, iv., 170 and *note*, 59.
- Theodolphus, Bishop of Orleans, v., 282 *note*.
- Theodora, account of, iv., 212 *sq.* ; belongs to the blue faction, 212 ; wife of Justinian, 214 ; her virtues, 217 *sq.* ; death, 218 ; firmness of, during the Nika riot, 225 ; conspires against John of Cappadocia, 241 ; negotiations with Italian court, 304 *sq.* ; makes Vigilius pope, 321 ; friendship with Antonina, 335 ; accuses her enemies of crime, 505 ; Monophysitism of, v., 137.
- Theodora Angela, wife of Conrad of Montferrat, vi., 388 *note*.
- Theodora, daughter of Constantine IX [VIII.], v., 217 ; empress, 219.
- Theodora, daughter of John Cantacuzene, marries Orchan, vii., 29.
- Theodora, niece of Manuel Comnenus, v., 231.
- Theodora Petrakappa, wife of Michael II. of Epirus, vi., 458 *note*.
- Theodora, *senatrix*, vii., 224 *note*.
- Theodora, sister of Maronia, v., 297.
- Theodora, widow of Baldwin III. of Jerusalem, v., 236.
- Theodora, wife of Constantius, i., 354 *note*, 401.
- Theodora, wife of Emperor Theophilus, v., 198 *note*, 59. ; restorer of images, *ib.* ; regency of, 200 ; opposes Bardas, 203 ; establishes images, 277 ; persecutes the Paulicians, vi., 118.
- Theodora, wife of Justinian II., v., 181.
- Theodore II., son of John Vatatzes, vi., 439.
- Theodore Angelus, despot of Epirus, vi., 421 *note*, 430 ; Emperor of Thessalonica, 431, 438 *note*.
- Theodore Gaza, vii., 124 and *note* ; on Aristotle and Theophrastus, 126.
- Theodore Lascaris I., vi., 396 ; Emperor of Nicsea, 420 and *note* ; character, 455 and *note*.
- Theodore Lascaris II., reign of, vi., 458 *sq.* ; writings of, 459 *note*.
- Theodore, monk of Tarsus, made Primate of Britain, v., 143 *note*.
- Theodore of Mopsuestia, v., 137 and *note*.
- Theodore of Studion, v., 190 *note* ; banished, 192 *note* ; iconoclast, 277 *note*.
- Theodore Paleologus son of the elder Andronicus, vi., 489 *note*.
- Theodore, tortured under Emperor Theophilus, v., 278.
- Theodoret, ii., 467 *note*, 469 *note* ; sacred legend of, iv., 75.
- Theodoret, Bishop of Cyrrhus, iii., 197 ; epistles of, 411 *note* ; restored, v., 138.
- Theodoric I., son of Alaric, King of the Visigoths, iii., 450 and *note* ; besieges Arles, *ib.* ; account of, 452 ; daughters of, married to the Kings of the Suevi and Vandals, *ib.* ; allies himself with the Romans, 460 and *note*, 59. ; death, 464.
- Theodoric II., King of Visigoths, iii., 461 ; acquires Narbonne, iv., 38.
- Theodoric, son of Clovis, iii., 467 *note* ; conquers Auvergne, iv., 134.
- Theodoric, son of Triarius, iv., 174 *note* ; attacks Theodoric, 175.
- Theodoric the Ostrogoth, account of, by Sidonius, iv., 9 *sq.* ; expedition to Spain, 11 *sq.* ; defeats the Suevi, 12 ; sacks Pollentia and Astorga, *ib.* ; defeated by Majorian, 21 ; allies

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Theophanes, the chronicler, i., 180 *note*; ii., 301 *note*; iv., 387 *note*, 493 *note*; on Constantine VI., v., 191 and *note*, 402 *note*.
- Theophanes, tortured under Emperor Theophilus, v., 278.
- Theophania, widow of the younger Romanus, vi., 58.
- Theophano, daughter of Romanus II., wife of Otto II., v., 211 and *note*; vi., 88.
- Theophano, wife of Leo V., v., 194.
- Theophano, wife of Romanus II., v., 211; marries Nicephoros II., 212; conspires against him, 213; dismissed by John Zimisces, 214 *note*.
- Theophilus, Archbishop of Alexandria, ii., 325 *note*; destroyed the temple of Serapis, iii., 200; persecutes Chrysostom, 377 *sq.*; escape of, 378; his book against Chrysostom, 380 *note*.
- Theophilus, author of Justiniani Vita, iv., 205 *note*, 208 *note*.
- Theophilus, Bishop of Antioch, ii., 29, 248 *note*.
- Theophilus, consular of Syria, death, ii., 250.
- Theophilus, Maronite of Mount Libanus, vi., 33 *note*.
- Theophilus, missionary to the Sabæans, ii., 313 and *note*.
- Theophilus, son of Michael the Stammerer, Emperor of Constantinople, v., 196 *sqq.*; iconoclasm of, 278; war of, with Motassem, vi., 44 *sqq.*; his embassy to Lewis, 147; walls of, vii., 174 *note*.
- Theophilus, the jurist, iv., 452, 470; vi., 102.
- Theophobus, Sassanid prince, v., 198.
- Theophrastus, Dialogue, date of composition of the, iv., 91 *note*.
- Theophrastus, disciples of, 262; exile of, 265 *note*; account of the Romans, 445 *note*; study of, by Theodore Gaza, vii., 126.
- Theophylactus, father-in-law of Alberic, vii., 224 *note*.
- Theophylactus Simocatta, iv., 352 *note*, v., 6 *note*; on speech of Justin, 16 *note*; on Hormuz, 43 *note*; History of Maurice, 59 *note*.
- Theopolis, iv., 367; *see* Antioch.
- Theopolis, village or castle of, iii., 355 *note*.
- Theopompus, vi., 106.
- Theotocos, title of the Virgin, v., 112 *note*.
- Therapsion, fort of, taken by the Turks, vii., 171 *note*.
- Therapeutæ, ii., 60 and *note*; studied philosophy, 336 *note*; Christianity of, iv., 57 *note*.
- Therianos, on revival of learning in Italy, vii., 117 *note*.
- Thermæ, *see* under Rome, Baths of.
- Thermantia, niece of Theodosius, iii., 225 *note*.
- Thermantia, wife of Honorius, divorce of, iii., 281.
- Thermopylæ, Strata of, fortified by Justinian, iv., 252.
- Thervingi, *see* under Goths.
- Theseus, Duke of Athens, character in Shakespeare, Boccaccio, and Chaucer, vi., 484 *note*.
- Thessalonica, siege of, i., 288; headquarters of Theodosius, iii., 123; revolt at, 172 *sqq.*; massacre at, 173; magazine of arms at, 247; captured by Saracens, A.D. 904, v., 206 *note*; sacked by the Sicilians, 240; play on the name, 443 *note*; Bulgarian siege of, vi., 428; kingdom united to Nice, 438 and *note*; Cantacuzene at, 499; importance of, in the empire, 502 *note*; John Palæologus at, 504; under Andronicus Palæologus, vii., 98; conquest of, by Amurath II., 139 and *note*.
- Thessaly, province of, ceded to the Bulgarians, vi., 131; Wallachian, in fourteenth century, 502 *note*.
- Theudechildis, sister of Theodebert, iv., 157.
- Theudelinda, daughter of Garibald, King of Bavaria, converts the Lombards, iv., 95; marries Autharis, v., 28.
- Theudes, King of the Goths in Spain, expedition of, to Africa, iv., 298; death, 299 and *note*; kinsman of Hildibald, 394.
- Theudibert of Metz, iv., 408 *note*.
- Theurgy, of the Platonists, ii., 439.
- Theveste, *see* Tebosta.
- Thibaut, Count of Champagne, general of the confederate crusaders, vi., 385; death, *ib.*
- Thibet, kingdom of, destroyed by Cublai Khan, vii., 12.
- Thilsaphata, ii., 524 and *note*.
- Thilutha, fortress of, ii., 494.
- Thomas, a Greek noble, v., 423 *sq.*; exile of, 426.
- Thomas, apostle, apocryphal gospel of, v., 341.

Thomas of Stromoncourt, territory of, in Greece, vi., 418 *note*.

Thomas, Patriarch of Antioch, vi., 121 *note*.

Thomas, St., Christians of, in India, v., 150 *sq.*

Thomas, St., Manichean, Indian missionary, v., 150 and *note*.

Thomas the Slavonian, officer of Leo V., v., 193 and *note*; rebels against Michael II., 195 *sq.* and *note*.

Thomassin, on Monasticism, iv., 57 *note*; on the Roman Cardinals, 239 *note*.

Thor, cave of, v., 355.

Thoros, Armenian prince, vi., 298 and *note*.

Thous, Malek Shah at, vi., 244.

Thrace, Province of, i., 23; invaded by the Goths, 290; settlement of Bastarnæ in, 333; of Sarmatians, ii., 220; invaded by the Visigoths, iii., 59; Goths settled in, 95; gold mines of, 102 and *note*; given to Theodosius, 119; settlement of the Goths in, 129; ravaged by the Huns, 425.

Thracea, i., 80.

Thrasimund, King of the African Vandals, persecutes the Catholics, iv., 83; exiles the bishops, 85; marries sister of Theodoric, 299.

Three Chapters, dispute concerning, v., 137 *note*.

Thuasne, L., on Bellini and Mohammed, II., vii., 161 *note*.

Thucydides, on the plague at Athens, iv., 437 and *note*.

Thule, iv., 184 and *note*; name of England, vi., 150; colony from, serve in Greek army, 198, 323 *note*.

Thundering Legion, story of the, ii., 109 and *note*.

Thuringia, under the rule of Attila, iii., 421; boundaries of the kingdom of, iv., 104 *note*.

Thuringians, at the battle of Châlons, iii., 463; cruelty of, to the Franks, 467 and *note*.

Thuroczius, historian of Hungary, vii., 6 *note*.

Thyatira, church of, ii., 58; battle of, iii., 16 and *note*.

Thyrsus, church of St., iii., 385 *note*.

Thysdrus, city of, i., 174 and *note*.

Tiara, crown of the Popes, vii., 283 *note*.

Tiber, river, inundations of, vii., 307 *sq.*

Tiberias, residence of the Jewish patriarch, ii., 454 and *note*; Mūsā at, v., 483; siege and battle of, vi., 344.

Tiberius I., i., 32 and *note*, 72 *note*; adoption by Augustus, 73, 81; character, 79; places camp of the prætorians in Rome, 104; reduces the excise, 162 *note*; alleged edict in favour of the Christians, ii., 109.

Tiberius II., sends embassy to the Turks, iv., 356; reign, v., 16 *sq.*; virtues of, 17 *sq.*; selects Maurice for the empire, 19; relieves Rome, 21; truce with Persia, 41.

Tiberius III., *see* Apsimar.

Tiberius, brother of Constantine Pogonatus, made Augustus by him, v., 178.

Tiberius, son of Justinian II., v., 183.

Tibet, Buddhists of, form friendship with the Saracens, v., 414 *note*.

Tibur, or Tivoli, town of, i., 311; Totila at, iv., 396; war of, with Rome, vii., 225 *note*; subdued by Rome, 237 and *note*.

Ticinum, or Pavia, Stilicho at, iii., 265; siege of, by Alboin, v., 11.

Tigranocerta, i., 375 *note*.

Tigranes, i., 209 *note*.

Tigris, Julian crosses the, ii., 503; navigation of the, 509 *sq.* *note*.

Til, or Tula, river, iv., 352 and *note*.

Tillemont, M. de, i., 126 *note*, 183 *note*; life of Chrysostom, iii., 374 *note*; of St. Augustin, 406 *note*; shocked at certain Popes, v., 130 *note*; Gibbon "takes leave for ever of," 132 *note*.

Timasius, master-general, iii., 274; attempts of, to reform the legions, 181; defeats the Goths in Thessaly, 363; character, *ib.* and *note*; exile and death, 364 and *note*.

Timavus, described by Virgil, i., 184.

Timolaus, i., 304 *note*.

Timosthenes, Greek historian, iv., 373 *note*.

Timotheus of Gaza, tragedy of, iv., 235 *note*.

Timothy, St., body of, brought to Constantinople, iii., 209.

Timothy the Cat, a monk, Patriarch of Alexandria, v., 127 and *note*.

Timour or Tamerlane, iii., 78 *note*; massacres of, 427 *note*; histories concerning, vii., 42 and *note*; derivation of name Timour, 43 *note*; account of, 43 *sq.* and *notes*; reign

vars, 46 *sqq.*; conquers Persia, Turkestan, 48; invasion of, 54 *sq.*; sacks Aleppo, 55; takes Anatolia, 57 *sq.*; his conquests, 65 *sq.*; enters China, 68; his character, *ib.* *sq.*; his relations, 71.

Tangier, i., 26; v., 465.

Tangis (Mauritania), i., 26.

Tangis, maritime colony of Mauritania,

see at, iv., 90, *sq.* and notes.

Tangis, on restoration of Greek king in Italy, vii., 117 note, 128

Tangis, King of Armenia, imprisoned at, iii., 53 and note.

Tangis, son of Chosroes, King of

Armenia, i., 366 *sqq.*; educated at

Armenia, *ib.*; invasion of Assyria,

defeated by Narses, 370; re-

turned, 375; converted to Chris-

tianity, ii., 226; death, *ib.*

Tangis, Tythes.

Tangis, Augustus, i., 70; and surnames

of Roman nobles, iii., 296; of

imperial family of Byzantium,

9.

73.

Tangis, Tibur.

Tangis, residence of the Mongol

king, vii., 17.

Tangis, Khan of Kipsak, vii., 48

note; flight and death, 49.

Tangis, King of the Turkmans, vi.,

reign and character, 232 *sqq.*

Tangis, chief of the Karaites, vii., 3

Tangis, 437 and note.

Tangis, battle of, iv., 105 and note.

Tangis, Council of, iv., 95; eighth

council of, *ib.* note, 97; Tarik at,

17 and note.

Tangis, in the Roman Empire,

Tangis, i., 28 *sq.*; philosophical,

official, 31; in the provinces,

at Rome, *ib.*; of paganism,

19.

Tangis, name for Pragg, vi., 275

1., 296 note.

Tangis, list of, iii., 498 note.

Tangis and Samoyedes, iii., 81.

Tangis, destroyed by the Germans, ii.,

Tangis, Julian at, 281; pillaged by

Tangis, Huns, iii., 458; subdued by

Tangis, iv., 104; confounded with

Tangis, *ib.* note.

Tangis, kingdom of, conquered by

Tangis, vii., 22.

Tangis, Toussou, iv., 66 and note; v., 416 note.

Tangis, Topa, name assumed by the Siempi, iii., 262.

Tangis, Toparch of Gothia, notes of the Greek, vi., 164 note.

Tangis, Topirus, siege of, by the Slavonians, iv., 348 and note.

Tangis, Torismund, King of the Visigoths, iii., 461; in the battle of Chalons, 466

note; declared king, 466; put to

death by his brother Theodoric, iv.,

9 and note.

Tangis, Torjok, Subutai the Mongol general at,

vii., 15 note.

Tangis, Torr, Mr. C., on Rhodes, v., 443 note.

Tangis, Tortona, sedition in the Roman camp at, iv., 24.

Tangis, Torture, use of, ii., 189 and notes.

Tangis, Tosti, L., History of the Council of

Constantine, vii., 200 note.

Tangis, Totila, King of the Goths in Italy, iv.,

395; his name, *ib.* note; reduces

Naples, 396; character of, 397;

besieges Rome, 400 *sqq.*; takes

Rome, 403; orations of, 404; re-

covered by Belisarius, 405; enters

Rome a second time, 408; in Sicily,

409; attacks coast of Greece, 410;

battle of Tagina, 414; death, 416;

did not injure buildings of Rome,

vii., 309.

Tangis, Tott, Baron de, on defence of the Dar-

danelles, vi., 3 note; vii., 170 note;

on Turkish navy, 181 note.

Tangis, Toucush, brother of the Sultan, Malek

Shah, vi., 296.

Tangis, Toulouse, residence of the Gothic kings,

iii., 350; attacked by Litorius, 451;

Saracens at, vi., 13; Inquisition of,

124 *sq.* note.

Tangis, Toulun, conqueror of Tartary, see

Shelun.

Tangis, Toulunides (Tulunids), dynasty of, vi.,

54 and note.

Tangis, Touran, kingdom of the Turks, iv., 357.

Tangis, Touran (Türân) Shah, Sultan of Egypt,

vi., 361.

Tangis, Tournament, vi., 282.

Tangis, Tournay, taken by the Germans, iii.,

270; by the Franks, 454.

Tangis, Tournafort, ii., 142 note; iv., 255 note;

v., 81 note; on Heraclea, vi., 36

note; his map of the Bosphorus, vii.,

164 note.

Tangis, Tours, second Council of, iv., 149 note;

Abderame at, vi., 14; battle of, 17.

Tangis, Toubi [Töbi], son of Zingis Khan, vii.,

20 and note; sons of, 48 note.

Tangis, Towns, walled, origin of, vi., 149.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Tritheism, ii., 345 *sq.* *note*.
 Triumph, the last at Rome, i., 376 *sq.*
 Trnovo, inscription of Omortag at, vi., 134 *note*; cathedral of, inscription of Asen, King of Bulgaria, vi., 433 *note*.
 Troas, aqueduct of Herodes Atticus at, i., 45.
 Troina, battle of, vi., 177; fortress of, 191; siege of, 192.
 Trowsers (*braccæ*), i., 311 *note*.
 Troy, ii., 145.
 Troyes, i., 362; threatened by the Huns and saved by St. Lupus, iii., 458.
 Truce, annual of the Arabs, v., 324 and *note*.
 Truce of God (*Treuga Dei*), i., 230; vi., 264 and *note*.
 Truli, name given to Goths in Spain, iii., 348 *note*.
 Trumpet, Barbarian, iii., 100 and *note*; Roman, iv., 318 *note*.
 Tryphon, Jewish writer, v., 97 *note*.
 Tsepho, grandson of Esau, ii., 74 *note*.
 Tubero, Roman lawyer, iv., 467 *note*.
 Tudela, Benjamin of, vi., 74 and *note*.
 Tuka Timur, Khan of Great Bulgaria, vii., 48 *note*; house of, 50 *note*.
 Tuli, son of Zingis Khan, vii., 10.
 Tūlūnids, *see* Toulunides.
 Tumen, King of the Turks, iv., 350 *note*.
 Tunis, Latin Christians at, v., 491; taken by Roger of Sicily, vi., 211; siege of, by Louis IX., 362.
 Turcilingi, iv., 47.
 Turin, battle of, i., 418; Attila at (?), iii., 469; siege of, iv., 166 *note*.
 Turisund, King of the Gepidæ, v., 5.
 Turkestan, expedition of Alp Arslan into, vi., 242; conquered by Malek Shah, 244; by Timour, vii., 48.
 Turks, origin and description of, iv., 349 *sqq.*; religion and laws of, 351; conquests of, *ib.* *sqq.*; embassy to Constantinople, 354 *sq.*; conquests of, in the East, v., 226; earliest inscription of the, 415 *note*; in Bagdad, vi., 47; in Persia, 224 *sqq.*; manners and emigration of, 229 *sqq.*; called Turkmen, 232 *note*; invade the empire, 235 *sq.*; Gelalæan æra of, 246 and *note*; conquest of Asia Minor, 248 *sq.*; take Jerusalem, 251; in Egypt, 306 *sq.*; seat of government at Iconium, 324 and *note*; conquest of Egypt, 336 *sqq.* For Ottoman Turks, *see* Ottomans.
 Turks or Magyars, *see* Magyars.
 Turpilio, general of Honorius, iii., 285.
 Turpin, Archbishop of Rheims, vi., 263 and *note*.
 Turtullian, iv., 450 *sq.*
 Tuscans, produced the first *Haruspices*, iii., 196 *note*.
 Tuscany, marquises of, Roman See in subjection to, v., 297.
 Tusculum, counts of, hold the See of Rome in subjection, v., 297; their titles, vii., 224 *note*; Clement III. gives to the Romans, 229 *note*; overthrown, 237; battle of, 238; partly belonged to the Colonna, 250.
 Tutela, in Roman law, iv., 483.
 Twelve Tables, laws of the, iv., 444 *sqq.*; severity of, 497.
 Tyana, siege of, i., 305, 324; Jovian at, iii., 5; taken by the Saracens, v., 182 *note*; vi., 7.
 Type of Constans, v., 141.
 Tyrant, in sense of *usurper*, i., 275.
 Tyrants, the Thirty, i., 274 *sqq.*; of Britain, iii., 355 and *note*.
 Tyre, council of, ii., 365; recovered by Afdal, vi., 307 and *note*; emir of, helps crusaders, 308; taken by the Franks, 314 and *note*; besieged by Richard I., 347; lost by the Franks, 363.
 Tythes, ii., 48; instituted by Charlemagne, v., 286 and *note*; Saladine tenth, vi., 354 and *note*.
 Tsangra, cross-bow, vi., 297 *note*.
 Tzechi, tribe of, v., 57 and *note*; vi., 326.
 Tzetzes, Isaac, vi., 106 *note*.
 Tzetzes, John, iv., 243 and *note*; Chiliads of, 430 *note*; vi., 105; other works of, 106 *note*; on death of Moursoûfê, 420 *note*.
 Trympe, fortress of, taken by the Ottomans, vii., 30 *note*.
 UBERTINUS Pusculus, vii., 176 *note*.
 Ubiî of Cologne, i., 219 *note*.
 Ugernum, near Arles, assembly at, declares Avitus emperor, iv., 9 and *note*.
 Ugri, or Hungarians, vi., 139 *sq.*
 Ukraine, Goths in, i., 260.
 Uldin, King of the Huns, defeats Gainas the Goth, iii., 373; his rearguard extirpated, 384.
 Uljâi-Tu, Khan of Persia, vii., 22 *note*.
 Ulphilas, apostle of the Goths, account of, iv., 76 *sq.*; his translation of the Scriptures, 76 *note*; Arianism of, 81 *note*.

- Arian heresy, 24; assists the Iberians, 54; Gothic war, 59 *sqq.*; resides at Antioch, 93 *sq.*; settles the Visigoths in Thrace, 95; at Constantinople, 109; defeated at the battle of Hadrianople, 111 *sq.*; death, 112.
- Valens, Bishop of Illyricum, professes Arianism, ii., 354; epistles of, 370 *note*.
- Valens, general of the Dalmatian legions, escapes, iii., 314; in the Gothic camp, 319; deserts to Attalus, *ib.*
- Valens, made Cæsar by Licinius, i., 431; death, 432.
- Valens, usurper in Achaia, i., 275 *sq.*
- Valentia, city of, Constantine besieged in, iii., 273; destroyed by the Goths, 344; colony of Alani at, 449 and *note*; reduced by Abd al-Aziz, 481.
- Valentia, province in Britain, iii., 45 and *note*.
- Valentin, general, despatched to the East by Heraclius, v., 175.
- Valentin, guard of Justinian, iv., 353.
- Valentinian I., law against deserters, ii., 180 *note*; character, iii., 7 *sq.*; divides the empire, 10; cruelty of, 19 *sq.*; bears of, 20; administration, 21 *sq.*; institutes *defensors*, 22; religious toleration, 23; edict against the clergy, 28 and *note*; war with the Alamanni, 33 *sqq.*; invades Germany, 37; sends Palladius to Africa, 47; war with the Sarmatians, 62 *sqq.*; enters Sirmium, 64; death, 66 and *note*.
- Valentinian II., Emperor, iii., 67; rules in Italy, Africa and Western Illyricum, 140; expelled by Maximus, 162; restored by Theodosius, 177; character, 178; death, 179.
- Valentinian III., Emperor of the West, edict of, concerning the annual consumption of Rome, iii., 303, 397 and *note*; reduces the tribute of Numidia and Mauritania, 409 *note*; flight to Rome, 472; peace with Attila, 473; puts Actius to death, 476 *sq.*
- Valentinians, sect of the, ii., 14; persecuted, 331, 472; theory on the nature of Christ, v., 103 *note*.
- Valentola, surrendered by Theodemir to the Saracens, v., 481.
- Valeria, daughter of Diocletian, i., 354 *note*; fate of, 427 *sq.*; embraces Christianity, ii., 117.
- Valeria, province of, i., 422 *note*; governed by Marcellinus, iii., 62 and *note*.
- Valerian, brings army to the relief of Rome, iv., 322.
- Valerian, censor, i., 227; Emperor, 252 and *note*; associates Gallienus, 253; wall of, 265 *note*; expedition to the East, 269; capture of, 270, 272 *sq.*; conduct towards the Christians, ii., 114.
- Valerianus, P. Licinius Cornelius, son of Gallienus, i., 254 *note*; death, 256 *note*.
- Valerius Flaccus, on the Opplan law, iv., 478 *note*.
- Valerius, name assumed by Diocletian, i., 350 *note*.
- Valet, title of, vi., 387 *note*.
- Valla, Laurentius, grammarian, iv., 466 *note*; v., 275 and *note*; Latin interpreter, vii., 121.
- Valle, della, Roman family of, vii., 319.
- Valle, Pietro della, ii., 302 *note*; iv., 377 *note*; on ruins of Assyria, v., 408 *note*.
- Vallio, Count, death, lii., 138.
- Valturio, Robert, his *de Re Militari*, vii., 160 *note*.
- Valvassors*, order of, at Rome, v., 303 and *note*; or *bannetts*, in diocese of Coutances, vi., 184.
- Vámbéry, A., History of Bokhārā, v., 413 *note*.
- Van Dale, *de Consecratione Principum*, i., 68 *note*.
- Vandale, physician, ii., 466 *note*.
- Vandals, in Germany, i., 234 *note*, 242 and *note*, 295 *note*; settle in Britain, 333; ally themselves with the Sarmatians, ii., 217; invade Italy, iii., 262; defeated by the Franks, lii., 269; in Gaul and Spain, 346; defeated by Wallia, 349; take Seville and Carthagens, 400; in Africa, 401 *sqq.*; maritime power, iv., 1; plunder Rome, 5 *sqq.* and *notes*; on the coasts of the Mediterranean, 27; their conversion, 77; persecute the African Christians, 82 *sqq.*; number of, under Gelimer, 282; fate of, 289 *sqq.*; become extinct in Africa, 294; revolt of, in Africa, 389; complete disappearance of, 393; effect of their capture on the buildings of Rome, vii., 309.
- Vannes, diocese of, subdued by the Britons of Armorica, iv., 150.
- Vapincum, ii., 243 *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Verus, Ailius, i., 75.
 Verus the Younger, i., 76.
 Ves, Russian tribe, vi., 151 *note*.
 Vespasian, i., 44, 66 *note*, 73 *sq.* and *note*; discovery of his *lex de imperio*, vii., 261 and *note*.
 Vespasiana, alleged province in Scotland, i., 5 *note*.
 Vestals, i., 113; iii., 189 and *note*.
 Veterans, lands bestowed on, ii., 180 and *note*.
 Vetrico, governor of Illyricum, assumes the purple, ii., 234 and *note*; deposed and exiled by Constantius, 237.
 Vettius, celebrated Roman augur, iii., 479 *note*.
 Vexin, Count of, title of King of France, vi., 330 *note*.
 Vézelay, Parliament of, St. Bernard at, vi., 333.
 Via Casaris, suburb of Ravenna, iii., 260 *note*.
 Vicars or vice-præfects, ii., 170 and *note*.
 Vicennalia, festival of the, i., 376 and *note*.
 Vicenza, destroyed by Attila, iii., 468.
 Victor, African bishop, his history of the African persecution, iv., 91.
 Victor, Aurelius, ii., 232 *note*; præfect of the city, 397 *note*.
 Victor (Flavius), son of Maximus, death of, iii., 166 and *note*.
 Victor, the Sarmatian, Julian's general of infantry, ii., 492; at Maogamalcha, 498; wounded, 505; general of Valens against the Goths, iii., 60; with Arintheus arranges peace with the Goths, 61; retreat of, at Hadrianople, 113.
 Victor Vitensis, History of the Vandalic persecution, iii., 406 *note*; iv., 84 *note*.
 Victor (the Younger), historian, ii., 203 *note*, 246 *note*.
 Victoria, mother of Victorinus i., 275, 301 and *note*.
 Victorianus, proconsul and martyr, iv., 87 *note*.
 Victorinus, associate of Posthumus, i., 275; death, 300 and *note*.
 Victors, veteran band of the, in Britain, iii., 45.
 Victory, statue and altar of, iii., 190 and *note*; banished by Gratian, 191; restorations solicited by Symmachus, *ib.*
 Victovali, i., 234 *note*.
 Vicus Helena, town of, Clodion defeated by Aëtius at, iii., 454 and *note*.
 Vienna (Vienne), ii., 399; Julian at, 406; Valentinian II. at, iii., 179; Constantine besieged in, 273; taken by Clovis, iv., 111.
 Vienna, Theodoric born at, iv., 129.
 Viennensis, one of the Seven Provinces, iii., 356 *note*.
 Vigena, river or *Vienne*, iv., 116.
 Vigilantia, mother of Justinian, iv., 209 *note*, 215.
 Vigilantius (presbyter), iii., 210 *note*.
 Vigilantius, general of Honorius, iii., 285.
 Vigilius, deacon, made Pope, iv., 301; accused of exile of Sylvester, 307 *note*; sends Sicilian corn to Rome, 400 and *note*; apostasy of, v., 138.
 Vigilius, interpreter sent with embassy to Attila, iii., 434; interview with Attila, 499; his conspiracy against Attila, 442.
 Vigilius of Thapsus, dialogue of, iv., 89 and *note*.
 Vignoles, M. des, on date of fire in Nero's reign, vii., 306 *note*.
 Viliaris, a Gothic warrior, iv., 396 *note*.
 Villages, in Russia and Poland, iv., 345 *note*; authorities upon, *ib.*
 Villains, or serfs, in Syria, vi., 381.
 Villani, John, on the revolution of A.D. 1328 at Rome, vii., 241 *note*.
 Villani, Matthew, history of, vi., 505 *note*.
 Villas, of the Merovingians, iv., 130 and *note*.
 Villehardouin, Geoffrey de, joins fourth crusade, vi., 379; origin of name of, *ib.* *note*; compared to Nicetas, 407; Marshal of Romania, 418; retreats before the Bulgarians, 425.
 Villehardouin, William, Prince of Achaia, captivity of, vi., 439 and *note*.
 Viminacium, i., 128 *note*; destroyed by the Huns, iii., 424.
 Vindonissa, battle of, i., 362; ruins of, iv., 104 and *note*.
 Vine, cultivation of the, i., 52 and *note*.
 Virgil, fourth eclogue of, ii., 307 and *note*; sixth eclogue of, 479 *note*; ninth eclogue of, iii., 351 and *note*; mention of silk by, iv., 228; mentions suicides, 509 and *note*; as a magician, vii., 322 *note*.
 Virtha, or Tecrit, Arabian fortress, besieged by Sapor, ii., 272 and *note*.

- Wallia, King of the Goths, allies himself with Rome, iii., 348; death, 450.
- Wallus, or Cambrius, iv., 255 *note*.
- Walter de Brienne, Duke of Athens, vi., 484; death, 485.
- Walter de Polesy, uncle of Walter the Penniless, vi., 274 *note*.
- Walter the Penniless, vi., 274; in Asia Minor, 276.
- Walther, on Roman law, iv., 442 *note*.
- Wangkhan, *see* Prester John.
- War, rights of, iv., 330 *note*.
- Warburton on Julian, ii., 457.
- Warna, *see* Varna.
- Warnefrid, Paul, on the Lombards, iv., 343 *note*; v., 22 *note*; on defeat of the Saracens, vi., 17 *note*.
- Waters, Prince of the, Persian title, iv., 360 and *note*.
- Watson, Dr., vi., 10 *note*.
- Waywode, *see* Voivode.
- Wei-liu, Chinese document, iv., 229 *note*.
- Wellhausen, on fall of Mecca, v., 368 *note*.
- Wells, in Persia, iv., 360 *note*.
- Weltin, vision of, v., 284 *note*.
- Wends or Slavonians, iv., 296 *note*.
- Wenzel, son of Charles IV., v., 309 *note*.
- Werdan, general of Heraclius, v., 421 and *note*.
- Wharton, Thomas, Mr., History of English Poetry, iv., 152 *note*.
- Wheat, price of, ii., 84 *note*; fixed by Julian, 484.
- Whitaker, i., 129 *note*; his History of Manchester, iii., 41 *note*; iv., 144 *note*; on English language, 153 *note*.
- White and black*, meaning of, in Turkish language, vii., 32.
- White Horde, vii., 48 *note*.
- White Huns, iii., 87 *sq.*
- White, Mr., Arabic professor at Oxford, vi., 15 *note*; institutions of Timour translated by, vii., 42 *note*.
- Wibald of Corvei, Abbot, vi., 330 *note*.
- Wibert, his Life of Leo IX., vi., 181 *note*.
- Widimir, brother of Theodoric the Ostrogoth, iv., 170 and *note*.
- Wilfrid, Anglo-Saxon bishop, iv., 154 and *note*; at the Lateran synod, v., 143 *note*.
- William I., King of Sicily (the Bad), vi., 218 *sq.*
- William II., of Sicily (the Good), vi., 217, 219.
- William, Count of Apulia, vi., 277, 279; divides the conquests with Rainulf and Waimar, 179 *note*; death, 209.
- William of Malmesbury, on first crusade, vi., 293 *note*.
- William of Nogaret, vii., 243.
- William of Tyre, error of, vi., 252 *note*; knowledge of antiquity of, 297 *note*.
- William, Viscount of Melun, flight of, at Antioch, vi., 303.
- Wimpfen, i., 331.
- Winchester, Roman, Gynaecium at, ii., 186 *note*.
- Windmills, introduced into Europe by the crusaders, vi., 444 *note*.
- Wine, public distribution of, at Rome, iii., 303; scarcity of, 304 and *note*.
- Wingfield, Sir Robert, ambassador of Henry VIII., vii., 289 *note*.
- Wisdom of Solomon, published by the Alexandrian Jews, ii., 397 and *note*.
- Wisumar, Vandal King of the Goths, ii., 219.
- Witobcraft and Witches, iii., 17; in Lombard code of laws, v., 30.
- Withioab, son of Vadomair, murder of, iii., 34.
- Withimer, King of the Goths, war against the Huns and Alani, iii., 92.
- Witiking (Widukind), Saxon chief, v., 293 and *note*.
- Witiking (Widukind), Saxon monk, iv., 145 *note*.
- Witiza, King of the Goths in Spain, iv., 142; v., 473.
- Woden, god of war, iv., 147.
- Wolodomir, Grand Duke of Russia, v., 211; sends auxiliaries against Phocas, 216 *note*; vi., 89; baptism of, 163; marries Princess Anne, *ib.*; date of, 164 *note*.
- Wolodomir, province of, *see* Moscow.
- Women, position among Romans, i., 149; among the Germans, 227 *sq.*; among the Mahometans, v., 351; how regarded legally, iv., 477.
- Woodward, W. H., vii., 117 *note*.
- World, date of creation of, ii., 23 and *note*; conflagration of, 25 *sq.*
- Worms, destroyed, ii., 273; murders at, in tenth century, vi., 268; massacre of the Jews at, 274.
- Worship, public, solid foundation of religion, iii., 207.
- Wotton's Reflections on Ancient and Modern Learning, v., 455 *note*; vi., 32 *note*.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Zeid**, slave of Mahomet, v., 343, 352; standard bearer at Muta, 371.
- Zeineb**, wife of Mahomet, v., 377 *note*.
- Zeinuddin** (Zayn ad-Din) Ādhi, vi., 334.
- Zeirides**, Saracen dynasty in Africa, vi., 211.
- Zeitun Burnou**, near the Golden Gate, vii., 182 *note*.
- Zelator Italiae**, title, vii., 268.
- Zemlin**, *see* Semlin.
- Zemsa**, holy well of Mecca, v., 317, 328.
- Zend language**, i., 198 *note*.
- Zendavesta**, or Bible of the Ghebers, i., 197, 201.
- Zendecan**, battle of, vi., 231.
- Zenghi**, Governor of Aleppo, vi., 335.
- Zenia** or **Zenastan**, Armenian name for China, i., 368 *note*.
- Zenobia**, queen of Palmyra, i., 275, 277, 288; defeated by Aurelian, 292; character and reign, 302 *sqq.*; protects Paul of Samosata, ii., 116.
- Zenobius**, i., 312 *note*.
- Zeno**, Emperor, restored, iv., 51; husband of Ariadne, 172, 254; Henoticon of, v., 128 and *note*.
- Zeno**, Bishop of Maiuma, ii., 470 *note*.
- Zeno**, orator, iv., 244.
- Zephaniah**, prophecy of, iii., 117.
- Zeugma**, passage of the Euphrates, ii., 489 *note*.
- Zeuxippus**, baths of, ii., 153 and *note*.
- Zhebu**, the chagan of the Khazars, v., 87 *note*.
- Zichidae**, vii., 140 *note*.
- Ziebel**, Prince of the Chozars, v., 87.
- Zimisce**, John, the Armenian, v., 211 *note*; Typikon of, 212 *note*, *sq.*; account of, *ib. sqq.*; eastern conquests, vi., 58 *sqq.*; settles the Paulicians in Thrace, 121 and *note*; conquers Eastern Bulgaria, 136 *note*; his name, 160 *note*; takes Marcianopolis, 160; triumph of, 161.
- Zingis Khan**, iii., 71 *note*, 78 and *note*, 419 and *note*; slays the Chinese, 426 *sq.*; account of, vii., 1 *sqq.*; birth and race, 2 and *note*; etymology of name Zingis, 3 *note*; laws of, 3 *sq.* and *note*; religion of, 4; invades China, 6 *sq.*; conquers Carisme, Transoxiana and Persia, 8 *sq.*; his strategical ability, *ib. note*; return and death of, 10; children and successors of, *ib. sq.*
- Zizais**, chief of the Sarmatians, ii., 265.
- Zobeide**, wife of Harun Al-Rashid, v., 82 *note*.
- Zobeir**, Arabian chief, supported by insurgents of Kufa, v., 385 and *note*; revolts against Ali, 386; death, 387; kills Gregory the Praefect, 461 *sqq.*
- Zoe Carbonupsina**, wife of Emperor Leo VI., v., 207 and *note*; regency of, 208.
- Zoe**, daughter of Constantine IX. (VIII.), v., 217; empress, 219.
- Zoe**, second wife of Leo VI., v., 206 *note*, *sq.* and *note*.
- Zoltan**, son of Arpad, Hungarian ruler, vi., 143 *note*; Hungarian form of "Sultan," 225 *note*.
- Zonaras**, i., 181 *note*; on Anna Comnena, vi., 106 *note*.
- Zoroaster** or **Zarathustra**, i., 197 and *note*; system of, 198 *sqq.*; ii., 14; iv., 358 *note*; writings of, v., 487; religion confounded with that of the Hindoos, *ib. note*, 489.
- Zosimus**, on taxation, ii., 199; accuses Constantine, 289; on epistles of Julian, 413 *note*; prejudiced, iii., 109 *note*; description of his style, 122; lack of judgment, 130, 164; fanaticism of, 207 and *note*; account of Britain, 353; on revolt of Tribigild and Gainas, 366 *note*; on the monks, iv., 70.
- Zoste patricia**, maid of honour at Byzantine Court, vi., 81 *note*.
- Zoticus**, i., 146 *note*.
- Zoupan**, or **Lords of Croatia**, vi., 132.
- Zuheir**, Saracen governor of Africa, v., 466.
- Zürich**, city of, vii., 221 and *note*.
- Zwinglius**, ii., 26 *note*.
- Zygomala Theodosius**, on siege of Constantinople, vii., 163 *note*.

INDEX

PART II. TO APPENDICES.

- ABASGIA**, vi., 537.
Abbadân, town, ii., 570.
Abbasids, the, their influence on historiography, v., 512.
Abd al-Malik, building at Jerusalem, ii., 569; coinage of, vi., 531.
Abd ar-Rahmân (historian), vi., 529.
Ablavius, i., 458.
Abraha, King, iv., 543 and note.
Abraham, Armenian monk, vii., 334.
Abramos, in Yemen, iv., 542.
Abulfaragius, see Bar-Hebræus.
Abû-l-Fidâ, geography of, ii., 570; life and works of, vi., 530.
Abû Shâma, see Abd ar-Rahmân.
Abyssinia, in fourth to sixth centuries A.D., iv., 541-549.
Achaia, province, i., 452.
Acciajoli, the (Nicholas; Angelo; Nerio I.; Antonio; Nerio II.), vi., 556-8.
Acland, A. H. D., i., 459.
Acre, Saracen siege of, vi., 530.
Acropolites, George, vi., 518.
Acts of Archelaus, vi., 543.
Adad, King, iv., 542 and note.
Adam de Montaldo, vii., 334.
Adamek, v., 496.
Adelperga, friend of Paul the Deacon, v., 510.
Adoptionism, doctrine of, vi., 543.
Adoration of Emperors, ii., 547.
Adrunutzion, vi., 537.
Adscriptiis, v., 531.
Aegean sea, theme of, vi., 533; seals of, 534.
Aegina, vi., 559.
Aegyptus, province, i., 452.
Aelana, iv., 534.
Aelius Lampridius, writer of Hist. Aug., i., 444-447.
Aelius Spartianus, writer of Historia Augusta, i., 444-447.
Aemilianus, tyrant, i., 461.
Aemilianus of Rome, ii., 547.
Aeras of the world (Roman, Antiochene, etc.), ii., 541; Roman or Byzantine, v., 497.
Aetius, in Merobaudes, iii., 487; relations to Boniface, 504-5.
- Africa**, wars in (see search of, 1 magg. mil., Africa, Diocese of Africa, provinces of Agapetus of Syria Agathangelus, i., 464.
Agathinus, i., 456.
Agathinus in rubus, Agathinus, iii., 487.
Agriculture, code (century), v., Aizan, King, iv., and others, 540.
Alamanni, i., 464.
Alania, vi., 537.
Alans, in Gaul, 496-8; in C 499-500; " 499.
Ajnâdân, battle of
Albanians, in the
Albano, Bogomil
Albert of Aachen
Aleppo, college of
Alexander of Alexandria, Libanus of capitulation
Alexius Comnenus
Ali, Caliph, coins
Allectus, iii., 492.
Alliengyan, v., 491.
Alpes, maritime, 451.
Alphabets, Slavic
Al-Mamûn, ii., 531.
Alton depar, 531.
Altziagiri, the, 531.
Amali, vi., 531.
Amatus of Salerno
Ambrose the Neapolitan
Amelina, iv., 531.
Amorgos, vi., 531.
Ammianus Marcellinus, 536-537; list of provinces, 531.
Ammon, history,

- Amyris, of Filelfo, vii., 394.
 Anaea, vi., 559.
 Ἀνάκλημα τῆς Κωνσταντινῶπόλεως, vii., 334.
 Anaphe, vi., 559.
 Anastasius I., Emperor, iv., 516; coinage of, 535.
 Anastasius, Martyr, Life of, v., 498.
 Anastasius of Mount Sinai, v., 499.
 Andan, *see* Adad.
 Andronicus I., Emperor, vi., 518.
 Andros, vi., 559.
 Angers, Annals of, iv., 525.
 An-hsi (Parthia), iv., 535.
 Anianus, ii., 541; v., 515.
 Anna Comnena, her *Alexiad*, v., 506 *sq.*
Annales Barenenses, vi., 522.
Annales Beneventani, vi., 522.
Annals of Han dynasty, iii., 493.
Annals of Ravenna, iii., 489.
Annona federatica, ii., 557.
 Anonymous Chronographer of A. D. 354, i., 447, 456.
 Anonymous Continuator of Dion, i., 443; ii., 531; v., 495 *note*, 508.
 Anonymous Dirge on Constantinople, vii., 328.
 Anonymous Monodia on Theodore Palaeologus, ii., 534.
 Anonymous Scribe of King Béla, vi., 551.
 Anonymus Cuspiniani, *see* Chronicon Cusp.
 Anonymus, on Constantine the Great and Helen, ii., 568.
 Anonymus Valesii, the first fragment, ii., 533-4; second fragment, origin of, iii., 489; nature of, iv., 522.
 Ansaldo, L., vi., 526.
 Antal, subdued by Avars, v., 516.
 Antala, iv., 523, 544.
 Anthony, St., iv., 527.
 Antioch, i., 459; Zenobia, driven from, 462; mentioned in Chinese books, iv., 535; Radulph's account of capture of, vi., 525.
 Antiparos, vi., 559.
 Antoninus Pius, Titus, Edict of, concerning Christians, ii., 542.
 Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius, rescript ascribed to, ii., 542; Christian persecution of, 545; mentioned in Chinese books, iv., 535.
 Anzitene, v., 519.
 Aosta, v., 518.
 Aphthartodocetism, v., 522.
 Apollonius, *Acts of*, ii., 545.
 Apronianus, father of Dion Cassius, i., 443.
 Aquitania, province, i., 451.
 Arabia, province of, i., 449, 452; in fourth century, ii., 550; gold in, v., 538.
 Arbogast, iii., 492.
 Arborius, iii., 484.
 Arcadia, province, ii., 549 *sq.*
 Arcadius, Emperor, iii., 506.
 Archer and Kingsford, *Hist. of Crusades*, vi., 531.
 Ardashir II., iii., 492, 504.
 Arentans, the, vi., 537.
 Areobindus, iv., 523.
 Arethas, King of Axum, iv., 543.
 Arethas, *Martyrdom of*, iv., 542 and *note*.
 Arians, in the *Martyrologium*, ii., 569.
 Arichis, Duke of Beneventum, v., 510.
 Aristakes, Catholicus of Armenia, ii., 564.
 Aristotle, Paellus on, v., 505.
 Arius, Letters of, ii., 539.
 Armenia, history and historians of, in fourth century, ii., 563 *sq.*; church of, 565; division of, between the Empire and Persia, iii., 504; later historians of, vi., 530; account of, by Constantine Porph., 537.
 Armenia minor, ii., 551.
 Armenia, the Roman provinces of, under Justinian, v., 518 *sq.*; under Maurice, 519.
 Armorici, defeated by Aetius, iii., 487.
 Army, Roman, i., 450; under Diocletian and Constantine, ii., 556 *sq.*; size of, third to sixth centuries, 557.
 Arnold, C. F., ii., 545.
 Arnold, W. T., ii., 545.
 Arosa, i., 449.
 Arsaces, title, ii., 564.
 Arsacius, dragon slayer, ii., 569.
 Aršak, King, ii., 564.
 Artemius, Life of, *see* Vita Artemii.
 Arverni, iv., 521.
 Arzanene, v., 519.
 Aschbach, J., iii., 491.
 Asena, iv., 540.
 Asia, province, i., 454.
 Asmus, J., ii., 535, 539.
 Assessor, iv., 513.
 Assises of Jerusalem, vi., 555 *sq.*
 Aštišat, ii., 565.
 Astypalæa, vi., 560.
 Asylum, right of, v., 529.
 Ataulf, iii., 484.
 Atecotti, the, iii., 492.
 Atelkuzu, vi., 552.
 Athanasius, Patriarch, writings a source of Socrates, ii., 539.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- Borghesi, L., 456.
 Boris and Gleb, vi., 521.
 Boris, Bulgarian prince, conversion of, vi., 550.
 Borries, E. von, ii., 537.
 Bose, A., iii., 484.
 Bosphorus (Crimean), iv., 539; vi., 537.
 Bostra, in Arabia, i., 449.
 Bouillon, Godfrey of, vi., 555.
 Bourbon, House of, Gibbon's reference to, iv., 529.
 Brandt, i., 447; on the de Mort. Persec., ii., 531 *sq.*
 Braun, H., iv., 515.
 Breslau, Mongols at, vii., 331.
 Bretschneider, iv., 534; vii., 329.
 Brieger, on Constantine's religion, ii., 566 *sq.*
 Britain, conquest of, i., 448; colonies of, 449; Hadrian in, *ib.*; militia in, 450; province, 451; diocese of, ii., 553; Saxon conquest of, iii., 488; Scots in, 491; Carausius II. in, 501; tyrants in, 502 *sq.*; Saxon conquest of, iv., 528.
 Broadribb and Besant, History of Constantinople, vii., 335.
 Broglie, A. de, ii., 545.
 Brooks, E. W., iv., 519; v., 542.
 Brückner, M., iv., 513, 515.
 Bryce, Jas., iv., 526.
 Brythons, the, iii., 491.
 Bucellarian theme, vi., 533.
 Buchon, J. A., vi., 520, 558.
 Büdinger, i., 446; ii., 536.
 Bulgaria, Black, vi., 536.
 Bulgaria, White, Paulicianism in, vi., 542, 545; list of princes of, 546; extension of, north of Danube, 548 *sq.*; conversion of, 550.
 Bulgarians, were they Kotrigurs? iv., 537; relation to Avar empire, v., 517; early history of, vi., 544 *sq.*
 Burckhardt, J., ii., 540, 542, 566.
 Burdigala, iii., 484.
 Burgundians, i., 463.
 Bury, J. E., on a passage in Ammianus, ii., 536; on position of Hebdomon, 546; on Praxagoras, 560; on a passage in Chron. Pasch., 561 *note*; on *Vita Artemii*, 562; on battle of Singara, 663; on Stilicho's designs, iii., 497; on Radagaisus, 500 *sq.*; on the Nika Riot, iv., 532; on an oracle in Procopius, 537; on origin of Turks, 540 *sq.*; v., 516, 524; on themes, vi., 532, 535; on early Bulgarian kings, 547; on Omortag's inscription, 548.
 Butyras, J., v., 497.
 Byzantion, Sk. D., ii., 546.
 CADEBIA, battle of, v., 541.
 Cæcilius Firmianus, L., ii., 532.
 Cæsarea (in Cappadocia), see of, Armenian Church dependent on, ii., 565.
 Cæsarius ("Typhos"), iii., 507.
 Cafaro of Genoa, vi., 526.
 Cagliari, seals of, vi., 535.
 Calchi, vi., 560.
 Callistus Andronicus, Monody of, vii., 334.
 Camalodunum, i., 448.
 Cananus, John, vii., 328.
 Candia, vi., 560, *see* Crete.
 Candidus, historian, iv., 511.
 Cantacuzino, Spandugino, on siege of Constantinople, vii., 334.
 Canterbury, mentioned by Constantine Porph., ii., 562.
 Capito, the Lycian, iv., 511.
 Capitolinus, *see* Julius Capitolinus.
 Cappadocia, province, i., 451; theme of, vi., 535.
 Capture of Constantinople, anonymous Greek poem, vii., 333.
 Caracalla, law of citizenship of, iv., 546.
 Carausius, I., tyrant, iii., 491.
 Carausius II., tyrant, iii., 501 *sq.*
 Carcasan, iv., 544.
 Caria, province of, vi., 532.
 Carpathos, vi., 560.
 Carpi, the, ii., 563.
 Carpocratians, Gnostic sect, ii., 540.
 Carrière, A., i., 456; ii., 564.
 Carystos, vi., 560.
 Casanova, M., v., 538.
 Cassino, Monte, Paul the Deacon at, v., 510.
 Cassiodorus, Gothic History of, i., 458; career and works, iv., 522 *sq.*
 Castinus, iii., 506.
 Castricia, iii., 507 *note*.
 Cassius Dio Cocceianus, notice of, i., 443; on Hadrian, 448.
 Catacombs, the, ii., 543.
 Catalan Grand Company, vi., 528, 557.
 Catherine of Valois, Empress of Romania, vi., 556.
 Catholic Patriarch, title of chief of the Nestorians, v., 522.
 Cecaumenos, his Strategikon, v., 505.
 Cedreus, George, Candidus a source of, iv., 511; synopsis of, v., 508.
 Cefalonia, vi., 558.
 Celsus, tyrant, i., 461.

- Censorship of Augustus, i., 454.
 Ceos, vi., 558.
 Cephalonia, theme of, vi., 533; seals of, 534 note; see Cefalonia.
 Cerealis, Petillus, i., 448.
 Cerealis, Governor of Cyrenaica, iii., 482.
 Cerigo, vi., 558.
 Cerigotto, vi., 558 sq.
 Ceuleneer, A. de, i., 448.
 Chachanov, A. S., iv., 518 note.
 Chalatians, on Zenob., ii., 563 sq.
 Chalcondyles Laonicus, vii., 327.
 Chaleb, King of Arum, iv., 542.
 Chalons, battle of, where fought, iii., 507 sq.
 Champollion-Figeac, ed. of Amatus, vi., 522.
 Charles the Great, receives Paul the Deacon, v., 511; receives keys of St. Peter, 538.
 Charles Martel, keys of St. Peter sent to, v., 538.
 Charsianon, theme of, vi., 535.
 Chazaria, vi., 536.
 Chazars, mission to the, vi., 549.
 Chelidromi, vi., 560.
 Chenoboscium, iv., 527.
 Cherson, iv., 538; "duke" of, 539; vi., 537; mission of Constantine at, 549.
 Chersonites, their relations with the Patzinaks, vi., 536.
 Chesney, General, ii., 563.
 Childeric, iv., 525.
 China, commerce of, with Roman Empire, iv., 534 sq.
 Chinese Annals, iii., 493; vii., 329.
 Chinese inscription, see Si-ngan-fu.
 Chios, vi., 560.
 Chlodwig, iv., 525 sq.
 Chlotachar I., iv., 526.
 Chosroes I., v., 498.
 Chosroes II., v., 498.
 Chosrov I., of Armenia, ii., 564.
 Chosrov II., of Armenia, ii., 564.
 Chosrov of Persarmenia, iii., 504.
 Christ, W., ii., 535.
 Christians, number of, in empire in third century, A.D., ii., 542; persecutions of in first and second centuries, 543 sq.; under Diocletian, 545; under Constantine, 566 sq.
Chronica Gallica, iii., 488 sq.; iv., 525.
Chronica Italica, iii., 489; iv., 524 sq.
 Chronicle of Constantinople, iii., 489; iv., 524.
 Chronicle of A.D. 354, see Anonymous.
 Chronicle of Cassiodorus, i., 447; iv., 523.
 Chronicle of
 Chronicon C.
 Chronicon I.
 per Tiro
 Chronicon A.
 520.
 Chronicon P.
 ii., 539;
 Bonn),
 495.
 Chronicon P.
 perle.
 Chronicon T.
 Chronograph
 Chronology,
 522, ii.
 Chrysothom,
 494.
 Chrysobolus,
 Cibyriaept,
 in, 529.
 Cilicia, provi
 Cimolos, vi.,
 Cinnamus, J
 Cipolla, C.,
 Circus factio
 Clary, Robe
 Claudian, p
 gaisus,
 Claudian, b
 sopher, i
 Clement, St.,
 542.
 Clement I.,
 covered,
 Clement V.,
 Clement of
 Clinton, L., 4
 Clisurarchies
 Code of Jus
 525.
 Codinus, Ge
 Cohen, I., 45
 Cohortes, ii.,
 Coinage, un
 Saracen,
 Colani, v., 53
 Colonias, deli
 Comet of A.D.
 Comitatus,
 Comites, II., 5
 Commerce,
 tury, v.,
 Comparetti.
 Concubinage
 Consiliarius,
 Consilium of

- Consistorium*, ii., 548.
- Constans t., his share in the empire, ii., 561 *sq.*
- Constantia, sister of Constantine I., ii., 559.
- Constantine I., the Great, letter against Acius, ii., 539; forum of, 546; his organisation of the empire, 547 *sq.*; military reforms, 556 *sqq.*; treatment of Fausta and Crispus, 558 *sq.*; divisions of empire under, 560 *sq.*; religion of, 565 *sqq.*; churches of, at Jerusalem, 569; land legislation under, v., 530 *sq.*
- Constantine II., share in the empire, ii., 561 *sq.*
- Constantine VII. (Porphyrogenitus), on the partition of A.D. 338; ii., 568; v., 500 *note*; suggests history of Genesis, 503; organises continuation of Theophanes, *ib.*; law of, concerning inheritance, v., 528; novel of, 533 *note*; De Ceremoniis, vi., 516; treatise of, on themes, 533; on administration, 535; on the Dnieper rapids, 554 *sq.*
- Constantine IX., founds a university, v., 504; founds law school at Constantinople, 526; drives the Paulicians out of Armenia, vi., 543.
- Constantine, apostle of the Slavs, *see* Cyril.
- Constantine, Bishop of Nacolia, v., 536.
- Constantine Kaballinos, v., 499.
- Constantine, son of Emperor Manuel, vii., 327.
- Constantine, tyrant in Britain and Gaul, his career, iii., 502 *sq.*
- Constantinople, topography of (especially Augusteum and Forum of Constantine), ii., 546; great Palace of, *ib.*; Forum Bovis, *ib.*; Forum Tauri, *ib.*; Forum Amastrianorum, *ib.*; Chalkoprataia, *ib.*; Senate house in the Augusteum, *ib.*; the Mese, *ib.*; Hippodrome, *ib.*; Milestone, *ib.*; Golden Gate, *ib.*; the Zeuxippus, *ib.*; Churches of S. Sophia, S. Constantine, S. Mary of the Forum, the Theotokos, *ib.*; site of the Hebdomon, *ib.*; Palace of Lausus, iii., 498; names of buildings burned in Nika riot, iv., 533; fire in reign of Leo I., 511; St. Sophia injured, 514 *note*; demes of, 531 *sq.*; siege of, in A.D. 626, v., 497; synod of, in A.D. 680, *ib.*; in A.D. 920, 527; siege of, by Saracens, 497; Bulgarian siege of, A.D. 815, 508; university at, founded by Constantine IX., 504; law school at, 526; the Phiale at, vi., 537; degeneration of people of, vii., 333.
- Constantius I., Chlorus, German campaigns of, i., 463; in Britain, ii., 553 *note*; share in the empire, 560; legend concerning, 568.
- Constantius II., share in the empire, ii., 561 *sq.*
- Constitution of Roman Empire, i., 454 *sq.*
- Consularis, *vir*, i., 454.
- Continuator of Dion, anonymous, i., 443.
- Continuator, Havniensis, of Prosper, *see* Prosper.
- Conybeare, F. C., on the Paulicians, vi., 543.
- Corfu, vi., 558.
- Corinth, bishop at, ii., 542; under Nicholas Acciajoli, vi., 557.
- Corippus, iv., 523 *sq.*, 543 *sq.*
- Cornet, E., vii., 332.
- Corrector Italiae, i., 462 *sq.*
- Corsica, province, i., 452; territorial rights of the Church in, v., 537.
- Cosmas, Sicilian monk, v., 499.
- Council of Arles (A.D. 316), date of, ii., 568.
- Council of Orleans (A.D. 511), iv., 526.
- Cracow, taken by Mongols, vii., 331.
- Credit, defective system of, v., 533 *sq.*
- Crete, province of, i., 452; expeditions to, in tenth century, vi., 538; Venetian, 560.
- Crimes, Onogurs, Kotrigurs, Goths in, iv., 538.
- Criminal law, v., 528.
- Crispus, son of Constantine, taught by Lactantius, ii., 532.
- Critobulus of Imbros, his history of Mohammed II., vii., 328.
- Crivellucci, A., on Eusebius, ii., 533.
- Croatians, vi., 537.
- Cross, finding of true, ii., 568.
- Cruithnig (= Scots), iii., 491.
- Crum (or Crumn), vi., 548.
- Crusade, Fourth, vi., 528.
- Cumans, revolt of the, vii., 332.
- Cumont, F., ii., 535; iv., 511.
- Cunimund, v., 510.
- Cuq, E., ii., 548.
- Cura, v., 528.
- Cusina, iv., 544.
- Cyclades, province of, vi., 532.
- Cyprus, province of, i., 452; vi., 522; account of, by Constantine Porphyrogenitus, 537; Assises of, 552.

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Dudleby, the, v., 517.
 Dulaurier, vi., 530.
 Dunaan, *see* Dhù-Novas.
 Duncker, A., i., 448.
 Dürr, J., i., 449.
 Duruy, i., 448.
- EBERT, ii., 531.
 Eburacum (York), i., 449.
 Eodicius, iv., 521.
 Eckhardt, H., iv., 517 *sq.*
 Eckhel, i., 454, 456, 461.
 Eclipse of the sun, noticed by Theophanes, v., 525.
 Ecloga, v., 526; criminal law of, 528.
 Edessa, i., 459; inundation of, iv., 514; history of, by Josua, 520; account of, by Fulcher of Chartres, vi., 524.
 Egypt, diocese of, ii., 548, 550; persecution in, iii., 490; monasticism in, iv., 526 *sq.*; occupation by Nicetas, v., 519; conquest of, 548; relations with Venice, vi., 528.
 Eichel, J., iv., 517.
 Ekkehard of Aura, vi., 525.
 Ektag, iv., 540.
 Ektel, iv., 540.
Ektēsis Chronikē, vii., 328.
 Elba, island, v., 518.
 Elesboas, iv., 542.
 Eleusis, Goths at, iii., 498.
 Elias and Ross, their translation of *Mirza-Haidar*, vii., 329.
 Limes, Zenobia defeated at, i., 462.
 Encratites, Gnostic sect, ii., 540.
 Engel, vi., 549.
 Ennodius, iv., 522.
Ennarage, v., 526.
 Ephraem Syrus, ii., 539.
 Epiphanius of Cyprus, vi., 517.
 Epiphanius, Bishop of Ticinum, iv., 522.
 Epiphanius, collaborator in *Hist. Tripart.*, iv., 522.
 Epirus, i., 451.
 Episcopate, origin of, ii., 541 *sq.*
 Ernoul, vi., 527.
 Eschel, Bulgarian tribe of, vi., 552.
 Esimphaeus, iv., 548.
 Eudoxia, wife of Arcadius, iii., 507.
 Eudoxia, wife of Valentinian III., iii., 487 *sq.*, 498.
 Eugippius, iv., 521.
 Eumenius of Augustodunum, i., 447.
 Eunapius, ii., 527 *sq.*, 562; mutilated edit. of, iii., 482 *sq.*
 Eupaterios, Duke of Cherson, iv., 539 and *note*.
 Euphemius, revolt of, v., 503.
 Euphrates, course of, ii., 570.
 Eusebius of Caesarea, his works, ii., 523; a source of Socrates, 539; on edict of Antoninus, 542; on conversion of Armenia, 565; on religion of Constantine, 567.
 Eusebius, Bishop of Rome, ii., 543.
 Eustathius of Antioch, ii., 539.
 Eustathius of Epiphania, iv., 512.
 Eustathius of Thessalonica, vi., 517 *sq.*
 Eutharic Cillica, iv., 523.
 Eutropius, historian, i., 447; in the *Hist. Misc.*, iii., 489; Greek transl. of, iv., 511; History of, edited by Paul the Deacon, v., 511.
 Eutropius, eunuch, iii., 506 *sq.*
 Eutychianus, on Julian's Persian war, ii., 538.
 Eutychius, Alexandrine chronicle of, ii., 562; v., 515.
 Evagrius, iv., 511 *sq.*, 518 *sq.*, 531; account of, v., 496.
 Evans, A. J., iii., 500.
 Ewald, Paul, on letters of Pope Gregory, v., 510.
Exarchi, of Italy and Africa, iv., 545.
 Excerpts, of Theodorus Lector, v., 500.
Excubitores, ii., 557.
 Executors, testamentary, vi., 528.
Expeditio contra Turcos, vi., 524.
 Exerites, vi., 537.
- FALCANDUS HUGO, History of, vi., 522.
 Falco, vi., 522.
 Falconi, Nicolas, vi., 530.
 Fallmerayer, on the Hellenes, vi., 543 *note*.
Fasti Vindobonenses, iii., 489.
 Fausta, ii., 534, 538 *sq.*
 Faustus of Byzantium, i., 456; character of his work and sources, ii., 563 *sq.*
 Fertig, on Ennodius, iv., 522.
 Festus (Rufus), i., 448; ii., 531; a passage in (*Brev.*, 27), 563.
 Fihl, battle of, v., 542.
 Finlay, G., on Justinian's coinage, iv., 536; on the Acciajoli, vi., 556 *sq.*; *History of Greece*, vii., 335.
Fiscus, i., 455.
 Flavius Clemens, ii., 544.
 Flavius Vopiscus, writer of *Hist. Aug.*, i., 444 *sq.*
 Florence, Acciajoli at, vi., 557; San Lorenzo, *ib. note*.
Federati, in army, ii., 557.
 Förster, R., on Libanius, ii., 525.
 Fortrenn, iii., 492.
 Frähn, C. M., vi., 545 *note*.

- Fredegarius, v., 511.
 Freeman, E. A., on tyrant Constantine, iii., 508 *sq.*; on Actius and Boniface, 504 *sq.*; on Saxon conquest of Britain, iv., 528.
 Frexenses, the, iv., 544.
 Frick, C., ii., 539.
 Friedländer, i., 448; ii., 542.
 Friedrich, v., 538; vi., 541.
 Frigeridus, *see* Renatus.
 Fritigern, iii., 494.
 Froehner, i., 449.
 Frontinus, i., 448.
 Frumentius, apostle of Ethiopians, iii., 491.
 Fulcher of Chartres, account of, vi., 524.
 Fulco, account of the First Crusade, vi., 525.
 Fu-lin, iv., 534.
Futhorc, the, iv., 528.

 GAISERIC, iii., 488.
 Galatia, province, i., 451.
 Galicia, Avars in, v., 517.
 Galla Placidia, iii., 487.
 Gallia Narbonenses, province, i., 451.
 Galliae, Diocese of, ii., 548, 553.
 Gallienus, Emperor, prevents senators from serving in army, ii., 558.
 Gardner, Miss A., ii., 535.
 Gardthausen, ii., 537.
 Gasmul, vi., 519.
 Gattilusi, the, of Lesbos, send Ducas to the sultan, vii., 327.
 Gaudentius, iii., 487.
 Gauderic, Bishop of Velletri, vi., 550 *note*.
 Gaul, Diocese of, *see* Galliae; provinces under Diocletian, ii., 553.
 Gedeonov, vi., 554.
 Gelasius, Pope, ii., 569.
 Gelzer, H., on Sextus Julius Africanus, ii., 533; on Armenian History, 563 *sq.*; on Eastern bishoprics, 568; on John of Antioch, iv., 520 and *note*; on demes, 532; on Michael Syrus, v., 515; sketch of George the Cypriote, George the Monk, c. vi., 521, 540 *sq.*
 George Pisides, on Heraclius, v., 41.
 George, St., identity
 George the syncell 503.
 Georgen, iii., 493; i
 Gepids, the, v., 516.
 Germania Secunda, 464.
 Germanica, superior vinces, i., 451.
 Germania, Patriarch 596.
 Germanicum, *tabula* 464.
Gesta Friderici, a
Gesta Henrici II. 517.
Gestes of Jordanes, Otrörer, v., 516; vi., Giesebrecht, vi., 522.
 Gieseler, vi., 540.
 Gildas, iv., 529.
 Gilo of Toucy, vi., 5
 Ginzcl, J. A., vi., 55
 Glagolitic alphabet, 1
 Glevum, i., 449.
 Gleye, C. E., iii., 50.
 Glubokovski, N., ii.
 Glycas, Michael, v.,
 Glycoria, St., island, v., 508.
 Gnosticism, theories 540.
 Goeje, Professor de,
 Goetz, L. K., vi., 55
 Gold, in Arabia, v., :
 Gordas, vi., 553, *see*
 Görres, F., on date ii., 532; on pe- century, 545; 559; on Younge St. George, 569.
 Gothic alphabet, iv.,
 Gothic Weihnachtspi

- Green, J. R., iv., 528.
 Gregoras, Nicephorus, *see* Nicephorus.
 Gregorovius, F., iii., 498; v., 516; vi., 530 *sq.*
 Gregory the Great, Pope, Letters of, v., 510, 538.
 Gregory II., Letters of, v., 535; policy of, 537.
 Gregory, Illuminator, Life of, ii., 564; Apocalypse of, *ib.*; consecration of, 565.
 Gregory Magistros, vi., 543.
 Gregory Nazianzen, his will, iv., 546.
 Gregory Nyssen, on theological subtleties in Constantinople, iii., 495; on relics, 496.
 Gregory, presbyter, Bulgarian (tenth century), iv., 518.
 Gregory of Tours, iv., 525 *sq.*; *Historia Francorum* of, v., 511.
 Grosvenor, E. A., ii., 546.
 Grod, King, iv., 539.
 Grützmacher, on Pachomius, iv., 527.
 Guest, *Origines Celticæ*, iv., 528.
 Guibert, Abbot of Nogent, vi., 524.
 Guiragos Gandsaketsi, vii., 330; *see* Cyriac.
 Guldenpenning, A., ii., 539; iii., 483, 491, 506.
 Gundlach, W., iv., 517.
 Gutschmidt, A. von, i., 456; emendation in Ammianus, ii., 536; on Agathangelos, 564.
 Guyard, S., ii., 570.
 Gwatkin, Mr. H. M., ii., 539.
 Gyarus, vi., 559.
 Gycia, vi., 537.

Hadith, v., 512.
 Hadrian, Emperor, policy of, i., 449; rescript concerning the Christians, ii., 543 *sq.*
 Hadrian II., Pope, ordains Cyril and Methodius, vi., 550.
 Hadrianus, Rufinus Synesius, iii., 485.
 Hagenmeyer, H., vi., 524.
 Haidar, Mirza, vii., 329.
 Haithon, Armenian Prince, visits Mongolia, vii., 330.
 Haithon, Monk of Prémontré, vii., 330.
 Haitum, vi., 530.
 Halcomb, Mr., on Synesius, iii., 482.
 Hallier, L., iv., 520.
 Hamât, in Syria, vi., 530.
 Hamilton, F. J., iv., 521.
 Hannan Jesus, Patriarch, v., 522.
 Hannibalianus, share in the empire A.D. 335, ii., 561.
 Hardy, E. G., i., 450; ii., 543.
 Harmonius, son of Thaurus, iii., 506.
 Harnack, Ad., ii., 540, 542; iv., 527.
 Harris, J. Rendel, i., 568.
 Hartmann, M., on Byzantine rule in Italy, v., 516.
 Haruspices, under Constantine, ii., 567.
 Hatch, Dr., on the Episcopate, ii., 541.
 Hatzidakis, G. N., vi., 544.
 Haury, J., iv., 513 *sq.*; 516, 531.
 Haverfield, F., iii., 492.
 Haythonus, *see* Haitum.
 Hebdomon, site of, near Constantinople, ii., 546.
 Hecker, on Julian, ii., 537.
 Hefele, on the Iconoclastic edicts of Leo, v., 536.
 Hegel, C., v., 516.
 Heimbach, W. E., v., 530.
 Heinemann, L. von., vi., 531.
 Heinrich, A., iv., 520.
 Heisenberg, A., on Acropolites, vi., 518 *sq.*; ed. of Blemmydes, 519.
 Helena, St., ii., 568.
 Helenopontus, v., 519.
 Heliopolis, old customs at, iv., 546; battle of, v., 543.
 Hellas, theme of, vi., 533 *sq.*
 Heraclius, Emperor, his race with Nicetas, v., 519 *sq.*; confused with Heraclonas, 542; his alliance with the Bulgarians, vi., 545.
 Hergenrother, J., on Photius, vi., 515.
 Herodian, his history, i., 444.
 Herodotus, imitated by Procopius, iv., 515.
 Hertz, on Ammianus, ii., 537.
 Hertzberg, H., iv., 525.
 Hertzberg, G. F., v., 516.
 Herzog, i., 454.
 Heskell, A., vi., 522.
 Hesperius, iii., 484.
 Hesychius Illustris, historian, iv., 512.
 Hesychius of Jerusalem, ii., 540.
 Heydenreich, on legends of Constantine the Great, ii., 568.
 Hilarion, Palestinian monk, iv., 528.
 Hilgenfeld, on Gnosticism, ii., 540.
 Hille, G., iii., 489 *note*.
 Hillger, F., vi., 522.
 Hippolytus of Rome, World Chronicle of, ii., 533; *Liber Generationis* of, v., 511.
 Hirsch, F., v., 509; vi., 522.
 Hirschfeld, O., i., 454.
 Hirth, F., iv., 534.
 Hispania citerior or Tarraconensis, i., 450.
 Hispellum, Inscription of, ii., 566.
Historia Augusta, i., 444 *sq.*

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

- John of Antioch** (Salmas and Constant. Excerpts), on Bonifacius and Aetius, iii., 505 *sq.*; identity of (?), iv., 520.
- John of Biclaram**, iv., 524 *sq.*
- John Cameniates**, on capture of Thessalonica, v., 504.
- John of Cappadocia**, iv., 512, 514 *note*, 517 *note*.
- John Comnenus**, v., 506 and *note*; capital punishment under, 529.
- John of Damascus**, v., 499; date of his Oration on Image Worship, 536.
- John Diacrinomenos**, iv., 512.
- John of Ephesus**, v., 495.
- John of Epiphania**, v., 495 *sq.*
- John of Jerusalem**, v., 499.
- John the Lydian**, iv., 512 *sq.*
- John Malalas**, iv., 518 *sq.*; his notice of Axum, 542.
- John Mag. Mil.**, hero of the *Johannid*, iv., 523, 543 *sq.*
- John the Monk**, relation to the *Vita Artemii*, ii., 559, 562.
- John of Nikiu**, v., 515.
- John Psalter**, iv., 542.
- John Rogatinus**, iv., 544.
- John Sikeliotis**, iv., 520; v., 507 *note*.
- John of Sirmium**, v., 495.
- John**, tyrant in fourth century, iii., 487.
- John**, sent by Justinian as bishop to Yemen, iv., 542.
- Joppa**, vi., 526.
- Jordanes**, i., 457.
- Jortin**, *Remarks on Eccl. Hist.*, iii., 495.
- Josua Stylites**, iv., 520.
- Jovian**, Emperor, iii., 498.
- Jugra**, vi., 552.
- Julian**, the emperor, his works, ii., 534 *sq.*; his reference to Jesus in letter to the Alexandrians, 536; iii., 498.
- Julius Capitolinus**, writer of *Hist. Aug.*, i., 444 *sq.*
- Julleville**, Petit de, ii., 535.
- Julian**, L., ii., 549.
- Jung**, i., 449; iii., 497.
- Jungbans**, G. W., iv., 525.
- Jus Italicum**, i., 455.
- Jus Latinum**, history of, i., 453.
- Justi**, i., 456.
- Justin I.**, in the *Secret History*, iv., 514, 521; embassy to Hira, 520; embassy to Axum, 543.
- Justinian I.**, Scholae under, ii., 557; traffic in offices under, 558; his Church of St. Sophia at Jerusalem, 559; treatment by Procopius, iv., 523 *sq.*; date of death, 524; position under Justin, 521; at Nika riot, 533; his dealings with the Kotrigurs, etc., 537 *sq.*; his re-arrangement of the Armenian provinces, v., 518 *sq.*; his heresy, 522 *sq.*; legal works of, 525; navy of, vi., 538.
- Juvainal**, account of, vii., 328.
- Jūsājān**, vii., 328.
- KABARS**, vi., 537, 552.
- Kaidu**, vii., 331.
- Kainites**, Gnostic sect, ii., 540.
- Kalligas**, P., iv., 534.
- Kamāl ad-Din**, vi., 529.
- Kanalites**, vi., 537.
- Kan-Ying**, iv., 534.
- Karabacok**, J., Prof., v., 540.
- Kaufmann**, on Sarmatian wars, iii., 494.
- Kazachia**, vi., 537.
- Kecharitomene**, monastery of, v., 506.
- Kehr**, v., 537 *note*.
- Keim**, Th., ii., 543.
- Keller**, R., iii., 492, 498.
- Kellett**, F. W., on Gregory the Great, v., 510.
- Kertsch**, vi., 553.
- Kéza**, Simon de, vi., 551.
- Khuddi-nāma**, the, v., 524 *sq.*
- Kiepert**, H., v., 519 *note*.
- Kiev**, vi., 553.
- Király**, i., 449.
- Kirchner**, on Procopius, iv., 517.
- Kirpitschnikow**, A., ii., 568.
- Klaproth**, on the Hing-Nu, iii., 492.
- Klein**, i., 448; on Raymond of Agiles, vi., 524.
- Klimek**, ii., 535.
- Kobad**, King, iii., 492.
- Kocel**, vi., 550.
- Koch**, on Julian, ii., 535.
- Koch J.**, iii., 486.
- Köpke**, R., iii., 491; iv., 526.
- Koran**, the, v., 512.
- Kormisda**, vi., 547.
- Kostoboks**, the, ii., 563.
- Kotragoi**, the, iv., 537.
- Kotragos**, iv., 537.
- Kotrigurs**, iv., 537 *sq.*; v., 516; vi., 545.
- Krascheninnikov**, M., iv., 518, 531.
- Kraus**, F. X., ii., 540.
- Kreutzer**, i., 444.
- Krumbacher**, K., iv., 518 *sq.*, 520 *note*; on Cinnamus, v., 507; on Glycas, 509; on Chalcondyles, vii., 507.
- Krunch**, B., v., 521.
- Kugler**, B. von, vi., 525, 531.

- Kakhovka, iv., 538 *sq.*
 Kallit, R., vi., 524
 Kurt, Bulgarians, vi., 545 *sq.*, 549
 Kusan, chief of the Comans, vi., 532
 Kusan, Gen., vi., 552 *note sq.*
 Kuvut, iv., 537; *see* Kurt

LABARUM, the, ii., 567.
 Lactantius, and authorship of the *De*
Mortibus Persecutorum, i., 448; ii.,
 531 *sq.*
 Laelianus, *see* Lollianus
 Lagobardia, theme of, vi., 534
 Laguntan, the, iv., 544
 La Jonquière, Hist. of Ottoman Em-
 pire, vii., 330
 Lampridius, *see* Aelius Lampridius
 Land, tenure of, etc., v., 530 *sq.*
 Landulfus Sagax, iii., 490
 Lane-Poole, S., v., 513; on the Sabians,
 539; on Saracen coins, vi., 531; on
 Ottoman Turks, vii., 330
 Langlois, V., ii., 564
 Laribus, iv., 544
 Latin language, disuse of, v., 525
 Latyshev, V., iv., 538 *sq.*
 Lau, G. T., on Gregory the Great, v.,
 510
 Lausus, chamberlain, iii., 482
 Law, development of, in eastern prov-
 inces from Constantine to Justinian,
 iv., 545 *sq.*; degeneration of, 546;
 Græco Roman, v., 525
 Lazi, federates of empire, ii., 557
 Lazica, Abbot Maximus dies at, v.,
 498
 Lebedia, Hungarians in, v., 552
 Le Blant, E., ii., 545
Legatus legionis, i., 450
 Leger, L., vi., 521 *sq.*
 Legion, size of, in fourth century, ii.,
 556
 Lemnos, vi., 560
 Leo I., Emperor, ii., 557
 Leo III., Emperor, legislation of, v.,
 525; agricultural code of, 531;
 correspondence with Pope Gregory,
 535; Iconoclastic Edicts of, *ib.* *sq.*;
 on navy, 539
 Leo VI., Emperor, laws of, on marriage,
 v., 527; novel of, 528; tactics of,
 vi., 515; relations with Taron, 537
 Leo Diaconus, his history, v., 504
 Leo Grammaticus, chronicle of, v., 503
 Leo, Librarian of Monte Cassino, vi.,
 522
 Leontius of Byzantium, iv., 531
 Leontius, Bishop of Caesarea, ii., 565
 Leontocomis, theme of, vi., 533

 Leontius, *see* 525
 Leontius, *see* 560
 Leontius, the, iii.,
 Le Strange, G., ii.
 Leuca, *see* Santa 21
 Leuca, *see* 21
 Lewis, T. H., ii., 5
 Libanus, works of,
Liber Pontificalis, v.
Liber Pontificalis of
 Library, Ulpian, i.,
Libri lintei, i., 446
 Lichades, funeral o
 v., 505
 Licinius, Emperor, i
 Licinius the Younge
 Liebermann, F., vi.,
 Liegnitz, battle of, v
 Lieutenants of Emp
 Lightfoot, Bishop, ii
Limnes germanicus, i.
Limitanei, ii., 556
 Lindum, i., 449
 Lingenthal, Zachari
 vi., 526
Littus Saronicum, i
 Livadia, vi., 552
 Loewe, G., iv., 523
 Logothete, the, *see* S
 Löhrer, J., i., 456
 Lollianus, tyrant, i.
 Lombards, the, chro
 quests, v., 517;
 Lombardy, theme of,
 bardia
 Löning, E., ii., 541
 Longibardia, theme
 Lucius, on monastic
 Lucius, Martyr (seco
 Lucius, Patriarch of
 century), iii., 40
 Ludwig, F., iii., 491
 Luetjohann, C., iv.,
 Lugdunensis, provin
 Lupus protospathari
 Lusitania, provincia
 Lycandos, theme of
 Lycaonia, provincia
 Lycia, province, i., 4
 Lyons, council of, vi.

MACEDONIA, dioc
 Macedonia, provin
 Macedonia, theme of
 Macrianus, father of
 son, *ib.* *sq.*
 Madäni, al-, v., 524
 Madvig, i., 484
 Macetas, the, iii., 40

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Never be without a book!

Forgotten Books Full Membership gives universal access to 797,885 books from our apps and website, across all your devices: tablet, phone, e-reader, laptop and desktop computer

A library in your pocket for \$8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

- Nicephorus, Patriarch of Constantinople, v., 499; Life of, by Ignatius, 500 *sq.*; vi., 546.
- Nicetas, his race with Heraclius, v., 519.
- Nicetas, Akominatus, v., 507.
- Nicetas, David Paphlagon, his Life of Ignatius, v., 502.
- Nicetas, Abbot of Medikion, v., 501.
- Nicetius, Bishop of Trèves, his letter to Justinian, v., 522.
- Nicolaites, Gnostic sect, ii., 540.
- Nicolas, Pope, *Responses* of, vi., 546; death of, 550.
- Nicomedia, persecutions at, ii., 531.
- Nicopolis, theme of, vi., 533.
- Nicultrias, v., 505.
- Niebuhr, i., 454; edits Merobaudes, iii., 487.
- Nieri, A., iii., 482.
- Nika sedition, iv., 516, 521, 533 *sq.*
- Nikaria, vi., 560.
- Nimbus* of Emperors, ii., 547.
- Nio, vi., 559.
- Nisibis, v., 519; battle of A.D. 541, iv., 543.
- Nisyros, vi., 560.
- Nobadae, the, iv., 543.
- Nola, churches at, iii., 484.
- Nöldeke, Th., i., 456; iii., 492; v., 512 *sq.*
- Nomophylax*, v., 526.
- Nonnosus, iv., 542.
- Norberg, his edition of the *Sidra Rabba*, v., 538.
- Noricum, province, i., 451; iv., 521.
- Northcote and Brownlow, Messrs., on the Catacombs, ii., 543.
- Novara, Philip of, vi., 555.
- Novgorod, vi., 553.
- Notitia Dignitatum*, ii., 549 *sqq.*
- Notitia Galliarum*, ii., 549, 553.
- Notur, iv., 540.
- Novels* of Justinian, v., 525; of Macedonian and other emperors, 526-533 *passim*.
- Numidia, province, i., 452; ii., 555; Numidia militiana, *ib.*
- Nūr ad-Dīn, vi., 529.
- Obas, the, v., 517.
- Odenathus, tyrant, i., 460.
- Odoacar, his grant to Pierius, iv., 526.
- Oedesius, iii., 490.
- Ohnesorge, W., ii., 534, 549, *sq.* 554.
- Oltarzhovski, Father, iv., 528.
- Olympia, Goths at, iii., 498.
- Olympias, wife of Artak, ii., 565.
- Olympiodorus, ii., 538 *sq.*; iii., 483.
- Oman, C. W., v., 516; vi., 516, 531.
- Omar, mosque of, ii., 569.
- Omortag, inscription of, vi., 548.
- Onglos or Oglos, vi., 546.
- Ophites, Gnostic sect, ii., 540.
- Opitz, Th., i., 447.
- Optatus, value of his work, ii., 568.
- Optimaton, theme, vi., 534 *sq.*
- Oracles, in Procopius, iv., 536 *sq.*
- Orcades, the, ii., 553 *note*, 562.
- Orchon inscriptions, the, iv., 540 and *note*.
- Orelli-Henzen, i., 454.
- Oribasius, memoirs of, ii., 538.
- Origen, *sepl ἀρχῶν*, iii., 490.
- Orosius, iii., 490; a passage of, 495.
- Orphans, guardianship of, v., 528.
- Orzianine, v., 519.
- Ozniensis, John, vi., 542.
- PACATUS, Drepanius, iii., 484.
- Pachomius, Abbot, iv., 526 *sq.*
- Pachymeres, George, account of, vi., 518.
- Pagans, of Asia Minor, v., 495.
- Paganoi, vi., 537.
- Paganus (Bajan), Bulgarian prince, vi., 547.
- Peanius, translator of Eutropius, i., 447.
- Palaemon, monk, iv., 527.
- Palaologus, Theodore, *Monodia* on, ii., 534.
- Palama, vi., 521.
- Palatini* (troops), ii., 556 *sq.*
- Palohus, iv., 511.
- Palestine, monasticism in, iv., 528.
- Palladius of Hellenopolis, iii., 482; iv., 526 *sq.*
- Pallmann, R., iii., 491, 499.
- Palma, Cornelius, i., 449.
- Palmyra, surrender and destruction of, i., 462.
- Pamprepius, iv., 511.
- Panchenko, B., iv., 513, 516 *sq.*, 531.
- Panciroli, ii., 549.
- Panegyrici Latini, i., 447.
- Pannonia, Diocese of, ii., 552.
- Pannonia, provinces of, i., 451.
- Panodorus, ii., 541.
- Pap, King, ii., 564 *sq.*
- Papagia, vi., 537.
- Papadimitriu, vii., 528.
- Papadopoulos-Kerameus, A., ii., 534.
- Papencordt, F., iii., 491.
- Paphlagonia, provinces of, v., 519; theme of, vi., 533.
- Papianilla, iv., 521.
- Pardessus, on silk trade, iv., 534.

- Paris, P., vi., 527.
 Parker, E. H., iii., 493; iv., 539 sq.
 Paros vi., 559.
 Parthey, ii., 568.
 Parthia, iv., 534.
 Partsch, J., iv., 524, 545.
Paschal Chronicle, see *Chronicon Paschale*.
 Paspates, A. G., on Palace of Constantinople, ii., 546; vii., 335.
 Passau, See of, vi., 550.
 Patkanian, on Sebasteos, v., 498.
 Patmos, vi., 559.
 Patrae, vi., 537.
Patria of Constantinople, vi., 517.
Patria potestas, v., 528.
 Patrimonium of St. Peter, v., 537.
 Patzinaks, vi., 536 sq., 552.
 Patzig, E., iv., 519 sq.; v., 508.
 Pauliani, followers of Paul of Samosata, vi., 543.
 Paulician heresy, vi., 540.
 Paulinus of Nola, iii., 484.
 Paulinus of Pella, iii., 484.
 Paulinus of Périgueux, iii., 484.
 Paulinus, author of V. Ambrosii, iii., 484, 488.
 Paulus Diaconus, in Hist. Misc., iii., 490; Lombard history of, v., 510.
 Paulus of Samosata, vi., 543.
 Paxo, vi., 558.
 Pears, Mr., his Fall of Constantinople, vi., 528.
 Peasant proprietors, v., 530 sqq.
 Pelham, H. F., i., 454.
 Peloponnesus, theme of, vi., 533 sq. note; horse tribute in, 537; Slavs in, 543.
 Pentapolis, the maritime and the inland (in Italy), v., 518.
Peratic demes, iv., 532.
 Pêrôz, iii., 492.
 Persarmenia, iii., 504.
 Persecutions, early, of Christians, ii., 543 sqq.
 Persia, lists of kings of, iii., 492; v., 520.
 Peter, Abbot, on the Paulicians, 540 sq.
 Peter the Deacon, vi., 522.
 Peter the Patrician, see Anonymous Continuer of Dion, vi., 516.
 Peter, H., his edition of Hist. Aug., i., 445 sq.
 Petra in Arabia, i., 449.
 Pfitzner, i., 450.
 Phbou, monastery, iv., 527.
 Philip Sidetes, ii., 540.
 Philippi, *episcopi* at, ii., 541.
 Phillipson, Dr. A., vi., 544.
Philopatris, the, date of, ii., 531.
 Philostorgius, ii., 539; used in Artemii, 562.
 Philothemus, proto spatharius, vi., 537.
Cletorologion of, 533.
 Phlegon on Roman Feasts, ii., 528.
 Phocaea, Ducas at, vii., 327.
 Pholegandros, vi., 559.
 Photius, Patriarch, vi., 515, 540; treatise of, 541; friend of Cyril, 549.
 Phrantzes, George, account of, vii., 327.
 Piadha, vi., 557.
 Pichlmayer, F., i., 447.
 Pictones, iii., 491.
 Picts, the, iii., 491.
 Pierius, grant of Odovacar to, iv., 526.
 Pippin, King, v., 537; donation of, 58.
 Pisa, vi., 557.
 Piscopia, vi., 560.
 Piso, tyrant, i., 461.
Pistis Sophia, the, ii., 540.
 Placidus (Valentinian III.), iii., 487.
 Plato, Abbot, Life of, by Theodore Studites, v., 501 sq.
 Plato, philosopher, opinion of Paelius concerning, v., 505; imitated by Gregoras, vi., 519.
 Plew, J., i., 446.
 Plummer, A., iv., 528.
 Pogodin, vi., 521, 554; vii., 335.
 Poland, invasion of, by Mongols, vii., 331.
 Polemius Sylvius, ii., 549 sqq.
Political demes, iv., 532.
 Pollentia, battle of, in Prudentius, iii., 486; Stilicho at, 497; date of, 500.
 Pollio, see Trebellius P.
 Polycandro, vi., 559.
 Polycarp, martyrdom of, ii., 545.
 Polydeukes, Julius, v., 503 note.
 Pomptine marshes, iv., 531.
 Pontiff, Augustus as supreme, i., 455.
 Pontus Polemoniacus, v., 518 sq.
 Popov, A., vi., 546.
 Porta Rusciae, Subutai at, vii., 327.
 Postumus, tyrant, i., 460 sq.
Praefectus, morum, i., 454; *praetorio* i., 455; transformation of Praetorian Prefecture, ii., 548.
Praepositus of Council, ii., 548.
 Praetextatus, proconsul of Achaen, iii., 498.
 Praxagoras, ii., 534; quoted, 560 sq.
 Prefect, Praetorian, see *Praefectus*.
 Prefectures, divisions of empire, instituted by Constantine, ii., 547.
 Preger, Th., vi., 517.
 Preuss, i., 448.
 Prince of the Senate, i., 454.

- amatus*, *id.*
 iv., 512.
 i., 483, 505; iv., 512.
 462.
 rmanicus, i., 463.
 book, v., 526.
 na, legendary stories
 life and works, iv.,
 515; *Secret History*,
 in, 536 *sq.*
 iv., 513.
 iv., 512.
 on's Prosper), iii.,
 Gibbon's Prosper
 ; continuation of
 i., ii., 557 *sq.*
 Empire, i., 451 *sq.*
 47.
 account of, v.,
 spirit of, 506.
 ii., 556.
 498.
 503, 508.
 (second century), ii.,
 iii., 482.
 v., 498.
 i., 457.
 ii., 548.
 562.
 ii., 548.
 ; chronology of his
 7.
 Palestine, vi., 525.
 490; province, 451;
 sagitta, iii., 500 *sq.*
 iii., chronicle of, vi.,
 522; vi., 517, 535.
 vi., 528.
 543, 562.
 i., 539; on
 ; *Waldgeschichte*,
 of empire A.D. 335
 on Constantine's
 i., 566; on
 527; on *Waldgeschichte*,
 out of, vi., 528.
 ing, v., 530.
 king, vi., 530.
 i., 522.
 531; iv., 528.
- Raymond of Agiles, vi., 524.
 Reccared, King, iv., 525.
 Reclinarius, iv., 544.
 Regillianus or Regalianus, tyrant, i., 461.
 Reinard on relations of China with
 Roman Empire, iv., 534; *his extracts*
 of Arabic historians, vi., 529 *sq.*
 Reinhardt, on Julian, ii., 535.
 Reinkens on Procopius, iv., 527.
 Reles, worship of, iii., 496.
 Remusat, Abel, iii., 493.
 Renatus Profuturus Frigeridus, iv., 525.
 Rendall, W., ii., 535.
 Rent of land, v., 532.
Res privata, i., 455.
 Réville, M., on the Episcopate, ii., 541
 47.
 Revillout, on the Serapeans, iv., 527.
Rhodian code, v., 534.
 Rhodes, province of, vi., 532; island,
 rulers of (after 1204), 562.
 Rhys, Prof. J., iii., 491 *sq.*
 Riant, ed. of *Annales Genuenses*, vi.,
 526, 528.
 Richard of Cirencester, i., 449.
 Richard of London, Canon of the Holy
 Trinity, vi., 526.
 Richerio, Cristoforo, vii., 334.
 Richter, H., work on the "Weströmisches
 Reich," ii., 542; iii., 491.
 Richtofen, F. von, iv., 534.
Ripa Gotthica, ii., 562.
 Robert the Monk, of Rheims, his trans-
 lation of the *Gesta*, vi., 525.
 Robert of Flanders, Count, vi., 524.
 Rode, on Julian, ii., 535.
 Roger de Flor, vi., 528.
 Rohde, E., ii., 531.
 Röhrich, History of Crusades, vi., 531;
 ed. of *Regesta Regn. Hierosol.*,
 527.
 Roman Empire, periods of, v., 523.
 Romanus I., land legislation of, v., 530,
 532 *sq.*; vi., 533, 537.
 Romanus II., novel of, v., 533 *note*.
 Romanus III., land legislation of, v.,
 530.
 Romanus, Governor of Africa (fourth
 century), iii., 492.
 Rome, walls of, restored, iii., 496;
 Theodosius I. at, 495.
 Romuald, Archbishop of Salerno, vi.,
 523.
 Roncière, C. de la, vi., 538.
 Ross, A., iv., 526.
 Rosenstein, on *Scliebo*, ii., 491.
 Rossi, ii., 543.
 Rothkegel, F., i., 446.
 Roumanians, the, vi., 549.

Know Your Bible

Forgotten Books' Full Membership provides unlimited access to more than 28,000 volumes of Christian literature for \$8.99/month

HOLY BIBLE

Continue

*Fair use policy applies

Semenov, A., iv., 530 *note*.
 Semulpur or Semah, i., 453.
 Sepp, on the Dome of the Rock, ii., 569 *sq.*
 Septem provinciae, ii., 548, 553.
 Serapis, ascetic cult of, iv., 527.
 Serbs, vi., 537.
 Serdica, *see* Sardica.
 Serfene, vi., 559.
 Serfs, v., 531.
 Sergius, Patriarch, v., 497; composer of the *Standing Hymn*, *ib.*
 Seriphos, vi., 559.
 Servia, vi., 537.
 Sethites, Gnostic sect, ii., 540.
 Seuffert, O., ii., 567.
 Severinus, St., iv., 521.
 Severus, Septimius, principate of, i., 455; constitution of, *ib.*; wears military *sagum* in Rome, ii., 547.
 Severus, *see* Sulpicius Severus.
 Seville, attached by the Rûs, vi., 553 *note*.
Sexagenarii, ii., 548.
 Sextus, Aurelius Victor, i., 447.
 Sextus, Julius Africanus, ii., 533.
 Shâh-nâma, v., 514.
 Shapûr, i., 459.
Shepherd of Hermas, vi., 543.
 Shestakov, S., iv., 511, 519.
 Sicilia, province, i., 451.
 Sicilian chronicle, v., 503.
 Sickel, v., 538.
 Sidonius Apollinaris, founds Church of St. George, ii., 569; account of works, iv., 521.
 Sievers, R., ii., 535.
 Sifanto, vi., 559.
 Sigisvult, iii., 506.
 Sigriane, monastery near, v., 500.
 Silk, trade in, iv., 535.
 Silsibul, iv., 541.
 Sikeliotes, John, *see* John.
 Sikeliotes, Peter, vi., 540 *sq.*
 Sikino, vi., 559.
 Simeon, Beth Arsam, iv., 542.
 Simon the Magian, ii., 540.
 Si-ngan-fu, inscription of, v., 520 *sqq.*
 Singara, date of battle of, ii., 563.
 Siouffi, M., v., 539.
 Siphnos, vi., 559.
 Sirmondus, discovers Merobaudes, iii., 487.
 Slavs, Sarmatians wrongly identified with, ii., 563; settlements of, in the provinces, v., 525; their influence

Small Questions of Mary, treatise of, ii., 540.
 Smith, Dict. of Antiq., i., 450, 464.
 Socrates, Eocl. History of, ii., 539.
 Solomon, African wars of, iv., 523; position in Africa, 545.
 Sopianene, province, ii., 550; v., 519.
 Sophene, v., 519.
 Sotiriadis, G., iv., 519.
 Soteriopolis, vi., 537.
 Soumelpour, mine of, identity of, i., 453.
 Sozomen, ii., 539; on monasticism, iv., 526 *sq.*
 Spain, how assigned in divisions of empire in third and fourth centuries, ii., 560 *sq.*; vi., 536.
 Spain, diocese of, ii., 555.
 Sparta, Phrantzes Prefect of, vii., 307.
 Spartian, *see* Aelius Spartianus.
 Spheudoplok, vi., 537.
 Sprenger, Life of Mohammad, v., 513.
 Sreznevski, vi., 520 *note*; vii., 333, 335.
 Srkulj, vi., 521 and *note*.
 Ssanang Ssetsen, Mongol prince, vii., 330.
 Stampali, vi., 560.
 Stassulevich, J., vii., 334.
 Stephen, Deacon of St. Sophia, v., 501.
 Stephen II., Pope, v., 525; letter of, 537 *note*.
 Stephen, St., the Younger, v., 501.
 Stephens, W. R. W., iii., 491.
 Stewart, Major Charles, vii., 329.
 Stilicho, in inscriptions, iii., 496; his expeditions to Greece and Illyricum, *ib. sqq.*; his policy and relations to Alaric, 497 *sqq.*, against Radagaisus, 500 *sq.*; measures against Constantine, 502.
 St. Martin, V., ii., 563 *sq.*
 Stones, precious, trade in, iv., 535.
 Strakosch-Grassmann, on the Mongols, vii., 332.
 Streit, L., vi., 528.
 Strzygovski, J., on Tyche, ii., 568.
 Strymon, theme of, vi., 534 *note*.
 Stubbs, Bishop, vi., 556.
 Subutai, invades Hungary, vii., 331.
 Sudbaus, ii., 537.
 Subomlinov, vi., 521 *note*.
 Sulpicius Severus, on a passage (in 2, 29), ii., 545; chronicle falsely ascribed to, iii., 488 *note*.
 Susa (Italy), v., 518.
 Svatopluk, vi., 550.
 Sweden, Finnish name for, vi., 554.
 Subal, H., vii., 331, 332.

- Symmachus, Q. Aurelius**, iii., 483.
Synceilus, George, ii., 541.
Synesius of Cyrene, iii., 482; the *Agyptianus* of, interpretation of, 506 *sq.*
Synopsis Sathas, v., 508.
Syra, vi., 560.
Syracuse, estates of Pierius at, iv., 526; siege of, by Saracens, v., 503.
Syria (and S. Palæstina), province, i., 451; division of Syria, i., 452; mention of, in Chinese sources iv., 534.
Syro-Roman Code of Law, iv., 545.
- TABARI**, al-, v., 513 *sq.*
Tabennisi, iv., 527.
Tābiūn, the, v., 512.
Tafel, L. F., vi., 518.
Taman, Goths in, iv., 537.
Tancred, vi., 524.
Tanfani, L., vi., 558.
Tapur, iv., 540.
Tarasius, *Life of*, v., 501.
Tardu, iv., 540.
Tarichi Ali Osman, vii., 334.
Taron, vi., 537.
Tarraconensis, i., 451, 452.
Ta-ts'in, iv., 534; v., 520 *sqq.*
Taugast, iv., 541.
Tarasius, Patriarch, vi., 515.
Taurus (præf. pref. third century), a protector Aug., ii., 558.
Taurus, Palladius Rutilius (præf. pref. fourth century), iii., 506.
Tavernier, Ball's translation of, i., 453.
Tedardi, Jacques, on capture of Constantinople, vii., 332.
Telec, vi., 547.
Tēnos, *see* Tinos.
Tephrike, Peter Sikeliotēs at, vi., 542.
Terbuniates, vi., 537.
Ter-Mikelian on Armenian Church, ii., 563.
Ter-Mkrtschian, Karapet, vi., 541.
Tessier, M. J., vi., 528.
Tetraxite Goths, iv., 538.
Tetricus, tyrant, i., 461 *sq.*
Teuffel, W. S., i., 446; iv., 517 *sq.*
Thackeray, F. St. J., iii., 487.
Thalassius, son-in-law of Ausonius, iii., 484.
Thebes, vi., 558.
Themes, vi., 517, 532 *sq.*
Themistius, works of, ii., 535; iii., 481.
Theodora, wife of Justinian, I., her character, iv., 517; her influence, v., 495; life of, 502.
Theodora, wife of Theophilus, related to Photius, vi., 515.
- Theodore of Cyzicus**, chronicle of, v., 508.
Theodore Daphnopates, v., 504.
Theodore Graptus, life of, v., 501.
Theodore of Heraclea, dragon-slayer, ii., 569.
Theodore Lascaris, vi., 518 *sq.*
Theodore Lector, iv., 512; *extracts* from, v., 500.
Theodore Metochites, learning of, vi., 518 *sq.*
Theodore, secretary, v., 497.
Theodore of Studion, works of, v., 501; *Life of*, *ib.*: his *Life of Plato*, 502.
Theodoret, ii., 539.
Theodoric, the Ostrogoth, iv., 522; table of marriage alliances of his family, 530; his draining of Pomptine marshes, 531.
Theodoropolis, capture of, vi., 516.
Theodorus, *see* Theodore.
Theodosiopolis, its siege by Mermeroes, iv., 544; theme of, vi., 534.
Theodosius I., extent of his share of empire, ii., 560; *Symmachus' panegyric*, iii., 483; Gothic wars of, 494; visit to Rome, 495.
Theodosius, count (executed A.D. 396), iii., 492.
Theodosius of Militane, v., 503.
Theodosius, a monk, on capture of Syracuse by the Saracens, v., 503.
Theodosius of Peshcherski, vi., 521.
Theognostos, grammarian, v., 503.
Theophanes of Byzantium, v., 495.
Theophanes, his *Chronography*, v., 500; lives of, 501; chronological difficulties in, 524; an emendation in, 536 *note*, 541; vi., 536; on Bulgarians, 546.
Theophilus, his paraphrase of the Institutes, v., 525.
Theophylactus Simocatta, iv., 518; v., 495; account of, 496.
Thera, vi., 559.
Therasia, vi., 559.
Thermia, vi., 559.
Thessalonica, Church of St. George at, ii., 569; capture of, by Cretan pirates, v., 504; Norman siege of, vi., 517.
Theudebert (Merovingian), iv., 526.
Thomsen, V., iv., 540 *note*; vi., 554.
Thracia, province, i., 452; use of the name, ii., 560; theme of, vi., 533 *sq. note.*
Θήρες, on the capture of Constantinople, vii., 334.

- Thucydides**, imitated by Procopius, iv., 514 *sq.*; imitated by Critobolus, vii., 328.
Thumb, A., vi., 544.
Tigris, course of, ii., 570.
Tillemont, i., 496.
Timotheus, *Catholic Patriarch*, v., 522.
Timur, campaign of, in Asia Minor, vii., 328; memoirs of, 329.
Tinos, vi., 559.
Tiran, King of Armenia, ii., 564.
Tiridates, *see* Trdat.
Titles, purchase of, v., 534.
Titus, Emperor, on Jews and Christians, ii., 544.
Tokta, vi., 547.
Tortosa, capture of, vi., 526.
Toulouse, doctrines of Bogomils at, vi., 543.
Trajan, conquests of, i., 449; policy in regard to Christians, ii., 544.
Transylvania, ruled by Crum, vi., 548.
Trdat, King of Armenia, ii., 563 *sq.*
Trebellianus, tyrant, i., 461.
Trebellius Pollio, writer in *Hist. Aug.*, i., 444 *sqq.*
Tresves, Francesco de, on capture of Constantinople, vii., 332.
Tribunus militum Augusti, i., 450.
Tripolis, capture of, vi., 526.
Trivet, Nicholas, vi., 526.
Troyes, relation to battle of Châlons, iii., 508.
Trustes, v., 528.
Tudebod of Sivrai, vi., 524.
Tumen, iv., 540.
Turks, the, origin of, iv., 539 *sqq.*
Turxanth, iv., 540.
Tusculo Ubertino, hexameter books of, vii., 333.
Tutela, v., 528.
Tyche of Constantinople, cult of, ii., 566, 568.
Tyrants, the thirty, i., 460 *sqq.*
Tzakones, vi., 544.
Tzimisces, John, a letter of, vi., 530.

UCHTANES of Edessa, vi., 530 *note*.
Ulfilas, alphabet of, iv., 528.
Ulpia Trajana, i., 449.
Umar, vi., 457.
Unger on chronology of Syncellus, ii., 541.
Uranus, his letter to Pacatus, iii., 484.
Usener, H., iv., 523.
Uspenski, Th., iv., 532; vi., 515.
Uturgurs, iv., 537 *sq.*; v., 516; vi., 545.
Utigurs, *see* Uturgurs.
Uses, vi., 536.

VAHRAM of Edessa, vi., 530.
Valaršapat, ii., 564 *sq.*
Valens, Emperor, his share of the empire, ii., 562; persecutes, iii., 490.
Valens, tyrant, i., 461.
Valentinian I., his dominion, ii., 560; Symmachus on, iii., 489.
Valentinian II., his dominion, ii., 560.
Valentinian III., 487, 505.
Valeria, Illyric province, ii., 552.
Valeria, Italian province, ii., 553 *and note*.
Valerian, Emperor, defeat of, i., 459.
Vámbéry, A., iii., 499.
Varangians, vi., 553.
Várhely, name of Sarmisegetusa, i., 449.
Vasates, the, iii., 485.
Vasilievski, B., on Tetraxite and Crimean Goths, iv., 539; v., 505.
Veligosti, Slav settlement at, vi., 544.
Venice, vi., 528; founding of, described by Constantine Porphyrogenitus, 537; navy, 539.
Verina, Empress, iv., 511.
Verona, battle of, iii., 486; date of, 499 *sq.*
Verona, *List of*, ii., 548, 550 *sqq.*
Verturiones, the, iii., 491.
Verulamium, i., 449.
Verillatio, ii., 556.
Vicarius a sacris consiliis, ii., 548.
Victor Tonnennensis, iv., 524, 531.
Victor, *see* Sextus Aurelius V.
Victor, the Younger, *Epitome*, ii., 538; a passage in (41, 20), 561.
Victorina or **Victoria**, mother of Victorinus, i., 460.
Victorinus, tyrant, i., 461.
Victorius, *Paschale of*, iv., 523.
Victory, Altar of, in Roman senate house, iii., 483, 486.
Vinech, vi., 547.
Viennensis, *Dioecesis*, ii., 548, 553.
Villehardouin, vi., 527.
Vita Artemis, ii., 559; source of Philostorgius, 562.
Vita Euthymii, v., 504.
Vita Stephani Junioris, v., 535, 536 *note*.
Vitalian, iv., 531.
Vlasto, E. H., vii., 335.
Vogel, i., 448; iv., 522.
Vogeler, A., v., 511.
Vogt, on Claudian, iii., 486; on Stilicho, 491.
Vogüe, de, i., 460.
Volkman, R., iii., 482.
Vopiscus, *see* Flavius V.
Vortigern, iv., 528.
Vram Sapuh, king, ii., 564.